

Best Copy Available

The following title has irregularities or missing pages. Exact duplicates could not be found for replacement.

LE MORTE DARTHUR

BY SYR THOMAS MALORY

THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF WILLIAM CAXTON
NOW REPRINTED AND EDITED WITH AN
INTRODUCTION AND GLOSSARY

BY H. OSKAR SOMMER, PH.D.

WITH AN ESSAY ON MALORY'S PROSE STYLE
BY ANDREW LANG, M.A.

VOL. I.—TEXT

LONDON: PUBLISHED BY DAVID NUTT, IN THE STRAND

1889

828

M257

36'

v.1

TO

This Excellency Herr Dr. von Gossler,

**KÖNIGL. PREUSSISCHER STAATS-MINISTER
UND MINISTER DER GEISTLICHEN,
UNTERRICHTS- UND MEDIZINAL-ANGELEGENHEITEN,**

Ritter pp. pp.

**EHREN-DOCTOR DER THEOLOGIE DER UNIVERSITÄT BERLIN,
BEIDER RECHTE DER UNIVERSITÄT HALLE
UND DER MEDIZIN DER UNIVERSITÄT GÖTTINGEN,**

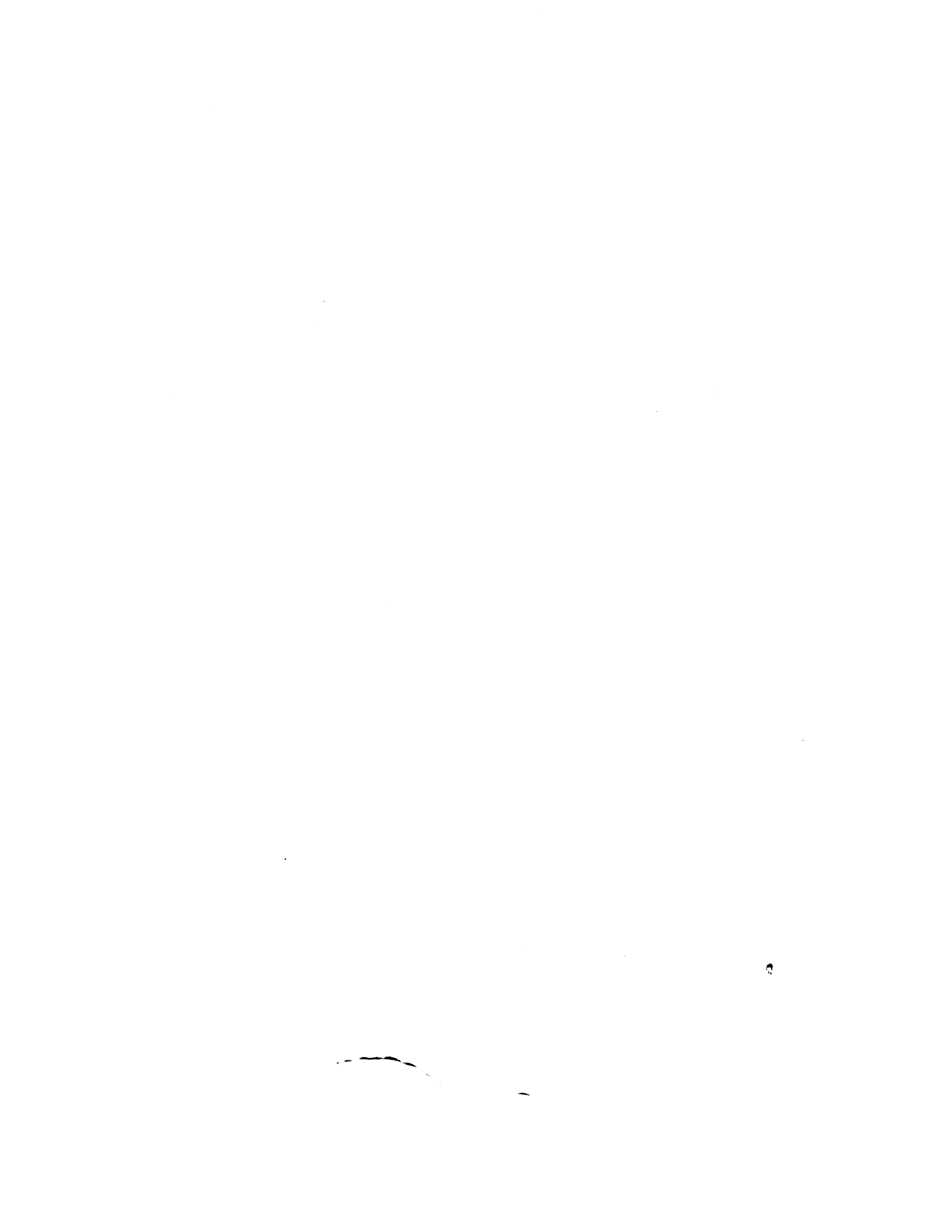
This Work is Dedicated

AS A TOKEN

OF

High Respect and Gratitude.

* *
*



PREFACE.



It is well known, one of the sources from which Spenser drew largely in his "Faerie Queene" was the rifacimento of Arthurian romances compiled by Sir Thomas Malory, and first published by William Caxton in 1485 under the title of "Le Morte Darthur." In the course of my Spenser studies I was thus led to pay special attention to this romance, and I soon felt the need of an edition answering in accuracy of text and in other respects to the requirements of modern scholarship.

The original edition is of such scarcity that only two copies are known. The second and third (Wynkyn de Worde's of 1498 and 1529) are equally scarce, and the latter differs from Caxton's to no inconsiderable extent. The later black-letter editions reprint Wynkyn de Worde's of 1529 with additional errors, omissions, and corruptions, that culminate in the edition of Thomas Stansby (1634), which is nevertheless the one chosen by Thomas Wright for his reprint (1856) of the work. Of other modern editions, Southey's (1817), which professes to reprint Caxton's edition, is inaccurate, interpolated, and difficult of reference; moreover, it has become very scarce. The Globe edition is modernised and abridged. The promise, dating back to 1868, of the Early-English Text Society¹ to issue a standard edition of Malory has not been fulfilled, nor have I been able to learn that there was any likelihood of its being fulfilled.

The field was therefore open for a new edition, which, after some consideration, I made up my mind to undertake. I communicated my

¹ (a) Sir Edward Strachey, "Malory's Morte Darthur," modernised and revised. Globe Edition. London, 1868 and 1886. 8vo. Introduction, p. xvii.

(b) W. Carew Hazlitt's edition of Warton's "History of English Poetry." London, 1871. 8vo. Vol. II. p. 189, note 4.

intention to his Excellency the Royal Prussian Minister of Public Instruction, Herr Dr. von Gossler, requesting leave of absence for six months. My request was readily complied with, and for the prosecution of my labours I received a grant from public funds.

Through Earl Spencer's kind permission I was allowed the use, at the British Museum, of the Althorp copy. To ensure accuracy I copied it myself for the press, and I have read the proofs and revised with the original. Any one who has undertaken editorial work of this kind will appreciate the labour involved and the difficulties surmounted, and will be indulgent if here and there slight errors have been allowed to creep in. I soon found that the time at my disposal would only permit me to pass the text through the press, and I determined to devote myself entirely to this during my stay in England, and to leave the working up of the results of my study of the romance until later. I was strengthened in this determination by thinking that scholars would find it more convenient to have the text in one volume, as Caxton indeed gives it, and the whole of the editorial, index, and glossarial matter in another.

The present edition will consist of two parts of unequal size—the first to appear will contain the Text only; the second, the Introduction, a Treatise on the Sources, a complete List of the Various Readings, the Index, &c. The principles upon which this edition is based will be fully set forth in the Introduction; here it may suffice to say that Caxton is reprinted page for page, line for line, word for word, and, with a few exceptions, which will be discussed, letter for letter. The twenty-one pages¹ which, originally lacking in Earl Spencer's copy, were skilfully facsimiled by Mr. Whittaker from the Osterley Park copy, have, through the courtesy of Mr. B. F. Stevens, been submitted to the present owner of that copy, Mrs. Abby E. Pope, of Brooklyn, N.Y., U.S.A., who kindly had them collated for me. I intended to give the result of this collation at the end of the text-volume, but had to alter my mind for the following reason: Having worked through two-thirds of the text, I discovered that the statement about the facsimiles in Earl Spencer's copy, given by the existing authorities,² was not

¹ These pages are distinguished in this volume by asterisks being appended to the numbers of pages and folios; comp., e.g., page 195, folio 98.

² Messrs. Longman's note, attached to the Althorp copy, and Mr. Blades' description of the volume.

entirely correct. Two of the pages stated to be facsimiles are originals, whereas two so-called originals are facsimiles. I had therefore to send four more pages to America for collation. My supposition that these facsimiles were almost perfect as regards the text, has been confirmed; the errors are of the most trifling nature.

The Introduction will deal fully with the bibliographical peculiarities of Caxton's and of the later editions, as well as with their relation one to the other. The last chapter of the Introduction will be devoted to the peculiarities of the language of Malory, and here the result of the collation, as well as a list of the misprints and irregularities of spelling reproduced in the present edition, will be inserted. A full list will be given of the readings in which Wynkyn de Worde's second edition (1529) differs from Caxton's. This is necessary, not only because the period which lies between the two editions was one of noticeable change in the language, but also because, as already stated, the later black-letter editions go back to Wynkyn de Worde's second edition. The critical apparatus attached to the present edition will thus place the philologist and literary antiquary in possession of the two chief early forms of this English classic.

The Treatise on the Sources will endeavour to state concisely, yet exhaustively, the relation, so far as at present determinable, of Malory to the earlier Arthurian romances, whether French or English. The extensive mass of recent research (foremost among it the studies of M. Gaston Paris) has been sifted and tested. My task as regards one portion of the romance has been greatly lightened by the opportune publication of the Huth MS. of "Merlin," due to MM. Gaston Paris and Jacob Ulrich.¹

The Index will be both glossarial and explanatory, and will afford every possible means of reference. It will contain: Firstly, all names of persons and places occurring in the romance, with references and explanations. The names of the principal heroes will be accompanied by a concise analysis of their lives. Secondly, all obsolete and difficult words.

Malory is interesting not alone to the archæologist of words and manners: he has exercised an abiding influence over the subject-

¹ Société des Anciens Textes Français, Paris, 1886, 2 vols. 8°.

matter of English literature and over the technical form of English prose. This aspect of his work lay outside the lines, as I had planned them, of the present edition, and I gladly acceded to my publisher's suggestion that it should be dealt with by the distinguished man of letters whose "Study of Malory as a Prose Writer" will be issued with the second volume.

It is with great pleasure that I express my warmest thanks to the Right Honourable the Earl Spencer; to His Excellency Herr Dr. von Gossler; to Mrs. Abby E. Pope; and to George Bullen, Esq., Keeper of the Printed Books at the British Museum, for kindly taking charge of the Althorp copy while in the Museum. My publisher, in his anxiety to make the volume in every way worthy of its contents, has liberally and readily carried out all my wishes. Last, but not least, I must thank Mr. McCall, of Messrs. Ballantyne, Hanson & Co.'s Printing Works, for the valuable assistance that he rendered me while the volume was passing through the press.

H. OSKAR SOMMER.

BRITISH MUSEUM, LONDON,
March 1889.

that euer I herd speke of / I haue aspyed / thy kynge met ne-
 uer yet with worshipful man / but telle hym / I wyll haue his
 hede withoute he doo me homage / thenne the messenger departed
 ¶ Now is there ony here said Arthur that knoweth kyng Ry-
 5 ons / thenne answered a knyght that hight Naram / Syr I knowe
 the kyng wel / he is a passyng good man of his body / as
 felde ben byuyng / and a passyng proude man / and sit doubt-
 ye not / he wyll make barre on yow with a myghty puyssa-
 uance / wel said Arthur I shall ordeyne for hym in short tyme

¶ Capitulum xxviii

10 **T**henne kyng arthur lete sende for al the childre born on
 may day begote of lordes & born of ladyes / for Merlyn
 told kyng Arthur that he that shold destroye hym / shold be
 borne in may day / wherfor he sent for hem all vpon payn of deth
 and so ther were founde many lordes sones / and all were sente
 15 vnto the kyng / and soo was Mordred sente by kyng Lotts
 wyf / and all were put in a ship to the see / and some were iiii
 weekes old and some lasse / And so by fortune the ship drofe
 vnto a castel and was al to ryuen and destroyed the most part
 sauf that Mordred was cast vp and a good man fonde hym /
 20 and nourysshed hym tyl he was viii yere olde / & thenne he
 brought hym to the Court / as it rehereth afterward towarde
 the ende of the deth of Arthur / So many lordes and barons of
 this reame were displeasid / for her children were so lost / and
 many put the wyte on Merlyn more than on Arthur / so what
 25 for drede and for loue they helde their peas / But whanne the
 messenger came to kyng Ryons / thenne was he woode oute of
 mesure and purueyed hym for a grete host as it rehercyth af-
 ter in the booke of Balyn & sauage that foloweth next after /
 how by aduenture Balyn gat the swerd

¶ Explicit liber primus

¶ Incipit liber secundus

30 **A**fter the deth of Mherpendragon reigned Ar-
 thur his sone / the which had grete werre in his
 dayes for to gete al Englonde in to his hand /
 For there were many kynges within the realme
 35 of Englonde and in walys / Scotland and
 Cornelbaille / Soo it befelle on a tyme / whanne kyng Arthur

PHOTOGRAPH (IN THE EXACT SIZE OF THE ORIGINAL) OF PAGE 75 (SIG. c5)
 FROM CAXTON'S EDITION, LORD SPENCER'S COPY.

THE NOBLE AND IOYOUS BOOK ENTYTLED
LE MORTE DARTHUR

NOTWYTHSTONDYNG IT TREATETH OF THE BYRTH/
LYF / AND ACTES OF THE SAYD KYNG ARTHUR / OF
HIS NOBLE KNYGHTES OF THE ROUNDE TABLE /
THEYR MERUAYLLOUS ENQUESTES AND ADUEN-
TURES / THACHYEUYNG OF THE SANGREAL / & IN
THENDE THE DOLOROUS DETH & DEPARTYNG OUT
OF THYS WORLD OF THEM AL / WHICHE BOOK WAS
REDUCED IN TO ENGLYSSHE BY

SYR THOMAS MALORY KNYGHT

[Carton's Preface]

After that I had accomplifhed and fynifhed dyuers
 hystories as wel of contemplacyon as of other hysto-
 ryal and worldly actes of grete conquerours & pryn-
 ces / And also certeyn bookes of enfaumples and doctryne /
 Many noble and dyuers gentylnen of thys royaume of Eng- 5
 lond camen and demaunded me many and oftymes / wherfore
 that I haue not do made & enprynte the noble hystorye of the
 faynt greal / and of the moost renom'd cryften kyng / Fyrft
 and chyef of the thre best cryften and worthy / kyng Arthur /
 whyche ought moost to be remembred emonge vs englyfhe 10
 men tofore al other cryften kynges / For it is notoyrly knowen
 thorough the vnyuerfal world / that there been ix worthy & the
 best that euer were / That is to wete thre paynymys / thre Iewes
 and thre cryften men / As for the paynymys they were tofore the
 Incarnacyon of Cryft / whiche were named / the fyrft Hector 15
 of Troye / of whome thystorye is comen bothe in balade and
 in profe / The second Alyfaunder the grete / & the thyrd Iulyus
 Cezar Emperour of Rome of whome thystories ben wel kno
 and had / And as for the thre Iewes whyche also were tofore
 thyncarnacyon of our lord of whome the fyrft was Duc Io- 20
 fue whyche brought the chyldren of Iffrahel in to the londe of
 byhefte / The second Dauyd kyng of Iherufalem / & the thyrd
 Iudas Machabeus of thefe thre the byble reherceth al theyr no-
 ble hystories & actes / And fythe the fayd Incarnacyon haue
 ben thre noble cryften men stalled and admytted thorough the 25
 vnyuerfal world in to the nombre of the ix beste & worthy / of
 whome was fyrft the noble Arthur / whos noble actes I pur-
 pofe to wryte in thys present book here folowyng / The second
 was Charlemayn or Charles the grete / of whome thystorye is
 had in many places bothe in frenfhe and englyfhe / and the 30
 thyrd and laft was Godefray of boloyne / of whos actes & lyf
 I made a book vnto the excellent prynce and kyng of noble me-
 morye kyng Edward the fourth / the fayd noble Ientylmen
 Instantly requyred me temprynte thystorye of the fayd noble
 kyng and conquerour kyng Arthur / and of his knyghtes 35
 wyth thystorye of the faynt greal / and of the deth and endyng
 of the fayd Arthur / Affermyng that I ouzt rather tenprynte
 his actes and noble feates / than of godefroye of boloyne / or

ony the other eyght / confydering that he was a man borne
 wythin this royame and kyng and Emperour of the fame /
 And that there ben in frensshe dyuers and many noble volu-
 mes of his actes / and also of his knyghtes / To whome I
 5 anwerd / that dyuers men holde oppynyon / that there was
 no fuche Arthur / and that alle fuche bookes as been maad of
 hym / ben fayned and fables / by caufe that somme crony-
 cles make of hym no mencyon ne remembre hym noo thyng
 ne of his knyghtes / wherto they anwerd / and one in specyal
 10 fayd / that in hym that shold say or thynke / that there was ne-
 uer fuche a kyng callyd Arthur / myght wel be aretted grete
 folye and blyndeneffe / For he fayd that there were many euy-
 dences of the contrarye / Fyrst ye may see his sepulture in the
 monastrye of Glaftyngburye / And also in polycronycon in
 15 the v book the fyxte chappytre / and in the feuenth book the
 xxiiij chappytre / where his body was buryed and after foun-
 den and translated in to the fayd monastrye / ye shal se also
 in thyftorye of bochas in his book de casu principum / parte of
 his noble actes / and also of his falle / Also galfridus in
 20 his brutysse book recounteth his lyf / and in dyuers places
 of Englund / many remembraunces ben yet of hym and shall
 remayne perpetuely / and also of his knyghtes / Fyrst in the
 abbey of westmestre at saynt Edwardes shryne remayneth the
 prynte of his seal in reed Waxe closed in beryll / In whych is
 25 wryton Patricius Arthurus / Britannie / Gallie / Germanie /
 dacie / Imperator / Item in the castel of douer ye may see Gau-
 wayns skulle / & Cradoks mantle . At wynchester the rounde
 table / in other places Launcelottes swerde and many other
 thynges / Thenne al these thynges confydered there can no man
 30 resonably gaynsaye but there was a kyng of thys lande na-
 med Arthur / For in al places crysten and hethen he is re-
 puted and taken for one of the ix worthy / And the fyrst of
 the thre Crysten men / And also he is more spoken of beyonde
 the see moo bookes made of his noble actes than there be in
 35 englund as wel in duche ytalyen spaynysshe and grekysshe as
 in frensshe / And yet of record remayne in wytnesse of hym in
 wales in the toune of Camelot the grete stons & meruayl-
 lous werkys of yron lyeng vnder the grounde & ryal vautes

which dyuers now lyuyng hath seen / wherfor it is a meruayl
 why he is nomore renommed in his owne contreye / fauf onelye
 it accordeth to the worde of god / whyche fayth that no man is
 accept for a prophete in his owne contreye / Theñe al these thyn-
 ges forsayd aledged I coude not wel denye / but that there was 5
 fuche a noble kyng named arthur / and reputed one of the ix
 Worthy / & fyrst & chyef of the cristen men / & many noble volu-
 mes be made of hym & of his noble knyghtes in frensshe which
 I haue seen & redde beyonde the see / which been not had in our
 maternal tongue / but in walfshe ben many & also in frensshe / 10
 & fomme in englysshe but no wher nygh alle / wherfore fuche as
 haue late ben drawn oute bryeffly in to englysshe / I haue after
 the symple connyng that god hath sente to me / vnder the
 fauour and correctyon of al noble lordes and gentylnen en-
 prysed to enprynte a book of the noble hystories of the sayd 15
 kyng Arthur / and of certeyn of his knyghtes after a cople
 vnto me delyuerd / whyche cople Syr Thomas Malorye dyd
 take oute of certeyn bookes of frensshe and reduced it in to
 Englysshe / And I accordyng to my cople haue doon sette it
 in enprynte / to the entente that noble men may see and lerne 20
 the noble actes of chyualrye / the Ientyl and vertuous dedes
 that somme knyghtes vsed in tho dayes / by whyche they came
 to honour / and how they that were vycious were punysshed
 and ofte put to shame and rebuke / humbly byfeychyng al no-
 ble lordes and ladyes wyth al other estates of what estate 25
 or degree they been of / that shal see and rede in this sayd book
 and werke / that they take the good and honest actes in their
 remembrance / and to folowe the same / Wherin they shalle
 fynde many Ioyous and playfaunt hystories / and noble &
 renommed actes of humanyte / gentylnesse and chyualryes / 30
 For herein may be seen noble chyualrye / Curtosye / Humanyte /
 frendlynesse / hardynesse / loue / frendshyp / Cowardyse / Mur-
 dre / hate / vertue / and synne / Doo after the good and leue
 the euyl / and it shal brynge you to good fame and renom-
 mee / And for to passe the tyme thys booke shal be plefaunte 35
 to rede in / but for to gyue fayth and byleue that al is trewe
 that is conteyned herin / ye be at your lyberte / but al is wry-
 ton for our doctryne / and for to beware that we falle not to

vyce ne fynne / but texerfyfe and folowe vertu / by whyche we
 may come and atteyne to good fame and renomme in thys
 lyf / and after thys shorte and tranfytorye lyf to come vnto
 euerlaftyng blyffe in heuen / the whyche he graunte vs that
 5 reygne in heuen the bleffyd Trynyte

THenne to procede forth in thys fayd book / whyche I
 dyrecte vnto alle noble prynces / lordes and ladyes /
 gentylmen or gentylywymmen that defyre to rede or here
 redde of the noble and loyous hystorye of the grete conque-
 10 rour and excellent kyng . Kyng Arthur / fomtyme kyng of
 thys noble royalme / thenne callyd brytayne / I wylliam
 Caxton fymple perfone present thys book folowyng / Whyche I
 haue enpryfed tenprynte / And treateth of the noble actes / fe-
 ates of armes of chyualrye / prowesse / hardynesse / humanyte
 15 loue / curtosye / and veray gentylnesse / wyth many wonder-
 ful hystoryes and adventures / And for to vnderfonde bry-
 efly the contente of thys volume / I haue deuyded it in to xxj
 bookes / and euery book chapytred as here after shal by god-
 des grace folowe / The fyrst book shal treate how Vtherpen-
 20 dragon gate the noble conquerour kyng Arthur and conteyn-
 eth xxvij chappytres / The second book treateth of Balyn
 the noble knyght and conteyneth xix chappytres / The thyrd
 book treateth of the maryage of kyng Arthur to quene gue-
 neuer wyth other maters and conteyneth fyftene chappytres /
 25 The fourth book how Merlyn was affotted / and of warre
 maad to kyng Arthur / and conteyneth xxix chappytres /
 The fyfthe book treateth of the conqueste of Lucius themperour
 and conteyneth xij chappytres / The fyxthe book treateth of
 Syr Launcelot and fyr Lyonel and meruayllous adventu-
 30 res and conteyneth xvij chappytres / The feuenth book treateth
 of a noble knyght called fyr Gareth and named by fyr kaye
 Beaumayns and conteyneth xxxvj chappytres / The eyght
 book treateth of the byrthe of Syr Tryfram the noble knyght
 and of hys actes / and conteyneth xlj chappytres /
 35 The ix book treateth of a knyght named by Syr kaye le cote
 male taylle and also of Syr Tryfram and conteyneth xliij

chapytres / The x book treateth of fyr Tryfram & other mer-
 uayllous adventures and conteyneth lxxxviiij chappytres /
 The xj book treateth of fyr Launcelot and fyr Galahad and
 conteyneth xiiij chappytres / The xij book treateth of fyr Laun-
 celot and his ma~~nd~~ and conteyneth xiiij chappytres / The 5
 xiiij book ~~how~~ how galahad came fyrst to kyng Arthurs
 courte and the quest how the fangreall was begonne and con-
 teyneth xx Chapytres / The xiiij boook treateth of the queste
 of the fangreal & conteyneth x chapytres / The xv book treateth
 of fyr launcelot & conteyneth vj chapytres / The xvj book trea- 10
 teth of Syr Bors & fyr Lyonel his brother and conteyneth
 xvij chapytres / The xvij book treateth of the fangreal and
 conteyneth xxiiij chapytres / The xviiij book treateth of Syr
 Launcelot and the quene and conteyneth xxv chapytres / The
 xix book treateth of quene Gueneuer and Launcelot and con- 15
 teyneth xiiij chapytres / The xx book treateth of the pyetous
 deth of Arthur and conteyneth xxij chapytres / The xxj book
 treateth of his laft departyng / and how fyr Launcelot came
 to reuenge his dethe and conteyneth xiiij chapytres / The somme
 is xxj bookes whyche conteyne the somme of v hondred & vij 20
 chapytres / as more playnly shal folowe hereafter /

iiij

**¶ The table or rubryfhe of the contente of chapytres thortly
of the fyrst booke of kyng Arthur /**

	Fyrst how vtherpendragon fente for the duke of cornewayl & Igrayne his wyf & of their departyng fodeynly ageyn ca primo	
	How Vtherpendragon made warre on the duke of cornewayl and how by the moyane of Merlyn he laye by the duchesse & gate Arthur Capitulo	ij
	Of the byrthe of kyng arthur and of his nourytur / & of the deth of kyng vtherpendragon / and how Arthur was chofen kyng and of wondres and meruaylles of a fwerde taken out of a fstone by the fayd Arthur capitulo	iiij iiij & v
10	How kyng arthur pulled oute the fwerde dyuers tymes	vj
	How kyng arthur was crowned & how he made offycers	vij
	How kyng Arthur helde in wales at a pentecoft a grete feest and what kynges and lordes came to his feste	viiij
	Of the fyrst warre that kyng Arthur had and how he wanne the felde Capitulo	ix
15	How Merlyn counceyllid kyng arthur to fende for kyng ban & kyng bors & of theyr counceyl taken for the warre	x
	Of a grete tornoye made by kyng arthur & the ij kynges ban and bors and how they wente ouer the fee Capitulo	xj
20	How xj kynges gadred a grete hooft ayenft kyng Arthur	xij
	Of a dreame of the kyng wyth the hondred knyghtes	xiiij
	How the xj kynges wyth theyr hooft fought ayenst arthur & his hooft and many grete feates of the warre capitulo	xiiij
	Yet of the fame batayll Capitulo	xv
25	Yet more of the faid batayl & how it was ended by merlyn	xvij
	How Kyng Arthur kyng ban & kyng bors rescowed Kyng Leodegraunce and other Incydentes	xviij
	How Kyng arthur rode to Garlyon and of his dreame / & how he fawe the quefityng beeft capitulo	xix
30	How kyng Pellynore took arthurs hors & folowed the quefityng beeft and how Merlyn mette wyth Arthur	xx
	How vlfyus apeched quene Igrayne Arthurs moder of treason / and how a knyght came and defyred to haue the deth of hys mayfter reuengyd capitulo	xxj
35	How gryflet was made knyght & Iusted with a knyzt	xxij

How xij knyghtes came from Rome & axed truage for thys londe of arthur / and how arthur faught wyth a Knyght	xxiij
How Merlyn faued Arthurs lyf & threwe an enchauntement vpon Kyng Pellynore and made hym to flepe	xxiiij
How Arthur by the meane of Merlyn gate Excalybur hys fwerde of the lady of the lake Capitulo	xxv
How tydynges cam to arthur that kyng ryons had ouercome xj kynges & how he defyred arthus berde to purfyl his mantel Capitulo xxvij	
¶ How al the chyldren were sente fore / that were borne on may day . & how Mordred was faued	xxviij

¶ The second book

Of a damoyfel whyche came gyrde wyth a fwerde for to fynde a man of fuche vertue to drawe it oute of the scabard ca primo	
How balen arayed lyke a poure Knyght pulled out the fwerde whyche afterward was cause of his deth capitulo	ij
How the lady of the lake demaunded the Knyztes heed that had wonne the fwerde / or the maydens hede	iiij
How merlyn tolde thaduenture of this damoyfel capitulo	iiij
How balyn was purfyewed by fyr Launceor Knyght of Ire- londe / and how he lufted and flewe hym	v
How a damoyfel whiche was loue to Launceor flewe hyr self for loue / and how balyn mette wyth his brother balan	vj
How a dwarfe repreuyd Balyn for the deth of Launceor / & how Kyng Marke of Cornewayl founde them and maad a tombe ouer them capitulo	vij
How Merlyn prophecyed that two the best Knyghtes of the world shold fyght there / whyche were Syr Launcelot and fyr Trystram Capitulo	viiij
How balyn and his broder by the counceyl of Merlyn toke Kyng ryons and brought hym to Kyng Arthur	ix
How Kyng arthur had a bataylle ayenft Nero and Kyng loth of orkeney / and how Kyng loth was deceyued by merlyn and how xij Kynges were slayne capitulo	x
Of the entyrement of xij Kynges / & of the prophecye of mer- lyn / how balyn shold gyue the dolorous stroke	xj
How a forouful knyzt cam tofore arthur & how balyn fet hym & how that Knyght was slayn by a Knyght Inuyfyble	xij
How balyn & the damoyfel mette wyth a Knyght which was	

- in lyke wyfe slayn / & how the damoyfel bledde for the custom
of a castel Capitulo xiiij
- Ho balyn mette wyth that knyght named garlon at a feest &
there he slewe hym to haue his blood / to hele therwith the sone
5 of his hooft Capitulo xiiij
- How Balyn fought wyth kyng Pelham / & how his swerde
brake / and how he gate a spere wherewyth he smote the dolo-
rous froke capitulo xv
- How balyn was delyuerd by Merlyn / and fauyd a knyght
10 that wold haue slayn hym self for loue capitulo xvj
- How that knyght slewe his loue & a knyght lyeng by hyr / &
after how he slewe hym self wyth his owne swerde / & how ba-
lyn rode toward a castel where he lost his lyf Capitulo xvij
- How balyn mette wyth his brother balen & how eche of theym
15 slewe other vnknowen tyl they were wounded to deth xvij
- How merlyn buryed hem bothe in one tōbe / & of balyns sward
capitulo xix ¶ **Thre folowen the chapytres of the thyrd book**
- How kyng arthur took a wyf and wedded gueneuer dought-
ter to leodegran kyng of the londe of Camelard wyth whome
20 he had the rounde table Capitulo primo
- How the knyghtes of the rounde table were ordeyned & theyr
fyeges bleffyd by the bysshop of caunterburye capitulo ij
- How a poure man rydyng vpon a lene mare / and desyred of
kyng Arthur to make his sone knyght Capitulo iij
- 25 How fyr Tor was knowen for sone of kyng Pellynore / and
how Gawayn was made knyght capitulo iiij
- How atte feste of the Weddyng of kyng arthur to gueneuer
a Whyte herte came in to the halle & thyrti couple houndes / &
how a brachet pynched the herte whiche was taken away v
- 30 How fyr Gawayn rode for to fetche ageyn the herte / & how ij
brethern fought eche ageynst other for the herte Capitulo vj
- How the herte was chaced in to a castel and there slayn / and
how Gauwayn slewe a lady Capitulo vij
- How iiij knyghtes faught ayenst sir gawayn & gaheryse & how
35 they were ouercom & her lyues faued atte request of iiij ladyes
capitulo viij ¶ How fyr Tor rode after the knyght wyth the
brachet & of his aduenture by the waye capitulo ix
- How fyr Tor fonde the brachet wyth a lady / & how a knyght

	How Arthur accorded the two brethern / and delyuerd the xx knyghtes / & how fyr Accolons deyed capitulo	xij
	How Morgan wold haue flayn fyr vryens hyr husbond / & how fyr Ewayn hir fone faued hym Capitulo	xiiij
5	How quene Morgan le fay made grete forowe for the deth of accolon / & how she ftale awaye the scawbard fro arthur	xiiiij
	How Morgan le fay faued a knyght that shold haue be drow- ned / & how kyng Arthur retorned home ageyn capitulo	xv
	How the damoyfel of the lake faued Kynge Arthur from a mantel which shold haue brente hym capitulo	xvj
10	How fyr Gawayn & fyr Ewayn mette with xij fayr damoy- felles / & how they compleyned on fyr Marhaus ca	xvij
	How fyr Marhaws Iufted with fyr Gawayn & fyr Ewayn and ouerthrewe them bothe capitulo	xviiij and xix
15	How fyr Marhaus fyr Gawayn & fyr Ewayn mette the da- moyfelles & eche of them toke one capitulo	xx
	How a knyght & a dwarf stroof for a lady capitulo	xxj
	How kyng Pelleas suffred hym felf to be taken pryfoner by caufe he wolde haue a fyght of his lady / & how fyr Gawayn	
20	promyfed hym for to gete to hym the loue of his lady	xxij
	How fyr Gawayn came to the lady Ettard and laye by hyr & how fyr Pelleas fonde them fleepyng capitulo	xxiiij
	How fyr Pelleas loued nomore ettard by the moyan of the damoyfel of the lake whome he loued euer after ca	xxiiiij
25	How fyr marhaus rode with the damoyfel and how he came to the duke of the fouth marchis Capitulo	xxv
	How fyr Marhaus faught wyth the duke and his vj fones and made them to yelde them capitulo	xxvj
	How fyr Ewayn rode wyth the damoyfel of lx yere of age / & how he gate the prys at tornoyeng capitulo	xxvij
30	How fyr Ewayn fauzt with ij knyghtes & ouercam hem	xxviiij
	How at the yeres ende alle thre knyghtes wyth theyr thre da- moyfelles metten at the fontayne capitulo	xxix
	¶ Of the fyfthe book the chapytres folowen	
	How xij aged Ambaffyatours of rome came to kyng Arthur	
35	to demaunde truage for brytayne capitulo	primo
	How the kynges and lordes promyfed to kyng Arthur ayde and helpe ageynft the Romayns capitulo	ij

affaylled hym for the fayd brachet capitulo	x
How syr Tor ouercame the knyght / and how he lofth ys heed at the requefte of a lady capitulo	xj
How kyng pellenore rode after the lady and the knyght that ladde her awaye / & how a lady defyred helpe of hym and how he faught wyth ij knyghtes for that lady of whome he flewe that one at the fyrft froke capitulo	xij
How kyng Pellynore gate the lady & brought hyr to Came- lot to the courte of kyng arthur capitulo	xiiij
How on the waye he herde two knyghtes as he laye by nyght in a valeye & of other aduentures capitulo	xiiij
How whan he was comen to Camelot he was fworne vpon a book to telle the trouthe of his quefte capitulo	xv
¶ There folowen the chapytres of the fourth book	
How merlyn was affotted & dooted on one of the ladyes of the lake / and how he was fhytte in a roche vnder a ftone and there deyed capitulo	primo
How v kynges came in to this londe to warre ayenft kyng Ar- thur / & what counceyl arthur had ayenft them capitulo	ij
How kyng arthur had adoo with them & ouerthrewe them & flewe the v kynges & made the remenaunte to flee	iiij
How the batayl was fynnyfshed or he came / & how the kyng founded an abbay where the batayl was capitulo	iiij
How fyr Tor was made knyght of the rounde table and how badgemagus was dyspleafed capitulo	v
How kyng Arthur / kyng Vryens & Syr Accolon of gaule chaced an hert & of theyr meruayllous aduenture	vj
How Arthur took vpon hym to fyght to be delyuerd oute of pryfon / & alfo for to delyuer twenty knyghtes that were in pryfon Capitulo	vij
How accollon fonde hym felf by a welle / & he toke vpon hym to doo bataylle ayenft Arthur capitulo	viiij
Of the bataylle bytwene kyng Arthur & Accolon	ix
How kyng arthurs fwerde that he faught wyth brake / & how he recouerd of accolon his owne fwerde excalibur and ouer- came his enemye Capitulo	x
How accolon confeffyd the treafon of Morgan le fay Kyng arthurs fyfter & how fhe wold haue doon flee hym ca	xj

How kyng Arthur helde a parlement at yorke & how he ordeyned how the royaume shold be gouerned in his abscence	iij
How kyng Arthur beyng shypped & lyeng in his caban had a meruayllous dreame / & of the xpofoycion therof capitulo	iiij
How a man of the contreye tolde to hym of a meruayllous geaunte / & how he faught & conquerd hym Capitulo	v
How kyng Arthur fente fyr gawayn & other to lucius / & how they were assaylled & escaped wyth worfhyp Capitulo	vj
How Lucius fente certeyn espyes in a buffhement for to haue taken hys knyghtes beyng prysonners / and how they were letted capitulo	vij
How a fenatour tolde to Lucius of their dyscomfytur / & also of the grete batayl betwene Arthur & Lucius capitulo	viiij
How Arthur after he had achyeued the batayl ayenst the Romayns entred in to almayn & fo in to ytalye Capitulo	ix 15
Of a bataylle doon by Gauwayn ayenst a farafyn / whiche after was yelden & became crysten Capitulo	x
How the Sarafyns came oute of a wode for to rescowe their beestys / and of a grete bataylle Capitulo	xj
How fyr Gauwayn returned to kyng Arthur wyth his prysoners / And how the kyng wanne a Cyte / and how he was crowned emperour capitulo	xij

¶ Here folowen the chappytres of the vj book

How fyr Launcelot and fyr Lyonel departed fro the courte for to seek auentures / and how fyr Lyonel lefte hym slepyng and was taken Capitulo	primo 25
How fyr Ector folowed for to seek fyr Launcelot / & how he was taken by fyr Turquyne Capitulo	ij
How iiij quenes fonde Launcelot slepyng / & how by enchauntement he was taken & ledde in to a castel capitulo	iiij
How fyr Lancelot was deliuerd by the meane of a damofel	iiij 30
How a knyght fonde fyr Launcelot lyeng in his lemmans bedde / & how fyr Launcelot faught with the knyght ca	v
How fyr Launcelot was receyued of kyng bagdemagus daughter / & he made his complaynte to hir fader Capitulo	vj
How fyr Launcelot byhaued hym in a tournement / & how he mette wyth fyr Turquyn ledyng fyr Gaheris capitulo	vij
How fyr Launcelot & fyr Turquyn faught to gyders ca	viiij

	How fyr Turquyn was slayn / & how fyr Launcelot bad fyr gaheris delyuer al the pryfoners capitulo	ix
	How fyr Launcelot rode with the damoyfel & flewe a knyght that distressid al ladyes / & also a vylayn þ ^t kept a bridge	x
5	How fyr launcelot flewe ij geantes & made a castel free	xj
	How fyr Launcelot rode dysguyfed in Syr kayes harnoys / & how he smote down a knyght Capitulo	xij
	How fyr Launcelot Iufted ayenft four kny3tes of the rounde table and ouerthrewe theym capitulo	xiiij
10	How fyr Launcelot folowed a brachet in to a castel where he fonde a dede knyght & how he after was requyred of a damoyfel to hele hir brother capitulo	xiiij
	How fir Launcelot cam in to the chapel peryllous & gate there of a dede corps a pyece of the cloth & a fwerde capitulo	xv
15	How fyr Launcelot at the request of a lady recouerd a fawcon by whiche he was deceyued capitulo	xvj
	How fyr Launcelot ouertoke a knyght which chafed hys wyf to haue sleyn hyr / & how he fayd to hym capitulo	xvij
	How fyr Launcelot came to kyng arthurs court / & how there	
20	were recounted al his noble feates & actes capitulo	xviiij

¶ Here folowen the chappytres of the teuenth boook

	How beaumayns came to kyng arthurs courte & demaunded thre petycyons of kyng Arthur Capitulo	primo
	How fyr Launcelot & fyr Gauwayn were wroth by caufe fyr kaye mocqued beaumayns / & of a damoyfel whyche defyred	
25	a knyght to fyght for a lady Capitulo	ij
	How beawmayns defyred the batayl / & how it was graunted to hym / & how he defyred to be made knyzt of fir Launcelot	iiij
	How beaumayns departed & how he gate of fyr Kaye a spere and a shelde / and how he Iufted and faughte wyth Syr	
30	Launcelot Capitulo	iiij
	How beaumayns tolde to fyr Launcelot his name and how he was dubbed knyght of Syr Launcelot / and after ouertooke the damoyfel Capitulo	v
	How beaumayns fought & flewe ij knyghtes at a passage	vj
35	How beaumayns faught with the knyght of the blacke laundes / & faught with hym tyl he fyl down & deyed capitulo	vij
	How the brother of the knyght that was slayn mette wyth	

beaumayns / & fauzt with beaumayns tyl he was yelden	viiij
How the damoyfel euer rebuked beaumayns / & wold not fuffre hym to fyt at hir table / but callyd hym kychyn boye	ix
How the iij brother callyd the rede knyght Iufted & faughte ayenft beaumayns / & how beaumayns ouercame hym ca	x 5
How fyr beaumayns fuffred grete rebukes of the damoyfel / & he fuffred it pacyently capitulo	xj
How beaumayns faughte wyth Syr Perfaunt of ynde / and made hym to be yelden capitulo	xij
Of the godelye comynycacyon bytwene fyr Perfaunt & beaumayns / & how he tolde hym that his name was fyr gareth	xiiij 10
How the lady that was byfyged had worde fro hyr fyfter how fhe had brought a knyght to fyght for hyr / and what bataylles he had achyeued Capitulo	xiiiij
How the damoyfel & beaumayns came to the fyege / & came to a Sykamor tree / & there beaumayns blewe an horne / & thenne the knyzt of the rede laundes cam to fyght wyth hym ca	xv 15
How the two knyghtes mette to gyders and of their talkyng and how they began theyr batayl Capitulo	xvj
How after longe fyghtyng beaumayns ouercame the knyght & wold haue flayn hym / but atte request of the lordes he faued his lyf & made hym to yelde hym to the lady cap?	xvij 20
How the knyzt yelded hym / & how beaumayns made hym to goo vnto kyng arthurs court & to crye fir lancelot mercy	xviiij
How Beaumayns came to the lady . & whan he came to the caftel / the yates were clofed ageynft hym / & of the wordes that the lady fayd to hym Capitulo	xix 25
How fyr beaumayns rode after to recfowe his dwarfe / and came in to the caftel where he was capitulo	xx
How fyr gareth otherwyfe callyd beaumayns cam to þ ^e prefence of his lady & how they toke acqueyntance / & of their loue	xxj 30
How at nyght cam an armed knyght & faught with fir gareth & he fore hurt in the thyghe smote of the knyghtes heed ca	xxij
How the fayd knyght came ageyn the next nyght & was beheded ageyn / & how at the fefte of pentecoft al the knyzttes that fyr gareth had ouercome cam & yelded hem to kyng arthur	xxiiij 35
How kyng Arthur pardoned them / and demaunded of them where fyr Gareth was Capitulo	xxiiiij

	How the queene of Orkeney came to this feste of pentecoste / & fir gawayn & his brethern cam to aske hir bleffynge	xxv xxvj
	How kyng Arthur sente for the lady Lyonas / & how she lete crye a tournoye at hir castel / where as came many knyghtes	
5	Capitulo	xxvij
	How kyng Arthur wente to the tornoyment with his knyghtes / and how the lady receyued hym worshypfully / & how the knyghtes encountred	Capitulo
	How the knyghtes bare them in the batayl	capitulo
10	Yet of the sayd tornoyment	capitulo
	How fyr Gareth was espyed by the herowdes / and how he escaped oute of the felde	capitulo
	How fyr Gareth came to a castel where he was wel lodged & he Iusted with a knyght & flewe hym	Capitulo
15	How fyr Gareth fought wyth a knyght that helde within his castel xxx ladyes & how he flewe hym	capitulo
	How fyr gawayn & fyr Gareth fought eche ayenst other / and how they knewe eche other by the damoyfel Lynet ca	xxxiiij
	How fyr Gareth knowleched that they loued eche other to	kyng Arthur / & of thappoyntement of their weddyng
20	Of the grete ryalte & what offycers were made at the feste of the weddyng & of the Iustes at the feest	Capitulo
	¶ Here folowen the chappytres of the eyght book	
	How fyr Trystram de Lyones was borne and how his moder deyed at his byrthe / wherfore she named hym Triftram	primo
25	How the stepmoder of fyr Trystram had ordeyned poyson for to haue poysened fyr Trystram	Capitulo
	How Syr Trystram was sente in to Fraunce and had one to gouerne hym named Gouvernayle / and how he lernyd to harpe / hawke and hunte	capitulo
30	How fyr Marhaus came out of Irelande for to aske trewage of Cornewayle or ellys he wold fyght therefor	capitulo
	How Trystram enterprysed the bataylle to fyght for the trewage of Cornwayl / & how he was made knyght	Capitulo
	How Syr Trystram arryued in to the Ilond for to furnyssh the bataylle wyth fyr Marhaus	Capitulo
35	how fyr Triftram faught ayenst Syr Marhaus & achyeued his batayl / & how fyr Marhaus fledde to his shyppe ca	vij

How Syr Marhaus after that he was arryued in Irelonde dyed of the stroke that fyr Tryfram had gyuen to hym / and how Tryfram was hurte capitulo	viiij
How fyr Tryfram was put to the kepyng of la bele yfoude fyrst for to be helyd of hys wounde Capitulo	ix 5
How fyr Tryfram wanne the degree at a tornoyment in Ire- londe / & there made palomydes to bere no harnoyes in a yere	x
How the quene espyed that fyr Triftram had slayn hir broder fyr Marhaus by his swerde & in what Ieopardye he was	xj
How Syr Tryfram departed fro the kyng & la bele Ifoude out of Irelonde for to come in to cornewayl capitulo	xij 10
How fyr Tryfram and Kyng Marke hurted eche other for the loue of a knyghtes wyf capitulo	xiiij
How fyr Tryfram laye wyth the lady. and how her husbond faught wyth fyr Tryfram Capitulo	xiiij 15
How fyr bleoberis demaunded the fayrest lady in kyng marks court whom he toke awaye & how he was fouzten with	xv
How fyr Tryfram faught wyth two knyghtes of the rounde table capitulo	xvj
How Syr triftcum faught with fyr bleoberis for a lady / and how the lady was put to choyse to whome she wold goo	xvij 20
How the lady forsoke fyr triftram & abode with Syr bleoberis and how she defyred to goo to hyr husbond ca	xviiij
How kyng mark sent fyr tryfram for la bele Ifoude toward Ireland & how by fortune he arryued in to england	xix 25
How kyng Anguyfthe of Irelonde was somoned to come to Kyng Arthurs courte for treason Capitulo	xx
How fyr Tryfram rescowed a chylde fro a knyght / and how gouernayle tolde hym of Kyng Anguyfthe ca	xxj
How fyr tryfram faught for fyr anguyfthe & ouercame hys aduerfarye & how his aduerfarye wold neuer yelde hym	xxij 30
How fyr blamor defyred tryfram to flee hym / & how fyr trif- tram spared hym & how they took appoyntement	xxiiij
How fyr triftram demaunded la bele Ifoude for kyng mark & how fyr tryfram & Ifoude dronken the loue drynke	xxiiij 35
How fyr Triftram & Ifoude were in pryson / & how he faughte for hir beaute / & smote of another ladyes hede capitulo	xxv
How fyr Tryfram faught wyth fyr breunor / and atte laste	

	fmote of his hede Capitulo	xxvj
	How fyr galahad faught wyth fyr Triftram / & how fyr trif-	
	tram yelded hym & promyfed to felauſhup with lancelot	xxvij
	How fyr Launcelot mette with fyr Carados beryng awaye fir	
5	gawayn / & of the refcows of fyr Gawayn Capitulo	xxviiij
	Of the weddyng of Kyng Marke to la bele Ifoude / and of	
	brangwayn hyr mayde and of Palamydes	xxix
	How Palamydes demaunded quene Ifoude / & how lambegus	
	rode after to refcowe hyr / and of theſcape of Ifoude	xxx
10	How fyr Tryſtram rode after Palamydes and how he fonde	
	hym and faught wyth hym / and by the moyne of Ifoude the	
	batayl feced Capitulo	xxxj
	How fyr Tryſtram brought quene Ifoude home / and of the de-	
	bate of kyng Marke and Syr Tryſtram capitulo	xxxij
15	How fyr Lamerok Iuſted wyth xxx knyghtes / & fyr Trif-	
	tram atte requette of kyng mark fmote his hors down	xxxiiij
	How fyr Lamerok fente an horne to kyng Marke in deſpyte	
	of fyr Tryſtram / And how fyr Tryſtram was dryuen in to	
	a chapel capitulo	xxxiiij
20	How Syr triftram was holpen by his men / & of quene Ifoude	
	which was put in lazarootte / & how trifrā was hurt	xxxv
	How fyr Tryſtram ferued in warre the kyng howel of bry-	
	tayn and flewe hys aduerfarye in the felde	xxxvj
	How fyr Suppynabyles tolde fyr Tryſtram how he was deffa-	
25	med in the courte of kyng Arthur / & of fyr lamerok	xxxvij
	How fyr Tryſtram and his wyf arryued in wales and how	
	he mette there wyth fyr Lamerok Capitulo	xxxviij
	How fyr Tryſtram faught wyth Syr Nabon / and ouercame	
	hym / and made fyr Lamerok lord of the yle	xxxix
30	How fyr Lamerok departed fro fyr Tryſtram / & how he mette	
	wyth fyr frolle and after wyth fyr Launcelot capitulo	xl
	How fyr Lamerok flewe fyr frolle / and of the curtoyfe fygh-	
	tyng wyth fyr belleaunce hys brother Capitulo	xlj

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the ix book

	How a yonge man came in to the courte of kyng arthur / and	
35	how fyr Kaye called hym in ſcorne la cote male taylor	primo
	How a damoyſel came in to the courte & deſyred a knyght to	
	take on hym an enqueſt which la cote male taylor emprifed	ij

How le cote male tayle ouerthrewe fyr Dagonet the Kynges fole / and of the rebuke that he had of the damoyfel ca	iiij
How le cote male tayle fought ayenft an hondred knyghtes / & how he effcaped by the meane of a lady Capitulo	iiiij
How fyr Launcelot cam to the courte and herde of la cote male tayle / and how he folowed after hym / and how la cote male tayle was pryfoner Capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot faught wyth vj knyghtes / & after wyth fyr bryan / and how he delyuerd the pryfonners	vj
How fyr Launcelot mette wyth the damoyfel named maledyfaunt / and named hyr the damoyfel bien penfaunt	vij
How le cote male tayle was taken pryfoner / & after rescowed by fyr launcelot / & how fyr launcelot ouercam iiiij brethern viij	viiij
How Syr Launcelot maad le cote mayle lord of the castel of Pendragon & after was made knyght of the rounde table	ix
How la bele Ifoude fente letters to fyr Tryftram by hir mayde brangwayn and of dyuers auentures of fyr Tryftram	x
How fyr Triftram mette with fyr lamerok de gales / and how they faught & after accorded neuer to fyght to gyders	xj
How fyr palomydes folowed the queftyng beeft & smote doun fyr Tryftram and fyr Lamerock wyth one fpere Capitulo	xij
How fyr lamerok mette wyth fyr Melleagaunce / & faught to gydre for the beaulte of dame Gueneuer capitulo	xiiiij
How Syr Kaye mette wyth Syr Tryftram / and after of the shame spoken of the knyghtes of Cornewayl / and how they Iusted capitulo	xv
How Kyng Arthur was brought in to the forest peryllous / & how fyr Tryftram faued his lyf capitulo	xvj
How fyr Tryftram came to la bele Ifoude / & how kehydyous began to loue bele Ifoude & of a letter that triftram fonde	xvij
How fyr Triftram departed fro tyntagyl & how he forowed & was fo longe in a forest tyl he was out of his mynde	xviiij
How fyr Tryftram fowfed dagonet in a welle / & how Palamydes fente a damoyfel to feche Tryftram / and how palamydes mette wyth Kyng Mark capitulo	xix
How it was noyfed how fyr Tryftram was dede and how la bele Ifoude wolde haue flayn hyr self capitulo	xx
How kyng Mark fonde fyr Tryftram naked and made hym	

	to be borne home to tyntagyl and how he was there known by a brachet capitulo	xxj
	How Kyng Marke by thauys of his counceyl bannysshed fyr Tryfram oute of Cornewayl the terme of x yere	xxij
5	How a damoyfel fouzght helpe to helpe fir laūcelot ayenft knyghtes / & how fyr tryfram faught with them ca	xxiij
	How fyr Tryfram & fyr Launcelot came to a lodgyng where they must Iuste wyth two knyghtes capitulo	xxiiij
	How fyr Tryfram Iusted wyth fyr Kaye and fyr Sagramor le desyrous / and how fyr Gawayn torded Syr Tryfram fro Morgan le fay Capitulo	xxv
	How fyr Tryfram and fyr Gauwayn rode to haue foughten ayenft the xxx knyghtes / but they durst not come oute	xxvj
	How damoyfel brangwayn fonde tryfram slepyng by a welle & how she delyuerd letters to hym fro bele Ifoude ca	xxvij
15	How fyr Tryfram had a falle of fyr Palomydes / and how Launcelot ouerthrewe two knyghtes capitulo	xxviij
	How fyr Launcelot Iusted with Palomydes and ouerthrewe hym / & after he was assaylled with xij knyghtes	xxix
20	How fyr Tryfram byhaued hym the fyrst day of the tourne-ment / and there he had the prys Capitulo	xxx
	How fyr Tryfram retourned ayenft kyng arthurs partye by cause he sawe fyr Palomydes on that partye capitulo	xxxj
	How Syr Tryfram fonde Palomydes by a welle / & broughte hym wyth hym to his lodgyng Capitulo	xxxij
25	How fyr Tryfram smote doun fyr Palomydes / and how he Iusted wyth kyng Arthur and other feates	xxxiiij
	How fyr Launcelot hurte fyr Tryfram / and how after fyr Tryfram smote doun fyr Palomydes capitulo	xxxiiij
30	How the prys of the thyrd day was gyuen to Syr Launcelot and fyr Launcelot gaf it to fyr Tryfram ca	xxxv
	How Palomydes came to the castel where fyr Tryfram was And of the queste that fyr Launcelot & x knyghtes made for fyr Tryfram Capitulo	xxxvj
35	How fyr Tryfram / fyr Palomydes / and Syr dynadan were taken and put in pryson Capitulo	xxxvij
	How Kyng marke was fory for the good renomme of fyr Trifram / fomme of arthurs knyghtes Iusted wyth knyghtes	

of Cornewayl Capitulo	xxxviii
Of the treason of kyng Marke / and how fyr Gaheris smote hym doun / and Andred / his cofyn capitulo	xxxix
How after that fyr Trystram / fyr Palomydes / and fyr Dynadan had be longe in pryfon / they were delyuerd ca	xl 5
How fyr Dynadan rescowed a lady fro fyr breuse fauns pyte & how fyr Trystram receyued a shelde of Morgan le fay	xlj
How fyr Trystram took wyth hym the shelde / and also how he slewe the paramour of Morgan le fay capitulo	xliij
How Morgan le fay buried hyr paramour / and how fyr triftram preyfed fyr Launcelot and hys kynne ca	xliij
How fyr Trystram at a tornoymment bare the shelde that Morgan le fay delyuerd to hym capitulo	xliiij

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the tenth book

How fyr Trystram Iusted and smote doun Kyng Arthur / by-cause he tolde hym not the cause why he bare that shelde ca	j 15
How fyr Trystram faued fyr Palomydes lyf / & how they promyfed to fyght to gyder wythin fourtenyght capitulo	ij
How fyr Trystram fought a stronge knyght that had smyton hym doun & many other knyghtes of the rounde table	iiij
How fyr Trystram smote doun fyr Sagramor le defyrous / & fyr Dodynas le sauage capitulo	iiij
How fyr Trystram mette at the perron wyth fyr Launcelot / & how they faught to gyder vnknowen Capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot brought fyr Trystram to the courte / and of the Ioye that the kyng and other made for the comyng of fyr Trystram Capitulo	vj
How for despyte of fyr Trystram kyng Mark came wyth ij knyghtes in to englond and how he slewe one of the knyghtes Capitulo	vij
How the kyng came to a fontayne where he fonde fyr Lamerok complaynyng for the loue of Kyng lots wyf	viiij
How kyng marke / fyr Lamerok / and fyr dynadan came to a castel / and how Kyng Marke was knowen there capitulo	ix
How fyr Berlufes mette wyth Kyng marke / and how Syr dynadan toke his partye ca	x
¶ How kyng marke mocked fyr dynadan / & how they mette wyth vj knyghtes of the rounde table	xj
¶ How the vj knyghtes sente sir dagonet to Iuste with	

	kyng marke & how Kyng marke refufed hym ca	xij
	How fyr Palomydes by aduenture mette kyng Marke fle yng & how he ouerthrewe dagonet / and other knyghtes	xiiij
	How kyng marke & fyr Dynadan herde fyr palomydes ma- 5 kyng grete forowe & mornyng for la bele Ifoude	xiiij
	How the kyng had flayn amant wrongfully tofore kyng arthur / & fyr launcelot fette kyng marke to kyng arthur	xv
	How fyr dynadan tolde fyr palamydes of the batayl betwene Syr Launcelot and fyr Tryfram Capitulo	xvj
10	How fyr Lamerok Iufted wyth dyuers knyghtes of the caf- tel / wherin was Morgan le fay capitulo	xvij
	How fyr Palamydes wold haue Iufted for fyr Lamerock wyth the knyghtes of the caftel Capitulo	xviij
	How fyr Lamerock Iufted wyth fyr Palomydes and hurte 15 hym greuoufly capitulo	xix
	How it was tolde fyr Launcelot that Dagonet chaced kyng marke / & how a knyght ouerthrewe hym & vj knyghtes	xx
	How Kyng Arthur lete do crye a Iuftes / & how fyr Lamo- rak came in and ouerthrewe fyr Gawayn & many other	xxj
20	How Kyng Arthur made Kyng marke to be accorded with fyr Tryfram & how they departed toward Cornewayll	xxij
	How fyr Percyuale was made knyght of kyng arthur / and how a dombe mayde fpack & brouzt hym to the roude table	xxiiij
	How fyr Lamerock laye wyth king lots wyf / and how fyr 25 Gaheris flewe hir whiche was his owne moder ca	xxiiij
	How fyr agrauayn & fyr Mordred mette wyth a knyght fle- yng / and how they bothe were ouerthrowen and of Syr Dyna- dan Capitulo	xxv
	How Kyng Arthur / the quene & Launcelot receyued letters 30 oute of Cornewayle / & of the anfuer ageyn ca	xxvj
	How Syr Launcelot was wrothe wyth the letter that he re- ceyued from kyng Marke / and of Dynadan whiche made a laye of kyng Marke capitulo	xxvij
	How Syr Tryfram was hurte / and of a warre maad to 35 Kyng Marke / And of Syr Trysfram how he promyfed to refcowe hym Capitulo	xxviij
	How fyr Tryfram ouercame the batayl / & how Elyas defy- red a man to fyght body for body capitulo	xxix

How fyr Elyas & fyr Trystram faught to gyder for the tru- age / & how fyr trystram flewe Elyas in the felde	xxx
How at a grete feste that kyng Marke made / an harper came and fange the lay that dynadan had made capitulo	xxxj
How kyng Marke flewe by treafon his brother bowdyn for good feruyce that he had done to hym Capitulo	xxxij 5
How anglydes boudyns wyf escaped with hir yonge sone ali- faunder le orphelyn & came to the castel of arondel	xxxiiij
How anglydes gaf the bloody doblet to alyfaunder hir sone the fame day that he was made knyzt & the charge withal	xxxiiiij 10
How it was tolde to kyng marke of Alyfaunder . and how he wold haue flayn fyr Sadok for sauynge of his lyf	xxxv
How fyr Alyfaunder wanne the pryce at a tournoyment and of Morgan le fay / And how he faught wyth Syr Maulgryn and flewe hym capitulo	xxxvj 15
How quene Morgan le fay had alyfaunder in hyr castel / and how she heelyd his woundes capitulo	xxxvij
How Alyfaunder was delyuerd fro the quene Morgan le fay by the moyane of a damoyfel capitulo	xxxviiij
How alyfaunder mette wyth alys la beale pylgrym / and how he Iufted wyth two knyghtes / And after of hym and of Syr Mordred capitulo	xxxix 20
How sir galahalt dyd do crye a Iuftes in furlufe / & quene gue- neuers knyzttes shold Iufte ayenft all that wold come	xL
How fyr Lancelot fought in the tournoyment / & how fyr pa- lomydes dyd armes there for a damoyfell Ca	xlj 25
How fyr Galahault & fyr Palomydes faught to gyder / and of fyr dynadan and fyr Galahault Capitulo	xliij
How fyr archade appeled fyr Palamydes of treafon & how fyr palamydes flewe hym Capitulo	xliij 30
Of the thyrd day & how fyr Palomydes Iufted wyth fyr La- merok and other thynges capitulo	xliiiij
Of the iiij day & of many grete feates of armes ca	xlvi
Of the v day & how fyr Lamerok byhaued hym ca	xlviij
How palamydes fought wyth Corfabryn for a lady / & how Palamydes flewe corfabryn	xlviij 35
Of the vj day & what was thenne doon ca	xlviij
Of the vij batayll / and how Syr Launcelot beyng defguyfed	

	lyke a mayde fmote doun fyr dynadan capitulo	xlix
	How by trefon fyr Triftram was brought to a tournoymnt for to haue be flayn / and how he was put in pryson	L
	How Kyng Marke lete do counterfete letters from the pope	
5	& how fyr Percyual delyuerd fyr Triftram oute of pryson	lj
	How fyr Tryftram & la bele Ifoude came in to englond / & how fyr Launcelot brought them to Ioyous garde capitulo	lij
	How by the counceyl of bele yfoude Tryftram rode armed and how he mette wyth fyr Palomydes capitulo	liij
10	Of fyr Palomydes and how he mette wyth fyr bleoberys & wyth fyr Ector and of fyr Percyuale Capitulo	liiij
	How fyr Tryftram mette wyth fyr dynadan & of their deuy- fes & what he sayd to fyr Gauwayns brethern	lv
	How fyr Tryftram fmote doun fyr agrauayn & fyr gaheris &	
15	how fyr Dynadan was fente fore by la bele Ifoude	lvj
	How fyr Dynadan mette wyth fyr Tryftram / & wyth Iustyng wyth fyr Palamydes fyr Dynadan knewe hym	lvij
	How they approched the castel Lonazep and of other deuyfes of the deth of fyr Lamerok Capitulo	lviiij
20	How they came to humberbanke / & how they fonde a shyppe there wherin laye the body of Kyng Hermaunce	lix
	How fyr Tryftram wyth his felawfhyp came and were with an hoost whyche after faught wyth Syr Tryftram and other maters capitulo	lx
25	How Palamydes wente for to fyght wyth two brethern for the deth of kyng Hermaunce Capitulo	lxj
	The cotype of the letter wryton for to reuenge the kynges deth and how fyr palamydes faught for to haue the bataylle	lxij
	Of the preparacyon of fyr Palamydes & the ij brethern that	
30	fhould fyght wyth hym Capitulo	lxiiij
	Of the batayl betwene fyr Palamydes & the two brethern and how the two brethern were flayn capitulo	lxiiiij
	How fyr Tryftram and fyr Palamydes mette Breuce fauns pyte and how Syr Triftram and la beale yfoude wente vnto	
35	Lonazep Capitulo	lxv
	How fyr Palamydes Iufted wyth fyr Galyhodyn / & after wyth fyr Gawayn & fmote them doun	lxvj
	How fyr Tryftram & his felawfhyp cam vnto the tournament	

of lonezep and of dyuers Iuftes and maters capitulo	lxvij
How fyr Tryftram and hys felaufhyp Iufted & of the noble feates that they dyd in that tournoyeng	lxviiij
How fyr Tryftram was vnhorfed & fmyten doun by fyr launcelot / & after that fyr Triftram fmote doun kyng arthur	lxix 5
How fyr Tryftram chaunged his harnoys & it was al reed and how he demenyd hym and how Syr Palamydes flewe Launcelottes hors Capitulo	lxx
How fyr Launcelot fayd to fyr Palamydes / & how the prys of that day was gyuen to fyr Palamydes	lxxj 10
How fyr dynadan prouoked fyr Tryftram to do wel	lxxij
How kyng Arthur & fyr Launcelot came to fee la bele yfoude & how Palamydes fmote doun kyng arthur Capitulo	lxxiiij
How the fecond day Palamydes forfoke fyr Tryftram / and wente to the contrarye partye ayenft hym capitulo	lxxiiij 15
How fyr Tryftram departed out of the felde & awaked Sir Dynadan and chaunged his araye in to blacke ca	lxxv
How fyr Palamydes chaunged his fhelde & armour for to hurte fir triftram / & how fyr Launcelot dyd to fir triftram	lxxvj 20
How fyr Tryftram departed wyth la bele Ifoude / & how Palomydes folowed and excufed hym capitulo	lxxvij
How kyng arthur and fyr Launcelot came in to theyr pauelyons as they fatte at fouper / and of Palomydes	lxxviiij
How fyr Tryftram and fyr Palamydes dyd the nexte day and how kyng Arthur was vnhorfed capitulo	lxxix 25
How fyr Tryftram torned to kynge Arthurs fyde / and how Syr Palomydes wolde not capitulo	lxxx
How fyr bleoberis & fyr Ector reported to quene Gueneuer of the beaute of la bele Ifoude capitulo	lxxxj
How Palomydes complayned by a welle / & how Erynogris came and fonde hym / and of theyr bothe forowes	lxxxij 30
How fyr palomydes brouzt to fyr epynogris his lady / & how fir palomydes & fyr fafer were affayled ca	lxxxiiij & lxxxiiij
How fyr Tryftram made hym redy to refcowe Syr Palomydes but fyr Launcelot refcowed hym or he came capitulo	lxxxv 35
How fyr Tryftram and fyr Launcelot wyth palomydes came to Ioyous garde / of Palomydes and fyr Tryftram ca	lxxxvj
How there was a day fette bytwene fyr Tryftram and Syr	

palomydes for to fyght / & how fir tryfram was hurte lxxxvij
 How fyr palomydes kepte his day for to haue foughten / but
 fyr Tryfram myght not come / & other thynges ca lxxxviij

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the xi book

How Syr Launcelot rode on his aduenture / & how he helpe a
 5 dolorous lady fro hyr payne / and how that he faught wyth a
 dragon capitulo primo
 How fyr Launcelot came to Pelles / and of the fangreal / and
 how he begate galahad on Elayn kyng pelles douzter ij
 How Syr Launcelot was dyspleafyd whan he knewe that he
 10 had layen by Elayn / & how she was delyuerd of galahad iij
 How fyr bors came to dame Elayn & fawe galahad / & how
 he was fedde wyth the fangreal capitulo iiij
 How fyr bors made fyr pedyuer to yelde hym / & of meruayl-
 lous aduentures that he had & how he achyeued them ca v
 15 How fyr bors departed / & how fyr Launcelot was rebuked of
 the quene Gueneuer / and of his excufe capitulo vj
 How dame Elayn galahads moder came in grete estate to ca-
 melot / and how Launcelot byhaued hym there Capitulo vij
 How dame bryfen by enchauntement brought fyr Launcelotte
 20 to Elayns bedde / & how quene gueneuer rebuked hym viij
 How dame Elayn was commaunded by quene Gueneuer to
 voyde the courte / & how fyr Launcelot becam madde ix
 What forowe quene gueneuer made for Syr Launcelot / & how
 he was fought by knyghtes of his kynne Capitulo x
 25 How a feruaunte of fyr Aglouals was slayn / & what ven-
 geaunce fyr aglouale & fyr Percyuale dyd therefore xj
 How fyr Percyuale departed secreteleye fro his brother / & how
 he lofed a knyght bounden with a chayne & other thynges xij
 How fyr Percyuale mette wyth fir Ector / & how they faught
 30 longe and eche had almoost slayne other capitulo xiiij
 How by myracle they were bothe made hole by the comyng of
 the holy vessel of Sangreal Capitulo xiiij

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the xij book

How fyr Launcelot in hys madnes took a swerde & faughte
 with a knyght and after lepte in to a bedde capitulo primo
 35 How fyr Launcelot was caryed in an hors lytter / & after fyr
 Launcelot rescowed fyr blyaunte his hooft Capitulo ij

How fyr Launcelot faught ayenfte a bore & flewe hym / & how he was hurte / & brought to an hermytage capitulo	iij
How fyr Launcelot was knowen by dame Elayn / and was borne in to a chambre & after helyd by the fangreal	iiij
How fyr Launcelot after that he was hole & had his mynde he was afhamed / and how that Elayn defyred a castel for hym capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot came in to the Ioyous yle / & there he named hym self le chyualer malfet capitulo	vj
Of a grete tournoyeng in the Ioyous yle / and how fyr Percyuale and Syr Ector came thyder and fyr Percyuale fought wyth hym capitulo	vij
How eche of them knewe other / & of their curtoysye / & how his brother Ector came to hym / and of theyr Ioye	viiij
How fyr bors & fyr Lyonel came to kyng brandegore / & how fyr bors toke his sone helyne le blank & of fir launcelot	ix
How fyr Launcelot wyth fyr Percyuale & fyr ector came to the courte / and of the grete Ioye of hym capitulo	x
How la bele yfoude counceyllled fyr Tryfram to goo vnto the courte to the grete feste of Pentecofte capitulo	xj
How fyr Tryfram departed vnarmed and mette with fyr Palomydes / and how they fmote eche other / and how Palomydes forbare hym capitulo	xij
How Syr Tryfram gate hym harnoys of a Knyght whyche was hurte & how he ouerthrewe fyr Palomydes	xiiij
How fyr Tryfram and fyr Palamydes fought longe to gyders / and after accorded / and fyr Tryfram maad hym to be crystened Capitulo	xiiij

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xiiij book

How at the vygyle of the feste of Pentecofte entred in to the halle before Kyng Arthur a damoyfel / and defyred fyr launcelot for to come and dubbe a knyght / and how he wente wyth hyr capitulo	primo
How the letters were founde wryton in the fyege peryllous & of the meruayllous aduenture of the fwerde in a stone	ij
How fyr Gawayn affayed to drawe oute the fwerde / & how	35

	an olde man brought in galahad capitulo	iij
	How the olde man broght Galahad to the fyege peryllous & fette hym therin / & how al the knyghtes meruaylled	iiij
	How Kyng Arthur shewed the stone houyng on the water	
5	to Galahad and how he drewe oute the fwerde	v
	How kyng Arthur had al the knyghtes to gyder for to Iufte in the medowe befyde wyncheſter or they departed	vj
	How the quene defyred to fee Galahad / & after al the knyghtes were replenyſhed wyth the holy fangreal / & how all they	
10	auowed the enqueſte of the ſame capitulo	vij
	How grete forowe was made of the kyng and ladyes for the departyng of the knyghtes / & how they departed	viiij
	How Galahad gate hym a ſhelde / and how they ſpedde that preſumed to take doun the fayd ſhelde capitulo	ix
15	How Galahad departed with the ſhelde / and how Kyng enelake had receyued thys ſhelde of Iofeph of armathye	x
	How Iofeph made a croſſe on the whyte ſhelde with his blode & how galahad was by a monke brought to a tombe	xj
	Of the meruayle that fyr Galahad ſawe & herde in the tombe	
20	and how he made melyas knyght Capitulo	xij
	Of thaduenture that Melyas had / & how Galahad reuenged hym / and how melyas was caryed in to an abbey	xiiij
	How Galahad departed / & how he was commaunded to goo to the caſtel of maydens to deſtroye the wycked cuſtome	xiiij
25	How fyr Galahad faught wyth the knyghtes of the caſtel & deſtroyed the wycked cuſtome capitulo	xv
	How fyr Gawayn came to thabbey for to folowe Galahad / & how he was ſhryuen to an heremyte capitulo	xvj
	How fyr Galahad mette with fyr Launcelot & with fyr Percyuale / and fmote hem doun and departed fro them	xvij
30	How fyr Launcelot halfe flepyng and halfe wakyng ſawe a ſeek man borne in a lytter / and how he was heled by the fangreal capitulo	xviiij
	How a voys ſpake to fyr Launcelot / & how he fonde his hors	
35	& his helme borne awaye / & after wente a fote	xix
	How fyr Launcelot was ſhryuen & what forowe he made / & of good enſamples whyche were ſhewed to hym ca	xx

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the giiii book

How fyr Percyuale came to a reclufe and asked hyr counceyl / & how she tolde hym that she was hys aunte ca	primo
How Merlyn lykened the rounde table to the world / and how the knyghtes that shold achyeue the fangreal shold be knowen Capitulo	ij 5
How fyr Percyuale came in to a monasterye where he fonde Kyng Enelake whyche was an olde man capitulo	iiij
How fyr Percyuale sawe many men of armes beryng a dede knyght and how he fauggt ageynst them capitulo	iiij
How a yeman defyred hym to gete ageyn an hors / and how Syr Percyualles hakenay was slayn / and how he gate an hors capitulo	v
Of the grete daunger that fyr Percyual was in by hys hors and how he sawe a serpent and a Lyon fyght	vj
Of the aduyfyon that fyr percyual sawe / and how hys aduyfyon was expowned / and of hys Lyon Capitulo	vij 15
How fyr Percyuale sawe a shyppe comyng to hym warde / & how the lady of the shyppe tolde hym of hir disherytaunce	viiij
How fyr Percyual promysed hir helpe & how he requyred hir of loue / and how he was faued fro the fende ca	ix 20
How Syr Percyual for penaunce roof hym self thorough the thyghe / and how she was knowen for the deuyl	x

¶ Here folowth the xv book whyche is of fyr Launcelot

How Syr Launcelot came in to a chapel where he fonde deed in a whyte sherte a man of relygyon / of on hondred wynter olde capitulo	primo 25
Of a dede man how men wold haue hewen / and it wolde not be / & how fyr Launcelot toke the hayr of the dede man	ij
Of an aduyfyon that fyr Launcelot had / and how he tolde it to an heremyte / and defyred counceyll of hym capitulo	iiij
How the heremyte expowned to fyr Launcelot his advyfyon & tolde hym that fyr Galahad was hys sone capitulo	iiij 30
How fyr Launcelot Iufted wyth many knyghtes / & he was taken Capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot tolde hys aduyfyon to a woman / & how she expowned it to hym capitulo	vj 35

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xvj book

	How fyr Gawayn was nyghe wery of the queste of fangreal and of his meruayllous dreme capitulo	primo
	Of the advyfyon of fyr Ector / and how he Iufted wyth fyr Ewayn le auoultres hys fworne brother ca	ij
5	How fyr Gawayn & fyr Ector cam to an hermytage to be con- fessyd & how they tolde to the hermyte theyr aduyfyons	iiij
	How the heremyte expowned theyr aduyfyon Capitulo	iiij
	Of the good counceyl that the heremyte gaf to them	v
	How Syr Bors mette wyth an heremyte / and how he was confessyd to hym and of his penaunce enioyned to hym	vj
10	How fyr bors was lodged wyth a lady and how he took on hym for to fyght ageynst a champyon for hyr lande	vij
	Of a vyfyon whyche Syr bors had that nyght / and how he faught and ouercame hys aduerfarye capitulo	viiij
15	How the lady was restored to hyr londes by the bataylle of fyr Boors / and of his departyng / and how he mette fyr Ly- onel taken and beten wyth thornes / and also a mayde which fhold haue ben deuoured Capitulo	ix
	How fyr boors lefte to rescowe his brother. & rescowed the da- moyfel / & how it was tolde hym that lyonel was dede	x
20	How fyr boors tolde his dreme to a preest / whiche he had dre- med & of the counceyl that the preest gaf to hym	xj
	How the deuyll in a womans lykenes wold haue had Syr bors to haue layen by hir / & how by goddes grace he efcaped	xij
25	Of the holy comynycacyon of an abbot to Syr boors / and how the abbot counceyllled hym capitulo	xiiij
	How fyr boors mette wyth his brother fyr Lyonel / and how fyr Lyonel wolde haue flayn fyr boors capitulo	xiiij
	How fyr Colgreuaunce fought ayenft fyr Lyonel for to faue fyr boors / and how the heremyte was flayn ca	xv
30	How fyr Lyonel slewe Syr Colgreuaunce / and how after he wold haue flayn fyr boors capitulo	xvj
	How there came a voys whyche charged fyr bors to touche not hym and of a cloude that came bytwene them capitulo	xvij

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xvij book

[leaf 14 verso]

How fyr Galahad faught at a turnement / and how he was knowen of fyr gawayn & of fyr ector de marris capitulo	j
How fyr Galahad rode with a damoyfel / & came to the fhyp where as fyr boors and fyr Percyuale were in capitulo	ij
How fyr Galahad entryd in to the fhyp / & of a fayr bedde therin wyth other meruayllous thynges / & of a fwerde	5 iij
Of the meruaylles of the fwerde & of the scaubard	iiij
How Kyng Pelles was smyton thorough bothe thyes by cause he drewe the fwerde / & other meruayllous hystoryes	v
How Salomon toke dauyds fwerde by the counceyl of hys wyf / and of other maters meruayllous Capitulo	vj
A wonderful tale of kyng Salamon & his wyf	vij
How Galahad and hys felowes came to a castel / and how they were foughten wyth al / & how they flewe theyr aduerfaryes and other maters capitulo	viiij 15
How the iij knyghtes wyth Percyuales fyfter came in to the wafte forest / & of an herte & iiij Lyons and other thynges	ix
How they were defyred of a ftrauge custom / which they wolde not obeye / wherfore they faught & flewe many knyghtes	x
How Percyuales fyfter bledde a dyffhe ful of blood for to hele a lady wherfore she dyed / and how that the body was put in a fhyppe Capitulo	20 xj
How Galahad and percyuale fonde in a castel many tombes of maydens that had bledde to dethe capitulo	xij
How Syr Launcelot entred in to the fhyppe where fyr Percyuales fyfter laye deed / and how he mette wyth Syr Galahad hys sone capitulo	xiiij 25
How a knyght brought to fyr Galahad an hors / & bad hym come from his fader fyr Launcelot capitulo	xiiij
How Launcelot was tofore the dore of the chambre / wherin the holy fangreal was capitulo	30 xv
How fyr Launcelot had layen xiiij dayes & as many nyghtes as a dede man & other dyuers maters capitulo	xvj
How fyr Launcelot retorned toward logres and of other adventures whyche he fawe in the waye capitulo	xvij 35
How Galahad came to Kyng Mordrayns / and of other maters and adventures Capitulo	xviiij
How fyr Percyuale and fyr boors mette wyth fyr Galahad	

& how they came to the castel of carbonek & other maters	xix
How Galahad & his felowes were fedde of the holy fangreal	
& how our lord apperyd to them and other thynges	xx
How Galahad enoynted wyth the blood of the spere the	
5 maymed kyng and of other aduentures capitulo	xxj
How they were fedde wyth the fangreal whyle they were in	
pryfon / & how Galahad was made kyng capitulo	xxij
Of the forowe that Percyuale and boors made whan galahad	
was dede & of Percyuale how he dyed & other maters	xxiij

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the xviij book

10 Of the Ioye of Kyng Arthur and the quene had of thachy- eument of the fangreal / and how Launcelot fyl to hys olde loue ageyn capitulo	primo
How the quene comaunded fyr Launcelot to auoyde the court and of the forowe that Launcelot made capitulo	ij
15 How at a dyner that the quene made there was a knyght en- poyfoned whyche fyr Mador layed on the quene	iiij
How fyr Mador appeched the quene of treason / & there was no knyght wold fyght for hyr at the fyrft tyme	iiij
How the quene requyred fyr Boors to fyght for hyr / & how	
20 he graunted vpon condycyon / and how he warned fyr Laun- celot therof capitulo	v
How at the day fyr boors made hym redy for to fyght for the quene / & whan he shold fyzt how another dyscharged hym	vj
How fyr Launcelot fought ayenft fyr mador for the quene / &	
25 how he ouercame fyr Mador & dyscharged the quene	vij
How the trouthe was knowen by the mayden of the lake / and of dyuers other maters Capitulo	viiij
How fyr Launcelot rode to aftolat / & receyued a fleue to bere vpon his helme at the requeste of a mayde capitulo	ix
30 How the tornoye began at Wynchester and what Knyghtes were at the Iufte and other thynges capitulo	x
How fir Launcelot and fyr Lauayn entred in the felde ayenft them of kyng Arthurs court / & how launcelot was hurte	xj
How fyr Launcelot & fyr Lauayn departed oute of the felde	
35 and in what Ieopardye Launcelot was capitulo	xij

How Launcelot was brought to an hermyte for to be helyd of his wounde and of other maters capitulo	xiiij	
How fyr Gawayn was lodged wyth the lord of astolat / & there had knowlege that hit was Syr Launcelot that bare the rede fleue Capitulo	xiiiij	5
Of the forowe that fyr boors had for the hurte of Launcelot and of the angre that the quene had by cause Launcelot bare the fleue capitulo	xv	
How Syr boors fought launcelot & fonde hym in the hermytage / & of the lamentacion bytwene them Capitulo	xviij	10
How fyr Launcelot armed hym to assaye yf he myght bere armes & how his woundes breft oute ageyn capitulo	xviij	
How fyr boors retorned & tolde tydynges of fyr Launcelot / & of the tournoye and to whome the prys was gyuen	xviiij	
Of the grete lamentacyn of the fayr made of astolat whan Launcelot shold departe & how she dyed for his loue	xix	15
How the corps of the mayde of astolat arryued tofore kyng arthur and of the buryeng / and how fyr Launcelot offryd the maffe peny capitulo	xx	
Of grete Iuftes doon alle a crystemaffe / and of a grete Iuftes and tournoye ordeyned by Kyng Arthur / and of Syr Launcelot Capitulo	xxij	20
How Launcelot after that he was hurt of a gentywoman came to an hermyte and of other maters capitulo	xxij	
How fyr Launcelot byhaued hym at the Iuftes / and other men also capitulo	xxiiij	25
How Kyng arthur meruaylled moche of the Iufstyng in the felde and how he rode & fonde fyr Launcelot capitulo	xxiiij	
How trewe loue is lykened to fommer Capitulo	xxv	

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the xij book

How quene gueneuer rode on mayeng with certeyn knyghtes of the rounde table and clad al in grene capitulo	primo	30
How fyr Mellyagraunce toke the quene & al hyr knyghtes whyche were fore hurte in fyghtyng capitulo	ij	
How fyr Launcelot had word how the quene was taken / & how fyr mellyagraunce layed a buffhement for launcelot	iiij	35

	How fyr Launcelots hors was flayn / & how fyr Launcelot rode in a carte for to rescowe the quene Capitulo	iiij
	How fyr Mellyagraunce requyred foryeuenes of the quene / & how she appeafed fyr Launcelot and other maters	v
5	How fyr Launcelot came in the nyght to the quene and laye wyth hyr / and how fyr Melyagraunce appeched the quene of trefon capitulo	vj
	How fyr Launcelot answerd for the quene / and waged bataylle ayenft fyr melyagraunce / and how fyr Launcelot was	
10	taken in a trappe Capitulo	vij
	How fyr Launcelot was delyuerd out of pryfon by a lady & toke a whyt courfer and came for to kepe hys day	viiij
	How fyr Launcelot cam the fame tyme that fyr mellyagraunce abode hym in the felde and dreffyd hym to bataylle	ix
15	How fyr Vrre came in to arthurs courte for to be heled of his woundes / & how kyng arthur wold begyn to handle hym	x
	How Kyng arthur handled fyr Vrre / and after hym many other knyghtes of the rounde table capitulo	xj
	How fyr Launcelot was comanded by arthur to handle hys	
20	woundes & anone he was al hool / & how they thanked god	xij
	How there was a party made of an hondred knyghtes ayenft an hondred knyghtes / and of other maters capitulo	xiiij

¶ Here foloweth the book of the pyteous byftorye whyche is of the morte or detb of kyng Arthur / and the chapytres of the twenty book

	How fyr Agrauayn & fyr mordred were befy vpon fyr Gawayn for to dyfclofe the loue bytwene Syr Launcelot & quene	
25	Gueneuer Capitulo	primo
	How fyr Agrauayn dyfclofed theyr loue to kyng Arthur / & how Kyng Arthur gaf them lycence to take hym	ij
	How fyr Launcelot was efpied in the quenes chambre / and how Syr Agrauayn and Syr Mordred came wyth twelue	
30	knyghtes to flee hym Capitulo	iiij
	How fyr Launcelot flewe fyr colgreuance & armed hym in his harnoys & after flewe fyr agrauayn & xij of his felawes	iiij
	How Syr Launcelot came to fyr bors & tolde hym how he had	

spedde & in what aduerture he nau. ben / & how he escaped	v
Of the counceyl and aduys whiche was taken by fyr Launcelot and by hys frendes for to faue the quene Capitulo	vj
How fyr mordred rode hastely to the Kyng / to telle hym of thaffray & deth of fyr agrauayn & the other knyghtes	vij 5
How fyr Launcelot and hys kynnesmen rescowed the quene from the fyre and how he flewe many knyghtes	viiij
Of the forowe & lamentacyon for the dethe of his neuewes & other good knyghtes / & also for the quene hys wyf	ix
How Kyng Arthur at the requeste of fyr Gawayn concluded to make warre ayenst fyr Launcelot / and layed fyege to his castel called Ioyous garde capitulo	x
Of the comynycacyon bytwene kyng Arthur & fyr Launcelot and how Kyng Arthur repreuyd hym capitulo	xj
How the cofyns & kynnesmen of fyr Launcelot excyted hym to goo oute to batayl / and how they made them redy	xij 15
How fyr Gawayn lusted and smote down fyr Lyonel / and how fyr Launcelot horfed kyng Arthur ca	xiiij
How the Pope sent down his bulles to make pees / & how fyr Launcelot brought the quene to kyng Arthur	xiiij 20
Of the delyueraunce of the quene to the kyng by fyr launcelot & what langage fyr Gawayn had to fyr Launcelot	xv
Of the comynycacyon bytwene fyr Gawayn and fyr Launcelot wyth moche other langage capitulo	xvj
How fyr Launcelot departed fro the kyng & fro Ioyous garde ouer see warde and what knyghtes wente wyth hym	xvij 25
How fyr Launcelot passed ouer the see / & how he made grete lordes of the knyghtes that wente wyth hym capitulo	xviiij
How kyng arthur & fyr Gawayn made a grete hoost redy to go ouer see to make warre on fyr Launcelot capitulo	xix 30
What message fyr Gawayn sente to fyr Launcelot / & kyng Arthur layed fyege to benwyck and other maters	xx
How fyr launcelot & fyr Gawayn dyd batayl togyder / and how fyr Gawayn was ouerthrowen and hurte capitulo	xxj
Of the forowe that kyng arthur made for the warre / & of an other batayl where also fyr Gawayn had the werse	xxij 35

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the xxx book

	How Syr Mordred prefumea & toke on hym to be kyng of englond / & wold haue maryed the quene his faders wyf ca	j
	How after that kyng arthur had tydynges / he retorned and came to douer where fyr Mordred mette hym to lette his lan-	
5	dyng / and of the deth of Syr Gawayn Capitulo	ij
	How after fyr Gawayns ghooft apperyd to kynge arthur & warned hym that he shold not fyght that day capitulo	iiij
	How by myfaduerture of an adder the batayl began / where Mordred was slayn and arthur hurte to the deth	iiij
10	How Kyng arthur comanded to caste his fwerd excalybur in to the water / & how he was delyuerd to ladyes in a barge	v
	How fyr bedwere fonde hym on the morne deed in an hermytage / and how he abode there wyth the hermyte capitulo	vj
	Of thoppynyon of fomme men of the deth of kynge arthur / &	
15	how quene Gueneuer made hir a nonne in almesburye	vij
	How whan fyr Launcelot herde of the deth of kyng arthur & of fyr Gawayn and other maters came in to englond	viiij
	How fyr Launcelot departed to feche the quene Gueneuer and how he fonde hir at almesburye capitulo	ix
20	How Syr Launcelot came to thermytage where tharchebyffhop of caunterburye was / & how he toke thabyte on hym	x
	How fyr Launcelot wente wyth his feuen felowes to amesburye / & fonde there quene Gueneuer deed / whom they brought to glastyburye capitulo	xj
25	How fyr Launcelot began to sekene / & after dyed / whos body was borne to Ioyous garde for to be buryed capitulo	xij
	How fyr Ector fonde fyr launcelot hys brother dede / and how Constantyn reygned next after Arthur / and of the ende of thys book capitulo	xiiij

¶ Explicit the table

1000

1000



¶ Capitulum primum



It befel in the dayes of Vther pendragon when he was kynge of all Englonde / and fo regned that there was a myzty duke in Cornewail that helde warre ageynst hym long tyme / And the duke was called the duke of Tyntagil / and 5 fo by meanes kynge Vther fend for this duk / charging hym to brynge his wyf with hym / for she was called a fair lady / and a passyng wyfe / and her name was called Igrayne / So whan the duke and his wyf were comyn vnto the kynge by the meanes of grete lordes they were accorded bothe / the ky- 10 nge lyked and loued this lady wel / and he made them grete chere out of mesure / and desyred to haue lyen by her / But she was a passyng good woman / and wold not assente vnto the kynge / And thenne she told the duke her husband and said I suppose that we were sente for that I shold be dishonoured 15 Wherfor husband I counceille yow that we departe from hens sodenly that we maye ryde all nyghte vnto oure owne castell / and in lyke wyse as she saide so they departed / that neyther the kynge nor none of his counceill were ware of their departyng Also soone as kyng Vther knewe of their departyng soo 20 sodenly / he was wonderly wrothe / Thenne he called to hym his pryuy counceille / and told them of the sodeyne departyng of the duke and his wyf /

¶ Thenne they auyfed the kynge to fend for the duke and his wyf by a grete charge / And yf he wille not come at yo- 25 ur somōs / thenne may ye do your best / thenne haue ye cause to make myghty werre vpon hym / Soo that was done and the messagers hadde their anfuers / And that was thys shortly / that neyther he nor his wyf wold not come at hym / Thenne was the kyng wonderly wroth / And thenne the kyng 30 sente hym playne word ageyne / and badde hym be redy and stuffe hym and garnyshe hym / for within xl dayes he wold fetche hym oute of the byggest castell that he hath /

¶ Whanne the duke hadde thys warnyng / anone he wente and furnysshed and garnysshed two stronge Castels of his 35 of the whiche the one hyght Tyntagil / & the other castel hyzt

Terrabyl / So his wyf Dame Igrayne he putte in the castel
of Tyntagil / And hym self he putte in the castel of Terrabyl
the whiche had many yffues and posternes oute / Thenne in
alle haste came Vther with a grete hooft / and leyd a syege a-
5 boute the castel of Terrabil / And ther he pyght many pael-
yons / and there was grete warre made on bothe partyes / and
moche peple slayne / Thenne for pure angre and for grete lo-
ue of fayr Irayne the kyng Vther felle seke / So came to the
kyng Vther Syre Vlfius a noble knyght / and asked the
10 kyng why he was seke / I shall telle the said the kyng / I
am seke for angre and for loue of fayre Igrayne that I may
not be hool / wel my lord said Syre Vlfius / I shal seke Mer-
lyn / and he shalle do yow remedy that youre herte shalbe ple-
afyd / So Vlfius departed / and by aduenture he mette Mer-
15 lyn in a beggars aray / and ther Merlyn asked Vlfius who-
me he foughte / and he said he had lytyl ado to telle hym / Well
faide Merlyn / I knowe whome thou sekest / for thou sekest
Merlyn / therefore seke no ferther / for I am he / and yf kyng
Vther wille wel rewarde me / and be sworne vnto me to ful-
20 fille my desyre that shall be his honour & profite more thā myn
for I shalle cause hym to haue alle his desyre / Alle this wyll
I vndertake said Vlfius that ther shalle be nothyng resona-
ble / but thow shalt haue thy desyre / well said Merlyn / he shall
haue his entente and desyre / And therefore faide Merlyn / ryde
25 on your wey / for I wille not be long behynde

T Capitulum Secundum

Henne Vlfius was glad and rode on more than a
paas tyll that he came to kyng Vtherpendragon / and
told hym he had met with Merlyn / where is he said the kyng
fir said Vlfius he wille not dwelle long / ther with al Vlfius
30 was ware where Merlyn stood at the porche of the paelions
dore / And thenne Merlyn was bounde to come to the kyng
Whan kyng Vther sawe hym he said he was welcome / fyr fa-
id Merlyn I knowe al your hert euery dele / so ye wil be sworn
vnto me as ye be a true kyng enoynted to fulfillle my desyre
35 ye shal haue your desyre / thenne the kyng was sworne vpon
the iiij euuāgelistes / Syre said Merlyn this is my desyre / the
first nyzt þ^t ye shal lye by Igrayne ye shal gete a child on her &

whan that is borne that it shall be delyuerd to me for to nou-
 riffhe there as I wille haue it / for it shal be your worship / &
 the childis auaille as mykel as the child is worth / I wyll
 wel faid the kyng as thow wilt haue it / Now make you re-
 dy faid Merlyn this nyght ye shalle lye with Igrayne in the 5
 castel of Tyntigayll / & ye shalle be lyke the duke her husband
 Vlkyus shal be lyke Syre Braftias / a knyghte of the dukes
 And I will be lyke a knyghte that hyghte Syr Iordanus a
 knyghte of the dukes / But wayte ye make not many questi-
 ons with her nor her men / but saye ye are diseased and soo hye 10
 yow to bedde / and ryse not on the morne tyll I come to yow /
 for the castel of Tyntygaill is but x myle hens / soo this was
 done as they deuyfed / But the duke of Tyntigail aspyed hou
 the kyng rode fro the syege of tarabil / & therfor that nyghte he
 yffued oute of the castel at a posterne for to haue distreffid the 15
 kynges hooft / And so thorowe his owne yffue the duke hym
 self was slayne or euer the kyng cam at the castel of Tynti-
 gail / so after the deth of the duke kyng Vther lay with Igra-
 yne more than thre houres after his deth / and begat on her that
 nyg3 arthur / & on day cam Merlyn cā to the kyng / & bad hym 20
 make hym redy / & so he kist the lady Igrayne and departed in
 all hast / But whan the lady herd telle of the duke her hufbād
 and by all record he was dede or euer kyng Vther came to her
 thenne she merueilled who that myghte be that laye with her
 in lykenes of her lord / so she mourned pryuely and held hir 25
 pees / Thenne alle the barons by one assent prayd the Kyng
 of accord betwixe the lady Igrayne and hym / the kyng gaf
 hem leue / for fayne wold he haue ben accorded with her / Soo
 the kyng put alle the trust in Vlkyus to entrete bitwene them
 so by the entrete at the last the kyng & she met to gyder / Now 30
 we doo well faid Vlkyus / our kyng is a lusty knyghte
 and wyueles / & my lady Igrayne is a passyng fair lady / it
 were grete ioye vnto vs all and hit myghte please the kyng
 to make her his quene / vnto that they all well accordyd and
 meued it to the kyng / And anone lyke a lusty knyghte / he 35
 assentid therto with good wille / and so in alle haste they we-
 re maryed in a mornynge with grete myrthe and Ioye /
 And Kyng Lott of Lowthean and of Orkenay thenne

wedded Margawfe that was Gaweyns moder / And kynge
 Nentres of the land of Garlot wedded Elayne / Al this was
 done at the request of kynge Vther / And the thyrd fyfter mor-
 gan lesey was put to scole in a nonnery / And ther she lerned
 5 fo moche that she was a grete Clerke of Nygromancye / And
 after she was wedded to kynge Vryens of the lond of Gore
 that was Syre Ewayns le blanche maynys fader /

Capitulum tercium

THeñe quene Igrayne waxid dayly gretter & gretter / fo
 it befel after within half a yere as kyng Vther lay by
 10 his quene he asked hir by the feith she ouzt to hym whos was
 the child within her body / thēne she fore abaffhed to yeue
 anfuer / Desmaye you not said the kyng but telle me the tro-
 uthe / and I shall loue you the better by the feythe of my body
 Syre faide she I shalle telle you the trouthe / the same nyghte
 15 þ^t my lord was dede the houre of his deth as his knyghtes record
 ther came in to my castel of Tyntigaill a man lyke my lord in
 speche and in countenance / and two knyghtes with hym in
 lykenes of his two knyghtes barcias and Iordans / & soo I
 went vnto bed with hym as I ouzt to do with my lord / & the sa-
 20 me nyght as I shal answer vnto god this child was begoten
 vpon me / that is trouthe faide the kynge as ye fay / for it was
 I my self that cam in the lykenesse / & therfor desmay you not
 for I am fader to the child / & ther he told her alle the cause /
 how it was by Merlyns counceil / thenne the quene made gre-
 25 te ioye whan she knewe who was the fader of her child / Sone
 come merlyn vnto the kyng / & said fyr ye must puruey yow /
 for the nouriffhyng of your child / as thou wolt said the kyng
 be it / wel said Merlyn I knowe a lord of yours in this land
 that is a passyng true man & a feithful / & he shal haue
 30 nouriffhyng of your child / & his name is sir Ector / & he is a
 lord of fair lyuelode in many partyes in Englund & walys / &
 this lord sir ector lete hym be sent for / for to come & speke with
 you / & defyre hym your self as he loueth you that he will put
 his owne child to nouriffhyng to another woman / and that
 35 his wyf nouriffhe yours / And whan the child is borne lete it
 be delyuerd to me at yōder pryuy posterne vncrystned / So like

as Merlyn deuyfed it was done / And whan fyre Ector was
 come / he made fyaūce to the kyng for to nouriffhe the child ly-
 ke as the Kyng defyred / and there the kyng graunted fyr ec-
 tor grete rewardys / Thenne when the lady was delyuerd the
 kyng commaunded ij knyghtes & ij ladyes to take the child 5
 bound in a cloth of gold / & that ye delyuer hym to what pou-
 re man ye mete at the pofterne yate of the castel / So the child
 was delyuerd vnto Merlyn / and fo he bare it forth vnto Syre
 Ector / and made an holy man to cryften hym / and named
 hym Arthur / and fo fir Ectors wyf nouryffhed hym with her 10
 owne pappe / Thenne within two yeres kyng Vther felle feke
 of a grete maladye / And in the meane whyle hys enemyes
 Vfurpped vpon hym / and dyd a grete bataylle vpon his men /
 and flewe many of his peple / Sir faid Merlyn ye may not lye
 fo as ye doo / for ye must to the feld though ye ryde on an hors 15
 lyttar / for ye fhall neuer haue the better of your enemyes / but
 yf your perfone be there / and thenne fhall ye haue the vyctory
 So it was done as Merlyn had deuyfed / and they caryed the
 kyng forth in an hors lyttar with a grete hooft towarde his
 enemyes / And at faynt Albons ther mette with the kyng a 20
 grete hooft of the north / And that day Syre Vlfius and fir
 Bracias dyd grete dedes of armes / and kyng Vthers men o-
 uercome the northeryn bataylle and flewe many peple & putt
 the remenaunt to flight / And thenne the kyng returned vnto
 london and made grete ioye of his vyctory / And thēne he fyll 25
 paffyng fone feke / fo that thre dayes & thre nyghtes he was
 fecheles / wherfore alle the barons made grete forow and aiked
 Merlyn what counceill were beft / There nys none other reme-
 dye faid Merlyn but god wil haue his wille / But loke ye al
 Barons be bifore kyng Vther to morne / and god and I 30
 fhalle make hym to fpeke / So on the morne alle the Barons
 with merlyn came to fore the kyng / thēne Merlyn faid aloud
 vnto kyng Vther / Syre shall your fone Arthur be kyng after
 your dayes of this realme with all the appertenaunce / thenne
 Vtherpendragon torned hym and faid in herynge of them alle 35
 I gyue hym gods bliffing & myne / & byd hym pray for my
 foule / & righteoufly & worshipfully that he clayme þe croune
 vpon forfeture of my bleffing / & therwith he yelde vp the ghofst &

thenne was he enterid as longed to a kyng / wherfor the que-
 ne fayre Igrayne made grete forowe and alle the Barons /
 Thenne stood the reame in grete ieopardy long whyle / for eue-
 ry lord that was myghty of men maade hym stronge / and ma-
 5 ny wende to haue ben kyng / Thenne Merlyn wente to the ar-
 chebiffhop of Caunterbury / and counceilled hym for to fende
 for alle the lordes of the reame / and alle the gentilmen of ar-
 mes that they shold to london come by Criftmas vpon payne of
 curfyng / And for this cause þ^t Ihū that was borne on that
 10 nyghte that he wold of his grete mercy shewe some myracle /
 as he was come to be kynge of mankynde for to shewe fomme
 myracle who shold be rightwys kynge of this reame / So the
 Archebiffhop by the aduys of Merlyn fend for alle the lordes
 and gentilmen of armes that they shold come by crystmasse
 15 euen vnto london / And many of hem made hem clene of her lyf
 that her prayer myghte be the more acceptable vnto god / Soo
 in the gretteft chirch of london whether it were Powlis or not
 the Frensshe booke maketh no mencyon / alle the estates were
 longe or day in the chirche for to praye / And whan matyns &
 20 the first masse was done / there was fene in the chircheyard a-
 yēft the hyghe aulter a grete stone four square lyke vnto a mar-
 bel stone / And in myddes therof was lyke an Anuyld
 of stele a foot on hyghe / & theryn stak a fayre sward naked
 by the poynt / and letters there were wryten in gold aboute
 25 the sward that saiden thus / who so pulleth oute this sward of
 this stone and anuyld / is rightwys kynge borne of all En-
 lond / Thenne the peple merueilled & told it to the Archebiffhop
 I commande said tharchebiffhop that ye kepe yow within your
 chirche / and pray vnto god still that no man touche the sward
 30 tyll the hyghe masse be all done / So whan all masses were done
 all the lordes wente to beholde the stone and the sward / And
 whan they sawe the scripture / som assayed fuche as wold haue
 ben kyng / But none myght stere the sward nor meue hit He
 is not here said the Archebiffhop that shall encheue the sward
 35 but doubte not god will make hym knowen / But this is my
 counceill said the archebiffhop / that we lete puruey x knyghtes
 men of good fame / & they to kepe this sward / so it was ordey-
 deynd / & thēne ther was made a crye / þ^t euery mā shold assay }

wold for to wyne the fwerd / And vpon newe yeerfday the
 barons lete maake a Iuftes and a tournement / that alle kny-
 zes that wold Iufte or tourneye / there myzt playe / & all this
 was ordeyned for to kepe the lordes to gyders & the comyns / for
 the Archebiffhop trusted / that god wold make hym knowe 5
 that fhold wyne the fwerd / So vpon newe yerefday whan
 the feruyce was done / the barons rode vnto the feld / fome to Iuf-
 te / & fom to torney / & fo it happed that fyre Ector that had gre-
 te lyuelode aboute london rode vnto the Iuftes / & with hym ro-
 de fyr kaynus his fone & yong Arthur that was hys nourif- 10
 fhed broder / & fyr kay was made knyzt at al halowmas afore
 So as they rode to y^e Iuftes ward / fir kay loft his fwerd for
 he had lefte it at his faders lodgyng / & fo he prayd yong Ar-
 thur for to ryde for his fwerd / I wyll wel faid Arthur / & ro-
 de faft after y^e fwerd / & whan he cam home / the lady & al were 15
 out to fee the Iouftyng / thenne was Arthur wroth & faide to
 hym felf / I will ryde to the chircheyard / & take the fwerd with
 me that ftycketh in the ftone / for my broder fir kay fhall not be
 without a fwerd this day / fo whan he cam to the chircheyard
 fir Arthur alizt & tayed his hors to the ftyle / & fo he wente to 20
 the tent / & found no knyzes there / for they were atte Iuf-
 tyng & fo he handled the fwerd by the handels / and liztly & fierfly
 pulled it out of the ftone / & took his hors & rode his way vn-
 tyll he came to his broder fir kay / & delyuerd hym the fwerd / &
 as fone as fir kay 1. the fwerd he wift wel it was the fwerd 25
 of the ftone / & fo he 1. e to his fader fyr Ector / & faid / fyre / loo
 here is the fwerd of the ftone / wherfor I muft be kyng of thys
 land / when fyre Ector beheld the fwerd / he retorned ageyne &
 cam to the chirche / & there they alizte al thre / & wente in to the
 chirche / And anon he made fir kay fwere vpon a book / how 30
 he came to that fwerd / Syr faid fir kay by my broder Arthur
 for he brought it to me / how gate ye this fwerd faid fir Ector
 to Arthur / fir I will telle you when I cam home for my bro-
 ders fwerd / I fond no body at home to delyuer me his fwerd
 And fo I thought my broder fyr kay fhold not be fwerdles 35
 & fo I cam hyder egerly & pulled it out of the ftone withoute
 ony payn / found ye ony knyzes about this fwerd feid fir ector
 Nay faid Arthur / Now faid fir Ector to Arthur I vnderftade

ye must be kyng of this land / wherfore I / fayd Arthur and
 for what caufe / Sire faide Ector / for god wille haue hit foo
 for ther shold neuer man haue drawen oute this swerde / but
 he that shal be rightwys kyng of this land / Now lete me see
 5 whether ye can putte the swerd ther as it was / and pulle hit
 oute ageyne / that is no maystry faid Arthur / and foo he put it
 in the stone / wherwith alle Sir Ector affayed to pulle oute the
 swerd and faylled

¶ Capitulum sextum

Now affay faid Syre Ector vnto Syre kay / And a-
 10 non he pulled at the swerd with alle his myghte / but
 it wold not be / Now shal ye affay faid Syre Ector to Arthur
 I wyll wel faid Arthur and pulled it out easily / And ther-
 with alle Syre Ector knelyd doune to the erthe and Syre
 Kay / Allas faid Arthur myne own dere fader and broder why
 15 knele ye to me / Nay nay my lord Arthur / it is not so I was
 neuer your fader nor of your blood / but I wote wel ye are of
 an hygher blood than I wende ye were / And thenne Syre Ec-
 tor told hym all how he was bitaken hym for to nouriffhe hym
 And by whoos commandement / and by Merlyns delyuerauce
 20 ¶ Thenne Arthur made grete doole whan he vnderstood that
 Syre Ector was not his fader / Sir faid Ector vnto Arthur
 woll ye be my good & gracious lord when ye are kyng / els we-
 re I to blame faid arthur for ye are the man in the world that
 I am most be holdyng to / & my good lady and moder your wyf
 25 that as wel as her owne hath fostred me and kepte / And yf
 euer hit be goddes will that I be kyng as ye fay / ye shall de-
 fyre of me what I may doo / and I shalle not faille yow / god
 forbede I shold faille yow / Sir faid Sire Ector / I will aske
 no more of yow / but that ye wille make my sone your foster
 30 broder Syre Kay Senceall of alle your landes / That shalle be
 done faid Arthur / and more by the feith of my body that neuer
 man shalle haue that office but he whyle he and I lyue / There
 with all they wente vnto the Archebiffhop / and told hym how
 the swerd was encheued / and by whome / and on twelfth day
 35 alle the barons cam thyder / and to affay to take the swerd who
 that wold affay / But there afore hem alle ther myghte none
 take it out but Arthur / wherfor ther were many lordes wroth

And faide it was grete fhamē vnto them all and the reame to be ouer gouernyd with a boye of no hyghe blood borne / And so they fell oute at that tyme that it was put of tyll Candelmas / And thenne alle the barons shold mete there ageyne / but alwey the x knyghtes were ordeyned to watche the swerd day 5 & nyzt / & so they sette a paulione ouer the stōne & þ^e swerd & fyue alweyes watched / Soo at Candalmasse many moo grete lordes came thyder for to haue wonne the swerde / but there myghte none preuaille / And right as Arthur dyd at Cristmāsse / he dyd at Candelmasse and pulled oute the swerde e- 10 asely wherof the Barons were fore agreued and put it of in delay till the hyghe feste of Eester / And as Arthur sped afore / so dyd he at Eester / yet there were some of the grete lordes had indignacion that Arthur shold be kynge / and put it of in a delay tyll the feest of Pentecoste / Thenne the Archebiffhop 15 of Caunterbury by Merlyns prouydence lete purueye thenne of the best knyghtes that they myghte gete / And suche knyghtes as Vtherpendragon loued best and moost trusted in his dayes / And suche knyghtes were put aboute Arthur as fyr Bawdewyn of Bretayn / fyre kaynes / fyre Vlffys / fyre bar- 20 fias / All these with many other were alweyes about Arthur day and nyghte till the feste of Pentecost

¶ Capitulum septimum

ANd at the feste of pentecost alle maner of men assayed to pulle at the swerde that wold assay / but none myghte preuaille but Arthur / and pulled it oute afore 25 all the lordes and comyns that were there / wherfore alle the comyns cryed at ones we wille haue Arthur vnto our kyng we wille put hym nomore in delay / for we alle see that it is goddes wille that he shalle be our kynge / And who that holdeth ageynst it we wille flee hym / And therwith all they kne- 30 lyd at ones both ryche and poure / and cryed Arthur mercy by cause they had delayed hym soo longe / and Arthur foryaf hem / and took the swerd bitwene both his handes / and offred it vpon the aulter where the Archebiffhop was / and so was he made knyghte of the best man that was there / And so anon 35

was the coronacyon made / And ther was he sworne vnto his lordes & the comyns for to be a true kyng to stand with true Iustyce fro thens forth the dayes of this lyf / Also theñe he made alle lordes that helde of the crowne to come in / and to do fer-
 5 uyce as they oughte to doo / And many complayntes were made vnto sir Arthur of grete wronges that were done syn the dethe of kyng Vther / of many londes that were bereued lordes knyghtes / ladyes & gentilmen / wherfor kyng Arthur maade the londes to be yeuen ageyne to them that oughte hem /
 10 ¶ Whanne this was done that the kyng had stabliffhed alle the countreyes aboute london / thenne he lete make Syr kay fencial of Englund / and sir Baudewyn of Bretayne was made Constable / and sir Vlfius was made chamberlayn / And sire Brastias was maade wardeyn to wayte vpon the northe fro
 15 Trent forwardes for it was þ^t tyme þ^e most party the kynges enemyes / But within fewe yeres after Arthur wan alle the north scotland / and alle that were vnder their obeiffaunce / Also walys a parte of it helde ayenst Arthur / but he ouercam hem al as he dyd the remenaunt thurgh the noble prowesse
 20 of hym self and his knyghtes of the round table

¶ Capitulum octauum

THenne the kyng remeued in to walys / and lete crye a grete feste that it shold be holdyn at Pentecost after the incoronacion of hym at the Cyte of Carlyon / vnto the fest come kyng Lott of Lowthean / and of Orkeney / with
 25 fyue C knyghtes with hym / Also ther come to the feste kyng Vryens of gore with four C knyghtes with hym ¶ Also ther come to that feest kyng Nayntres of garloth with feuen C knyghtes with hym / Also ther came to the feest the kyng of Scotland with fixe honderd knyghtes with hym / and he
 30 was but a yong man / Also ther came to the feste a kyng that was called the kyng with the honderd knyghtes / but he and his men were passyng wel bisene at al poyntes. Also ther cam the kyng of Cardos with fyue honderd knyghtes / And kyng Arthur was glad of their comynge / for he wende that al the
 35 kynges & knyghtes had come for grete loue / and to haue done hym worship at his feste / wherfor the kyng made grete ioye / and sente the kynges and knyghtes grete presentes / But

[leaf 22 verso]

the kynges wold none receyue / but rebuked the messagers
 shamefully / and said they had no ioye to receyue no yestes of
 a berdles boye that was come of lowe blood / and sente hym
 word / they wold none of his yestes / But that they were co-
 me to gyue hym yestes with hard fwerdys betwixt the neck 5
 and the sholders / And therefore they came thyder / so they told
 to the messagers playnly / for it was grete shame to all them
 to see fuche a boye to haue a rule of soo noble a reume as this
 land was / With this ansuer the messagers departed & told
 to kyng Arthur this ansuer / wherfor by the aduys of his ba- 10
 rons he took hym to a strong towre with / v / C good men with
 hym / And all the kynges afore said in a maner leyd a fyege
 tofore hym / but kyng Arthur was well vytailled / And with-
 in xv dayes ther came Merlyn amonge hem in to the Cyte of
 Carlyon / thenne all the kynges were passyng gladde of Mer- 15
 lyn / and asked hym for what cause is that boye Arthur made
 your kyng / Syres said Merlyn / I shalle telle yow the cause
 for he is kyng Vtherpendragons sone borne in wedlok gotten
 on Igrayne the dukes wyf of Tyntigail / thenne is he a bas-
 tard they said al / nay said Merlyn / After the deth of the du- 20
 ke more than thre houres was Arthur begoten / And xiiij da-
 yes after kyng Vther wedded Igrayne / And therfor I pre-
 ue hym he is no bastard / And who faith nay / he shal be kyng
 and ouercome alle his enemyes / And or he deye / he shalle be
 long kyng of all Englonde / and haue vnder his obeyssaunce 25
 Walys / yrland and Scotland / and moo reames than I will
 now reherce / Some of the kynges had merueyl of Merlyns
 wordes and demed well that it shold be as he said / And som
 of hem lough hym to sorne / as kyng Lot / and mo other cal-
 led hym a wytche / But thenne were they accorded with Mer- 30
 lyn that kyng Arthur shold come oute and speke with the
 kynges / and to come fauf and to goo fauf / fuche furaunce ther
 was made / So Merlyn went vnto kyng Arthur / and told
 hym how he had done / and badde hym fere not but come oute
 boldly and speke with hem / and spare hem not / but ansuere 35
 them as their kyng and chyuetayn / for ye shal ouercome hem
 all whether they wille or nylle /

¶ Capitulum ix

Thenne kynge Arthur came oute of his tour / and had
 vnder his gowne a Iefferaunte of double maylle / and
 ther wente with hym the Archebiffshop of Caunterbu-
 ry / and fyr Baudewyn of Bretayne and fyr kay / and fyre
 5 Braftias / thefe were the men of mooft worfhip that were with
 hym / And whan they were mette / there was no mekenes but
 ftoute wordes on bothe fydes / but alweyes kynge Arthur an-
 fuerd them and faid / he wold make them to bowe and he lyued
 wherfore they departed with wrath / and kynge Arthur badde
 10 kepe hem wel / and they bad the kynge kepe hym wel / Soo the
 kynge returned hym to the toure ageyne and armed hym and
 alle his kny3tes / what will ye do faid Merlyn to the kynges
 ye were better for to ftynte / for ye fhalle not here preuaille tho-
 15 gh ye were x fo many / be we wel auyfed to be aferd of a dre-
 me reder faid kyng Lot / with that Merlyn vanyffhed awaye /
 and came to Kynge Arthur / and bad hym fet on hem fierfly / &
 in the mene whyle there were thre honderd good men of the beft
 that were with the kynges / that wente freyghte vnto kynge
 Arthur / and that comforted hym gretely / Syr faid Merlyn to
 20 Arthur / fyghte not with the fwerde ye had by myracle /
 til that ye fee ye go vnto the wers / thenne drawe it out and do
 your beft / So forth with alle kynge Arthur fette vpon hem in
 their lodgyng / And fyre Bawdewyn fyre Kay and fyr Bra-
 ftias flewe on the right hand & on the lyfte hand that it was
 25 merueylle / and alweyes Kynge Arthur on horfback leyd on
 with a fwerd and dyd merueillous dedes of armes that ma-
 ny of the kynges had grete ioye of his dedes and hardyneffe /
 Thenne Kynge Lot brake out on the bak fyde / and the kyng
 with the honderd knyghtes and kyng Carados / and fette on
 30 Arthur fierfly behynde hym / with that Syre Arthur torned
 with his knyghtes / and fmote behynd and before / and euer fir
 Arthur was in the formeft prees tyl his hors was flayne vn-
 dernethe hym / And therwith kynge lot fmote doune kyng Ar-
 thur / With that his four knyghtes receyued hym and fet hym
 35 an horfback / theñe he drewe his fwerd Excalibur / but it was
 fo bryght in his enemyes eyen / that it gaf light lyke xxx tor-
 chys / And therwith he put hem on bak / and flewe moche peple
 And thenne the comyns of Carlyon aroos with clubbis and

stauns and slewe many knyghtes / but alle the kynges helde them to gyders with her knyghtes that were leste on lyue / and so fled and departed / And Merlyn come vnto Arthur / and counceilled hym to folowe hem no further ¶ Ca / r

SO after the feste and iourneye kyng Arthur drewe 5
hym vnto london / and soo by the counceil of Merlyn
the kyng lete calle his barons to couceil / for Merlyn
had told the kyng that the fixe kynges that made warre vp-
on hym wold in al haste be awroke on hym & on his landys
wherfor the kyng asked counceil at hem al / they coude no coun- 10
ceil gyue but said they were bygge ynough / ye saye wel said
Arthur / I thanke you for your good courage / but wil ye al
that loveth me speke with Merlyn ye knowe wel that he hath
done moche for me / and he knoweth many thynges / & whan
he is afore you / I wold that ye prayd hym hertely of his best 15
auryse / Alle the barons sayd they wold pray hym and desyre
hym / Soo Merlyn was fente for & fair desyred of al the ba-
rons to gyue them best counceil / I shall fay you said Merlyn
I warne yow al / your enemyes are passyng strong for yow /
and they are good men of armes as ben on lyue / & by thys 20
tyme they haue goten to them four kynges mo / and a mygh-
ty duke / and onlesse that our kyng haue more chyualry with
hym than he may make within þ^e boundys of his own reame
and he fyghte with hem in batail / he shal be ouercome & slayn
what were best to doo in this cause said al the barons / I shal 25
telle you said Merlyn myne aduys / there ar two bretheren be-
yond the see / & they be kynges bothe and merueillous good men
of her handes / And that one hyghte Kyng Ban of Benwic
And that other hyght Kyng Bors of gaule that is Fraunce
And on these two Kynges warrith a myghty man of men 30
the Kyng Claudas / and stryuet with hem for a castel / and
grete werre is betwixt them / But this Claudas is so myghty
of goodes wherof he geteth good Knyztes that he putteth these
two kynges moost parte do the werse / wherfor this is my coun-
ceil that our kyng and souerayne lord sende vnto the kynges 35
Ban and Bors by two trusty knyghtes with letters wel
deuyfed / that and they wil come and see kyng Arthur and
his courte / & so helpe hym in his warrys that he wil be sworne

vnto them to helpe them in their warrys ageynst kynge Claudas / Now what saye ye vnto this counceill said Merlyn / thys is wel counceilled said the kynge & alle the Barons / right fo in alle haste ther were ordeyned to goo two knyghtes on the
5 message vnto the two kynges / Soo were there made letters in the plefaunt wyfe accordyng vnto kyng Arthurs desyre / Vl-fyus and Braftias were made the messagers / & fo rode forth wel horfed and wel armed / and as the gyse was that tyme & fo passed the see & rode toward the cyte of Benwyck / and
10 there byfydes were viij knyghtes that aspyed them / And at a strait passage they mette with Vl-fyus & Braftias / & wold haue taken hem pryfoners / fo they prayd hem that they myght passe / for they were messagers vnto kyng Ban & Bors sent from kynge Arthur / therfor said the viij knyghtes ye shalle
15 dye or be pryfoners / for we ben knyghtes of kyng Claudas And therwith two of them dressid their sperys / and Vl-fyus and Braftias dressid their speres and ranne to gyder with grete raundon / And Claudas knyghtes brack their speres / and ther to hylde and bare the two knyghtes out of her sadels
20 to the erthe / and fo leste hem lyeng and rode her wayes / And the other sixe knyghtes rode afore to a passage to mete wyth hem ageyne / and so Vl-fyus & Braftias smote other two doun And so past on her wayes / And at the fourth passage there mette two for two / and bothe were leid vnto the erthe / fo ther
25 was none of the viij knyghtes but he was fore hurte or bryfed And whan they come to Benwick it fortunod ther were both kynges Ban and Bors / And whan it was told the kynges that there were come messagers / there were sente vnto them ij knyghtes of worship / the one hyghte Lyonfes lord of the co-
30 untry of payarne and Sir phariaunce a worshipful knyght Anone they asked from whens they came / and they said from kynge Arthur kyng of Englund / fo they took them in theyre armes and made grete ioye eche of other / But anon as the ij kynges wift they were messagers of Arthurs / ther was ma-
35 de no taryenge / but forthwith they spak with the knyghtes / & welcomed hem in the feythfullest wyfe / & said / they were most welcome vnto them before alle the kynges luyunge / and ther with they kyft the letters & delyuerd hem / And whan Ban

and Bors vnderstood the letters / thenne were they more wel come than they were before / And after the haft of the letters / they gaf hem this anfuere that they wold fulfill the defyre of kyng Arthurs wrytyng & Vlfius & Braftias tary there as longe as they wold / they fhould haue fuche chere as myghte be 5 made them in tho marchys / Thenne Vlfius & Braftias told the kyng of the aduēture at their passages of the eyghte knyghtes / Ha A faid Ban and Bors they were my good frendes I wold I had wyft of hem they fhould not haue efcaped fo So Vlfius & Braftias had good chere and grete yeftes as 10 moche as they myghte bere away / and hadde their anfuere by mouthe and by wrytyng that tho two Kynges wold come vnto Arthur in all the haft that they myzte / So the two Knyghtes rode on a fore / and paffed the fee / and come to their lord and told hym how they had fpedde / wherof Kyng Arthur 15 was paffyng gladde / At what tyme fuppose ye / the ij Kynges wol be here / Syr faid they afore all halowmaffe / Thenne the kyng lete puruey for a grete feeste / and lete crye a grete Iuftes / And by all halowmaffe the two kynges were come ouer the fee with thre honderd knyghtes wel arayed both for the pees 20 and for the werre / And kyng Arthur mette with hem x myle oute of london / and ther was grete ioye as coude be thouzt or made / And on al halowmaffe / at the grete feeste fate in the halle the thre kynges / and fyre kay fencial ferued in the halle And Syr lucas the bottelere that was duke Corneus fone / & 25 fir gryflet that was the fone of Cardol / these iij knyghtes had the rule of alle the feruyfe that ferued the kynges / And anon as they had waffhen & ryfen / al knyghtes that wold Iufte made hem redy / by than they were redy on horfbak there were vij C knyghtes / And Arthur Ban and Bors with the Archebif- 30 fhop of Caunterbury / and fyre Ector kays fader they were in a place couerd with clothe of gold lyke an halle with ladyes and gentilwymmen for to behold who dyd beft and theron to giue Iugement

¶ Capitulum xi

ANd kyng Arthur and the two Kynges lete departe 35 the vij C knyghtes in two partyes And there were iij C knyghtes of the reame of Benwick and of gawle turned on the other fyde than they drefsid her fheldes / and

beganne to couche her speres many good knyghtes / So Gryf-
 let was the first that mette with a knyghte one ladynas and
 they mett so egerly that al men hadde wonder / And they foo
 faughte that her sheldes felle to pyeces / and hors and man
 5 felle to the erthe / And bothe the frensshe knyghte and the En-
 glysshe knyghte lay so longe that alle men wend they had ben
 dede / Whan lucas the botteler sawe Gryflet foo lye / he horfed
 hym ageyne anon / and they two dyd merueillous dedes of ar-
 mes with many bachelers / Also fyre kay came oute of an en-
 10 buffement with fyue knyghtes with hym / and they fixe smote
 other fixe doune / But fyr kay dyd that day merueillous
 dedes of armes / that ther was none dyd so wel as he that day
 Thenne ther come ladynas & Graffian two knyghtes of fra-
 unce / and dyd passyng wel that all men preyfed them /
 15 Thenne come there Syre placidas a good knyghte and mette
 with fyr kay and smote hym doune hors and man / wherfore
 Syre gryflet was wrothe and mette with Syre placidas foo
 harde that hors and man felle to the erthe / But whan the / v /
 knyghtes wyft that fyr kay had a falle they were wrothe out
 20 of wyt / And therwith eche of them / v / bare doune a knyghte /
 Whanne kyng Arthur and the two kynges sawe hem begyn
 waxe wrothe on bothe partyes / they lepte on smale hakeneis /
 and lete crye that all men shold departe vnto their lodgyng
 And so they wente home and vnarmed them and so to euen-
 25 songe and foupper / And after the thre kynges wente in to a
 gardyn / and gaf the pryce vnto fyre kay and to lucas the bot-
 telere / and vnto Syre Gryflet / And thenne they wente vnto
 councel / and with hem gwenbaus the brother vnto fyr Ban
 & Bors a wyse Clerk / and thyder went Vlffus and Braf-
 30 tias and Merlyn / And after they had ben in counceill / they
 wente vn to bedde / And on the morne they herde masse and to
 dyner / and so to their counceille and made many argumentis
 what were best to doo / At the last they were concluded / that
 Merlyn shold goo with a token of kyng Ban and that was
 35 a ryng vnto his men and kyng Bors and Gracian & pla-
 cidas sholde goo ageyne and kepe their castels and her coun-
 treyes / as for kyng Ban of Benwick and kyng Bors of
 Gaules had ordeyned hem / and so passed the see and came to

Benwyck / And whan the peple sawe kyng Bans ryng & gracian and placidas they were glad / and asked how the kyn- ges ferd / and made grete ioye of their welfare and cordyng / and accordyng vnto the fouerayne lordes defyre / the men of warre made hem redy in al hast possyble / soo that they were xv 5
 M on hors and foot / and they had grete plente of vytaylle with hem by Merlyns prouysyon / But gracian and placidas were leste to furnyssh the castels for drede of kyng Claudas / ryght so Merlyn passed the see wel vytailed bothe by water and by land / And whan he came to the see / he 10
 sente home the foote men ageyne and took no mo with hym / but x M men on horbak the moost parte men of armes and fo shpypped and passed the see in to Englonde / and loded at Dou- uer / and thorow the wytte of Merlyn he had the hooft North- ward the pryuyest way that coude be thoughte vnto the foreist 15
 of Bedegrayne / and there in a valeyn he lodged hem secretelly / ¶ Thenne rode Merlyn vnto Arthur and the two kynges & told hem how he had sped / wherof they had grete merueylle / that man on erthe myghte spede so soone / and goo and come So Merlyn told them x M were in the forest of Bedegrayne 20
 wel armed at al poyntes / thenne was there no more to saye / but to horbak wente all the hooft as Arthur had afore pur- ueyed / So with xx M he passed by nyghte and day / but ther was made fuche an ordenaunce afore by Merlyn that ther shold no man of werre ryde nor go in no countrey on this syde trent 25
 water / but yf he had a token from kyng Arthur / where tho- row the kynges enemyes durste not ryde as they dyd to fore to aspye

¶ Capitulum xij

ANd soo within a lytel space the thre kynges came vn- to the Castel of Bedegrayne / and fond there a pas- 30
 syng fayr felasship and wel be sene / wherof they had grete ioye / and vytaille they wanted none / This was the cause of the northeren hooft that they were rered for the despyte and rebuke the fyx kynges had at Carlyon / And tho vj kyn- ges by her meanes gate vnto hem fyue other kynges / And 35
 thus they beganne to gadre theyr peple ¶ And how they sware that for wele nor woo they shold not leue other /

tyl they had destroyed Arthur / and thenne they made an oth
 The fyrst that beganne the othe was the duke of Candebenet /
 that he wold brynge with hym v M men of armes the which
 were redy on horsbak / Thenne sware kynge Brandegoris of
 5 franggore that he wold brynge v M men of armes on hors-
 bak / Thenne sware kynge Claryuaus of Northumberland he
 wold brynge thre thousand men of armes / thenne sware the
 kyng of the C knyghtes that was a passyng good man and
 a yonge that he wold brynge four thousand men of armes on
 10 horsbak / thenne ther swore kynge Lott a passyng good knyzt
 and fyre Gawayns fader that he wold brynge v M men of
 armes on horsbak / Also ther swore kynge Vryence that was
 fyr Vwayns fader of the lond of gore and he wold brynge
 vj M men of armes on horsbak / Also ther swore kyng Idres
 15 of Cornewalle that he wold brynge v M men of armes on
 horsbak / Also ther swore kynge cardelmans to brynge v M mē
 on horsbak / Also ther swore kyng Agwyfaunce of Ireland to
 brynge v M men of armes on horsbak / Also ther swore kyng
 Nentres to brynge v M men of armes on horsbak / Also there
 20 swore kynge Carados to brynge v M of armes on hors-
 bak / Soo her hool hooft was of clene men of armes on horsbak
 fyfty thousand and a foot x thousand of good mennes body-
 es / thenne were they soone redy and mounted vpon hors and
 fente forth their fore rydars / for these xj kynges in her wayes
 25 leyd a fyge unto the castel of Bedegrayne / and so they depar-
 ted and drewe toward Arthur and lefte fewe to abyde at the
 fyge for the castel of Bedegrayne was holden of kynge Ar-
 thur / and the men that were theryn were Arthurs

¶ Capitulum xiii

30 **S**Oo by Merlyns aduys ther were fente fore rydars to
 skumme the Countreie / & they mette with the fore ry-
 dars of the north / and made hem to telle whiche wey the hooft
 cam / and thenne they told it to Arthur / and by kyng Ban
 and Bors counceill they lete brenne and destroye alle the con-
 trey afore them there they shold ryde / ¶ The kynge with the
 35 honderd knyghtes mette a wonder dreme two nyghtes a fore
 the bataille / that ther blewe a grete wynde & blewe doun her cas-
 tels and her townes / and after that cam a water and bare hit

all away / Alle that herd of the sweuen said / it was a token of grete batayll / Thenne by counceill of Merlyn whan they wist whiche wey the xj kynges wold ryde and lodge that nyghte At mydnyght they fette vpon them as they were in theyr paelions / But the scout watche by her hooft cryed lordes att 5 armes for here be your enemyes at your hand

T **¶ Capitulum xiiii**

Henne kyng Arthur and kyng Ban and Kyng Bors with her good and trusty knyghtes fet on hem so fyersly that he made them ouer throwe her paelions on her hedys / but the xj kynges by manly prowesse of armes tooke 10 a fayre champayne / but there was slayne that morowe tyde x M good mennys bodyes / And so they had afore hem a strong passaye yet were they fyfty M of hardy men / Thenne it drewe toward day / now shalle ye doo by myne aduys said Merlyn vnto the thre kynges I wold that kyng Ban and kyng 15 Bors with her felauship of x M men were put in a wood here beyde in an enbushment and kepe them preuy / and that they be leid or the lyght of the daye come / and that they stere not tyll ye and your knyghtes haue foughte with hem longe And whanne hit is daye lyght dresse your bataille euen afore 20 them and the passaye that they may see alle your hooft / For thenne wyl they be the more hardy when they see yow but aboute xx M / and cause hem to be the gladder to suffre yow and youre hooft to come ouer the passaye / All the thre kynges and the hoole barons sayde that Merlyn said passyngly wel / and 25 it was done anone as Merlyn had deuyfed / Soo on the morn whan eyther hooft sawe other / the hooft of the north was well comforted / Thenne to Vlfius and Braftias were delyuerd thre thousand men of armes / and they fette on them fyersly in the passaye / and slewe on the ryght hand and on the lyft 30 hand that it was wonder to telle /

¶ Whanne that the enleuen kynges sawe that there was so fewe a felauship dyd fuche dedes of armes they were ashamed and fette on hem agayne fyersly / and ther was fyr Vlfius hors slayne vnder hym / but he dyd merueylously well on 35 foote /

¶ But the Duke Eustace of Cambenet

and Kyng Claryaunce of Northumberland / were alweye
 greuous on Vlſyus / thenne Braſtias ſawe his felawe ferd
 ſo with al / he ſmote the duke with a ſpere that hors & man fell
 doune / that ſawe kyng Claryaunce and returned vnto Braſ-
 5 tias / and eyther ſmote other ſoo that hors & man wente to the
 erthe / and ſo they lay long aſtonyed / & their hors knees braſt
 to the hard bone / Thenne cam Syr kay the fencyal with fyxe
 felawes with hym / and dyd paſſyng wel / with that cam the
 xj kynges / and ther was Gryflet put to the erthe hors & man
 10 and lucas the bottelere hors and man by kyng Brandegorys
 and kyng Idres & kyng Agwyfaunce / thēne waxed the
 medle paſſyng hard on bothe partyes / whan fyre kay ſawe
 Gryflet on foote / he rode on kyng Nentres & ſmote hym down
 and lad his hors vnto fyr gryflet & horfed hym ageyne / Al-
 15 ſo fyr kay with the ſame ſpere ſmote down kyng Lott / & hurt
 hym paſſyng fore / that ſawe the kyng with the C knyȝtes and
 ran vnto fyr kay and ſmote hym doune and toke his hors / &
 gaf hym kyng Lott wherof he ſaid gramercy / whan fyr Gryf-
 let ſawe fyr kay & lucas the bottelere on foote / he tooke a ſharp
 20 ſpere grete and ſquare / and rode to pynel a good man of ar-
 mes / and ſmote hors and man doune / And thenne he tooke
 his hors / and gaf hym vnto fyr kay / Thenne kyng Lot ſaw
 kyng Nentres on foote / he ranne vnto Melot de la roche / & ſmo-
 te hym doune hors and man & gaf kyng Nentres the hors &
 25 horfed hym ageyne / Alſo the kyng of the C knyȝtes ſawe ky-
 nge Idres on foot thenne he ran vnto Gwymyart de bloy and
 ſmote hym doune hors and man & gaf kyng Idres the hors
 & horfed hym ageyne / & kyng Lot ſmote down Claryaunce de
 la foreiſt ſauage & gaf the hors vnto duke Euſtace / And ſo
 30 whanne they had horfed the kynges ageyne they drewe hem
 al xj kynges to gyder and ſaid they wold be reuenged of the
 dommage that they had taken that day / The meane whyle cam
 in fyr Ector with an egyr countenaunce / and found Vlſyus
 and Braſtias on foote in grete perylle of deth that were fow-
 35 le defoyled vnder horſſeet / Thenne Arthur as a lyon ranne vn-
 to kyng Cradelment of North walys / and ſmote hym tho-
 rowe the lyfte ſyde that the hors and the kyng fyll doune /
 And thenne he tooke the hors by the rayne / and ladde hym

vnto Vlfyus & faid haue this hors myn old frend / for gre-
 te nede haft thow of hors / gramercy faid Vlfyus / thenne fyre
 Arthur dyd so merueilloufly in armes that all men had won-
 dyr / Whan the kyng with the C knyghtes sawe kyng Cradel-
 ment on foote / he ranne vnto fyre Ector that was wel horfed 5
 fyr kayes fader / and smote hors and man doune / and gaf the
 hors vnto the kyng / and horfed hym ageyne / and when kyng
 Arthur sawe the kyng ryde on fyr Ectors hors he was wroth
 and with his swerd he smote the kyng on the helme / that a
 quarter of the helme and shelde fyll doune / and so the swerd 10
 carf doune vnto the hors neck / and so the kyng & the hors fyll
 doune to the ground / Thenne fyr kay cam vnto fyr Morgano-
 re fencial with the kyng of the C knyghtes & smote hym down
 hors and man / and lad the hors vnto his fader fyre Ector /
 thenne fyr Ector ranne vnto a knyght hyghte lardans / & smo- 15
 te hors & man doune / & lad the hors vnto fyr Braftias that
 grete nede had of an hors and was gretely defoyled / whan
 Braftias beheld lucas the botteler that lay lyke a dede man
 vnder the horfe feet / and euer fyr Gryflet dyd merueilloufly
 for to rescowe hym / and there were alweyes xiiij knyghtes on 20
 fyr lucas / & thenne Braftias smote one of hem on the helme /
 that it wente to the teeth / & he rode to another and smote hym
 that the arme flewe in to the feld / Thēne he wente to the third
 and smote hym on the sholder that sholder and arme flewe in
 the feld / And whan Gryflet sawe rescowes / he smote a kny- 25
 ght on the tempils that hede & helme wente to the erthe / and
 gryflet took the hors of that knyght & lad hym vnto fyr lu-
 cas / & bad hym mounte vpon the hors & reuenge his hurtes /
 For Braftias had slayne a knyghte to fore & horfed gryf-

let /

¶ Capitulum xv

30

Thenne lucas sawe kyng Agwyfaunce that late hadde
 slayne Morys de la roche / and lucas ran to hym with
 a short spere that was grete / that he gaf hym suche a falle that
 the hors felle down to the erthe / Also lucas found there on fo-
 te bloyas de la flaundes and fyr Gwynas ij hardy knyghtes 35
 & in that woodenes that lucas was in / he slewe ij bachelers &
 horfed hem ageyn / thēne waxid the batail possyng hard on both
 partyes / but arthur was glad þ^t his knyghtes were horfed ayene

& thēne they foughte to gyders that the noyse and fowne rang
 by the water & the wood / wherfor kyng Ban and kyng bors
 made them redy and dresyd theyr sheldes and harneys / and
 they were so couragious that many Knyghtes shoke & beuerd
 5 for egrenes / All this whyle lucas and Gwynas & bryaunte
 & Bellyas of Flaundrys helde strong medle ayenst vj kyn-
 ges / that was Kyng Lott / kyng Nentres / kyng Brandego-
 rys / Kyng Idres / kyng Vryens & kyng Agwyfaunce / Soo
 with the helpe of fyre kay & of fyr gryflet / they helde these vj
 10 kynges hard that vnnethe they had ony power to defend them
 But whan fyr Arthur sawe the batail wold not be endyd
 by no maner / he ferd wood as a lyon / & stered his hors here
 & there on the right hand & on the lyft hand. that he stynte not
 tyl he had slayne xx knyghtes / Also he wounded kyng Lot fo-
 15 re on the sholder and made hym to leue that ground / for fyre
 kay & gryflet dyd with kyng Arthur there grete dedes of ar-
 mes / Thenne Vlfius and Braftias & sir Ector encountred
 ageynst the duke Eustace & kyng Cradelment & kyng Cradel-
 māt and kyng Claryaunce of Northumberland & kyng Ca-
 20 rados & ageynst the kyng with the C knyghtes / So these kny-
 ges encountred with these kynges that they made them to auoy-
 de the grounde / thēne Kyng Lott made grete dool for his dom-
 magis & his felawes / & said vnto the x kynges but yf ye wil
 do as I deuyse we shalle be slayn & destroyed / lete me haue the
 25 kyng with the C Knyghtes & kyng Agwyfaunce & kyng I-
 dres and the duke of Canbenec / & we v Kynges wol haue
 xv M men of armes with vs & we wille go on parte / wyle ye
 vj Kynges holde medle with xij M / & we see that ye haue
 fouzten with hem long thēne will we come on fyerly / & ellys
 30 shall we neuer matche hem said kyng Lot but by this meane
 So they departed as they here deuyfed / & vj kynges made her
 party strong ageynst Arthur and made grete warre longe /
 In the meane whyle brake the enbusshement of Kyng Ban
 and kyng bors and Lyonfes and Pharyaunce had the ad-
 35 uant garde / and they two knyghtes mette with kyng Idres
 and his felasship / and there began a grete medele of brekyng
 of speres and smytyng of swerdys with fleyng of men and
 horses / And kyng Idres was nere at difcomforture

That sawe Agwyfaunce the kynge and put lyonfes and phary-
 aunce in poynte of dethe / for the duke of Canbenek came on
 with all with a grete felauship / soo these two knyghtes were
 in grete daunger of their lyues that they were fayn to retorne
 but alweyes they rescowed hem self and their felauship mer- 5
 ueillously / Whan kynge Bors sawe tho knyghtes put on bak
 it greued hym sore / thēne he cam on so fast that his felauship
 femed as blak as Inde / whan kyng Lot had aspyed kynge
 bors / he knewe hym wel / thenne he said O Ihesu defende vs frō
 deth & horryble maymes / for I see wel we ben in grete perylle 10
 of dethe / for I see yonder a kynge one of the most worshipful-
 lest men & one of the best knyghtes of the world ben enclyned
 vnto his felauship / what is he said the kynge with the C kny-
 zes / it is said kyng Lot kyng bors of gaule / I merueile how
 they come in to this countreye without wetyng of vs all 15
 It was by Merlyns auyse said the knyghte / As for hym fa-
 yd kynge Carados / I wylle encountre with kynge bors / and
 ye wil rescowe me whan myfter is / go on said they al / we wil
 do all that we may / thenne kyng Carados & his hooft rode on a
 softe pace tyl that they come as nyghe kynge Bors as bowe 20
 draughte / thenne eyther bataill lete their hors renne as fast as
 they myghte / And Bleoberys that was godson vnto kynge
 Bors he bare his chyef standard / that was a passyng good
 knyghte / Now shall we see said kyng Bors hou these northe-
 ren bretons can bere the armes / & kyng Bors encountred with 25
 a knyght / and smote hym thorow out with a spere that he fel
 dede vnto the erthe / and after drewe his fwerd & dyd mer-
 ueillous dedes of armes that all partyes had grete wōder ther-
 of / & his knyghtes failed not but dyd their part / & kyng Ca-
 rados was smyten to the erthe / With that came the kyng with 30
 the C knyghtes & rescued kyng Carados myztely by force of ar-
 mes / for he was a passyng good knyght of a kynge / & but a
 yong man

¶ Capitulum xvj

BY than come in to the feld kynge Ban as fyers as a
 lyon with bandys of grene / & therupon gold / Ha a fa-
 id kyng Lot we must be discomfyte / for yonder I see the moſte
 valyaunt knyght of the world / and the man of the most re-
 noume / for fuche ij bretheren as is kyng Ban & kyng bors ar

not lyuyng / wherfore we muft nedes voyde or deye / And but
 yf we auoyde manly and wyfely / ther is but dethe / whanne
 kyng Ban came in to the bataill / he cam in fo fierfly / that the
 ftrokes redounded ageyne fro the woode and the water / wher-
 5 for kyng Lott wepte for pyte and doole that he fawe fo ma-
 ny good kny3tes take theyr ende / But thorowe the grete for-
 ce of kyng Ban they made both the Northeren bataylles that
 were departed / hurtled to gyders for grete drede / and the thre
 kynges & their knyghtes flewe on euer that it was pyte on to
 10 behold that multitude of the people that fledde / But kyng
 Lott and Kyng of the honderd kny3tes & kyng Morganore
 gadred the peple to gyders paffyng knyghtly / and dyd gre-
 te prowesse of armes / and helde the bataill all that daye lyke
 hard / ¶ Whanne the kyng of the honderd knyghtes beheld the
 15 grete damage that kyng Ban dyd / he threft vnto hym wyth
 his hors and fmote hym on hye vpon the helme a grete ftroke
 and ftonyed hym fore / Thenne kyng Ban was wroth with
 hym / and folowed on hym fyerfly / the other fawe that / and
 caft vp his fheld & fpoed his hors forward / But the ftro-
 20 ke of kyng Ban felle doune and carfe a cantel of the fheld /
 and the fwerd flode doune by the hauberk behynde his back / &
 cut thorow the trappere of ftele / and the hors euen in two pye-
 ces that the fwerd felte the erthe / Thenne the kyng of the C
 knyghtes voyded the hors lyghtly and with his fwerd he bro-
 25 ched the hors of kyng Ban thorow and thorow / with that
 kyng Ban voyded lyghtly from the deede hors / and thenne
 kyng Ban fmote at the other fo egrely / and fmote hym on
 the helme that he felle to the erth / Also in that yre he feld kyng
 Morganore and there was grete slaughter of good knyghtes
 30 and moche peple / by than come in to the prees kyng Arthur /
 and fond Kyng Ban ftondyng among dede men and dede
 hors fyghtyng on foote as a wood lyon / that ther came no-
 ne nyghe hym as fer as he myght reche with his fwerd / but he
 caughte a greuous buffet wherof Kyng Arthur had grete py-
 35 te / And Arthur was fo bloody that by his fhelde ther myght
 no man knowe hym / for all was blood and braynes on his
 fwerd / And as Arthur loked by hym he fawe a knyght that
 was paffyngly wel horfed / and therwith fyre Arthur ranne

to hym / and smote hym on the helme that his swerd wente
vnto his teeth / and the knyght fanke doune to the erthe dede / &
anon Arthur tooke the hors by the rayne and ladde hym vnto
kyng Ban & said fair broder / haue this hors / for ye haue
grete myfter thereof & me repenteth fore of your grete dammage 5
Hit shall be soone reuengid said Kyng Ban / for I truste in
god myn eure is not fuche but some of them may fore repente
thys / I wol wel said Arthur / for I see your dedes full actual
Neuertheles I myghte not come at yow at that tyme / But
whanne Kyng Ban was mounted on horfbak / thenne there 10
beganne newe bataill the whyche was fore and hard / and pas-
syng grete slaughter / And so thurgh grete force Kyng Ar-
thur / Kyng Ban and Kyng Bors made her knyghtes a lit-
tel to with drawe them / But alwey the xj Kynges with her
chyualrye neuer turned bak / and so withdrewe hem to a lytil 15
woode / and so ouer a lytil ryuer / & there they rested hem / for
on the nyghte they myghte haue no rest on the feld / And thē-
ne the xj kynges and knyghtes put hem on a hepe all to gy-
ders as men adrad and out of alle comforte / but ther was no
man myghte passe them / they helde hem so hard to gyders bothe 20
behynde and before that kyng Arthur had merueille of their
dedes of armes and was passyng wrothe / A fyr Arthur sa-
id kyng Ban and kyng Bors blame hem noughte / For
they doo as good men oujt to doo / For by my feith said kyng
Ban / they are the best fyghtyng men and knyghtes of moost 25
prowesse that euer I sawe or herd speke of / And tho xj kyn-
ges are men of grete worship / And yf they were longyng vn-
to yow / there were no kyng vnder the heuen hadde fuche xj
knyghtes and of fuche worship / I may not loue hem said Ar-
thur / they wold destroye me / that wote we wel said kyng 30
Ban and Kyng Bors / for they are your mortal enemyes /
and that hath ben preued afore hand / And this day they haue
done their parte / and that is grete pyte of their wilfulnes
Thenne alle the xj kynges drewe hem to gyder / And thenne sa-
id kyng Lott / lordes ye must other wayes than ye do / or els 35
the grete losse is behynde / ye may see what peple we haue lost /
and what good men we lese / by cause we waytte alweyes on
these foote men / and euer in fauyng of one of the foote men

we lese x horfmen for hym / therfore this is myne aduys / lete
 vs put our foote men from vs / for it is nere nyghte / For the
 noble Arthur wille not tary on the foote men / for they maye
 faue hym self / the woode is nerehand / And whan we horfmen
 5 be to gyders / loke eueryche of yow kynges lete make suche or-
 dinaunce that none breke vpon payne of dethe / And who that
 feeth ony man dresse hym to flee / lightly that he be slayne / for
 it is better that we flee a coward than thorow a coward alle
 we to be slayne / How faye ye said kynge Lott / anfuere me all
 10 ye kynges / it is wel said quod kynge Nentres / so said the ky-
 nge of the honderd knyghtes / the fame saide the kynge Cara-
 dos and kyng Vryence / so dyd kynge Idres and kyng bran-
 degorys / and so dyd kyng Cradulmas and the duke of Cā-
 debenet / the fame said kyng Claryaunce & kyng Agwyfaunce
 15 and sware they wold neuer faille other neyther for lyf nor
 for dethe / And who so that fledde but did as they dyd shold
 be slayne / Thenne they amended their harneys and ryghted
 their sheldes and tooke newe sperys and sette hem on their
 thyes and stode stille as hit had ben a plombe of wood /

¶ Capitulum xvij

20 **W**Hanne Syre Arthur and kynge ban and bors by-
 helde the mand all her knyghtes they preyfed hem mo-
 che for their noble chere of chyualrye for the hardyest fyghters
 that euer they herd or fawe / with that there dreyfyd hem a xl
 noble knyghtes and saide vnto the thre kynges / they wold
 25 breke their bataille / these were her names Lyonfes / pharyaunce
 Vlfyus / braftias / Ector / kaynes / lucas the bottelere / Gryflett
 la fyse de dieu / mariet de la roche / Gwynas de bloy / briät de la
 foreyft faueage / bellaus / Moryans of the castel maydyns / flā-
 nedreus of the castel of ladyes / Annecians that was kynge
 30 bors godfone a noble knyght / ladynas de la roufe / Emeraufe
 Caulas / Gracyens le casteleyn / one bloyse de la caafe / and fyre
 Colgreueaunce de gorre / all these kny3tes rode on afore with
 sperys on their thyes / and spored their horses myghtely as
 the horses my3te renne / And the xj kynges with parte of her
 35 kny3tes ruffched with their horses as fast as they my3te with
 their speres / & ther they dyd onboth partyes merueillous dedes
 of armes / soo came in to the thycke of the prees Arthur ban &

bors & flewe doune right on both handes that her horfes went
 in blood vp to the fytlokys / But euer the xj Kynges and
 their hooftes was euer in the vyfage of Arthur / wherfore Ban
 and Bors had grete merueille confyderyng the grete flauz-
 ter that there was / but at the laft they were dryuen abak ouer 5
 a lytil ryuer / with that came Merlyn on a grete black hors /
 and faid vnto arthur thow haft neuer done / haft thou not do-
 ne ynough / of thre fcore thoufand this day haft thow lefte on
 lyue but xv M / and it is tyme to faye ho for god is wrothe
 with the that thow wolt neuer haue done / for yonder xj kyn- 10
 ges at this tyme will not be ouerthrowen / but and thow tary
 on them ony lenger / thy fortune wille torne and they fhall en-
 creace / And therfor withdrawe yow vnto your lodgyng and
 reftes you as foone as ye may and rewarde your good knyghtes
 with gold and with fyluer / for they haue wel deferued hit / 15
 there may no rycheffe be to dere for them / for of fo fewe men as
 ye haue ther were neuer men dyd more of prowefse than they
 haue done to day / for ye haue matched this day with the beftes
 fyghters of the world / that is trouthe faid kyng Ban and
 bors / Also faid Merlyn / withdrawe yow where ye lyft / For 20
 this thre yere I dar vndertake they fhalle not dere yow / And
 by than ye fhalle here newe tydynges / And thenne Merlyn fa-
 id vnto arthur / thefe xj kynges haue more on hand than they
 are ware of / for the Sarafyns are loded in their countreyes mo
 than xl M that brenne and flee / and haue leid fyge att the 25
 caftel Wandefborow and make grete deftruction / therfore drede
 yow not this thre yere / ¶ Also fyre al the goodes that ben
 goten at this bataill lete it be ferched / And whanne ye haue
 it in your handys lete it be gyuen frely vnto thefe two kynges
 Ban and Bors that they may rewarde theyr knyghtes with 30
 all / And that fhalle caufe ftraungers to be of better wyll to do
 yow feruyfe at nede / Also ye be able to reward youre owne
 knyghtes of your owne goodes whan fomeuer it lyketh you
 It is wel faid qd Arthur And as thow haft deuyfed fo fhall
 it be done / whanne it was delyuerd to Ban & Bors they gaf 35
 the goodes as frely to their knyghtes as frely as it was yeuen
 to them / Thenne Merlyn took his leue of Arthur and of the
 ij kynges for to go and fee his mayfter Bleyfe that dwelde

in Northumberland / and so he departed and cam to his maister
 that was passyng glad of his comynge / & there he tolde /
 how Arthur and the two kynges had sped at the grete bataill
 / and how it was ended / and told the names of euery kyng
 5 and knyght of worship that was there / And soo Bleyfe
 wrote the bataill word by word as Merlyn told hym how it
 began / & by whome / and in lyke wyse how it was endyd / And
 who had the werre / All the bataills that were done in arthurs
 dayes / merlyn dyd his maister Bleyfe do wryte / Also he did
 10 do wryte all the bataills that euery worthy knyght dyd of arthurs
 Courte / After this Merlyn departed from his mayster
 and came to kyng Arthur that was in the castel of Bede-
 grayne / that was one of the castels that stondyn in the forest
 of Sherewood / And Merlyn was so disguysed that kyng
 15 Arthur knewe hym not for he was all be furred in black she-
 pe skynnes and a grete payre of bootes / and a bowe and a-
 rowes in a ruffet gowne / and broughte wild gyse in his hād
 and it was on the morne after candelmas day / but kyng Ar-
 thur knewe hym not / Syre said Merlyn vnto the kyng / Wil
 20 ye gyue me a yeste / wherfor said kyng Arthur shold I gyue
 the a yeste chorle / Sir said Merlyn ye were better to gyue me
 a yeste that is not in your hand than to lese grete rycheffe / for
 here in the same place there the grete bataill was is grete treso-
 ur hyd in the erthe / who told the so chorle said Arthur / Mer-
 25 lyn told me so said he / thenne Vlkyus and Braffias knew
 hym wel ynough and smyled / Syre said these two knyghtes
 It is Merlyn that so speketh vnto yow / thenne kyng arthur
 was gretely abasshed and had merueyll of Merlyn / & so had
 kyng Ban and kyng Bors / and soo they had grete dys-
 30 port at hym / Soo in the meane whyle there cam a damoyfel
 that was an erlys doughter his name was Sanam / and her
 name was Lyonors a passyng fair damoyfel / and so she cam
 thyder for to dohomage as other lordes dyd after the grete ba-
 taill / And kyng Arthur sette his loue gretely vpon her and
 35 so dyd she vpon hym / and the kyng had adoo with her / and
 gat on her a child / his name was Borre that was after a
 good knyghte and of the table round / thenne ther cam word
 that the kyng Ryence of Northen walys maade grete werre on

kyng Lodegreance of camlyard / for the whiche thyng arthur was wroth for he loued hym wel and hated kyng Ryence / for he was alwey ageynst hym / So by ordenaunce of the thre kyn- ges that were sente home vnto Benwyck / alle they wold de- parte for drede of kyng Claudas and pharyaunce and An- 5 temes and Grafians and lyonfes / payarne with the leders of tho that shold kepe the kynges landys

¶ Capitulum xviii

ANd thenne kyng Arthur and kyng Ban & kyng Bors departed with her felaufhip a xx M and came within vj dayes in to the countrey of Cmlyarde and there re- 10 scowed kyng Lodegreance and flewe ther moche people of kyng Ryence vnto the nombre of x M men and put hym to flyghte / And thenne had these thre kynges grete chere of kyng Lodegreance / that thanked them of their grete goodnesse that they wold reuenge hym of his enemyes / and there hadde 15 Arthur the fyrst fyght of gweneuer the kynges doughter of Camlyard / and euer after he loued her / After they were weddyd as it telleth in the booke / Soo breuely to make an ende / they took theyr leue to goo in to theyre owne Countreyes for kyng Claudas dyd grete destruction on their landes / Thenne 20 said Arthur I wille goo with yow / Nay said the kynges ye shalle not at this tyme / for ye haue moche to doo yet in these landes / therefore we wille departe / and with the grete goodes that we haue gotten in these landes by youre yestes we shalle wage good knyghtes & withstande the kyng Claudas ma- 25 lyce / for by the grace of god and we haue nede we wille sende to yow for youre focour / And yf ye haue nede sende for vs / and we wille not tary by the feythe of our bodyes / Hit shalle not faide Merlyn nede that these two kynges come ageyne in the wey of werre / But I knowe wel kyng Arthur maye 30 not be longe from yow / for within a yere or two ye shalle haue grete nede / And thenne shalle he reuenge yow on youre enemyes as ye haue done on his / For these xj kynges shal deye all in a day by the grete myghte and prowesse of armes of ij valyaunt knyghtes as it telleth after / her names ben Balyn 35 le Saueage and Balan his broder that ben merueillous good knyghtes as ben ony luyng / ¶ Now torne we to the xj

kynges that returned vnto a cyte that hyghte Sorhaute / the
 whiche cyte was within kyng Vryens / and ther they refres-
 shed hem as wel as they myght / and made leches ferche their
 woundys and sorowed gretely for the dethe of her peple / with
 5 that ther came a messager and told how ther was comen in to
 their landes people that were laules as wel as farafyns a xl
 M / and haue brent & slayne al the peple that they may come
 by withoute mercy / and haue leyd syege on the castel of wā-
 disborow / Allas sayd the xj kynges here is forow vpon forou
 10 And yf we had not warryd ageynst Arthur as we haue do-
 ne / he wold soone reuenge vs / as for kyng Lodegryaunce he lo-
 ueth Arthur better. than vs / And as for kyng Ryence / he hath
 ynough to doo with Lodegreans / for he hath leyd syege vnto
 hym / Soo they consentyd to gyder to kepe alle the marches of
 15 Cornewayle / of walys and of the northe / soo fyrst they putte
 kyng Idres in the Cyte of Nauntys in Brytayne with iiij
 thousand men of armes / to watche bothe the water and the
 land / Also they put in the cyte of Wyndesfan kyng Nauntres
 of garlott with four thousand knyghtes to watche both on wa-
 20 ter and on lond / Also they had of other men of werre moo
 than eyght thousand for to fortyfye alle the fortresses in the
 marches of Cornewaylle / Also they put moo knyghtes in alle
 the marches of walys and scotland with many good men of
 armes / and soo they kepte hem to gyders the space of thre yere
 25 And euer alyed hem with myghty kynges and dukes and
 lordes / And to them felle kyng Ryence of North walys / the
 whiche was a myghty man of men & Nero that was a mygh-
 ty man of men / And all this whyle they furnysshed hem and
 garnysshed hem of good men of armes and vytaille and of
 30 alle maner of abyement that pretendith to the werre to aen-
 ge hem for the bataille of Bedgrayne / as it telleth in the book
 of auentures folowyng

Capitulum xix

† Hēne after the departyng of kyng Ban and of kyng
 Bors kyng Arthur rode vnto Carlyon / And thyder
 35 cam to hym kyng Lots wyf of Orkeney in maner of a messa-
 ge / but she was sente thyder to aspye the Courte of kyng Ar-
 thur / and she cam rychely bifene with her four sones / gawayn

[leaf 32 verso]

Gaherys / Agrauaynes / and Gareth with many other knygh-
 tes and ladyes / for she was a possynge fayr lady / wherfore
 the kyng cast grete loue vnto her / and desyred to lye by her / fo
 they were agreed / and he begate vpon her Mordred / and she
 was his fyfter on the moder syde Igrayne / So ther she rested 5
 her a moneth and at the last departed / Thenne the kyng dre-
 med a merueillous dreme wherof he was fore adrad / But al
 this tyme kyng Arthur knewe not that kyng Lots wyf was
 his fyfter / Thus was the dreme of Arthur / hym thought ther
 was come in to this land Gryffons and Serpentes / And 10
 hym thoughte they brente and slough alle the peple in the lād
 And thenne hym thoughte / he faughte with hem / and they dyd
 hym passynge grete harme / and wounded hym ful fore / but at
 the last he slewe hem / Whanne the kyng awaked / he was pas-
 synge heuy of his dreme / and so to put it oute of thoughtes / 15
 he made hym redy with many knyghtes to ryde on huntynge /
 As soone as he was in the forest / the kyng sawe a grete hert
 afore hym / this herte wille I chace said kyng Arthur / And
 so he spored the hors / and rode after longe / And so by fyne for-
 ce ofte he was lyke to haue smyten the herte / where as the ky- 20
 nge had chaced the herte soo long that his hors had losse hys
 brethe and fylle doune dede / Thenne a yoman fette the kyng
 another hors / So the kyng sawe the herte enbushid and his
 hors dede / he fette hym doune by a fontayne and there he fell in
 grete thoughtes / And as he satte so hym thoughte he herd a 25
 noyse of houndes to the somme of xxx / And with that the ky-
 nge sawe comyng toward hym the straungest best that euer he
 sawe or herd of / so the best wente to the welle and drank / and
 the noyse was in the bestes bely lyke vnto the questyng of xxx
 coupyl houndes / but alle the whyle the best dranke there was 30
 no noyse in the bestes bely / and therwith the best departed with
 a grete noyse / wherof the kyng had grete merueyll / And so he
 was in a grete thoughte / and therwith he fell on slepe / Ryght
 so ther came a knyght a foote vnto Arthur / and sayd knyght
 full of thought and slepy / telle me yf thou sawest a strange 35
 best passe this waye / Suche one sawe I said kyng Arthur /
 that is past two myle / what wold ye with the best said arthur
 Syre I haue folowed that best long tyme / and kyld myne

hors / fo wold god I had another to folowe my queft / ryzte
 fo came one with the kynges hors / and whan the knyght fa-
 we the hors / he prayd the kyng to yeue hym the hors / for I
 haue folowed this queft this xij moneth / and other I shal en-
 5 cheue hym or blede of the beft blood of my body / Pellinore that
 tyme kyng folowed the queftynge beft / and after his deth fir
 Palamydes folowed hit

¶ Capitulum 11

SYr knyghte faid the kyng leue that queft / and fuffre
 me to haue hit / and I wyll folowe it another xij mo-
 10 neth / A foole faid the knyghte vnto Arthur / it is in
 veyne thy defyre / for it shalle neuer ben encheued but by me /
 or my next kyn / there with he fterte vnto the kynges hors and
 mounted in to the fadel / and faid gramercy this hors is myn
 owne / wel faid the kyng thow mayft take myn hors by force
 15 but and I myzte preue the whether thow were better on horf-
 bak or I / wel faid the knyght feke me here whan thow wolt
 and here nygh this wel thow shalt fynde me / and soo paffyd
 on his weye / thenne the kyng fat in a study and bad his men
 fetche his hors as fafte as euer they myghte / Ryght soo came
 20 by hym Merlyn lyke a child of xiiij yere of age and falewed
 the kyng / and asked hym why he was fo penyfy / I may wel
 be penyfy fayd the kyng / for I haue fene the merueyllefyzt
 that euer I fawe / that knowe I wel faid Merlyn as wel as
 thy felf and of all thy thoughtes / but thow art but a foole to
 25 take thought / for it wylle not amend the / Also I knowe what
 thow arte / and who was thy fader / and of whome thow were
 begoten / kyng Vtherpendragon was thy fader / and begat the
 on Igrayne / that is fals faid kyng Arthur / how sholdest thou
 knowe it / for thow arte not fo old of yeres to knowe my fa-
 30 der / yes fayd Merlyn I knowe it better than ye or any man
 lyuyng / I wille not bileue the faid Arthur and was wroth
 with the child / Soo departed Merlyn and came ageyne in
 the lykenes of an old man of iiij fcore yere of age / wherof the
 kyng was ryght glad / for he femed to be ryghte wyfe
 35 Thenne faide the old man why are ye fo fad / I maye wel be
 heuy faid Arthur for many thynges / Also here was a chyld
 and told me many thynges that me femeth / he shold not kno-
 we / for he was not of age to knowe my fader / yes faid the old

man / the child told yow trouthe / and more wold he haue
 tolde yow and ye wolde haue suffred hym / But ye haue do-
 ne a thyng late that god is displeafyd with yow / for ye ha-
 ue layne by your fyfter / and on her ye haue gotten a chyld /
 that fhalle destroye yow and all the knyghtes of your realme 5
 What are ye said Arthur that telle me these tydynges / I am
 Merlyn / and I was he in the chilles lykenes / A sayd kyng
 Arthur ye are a merueillous man / but I merueylle moche /
 of thy wordes that I mote dye in bataille / Merueylle not fa-
 id Merlyn / for it is gods wyll youre body to be punysshed for 10
 your fowle dedes / but I may wel be sory said Merlyn / for I
 fhalle dye a shameful deth / to be put in the erthe quyck / and ye
 fhall dye a worshipful deth / And as they talked this / cam one
 with the kynges hors / and so the kyng mounted on his hors
 and Merlyn on another and so rode vnto Carlyon / & anone 15
 the kyng asked Ector and Vlfyus how he was bigoten / &
 they told hym Vtherpendragon was his fader & quene Igray-
 yn his moder / thenne he sayd to Merlyn I wylle that my moder
 be sente for that I may speke with her / And yf she faye so
 her self / thēne wylle I byleue hit / In all hast the quene was 20
 sente for / and she cam & broughte with her Morgan le fay her
 daughter that was as fayre a lady as ony myghte be / & the
 kyng welcomed Igrayne in the best maner /

Ryght soo cam Vlfyus & faide **¶ Capitulum xxj**
 openly that the kyng and all myzt here that were fe- 25
 sted that day / ye are the falsest lady of the world and
 the most traitresse vnto the kynges person / Beware faide Ar-
 thur what thow saist / thow spekest a grete word / I am wel wa-
 re said Vlfyus what I speke / & here is my gloue to preue hit
 vpon ony man that will seye the contrary / that this quene I- 30
 grayne is caufar af your grete damage / & of your grete werre
 For and she wold haue vtterd it in the lyf of kyng Vtherpē-
 dragon of the byrthe of yow / and how ye were begoten ye had
 neuer had the mortal werrys that ye haue had for the moost
 party of your barons of your realme knewe neuer whos sone 35
 ye were / nor of whome ye were begoten / & she that bare yow of
 her body shold haue made it knowen openly in excusyng of her
 worship & yours / & in lyke wyse to alle the reame / wherfor I

preue her fals to god and to yow and to al your realme and
 who wyll faye the contrary I wyll preue it on his body
 Thenne spak Igrayne and sayd I am a woman and I may
 not fyghte / but rather than I shold be dishonoured / ther wold
 5 some good man take my quarel // More she sayd / Merlyn know-
 weth wel and ye fyr Vlkyus how kyng Vther cam to me in
 the Castel of Tyntagaill in the lykenes of my lord that was
 dede thre houres to fore / and therby gat a child that nyght vp-
 on me / And after the xiiij day kyng Vther wedded me / and
 10 by his commaundement whan the child was borne it was de-
 lyuerd vnto Merlyn and nourysshed by hym / and so I fawe
 the child neuer after / nor wote not what is his name / for I
 knewe hym neuer yet / And there Vlkyus saide to the quene
 Merlyn is more to blame than ye / wel I wote saide the quene
 15 I bare a child by my lord kyng Vther / but I wote not where
 he is become / thenne Merlyn toke the kyng by the hand sa-
 yng / this is your moder / and therwith fyr Ector bare wytnes
 how he nourysshed hym by Vthers commaundement / And ther-
 with kyng Arthur toke his moder quene Igrayne in his ar-
 20 mes and kyft her / and eyther wepte vpon other / And thenne
 the kyng lete make a feest that lasted eyght dayes / Thenne on
 a day ther come in the courte a squyer on hors back ledynge a
 knyght before hym wounded to the dethe / and told hym how
 ther was a knyght in the forest had rered vp a paelione by
 25 a well and hath flayne my mayster a good knyght / his na-
 me was mylis / wherfor I byfeche yow that my mayster maye
 be buryed / and that somme knyzt maye reuenge my maysters
 deth / thenne the noyse was grete of that knyghtes dethe in the
 Court / and euery man said his aduys / thenne came Gryflett
 30 that was but a squyer / and he was but yonge of the age of
 the kyng Arthur / soo he besoughte the kyng for alle his seruyse
 that he had done hym to gyue the ordre of knyghthode

¶ Capitulum xxij

THou arte full yong and tendyr of age sayd Arthur
 for to take so hyghe an ordre on the / Sir said gryflet
 35 I byfeche yow make me knyzt / Syr said Merlyn it were gre-
 te pyte to lese Gryflet / for he wille be a passynge good man /
 whanne he is of age / abydyng with yow the terme

me of his lyf / And yf he auenture his body with yonder knyght at the fontayne it is in grete peryll yf euer he come ageyne / for he is one of the best knyghtes of the world / and the strēgyft man of armes / wel said Arthur / so at the desyre of gryflet the kynge made hym knyght / Now said Arthur vnto fyre 5
 Gryflet / Sythen I haue made yow knyghte thow must yeue me a gyfte / what ye will said Gryflet / thou shalt promyse me by the feythe of thy body whan thou hast Iusted with the knyght at the fontayne / whether it falle ye be on foote or on horfbak / that ryght so ye shal come ageyne vnto me withoute ma- 10
 kynge ony more debate / I wyll promyse yow said Gryflet as yow desyre / Thenne toke Gryflet his hors in grete haste / & dresfyd his sheld and toke a spere in his hand / and so he rode a grete wallop tyll he cam to the fontayne / and ther by he sawe a ryche paelion / and ther by vnder a clothe stode a fayr hors 15
 wel fadeled and brydeled / and on a tree a shelde of dyuerse colours and a grete spere / Thenne Gryflet smote on the sheld with the bott of his spere that the shylde felle doune to the ground / with that the knyght cam oute of the paelione / & sayd fair knyght why smote ye doune my sheld / for I wil Iuste 20
 with yow said gryflet / it is better ye doo not sayd the knyghte for ye are but yong and late made knyght / and your myghte is nothyng to myn / as for that faide Gryflet I wyll Iuste with yow / that is me loth said the knyght / but sythen I muste nedes I wille dresse me therto / of whens be ye sayd the knyghte 25
 fyre I am of Arthurs courte / So the two knyghtes ranne to gyder that gryflets spere al to sheuered / and ther with all he smote Gryflet thorowe the shelde & the lyfte fyde / and brake the spere that the troncheon stack in his body / that hors and knyghte fylle doune

¶ Capitulum xxxiii 30

THan the knyght sawe hym lye foo on the ground / he alyght and was passynghe heuy / for he wende he had slayne hym / and thenne he vnlaced his helme and gate hym wynde / and so with the troncheon he fet hym on his hors and gate him wynde / and so bytoke hym to god / and feid he had a 35
 myghty hert and yf he myght lyue he wold preue a passynghe good knyght / & so fyr Gryflet rode to the court where grete doole

was made for hym / But thorowe good leches he was heled /
 and faued / Ryght fo cam in to the Courte xij knyghtes & were
 aged men / and they cam from themperour of Rome / & they af-
 ked of Arthur truage for this realme / other els themperour
 5 wold deftroie hym & his land / wel faid kyng Arthur ye are
 meffagers / therfor ye may fay what ye wil other els ye shold
 dye therefore / But this is myn anfuer I owe themperour noo
 truage nor none will I hold hym / but on a fayr felde I shall
 yeue hym my truage that shal be with a sharp spere / or els
 10 with a sharp fwerd / & that shal not be long by my faders fou-
 le Vtherpendragon / & therwith the meffagers departed passyng-
 gly wroth / & kyng arthur as wroth / for in euyl tyme cam they
 thenne / for the kyng was passyngly wroth for the hurte of sir
 Gryflet / & soo he commaunded a pryuy man of his chambre /
 15 that or hit be day his best hors and armour with all that lon-
 geth vnto his perfone be withoute the cyte or to morowe daye
 Ryght fo or to morow day he met with his man and his hors
 and fo mounted vp and drestid his sheld / & toke his spere
 and bad his chamberlayne tary there tyll he came ageyne /
 20 And fo Arthur roode a softe paas tyll it was day / & thenne
 was he ware of thre chorles chacynge Merlyn / and wold ha-
 ue flayne hym / thenne the kyng rode vnto them / and bad them
 flee chorles / thenne were they aferd whan they sawe a knyght
 and fled / O Merlyn faid Arthur / here haddeft thou be flayne
 25 for all thy craftes had I not byn / Nay faid Merlyn not soo
 for I coude faue my self and I wold / and thou arte more
 nere thy deth than I am for thow goft to the deth ward & god
 be not thy frend / So as they wente thus talkyng / they came
 to the fontayne / and the ryche paelione there by hit / thenne
 30 kyng Arthur was ware where fat a knyght armed in a cha-
 yer / Syr knyght faid Arthur / for what cause abydest thou here
 that ther maye no knyght ryde this wey but yf he Iuste wyth
 the faid the kyng / I rede the leue that custome faid Arthur
 This customme faide the knyght haue I vsed and wille vse
 35 magre who faith nay / & who is greued with my custome / lete
 hym amende hit that wol / I wil amende it faid Arthur / I shal
 defende the faid the knyght / anon he toke his hors & drestid his
 shylde & toke a spere & they met fo hard either in others sheldes

that al to sheuered their sperys / ther with anone Arthur pul-
 led oute his fwerd / nay not so said the knyght / it is fayrer fay-
 yd the knyzt that we tweyne renne more to gyders with sharp
 sperys / I wille wel said Arthur and I had ony mo sperys 5
 I haue ynow said the knyzt / so ther cam a squyer and brouzt
 in good sperys / and Arthur chofe one & he another / so they spo-
 red their horfes & cam to gyders with al the myghtes / that ey-
 ther brak her speres to her handes / thenne Arthur sette hand on
 his fwerd / nay feid the knyght / ye shal do better / ye are a pas- 10
 fyng good Iuster as euer I mette with al / & ones for the loue
 of the hyghe ordre of knyzthode lete vs Iuste ones ageyn / I af-
 sente me said Arthur / anone there were brought two grete spe-
 rys / and euery knyght gat a spere / and therwith they ranne
 to gyders that Arthurs spere al to sheuered / But the other 15
 knyghte hyt hym so hard in myddes of the shelde / that horse &
 man felle to the erthe / and ther with Arthur was egre & pul-
 led oute his fwerd / and said I will assay the fyr knyghte on
 foote / for I haue lost the honour on horsbak / I will be on hors-
 bak said the knyght / thenne was Arthur wrothe and dressid 20
 his sheld toward hym with his fwerd drawn / whan the kny-
 ght sawe that / he a lyghte / for hym thought no worship to ha-
 ue a knyght at fuche auaille he to be on horsbak and he on foot
 and so he alyght & dressid his sheld vnto Arthur & ther begā
 a strong bataille with many grete strokes / & soo hewe with her 25
 fwerdes that the cantels flewe in the feldes / and moche blood
 they bledde bothe / that al the place there as they faught was
 ouer bledde with blood / and thus they fought long and rested
 hem / and thenne they wente to the batayl ageyne / and so hurt-
 led to gyders lyke two rammes that eyther felle to the erthe 30
 So at the last they smote to gyders that both her fwerdys met
 euen to gyders / But the fwerd of the knyght smote kyng ar-
 thurs fwerd in two pyeces / wherfor he was heuy / thenne said
 the knyghte vnto Arthur / thow arte in my daunger whether
 me lyft to faue the or flee the / and but thou yelde the as ouer- 35
 come and recreaunt / thow shalt deye / as for deth said kyng ar-
 thur welcome be it whan it cometh / But to yelde me vnto the
 as recreaunt I had leuer dye than to be soo shamed / And
 ther with al the kyng lepte vnto Pellinore & tooke hym by

the myddel and threwe hym doune and raced of his helme /
 Whan the knyght felt that / he was adrad / for he was paf-
 fyng bygge man of myghte / and anone he broughte Arthur
 vnder hym / and reaced of his helme and wold haue smyten of
 5 his hede /

¶ Capitulum xxiiiij

THer with all came Merlyn and fayd knyghte / hold
 thy hand / For and thou flee that knyghte thou put-
 test this reame in the gretteft dammage that euer was
 reame / For this knyght is a man of more worship than thou
 10 wotest of / Why / who is he said the knyghte / it is kyng Arthur
 Thenne wold he haue slayn hym for drede of his wrathe / and
 heue vp his fwerd / and therwith Merlyn cast an enchaunte-
 ment to the knyghte that he felle to the erthe in a grete slepe /
 Thenne Merlyn tooke vp kyng Arthur and rode forth on the
 15 knyghtes hors / Allas said Arthur what hast thou done merlyn
 hast thou slayne this good knyghte by thy craftes / there ly-
 ueth not soo worshipful a knyghte as he was / I had leuer
 than the stynte of my land a yere that he were on lyue / care ye
 not sayd Merlyn / for he is holer than ye / for he is but on slepe
 20 and will awake within thre houres / I told you said Merlyn
 what a knyghte he was / Here had ye be slayn had I not ben
 Also ther lyueth not a bygger knyght than he is one / and he
 shal here after do yow ryght good feruyse & his name is Pel-
 linore / and he shal haue two fones that shal be passyng good
 25 men fauf one / they shalle haue no felawe or prowesse and of
 good lyuynge / and her names shal be Persyual of walys / &
 Lamerak of walis / & he shal telle yow the name of your own
 sone bygoten of your fyfter that shal be the destruction of alle

this royame

¶ Capitulum xxv

Ryghte so the kyng and he departed & wente vn tyl an
 30 ermyte that was a good man and a grete leche / Soo
 the heremyte serched all his woundys & gaf hym good salues
 so the kyng was there thre dayes & thenne were his woundes
 wel amendyd that he myght ryde and goo / & so departed / & as
 35 they rode Arthur said I haue no fwerd / no force said Merlyn
 here by is a fwerd that shalle be yours and I may / Soo they
 rode tyl they came to a lake the whiche was a fayr water / and
 brood / And in the myddes of the lake Arthur was ware of

an arme clothed in whyte famyte / that held a fayr fwerd in
 that hand / loo faid Merlyn yonder is that fwerd that I spak
 of / with that they fawe a damoifel goyng vpon the lake / what
 damoyfel is that faid Arthur / that is the lady of the lake faid
 Merlyn / And within that lake is a roche / and theryn is as 5
 fayr a place as ony on erthe and rychely befene / and this da-
 moyfell wylle come to yow anone / and thenne speke ye fayre
 to her that she will gyue yow that fwerd / Anone with all ca-
 me the damoyfel vnto Arthur / and falewed hym / and he her a-
 geyne / Damoyfel faid Arthur / what fwerd is that / that yon- 10
 der the arme holdeth aboute the water / I wold it were myne /
 for I haue no fwerd / Syr Arthur kyng faid the damoyfell /
 that fwerd is myn / And yf ye will gyue me a yefte whan
 I aske it yow / ye shal haue it by my feyth faid Arthur / I
 will yeue yow what yefte ye will aske / wel faid the damoifel 15
 go ye into yonder barge / & rowe your self to the fwerd / and
 take it / and scaubart with yow / & I will aske my yefte whan
 I see my tyme / So fyr Arthur & merlyn alyght & tayed the-
 ir horfes to two trees / & so they went in to the ship / & whanne
 they came to the fwerd that the hand held / fyre Arthur toke 20
 it vp by the handels / & toke it with hym / & the arme & the hād
 went vnder the water / & so come vnto the lond & rode forth / &
 thēne fyr Arthur fawe a ryche paelion / what fygnfyeth yō-
 der paelion / þ^t is þ^e knyghtes paelion seid merlyn þ^t ye fouzt
 with laft / fyr Pellinore / but he is out / he is not there / he hath a- 25
 doo with a knyght of yours that hyght Egglame / & they ha-
 ue fouzten to gyder / but al the laft Egglame fledde and els
 he had ben dede / & he hath chaced hym euen to Carlyon / and we
 shal mete with hym anon in the hygh wey / that is wel sayd /
 faid Arthur / now haue I a fwerd / now wille I wage bata- 30
 ill with hym & be auenged on hym / fir ye shal not so faid Mer-
 lyn / for the knyght is wery of fyghtyng & chacyng so that ye
 shal haue no worship to haue a do with hym / Also he will not
 be lyztly matched of one knyzt lyuyng / & therfor it is my co-
 unceil / lete hym passe / for he shal do you good seruyse in shorte 35
 tyme & his fones after his dayes / Also ye shal see that day in
 short space ye shal be rīzt glad to yeue him your sīster to wedde
 Whan I see hym I wil doo as ye aduyse sayd Arthur

Thenne fyre Arthur loked on the fwerd / and lyked it paf-
 fyngel wel / whether lyketh yow better fayd Merlyn the fuerd
 or the fcaubard / Me lyketh better the fwerd fayd Arthur / ye
 are more vnwyfe fayd Merlyn / for the fcaubard is worth x
 5 of the fwerdys / for whyles ye haue the fcaubard vpon yow
 ye fhalle neuer lefe no blood / be ye neuer fo fore wounded ther-
 for kepe wel the fcaubard alweyes with yow / fo they rode vn-
 to Carlyon / and by the way they met with fyr Pellinore / but
 Merlyn had done fuche a crafte / that pellinore fawe not Ar-
 10 thur / and he pafte by withoute ony wordes / I merueylle fayd
 Arthur that the knyght wold not fpeke / fyr faid Merlyn / he
 fawe yow not / for and he had fene yow ye had not lyghtly
 departed / Soo they come vnto Carlyon / wherof his knygh-
 tes were paffyngel glad / And whanne they herd of his auen-
 15 tures / they merueilled that he wold ieoparde his perfone foo
 al one / But alle men of worfhip faid it was mery to be vnder
 fuche a chyuetayne that wolde put his perfone in auenture as
 other poure knyghtes dyd /

¶ Capitulum xxviij

THis meane whyle came a meffager from kynge Ry-
 20 ons of Northwalys / And kynge he was of all Ire-
 land and of many Iles / And this was his meffage gre-
 tyngel wel kynge Arthur in this manere wyfe fayenge / that
 kynge Ryons had difcomfyte and ouercome xj kynges / and
 eueryche of hem did hym homage / and that was this / they gaf
 25 hym their berdys clene flayne of / as moche as ther was / wher
 for the meffager came for kyng Arthurs berd / For kyng Ry-
 ons had purfyled a mantel with kynges berdes / and there
 lacked one place of the mantel / wherfor he fente for his berd
 or els he wold entre in to his landes / and brenne and flee / &
 30 neuer leue tyl he haue the hede and the berd / wel fayd Arthur
 thow haft faid thy meffage / the whiche is the moft vylaynous
 and lewdeft meffage that euer man herd fente vnto a kynge /
 Also thow mayft fee / my berd is ful yong yet to make a pur-
 fyl of hit / But telle thow thy kynge this / I owe hym none
 35 homage / ne none of myn elders / but or it be longe to / he fhall do
 me homage on bothe his kneys / or els he fhall lefe his hede by
 the feith of my body / for this is the moft fhamefulleft meffage

that euer I herd speke of / I haue aspyed / thy kyng met neuer yet with worshipful man / but telle hym / I wyll haue his hede withoute he doo me homage / thenne the messager departed

¶ Now is there ony here said Arthur that knoweth kyng Ryons thenne anfuerd a knyght that hyght Naram / Syre I knowe the kynge wel / he is a passyng good man of his body / as fewe ben lyuyng / and a passyng prowde man / and sir doubt ye not / he wille make warre on yow with a myghty puyffance / wel said Arthur I shall ordeyne for hym in short tyme

¶ Capitulum xxviii

THēne kyng arthur lete sende for al the childrē born on may day begotē of lordes & born of ladyes / for Merlyn told kynge Arthur that he that shold destroye hym / shold be borne in may day / wherfor he sent for hem all vpon payn of deth and so ther were founde many lordes fones / and all were sente vnto the kynge / and soo was Mordred sente by kyng Lottys wyf / and all were put in a ship to the see / and some were iiij wekes old and some lasse / And so by fortune the ship drofe vnto a castel and was al to ryuen and destroyed the most part sauf that Mordred was cast vp and a good man fonde hym / and nourysshed hym tyl he was xiiij yere olde / & thenne he brought hym to the Court / as it reherceth afterward toward the ende of the deth of Arthur / So many lordes and barons of this reame were displeasyd / for her children were so lost / and many put the wyte on Merlyn more than on Arthur / so what for drede and for loue they helde their pees / But whanne the messager came to kynge Ryons / thenne was he woode oute of mesure and purueyed hym for a grete hoost as it rehercyth after in the book of Balyn le faueage that foloweth next after / how by aduenture Balyn gat the swerd

¶ Explicit liber primus

¶ Incipit liber secundus



After the dethe of Vtherpendragon regned Arthur his sone / the whiche had grete werre in his dayes for to gete al Englonde in to his hand / For there were many kynges within the realme of Englonde and in walyes / Scotland and Cornewaille / Soo it befelle on a tyme / whanne kyng Arthur

was at London ther came a knyght and tolde the kynge ty-
 dynges how that the kynge Ryons of Northwalys had rered
 a grete nombre of peple / and were entryd in to the land and
 brente and flewe the kynges true liege peple / yf this be true fa-
 5 id Arthur / it were grete shame vnto myn estate / but that he we-
 re myghtely withstand / it is trouthe sayd the knyghte / for I
 fawe the hooft my self / wel faide the kynge / lete make a crye /
 that all the lordes knyghtes and gentylnen of armes shold
 drawe vnto a castel called Camelot in tho dayes / and ther the
 10 kynge wold lete make a counceil general and a grete Iustes
 So whan the kynge was come thyder with all his baronage
 and lodged as they semed best / ther was come a damoifel the
whiche was fente on message from the grete lady hylle of aue-
lyon / And whan she came bifore kynge Arthur / she told from
 15 whome she came / and how she was sent on message vnto hym
 for these causes Thenne she lete her mantel falle that was ry-
 chely furred / And thenne was she gyrd with a noble sward
 wherof the kynge had merueill / and said Damoyfel for what
 cause are ye gyrd with that sward / it bifemeth yow not /
 20 Now shall I telle yow said the damoyfel / This sward that I
 am gyrd with al doth me grete forowe and comberaunce / for I
 may not be delyuerd of this sward / but by a knyghte / but he
 must be a passyng good man of his handes and of his dedes
 and withoute vylonye or trecherye and withoute treason / And
 25 yf I maye fynde fuche a knyghte that hath all these vertues /
 he may drawe oute this sward oute of the shethe / for I haue
 ben at kyng Ryons / it was told me ther were passyng good
 knyghtes / and he and alle his knyghtes haue assayed it and
 none can spede / This is a grete merueill said Arthur / yf this
 30 be sothe / I wille my self assaye to drawe oute the sward / not
 presumynge vpon my self that I am the best knyghte / but
 that I will begynne to drawe at your sward in gyuyng exam-
 ple to alle the Barons that they shall assay euerychone after
 other whan I haue assayed it / Thenne Arthur toke the sward
 35 by the shethe and by the gyrdel and pulled at it egrely / but
 the sward wold not oute / ¶ Sire seid the damoyfell ye ne-
 de not to pulle half so hard / for he that shall pulle it out shal
 do it with lytel myghte / ye say wel said Arthur / Now assaye

ye al my barons / but beware ye be not defoyled with shame tre-
 chery ne gyle / thenne it wille not auaylle fayd the damoyfell /
 for he must be a clene knyght withoute vylony and of a gentil
 strene of fader fyde and moder fyde / Moost of all the barons of
 the round table that were there at that tyme affayed alle by 5
 rewe / but ther myght non spede / wherfor the damoyfel made
 grete forow oute of mesure and fayd Allas I wende in this
 Courte had ben the best knyghtes withoute trechery or trefon /
 By my feythe fayth Arthur here are good knyghtes as I de-
 me as ony ben in the world / but theyr grace is not to helpe 10
 yow / wherfor I am displeasyd

¶ Capitulum ij

THenne felle hit soo that tyme / ther was a poure kny-
 ght with kyng Arthur / that had byn prysoner with
 hym half a yere & more for sleynge of a knyghte / the
 whiche was cofyn vnto kyng Arthur / the name of this kny- 15
 ght was called Balen / and by good meanes of the barons
 he was delyuerd oute of pryson / for he was a good man na-
 med of his body / and he was borne in northumberland / and
 soo he wente pryuely in to the Courte / and sawe this aduen-
 ture / werof hit reyfed his herte / and wolde affaye it as other 20
 knyghtes dyd / but for he was poure and pourely arayed he
 put hym not ferre in prees / But in his herte he was fully af-
 fured to doo as wel yf his grace happed hym as ony knyght
 that there was / And as the damoyfel toke her leue of Arthur
 and of alle the barons so departyng / this knyght Balen cal- 25
 led vnto her and fayd Damoyfel I praye yow of your cur-
 tofye / suffre me as wel to affay as these lordes though that I
 be so pourely clothed / in my herte me semeth I am fully affu-
 red as somme of these other / And me semeth in my herte to
 spede ryght wel / The damoyfel beheld the poure knyght / and 30
 sawe he was a lykely man / but for his poure arrayment she
 thoughte he shold be of no worship withoute vylonye or tre-
 chery / And thēne she fayd vnto the knyght / sir it nedeth not to
 put me to more payn or labour / for it semeth not yow to spe-
 de there as other haue failed / A fayr Damoyfel said Balen 35
 worthynes and good tatches and good dedes are not only in
 arrayment / but manhood and worship is hyd within mans
 persone and many a worshipful knyghte is not knowen vn-

to alle people / and therefore worship and hardynesse is not in
 arayment / By god sayd the damoyfel ye fay sothe / therfor ye
 shal affaye to do what ye may / Thenne Balen took the swerd
 by the gyrdel and shethe / and drewe it out easly / and when
 5 he loked on the swerd hit pleasyd hym moche / thenne had the
 kynge and alle the barons grete merueille that Balen hadde
 done that auenture / many knyghtes had grete despyte af Ba-
 len / Certes said the damoyfel / this is a passynge good knyght
 and the best that euer I found and moost of worship with-
 10 oute trefon / trechery or vylony / and many merueylles shalle he
 do / Now gentyl and curtois knyght yeue me the swerd ayene
 nay said Balen / for this swerd wyll I kepe but it be taken
 from me with force / wel faide the damoyfel ye are not wyfe to
 kepe the swerd from me / for ye shalle flee with the swerd the
 15 best frende that ye haue and the man that ye mooste loue in the
 world / and the swerd shalle be your destruction / I shal take
 the aduenture sayd Balen that god wille ordeyne me / but the
 swerd ye shalle not haue at this tyme by the feythe of my bo-
 dy / ye shalle repente hit within short tyme sayd the damoyfel /
 20 For I wold haue the swerd more for your auaylle than for
 myne / for I am passyng heuy for your sake / For ye wil not
 byleue that swerd shal be youre destruction / and that is grete
 pyte / with that the damoyfel departed makynge grete sorowe /
 Anone after Balen fente for his hors and armour / and soo
 25 wold departe fro the Courte and toke his leue of kynge Ar-
 thur / nay sayd the kynge I suppose ye wyll not departe so liz-
 tely fro this felauship / I suppose ye are displeased that I ha-
 ue shewed yow vnkyndenes / Blame me the lasse / for I was
 mys fenformed ageynst yow / but I wende ye had not ben suche
 30 a knyght as ye are of worship and prowesse / and yf ye wyll
 abyde in this courte among my felauship / I shalle so auau-
 ce yow as ye shalle be pleased / god thanke your hyhenes said
 Balen / your bounte and hyhenes may no man preyse half to
 the valewe / but at this tyme I must nedes departe / byfechyng
 35 yow alwey of your good grace / Truly said the kynge I am
 ryght wrothe for your departyng / I pray yow faire knyghte /
 that ye tary not long / and ye shal be ryght welcome to me / &
 to my barons / and I shalle amende all myffe that I haue

done ageynst yow / god thanke your grete lordship said Balen / and therwith made hym redy to departe / Thenne the moost party of the knyghtes of the round table fayd that Balen did not this auenture al only by myghte but by wytchecraft

¶ Capitulum Tercium

THe meane whyle that this knyght was making hym 5
redy to departe / there came in to the Court a lady that
hyght the lady of the lake / And she came on horsback rychely
byfene / and salewed kynge Arthur / and there asked hym a
yeste that he promysed her whan she gaf hym the swerd / that
is sothe said Arthur / a gyfte I promysed yow / but I haue 10
forgoten the name of my swerd that ye gaue me / The name
of it said the lady is Excalibur that is as moche to say as cut
stele / ye faye wel said the kynge / Aske what ye wil and ye
shall haue it / and hit lye in my power to yeue hit / wel fayd
the lady / I aske the heede of the knyghte that hath wonne 15
the swerd / or els the damoyfels heede that broughte hit / I
take no force though I haue bothe their hedes / for he slewe my
broder a good knyghte and a true / and that gentilwoman was
caufar of my faders deth / Truly said kynge Arthur I maye
not graunte neyther of her hedes with my worfhip / therfor af- 20
ke what ye wille els / and I shall fulfille your desyre / I wil
aske none other thyng said the lady / whan Balyn was redy
to departe he sawe the lady of the lake that by her menes had
slayne Balyns moder and he had foughte her thre yeres / and
whan it was told hym that she asked his hede of kynge Ar- 25
thur he went to her streyte and said euyl be you foude / ye wold
haue my hede / and therefore ye shall lese yours / and with hys
swerd lyghtly he smote of hir hede before kynge Arthur / al-
las for shame fayd Arthur why haue ye done so / ye haue sha-
med me and al my Courte / for this was a lady that I was 30
be holden to / and hyther she came vnder my fauf conduyte / I
shalle neuer foryeue you that trespas / Sir said Balen me for-
thynketh of your displeasyr / for this same lady was the vn-
truest lady lyuyng / and by enchaument and forffery she
hath ben the destroyer of many good knyghtes / and she was 35
caufer that my moder was brente thorow her falskede and tre-
chery / what cause soo euer ye had said Arthur ye shold haue

forborne her in my presence / therfor thynke not the contrary ye
 fhalle repente it / for fuche another despyte had I neuer in my
 Courte / therfor withdrawe yow oute of my Courte in al haft
 that ye may / Thenne Balen toke vp the heed of the lady and
 5 bare it with hym to his hoftry / and there he met with his fquyer
 er that was fory he had displeafyd kyng Arthur / and fo they
 rode forth oute of the town / Now faid Balen we muft depar-
 te / take thow this hede and bere it to my frendys / and telle hem
 how I haue fped / and telle my frendys in Northumberland
 10 that my moft foo is deed / Also telle hem how I am oute of pry-
 fon / and what auēture befelle me at the getyng of this fwerd
 Allas faid the fquyar ye are gretely to blame for to difpleafe
 kyng Arthur / as for that faid Balen I wylle hyhe me in al
 the haft that I may to mete with kyng Ryons and deftroye
 15 hym eyther els or dye therfor / and yf it may happe me to wyn-
 ne hym / thenne wille kyng Arthur be my good and gracious
 lord / where fhall I mete with yow faide the fquyer / in kyng
 Arthurs Court faid Balen / fo his fquyer and he departed
 at that tyme / thenne kyng Arthur and alle the Court made
 20 grete doole and had fhame of the deth of the lady of the lake

Athenne the kyng buryed her rychely ¶ **Capitulum iiii**
 T that tyme ther was a knyghte / the whiche was the
 kynges fone of Irelond and his name was Launce-
 or / the whiche was an orgulous knyzt / and counted hym felf
 25 one of the beft of the Courte / and he had grete despyte at Ba-
 len for the encheuyng of the fwerd that ony fhould be acoun-
 ted more hardy or more of prowefse / and he asked kyng Ar-
 thur yf he wold gyue hym leue to ryde after Balen and to re-
 uenge the despyte that he had done / Doo your beft faid Arthur
 30 I am right wroth faid Balen I wold he were quyte of the
 despyte that he hath done to me and to my Courte / Thenne this
 Launceor wente to his hoftry to make hym redy / In the meane
 whyle cam Merlyn vnto the Court of kyng Arthur and there
 was told hym the aduenture of the fwerd and the deth of the
 35 lady of the lake / Now fhall I faye yow faid Merlyn / this fa-
 me damoyfel that here standeth that broughte the fwerde vnto
 your Court / I fhalle telle yow the caufe of her comyng / she
 was the falfeft damoyfel that lyueth / fay not fo faid they / She

hath a broder a passyng good knyght of prowesse and a ful true man / and this damoyfel loued another knyght that helde her to peramour / and this good knyght her broder mett with the knyght that held her to peramour and flewe hym by force of his handes / whan this fals damoyfel vnderstood thys / she 5 wente to the lady lyle of Auelione / and befought her of help / to be auenyngd on her owne broder

A Capitulum quintum

And so this lady lyle of Auelion toke her this swerd that she broughte with her / and told there shold noo man pulle it oute of the sheathe but yf he be one of the 10 best knyghtes of this reame / and he shold be hard and ful of prowesse / and with that swerd he shold flee her broder / this was the cause that the damoyfel came in to this Courte / I knowe it as wel as ye / wolde god she had nat comen in to thys Courte / but she came neuer in felauship of worship to do go- 15 od but alweyes grete harme / and that knyght that hath encheued the swerd shal be destroyed by that swerd / for the whiche wil be grete dommage / for ther lyueth not a knyzt of more prowesse than he is / and he shalle do vnto yow my lord Arthur grete honour and kyndenesse / and it is grete pyte he shall not endure 20 but a whyle / for of his strengthe and hardynesse I knowe not his matche lyuyng / Soo the knyght of Irelonde armed hym at al poyntes / and dresseid his shelde on his sholder and mounted vpon horsback and toke his spere in his hand / and rode after a grete paas as moche as his hors myght goo / and 25 within a lytel space on a montayne he had a fyghte of Balyn / and with a lowde voys he cryed abyde knyght / for ye shal abyde whether ye will or nyll / and the sheld that is to fore you shalle not helpe / whan Balyn herd the noyse / he tourned his hors fyerly / and saide faire knyghte what wille ye with me / 30 wille ye Iuste with me / ye saide the Iryfhe knyghte / therfor come I after yow / paraenture saide Balyn it had ben better to haue hold yow at home / for many a man weneth to putte his enemy to a rebuke / and ofte it falleth to hym self / of what courte be ye sente fro saide Balyn / I am come fro the Courte of 35 kyng Arthur sayd the knyghte of Irlond / that come hyder for to reuenge the despyte ye dyd this day to kyng arthur

and to his courte / wel said Balyn / I fee wel I muft haue
 adoo with yow that me forthynketh for to greue kyng arthur
 or ony of his courte / and your quarel is ful fymple said Ba-
 lyn vnto me / for the lady that is dede / dyd me grete domma-
 5 ge or els wold I haue ben lothe as ony knyghte that lyueth
 for to flee a lady / Make yow redy fayd the knyght launceor /
 and dresse yow vnto me / for that one fhalle abyde in the feld
 thenne they toke their fperes / and cam to gyders as moche as
 their horfes myght dryue / and the Iryffe knyght smote Ba-
 10 lyn on the fheld that alle wente sheuers of his fpere / & Ba-
 lyn hyt hym thourgh the fheld / and the hauberk peryffhed / &
 fo percyd thurgh his body and the hors croppe / and anon tor-
 ned his hors fyerfly and drewe oute his fwerd and wyfte
 not that he had flayn hym / and thenne he fawe hym lye as a
 15 dede corps

¶ Capitulum vi

THenne he loked by hym and was ware of a damoyfel
 that came ryde ful fast as the hors myghte ryde on a
 fayr palfroy / and whan she afpyed that launceor was
 flayne / she made forowe oute of mefure and fayd O Balyn
 20 two bodyes thou haft flayne and one herte and two hertes in
 one body / and two foules thow haft loft / And therwith she toke
 the fwerd from her loue that lay ded and fylle to the ground
 in a fwowne / And whan she aroos she made grete dole out of
 mefure / the whiche forowe greued Balyn paffyngly fore / and
 25 he wente vnto her for to haue taken the fwerd oute of her hād
 but she helde it fo fast / he myghte not take it oute of her hand
 onles he shold haue hurte her / and fodenly she fette the pomell
 to the ground / and rofe her felf thorow the body / whan balyn
 afpyed her dedes he was paffynge heuy in his herte and afha-
 30 med that fo fair a damoyfell had destroyed her felf for the loue
 of his deth / Allas said Balyn me repēteth fore the deth of this
 knyght for the loue of this damoyfel / for ther was moche true
 loue betwixe them bothe / and for forowe myght not lenger be-
 hold hym but torned his hors and loked toward a grete forest
 35 and ther he was ware by the armes of his broder Balan / and
 whan they were mette they putte of her helmes and kyffed to
 gyders and wepte for ioye and pyte / Thenne Balan fayd / I

lytel wende to haue met with yow at this fodayne auenture / I
 am ryght glad of your delyueraunce and of youre dolorous
 pryfonement / for a mā told me in the castel of four stones that
 ye were delyuerd / & that man had fene you in the court of ky-
 nge Arthur / & therfor I cam hyder in to this countrey / for he 5
 re I supposed to fynde you / anon the knyzt balyn told his bro-
 der of his aduenture of the swerd & of the deth of the lady of
 the lake / & how kyng arthur was displeafyd with hym wher-
 for he sente this knyzt after me that lyeth here dede / & the dethe
 of this damoyfel greueth me fore / so doth it me said Balan / but 10
 ye must take the aduenture that god will ordeyne yow / Tru-
 ly said Balyn I am ryght heuy that my lord Arthur is dis-
 pleafyd with me / for he is the moost worshipful knyght that
 regneth now on erthe / & his loue will I gete or els I wil put
 my lyf in auenture / for the kyng Ryons lyeth at a fyege atte 15
 castel Tarabil & thyder will we drawe in all haft to preue our
 worship & prowesse vpon hym / I wil wel said Balan that we
 do & we wil helpe eche other as bretheren ouzt to do / ¶ **Ca vij**

Now go we hens said balyn & wel be we met / the me-
 ne whyle as they talked ther cam a dwarf from the cy- 20
 te of camelot on horfbak as moche as he myght & foud
 the dede bodyes / wherfor he made grete dole & pulled out his he-
 re for sorou & faide which of you knyzttes haue done this dede /
 where by askest thou it said balan / for I wold wete it said the
 dwarfe / it was I said balyn that flewe this knyght in my de- 25
 fendaūt for hyder he cam to chaace me & other I must flee hym
 or he me / & this damoyfel flewe her self for his loue whiche re-
 penteth me / & for her sake I shal owe al wymmen the better lo-
 ue / Allas said the dwarf thow haft done grete dommage vnto
 thy self / for this knyght that is here dede was one of the most 30
 valyaunts men that lyued / and trust wel balyn the kynne of
 this knyght wille chace yow thorowe the world tyl they haue
 slayne yow / As for that sayd Balyn I fere not gretely / but
 I am ryght heuy that I haue displeafyd my lord kyng ar-
 thur for the deth of this knyght / Soo as they talked to gy- 35
 ders there came a kynge of Cornewaille rydyng / the whiche
 hyghte kynge Mark / ¶ And whanne he fawe these two body-
 es dede and vnderstood hou they were dede by the ij knyghtes

about faide / thenne maade the kynge grete forowe for the true
 loue that was betwix them / & said I wil not departe tyl I haue
 on this erthe made a tombe / and there he pyght his paulions
 and foughte thurgh alle the countrey to fynde a tombe / and in
 5 a chirche they found one was fair and ryche / & thenne the ky-
 nge lete put hem bothe in the erthe & put the tombe vpon hem /
 and wrote the names of them bothe on the tombe / How here ly-
 eth launceor the kynges sone of Irlond that at his owne re-
 quest was slayne by the handes of balyn / & how his lady co-
 10 lombe and peramour slewe her self with her loues fwerd for
 dole and forowe

¶ Capitulum viij

THe mene whyle as this was a doying / in cam merlyn
 to kyng mark seyng alle his doynge said / Here shalle
 be in this fame place the grettest bataille betwixt two
 15 knyghtes that was or euer shal be / and the truest louers / and
 yet none of hem shalle flee other / and there Merlyn wrote her
 names vpon the tombe with letters of gold that shold fyghte
 in that place / whos names were Launcelot de lake / and Tryf-
 tram / thow art a merueillous man faide kynge Marke vnto
 20 Merlyn that spekest of fuche merueilles / thou art a boyftous
 man and an vnlykely to telle of fuche dedes / what is thy na-
 me said kynge Marke / at this tyme said Merlyn I will not
 telle / but at that tyme whan fyr Trystram is taken with his
 fouerayne lady / thenne ye shalle here and knowe my name / &
 25 at that tyme ye shal here tydynges that shal not please yow /
 Thenne said merlyn to balyn thou hast done thy self grete hurt
 by cause that thow fauest not this lady that slewe her self that
 myght haue faued her & thow woldest / by the feyth of my body
 fayd balyn I myght not faue her for she slewe her self sodenly
 30 Me repenteth faide Merlyn by cause of the dethe of that lady
 thou shalt sryke a stroke most dolorous that euer man stroke
 excepte the stroke of oure lorde / for thou shalt hurte the truest
 knyzt & the man of most worship that now lyueth / & thorow
 that stroke iij kyngdoms shal be in grete pouerte myfere & wret-
 35 chidnes xij yere / & the knyzt shal not be hool of that woūd ma-
 ny yeres / thēne merlyn toke his leue of balyn & balen said yf
 I wist it were soth that ye say I shold do fuche peryllous dede
 as that I wold flee my self to make the a lyar / therwith merlyn

vanysshed away sodenly / and thenne balyn and his broder to-
 ke her leue of kyng Mark / fyrst said the kyng telle me yo-
 ur name / fyr said Balen ye may see he bereth two swerdes ther
 by ye may calle hym the knyght with the two swerdes & soo
 departed kyng marke vnto camelot to kyng Arthur & balyn 5
 toke the wey toward kyng Ryons / and as they rode to gyder
 they mett with Merlyn desguyfed / but they knewe hym not /
 whyder ryde yow said Merlyn / we haue lytel to do saide the ij
 knyzttes to telle the / but what is thy name said Balen at this
 tyme said Merlyn I will not telle it the / it is euyl fene said 10
 the knyghtes that thou art a true man that thou wolt not tel-
 le thy name / as for that sayd Merlyn / be hit / as it be may I
 can telle yow wherfor ye ryde this wey for to mete kyng Ry-
 ons but it will not auaille you without ye haue my counceill
 A said Balyn ye are Merlyn we wyl be rulyd by your cou- 15
 ceill / come on said Merlyn ye shal haue grete worship & loke
 that ye do knyztely for ye shal haue grete nede / as for that fa-
 id Balen drede yow not we will do what we may /

¶ Capitulum ix

THenne Merlyn lodged them in a wode amonge leuys
 besyde the hyhe way & toke of the brydels of their hor- 20
 ses & put hem to gras & leid hem down to reste hem tulle
 it was nyhe mydnyzt / Thenne Merlyn badde hem ryse / & make
 hem redy / for the the kyng was nygh them that was stolen a-
 wey from his hooft with a iij score horses of his best knyzttes &
 xx of hem rode to fore to warne the lady de Vance that the ky- 25
 ng was comyng / for that nyzt kyng Ryons shold haue layn
 with her / whiche is the kyng said Balyn / abyde said Merlyn
 here in a streyte wey ye shal mete with hym & therwith he she-
 wed Balyn & his broder where he rode / anon balyn & his bro-
 der mette with the kyng & smote hym doune & wounded hym 30
 fyrstly & leid hym to the ground / & there they slewe on the ry-
 ght hand & the lyfte hand & slewe moo than xl of his men / &
 the remenaunt fled / thenne went they ageyne to kyng Ryons
 & wold haue slayn hym had he not yelded hym vnto her grace
 Thenne said he thus knyghtes ful of prowesse flee me not / for 35
 by my lyf ye may wynne / & by my dethe ye shalle wynne noo
 thyng / Thenne sayd these two knyghtes ye say sothe & trowth

and fo leyd hym on on hors lyttar / with that Merlyn was
 vanyffhed and came to kyng Arthur afore hand & told hym
 how his most enemy was taken and discomfyted / by whome
 faid kyng Arthur / by two knyghtes faid Merlyn that wold
 5 pleafe your lordship / and to morowe ye fhalle knowe what
 knyghtes they are / Anone after cam the knyght with the two
 fwerdes and balan his broder / and brought with hem kyng
 Ryons of Northwalys and there delyuerd hym to the porters
 and charged hem with hym / & foo they two retorned ageyne
 10 in the daunying of the day / kyng Arthur cam thenne to kyng
 Ryons and faid Syr kyng ye are welcome / by what auen-
 ture come ye hyder / fyr faid kyng Ryons I cam hyther by an
 hard auenture / who wanne yow faid kyng Arthur / fyre faid
 the kyng the knyght with the two fwerdes & his broder whi-
 15 che are two merueillous knyghtes of prowesse / I knowe hem
 not fayd arthur but moche I am beholden to them / A faid mer-
 lyn I fhall telle yow it is balen that encheued the fwerd & his
 broder balan a good knyght / ther lyueth not a better of pro-
 wesse & of worthynesse / and it fhall be the gretteft dole of hym
 20 that euer I knewe of knyght / for he fhalle not long endure /
 Allas faide kyng Arthur that is grete pyte for I am moche
 beholdyng vnto hym / & I haue yll deserued it vnto hym for his
 kyndenes / nay faid Merlyn he fhall do moche more for yow /
 and that fhall ye knowe in haft / but fyr are ye purueyed faid
 25 Merlyn for to morne the hooft of Nero kyng Ryons broder
 wille fette on yow or none with a grete hooft and therfor ma-
 ke yow redy for I wyl departe from yow

¶ Capitulum x

THenne kyng Arthur made redy his hooft in x batails
 and Nero was redy in the felde afore the castel Ta-
 30 rabil with a grete hooft / & he had x batails with many mo pe-
 ple than Arthur had / Thenne Nero had the vaward with the
 mooft party of his peple / & merlyn cam to kyng lot of the yle
 of Orkeney / and helde hym with a tale of prophecye til Nero
 and his peple were destroyed / & ther fyr kay the fencyal dyd
 35 paffyngly wel that the dayes of his lyf the worship went ne-
 uer frō hym & fir heruys de reuel did merueillous dedes with

with kyng Arthur / and kyng Arthur flewe that daye xx
 knyghtes & maymed xl / At that tyme cam in the knyghte with
 the two fwerdys and his broder Balan / But they two did
 so merueilloufly that the kyng and alle the knyghtes mer-
 ueilled of them / and alle they that behelde them said they we- 5
 re fente from heuen as aungels or deuyls from helle / & kyng
 Arthur said hym self they were the best knyghtes that euer he
 sawe / for they gaf suche strokes that all men had wöder of hem
 In the meane whyle came one to kyng Lott and told hym /
 whyle he taryed there nero was destroyed and flayne with al 10
 his peple / Allas sayd kyng Lot I am ashamed / for by my
 defaute ther is many a worshipful man flayne / for and we
 had ben to gyders there hadde ben none hooft vnder the heuen
 that had ben abel for to haue matched with vs / This fayter
 with his prophecye hath mocked me / Al that dyd Merlyn for 15
 he knewe wel that and kyng Lot had ben with his body there
 at the fyrst bataille / kyng Arthur had be flayne / and alle his
 peple destroyed / & wel Merlyn knewe the one of the kynges
 shold be dede that day / & loth was Merlyn that ony of them both
 sholde be flayne / But of the tweyne / he had leuer kyng Lotte 20
 had be flayne than kyng Arthur / Now what is best to doo
 sayd kyng Lot of Orkeney whether is me better to treat with
 kyng Arthur or to fyghte / for the gretter party of oure pe-
 ple are flayne / and destroyed / Syr said a knyght fet on arthur
 for they are wery and forfoughten and we be fresshe / As for 25
 me sayd kyng Lot I wolde euery knyght wolde do his parte
 as I wold do myn / And thenne they auanced baners and
 smoten to gyders and al to sheuered their speres / and arthurs
 knyghtes with the helpe of the knyght with two fwerdes &
 his broder balan put kyng lot & his hooft to the werre / But 30
 alweyes kyng Lot helde hym in the formeft frunte & dyd mer-
 ueillous dedes of armes / for alle his hooft was borne vp by
 his handes for he abode al knyghtes / allas he myght not endu-
 re the whiche was grete pyte that so worthy a knyght as he was
 one shold be ouermatched that of late tyme afore hadde ben a 35
 knyght of kyng Arthurs & wedded the suster of kyng arthur
 & for kyng Arthur lay by kyng lots wyf the whiche was ar-
 thurs fyfter & gat on her Mordred / therfor kyng lot held ayest

Arthur / So ther was a knyght that was called the knyghte
 with the straunge beeste / and at that tyme his ryght name
 was called Pellinore / the whiche was a good man of pro-
 wesse / and he smote a myghty stroke att kynge Lot as he fo-
 5 ught with all his enemyes / and he fayled of his stroke / and
 smote the hors neck that he fylle to the grounde with kyng lot
 And therwith anon Pellinore smote hym a grete stroke tho-
 row the helme & hede vnto the browes & thenne alle the hooste
 of Orkeney fled for the deth of kynge Lott / and there were
 10 slayn many moders fones / But kynge Pellinore bare the wy-
 tte of the deth of kynge Lot / wherfore fyr Gawayne reuenged
 the deth of his fader the x yere after he was made knyght and
 slewe kynge Pellinore with his owne handes / Also there we-
 re slayne at that bataille xij kynges on the fyde of kyng Lot
 15 with Nero / and alle were buried in the chirche of faynt Ste-
 uyns in Camelot / and the remenaunt of knyghtes and of o-
 ther were buried in a grete roche

¶ Capitulūm xj

SO at the enterement cam kynge Lots wyf Morgaufe
 with her foure fones Gawayne / Agrauayne / Gaherys
 20 and Gareth / Also ther came thyder kyng Vryens fyr
 Ewayns fader and Morgan le fay his wyf that was kyng
 Arthurs fyfter / Alle these cam to the enterement / but of alle
 these xij kynges kyng Arthur lete make the tombe of kynge
 Lot passyng rychely / and made his tombe by his owne / and
 25 thenne Arthur lete make xij ymages of laton and couper / &
 ouer gylt hit with gold in the fygne of xij kynges / & echon
 of hem helde a tapyr of wax that brent day and nyzt / & kyng
 Arthur was made in fygne of a fygure standynge aboute hem
 with a swerd drawen in his hand / and alle the xij fygures had
 30 countenance lyke vnto men that were ouercome / All this ma-
 de Merlyn by his subtyl crafte and ther he told the kyng whā
 I am dede / these tapers shalle brenne no lenger / and foone af-
 ter the aduentures of the Sangrayll shalle come among yow
 and be encheued / Also he told Arthur how Balyn the wor-
 35 shipful knyght shal gyue the dolourous stroke / wherof shalle
 falle grete vengeance / O where is Balen & Balan & Pelli-
 nore faide kynge Arthur / as for Pellinore sayd Merlyn / he
 wyl mete with yow foone /

¶ And as for Balyn

he wille not be longe from yow / but the other broder wil departe ye shalle see hym no more / By my feyth said Arthur they are two merueyllous knyghtes / and namely Balyn passeth of prowesse of ony knyghte that euer I found / for moche be holden I am vnto hym / wold god he wold abyde with me / 5
 Syr sayd Merlyn loke ye kepe wel the scaubard of Excalibur / for ye shalle lese no blood whyle ye haue the scauberd vpon yow though ye haue as many woundes vpon yow as ye may haue / Soo after for grete trust Arthur betoke the scauberd to Morgan le fay his syster / and she loued another knyght better than her husband kyng Vryens or kyng Arthur And she wold haue had Arthur her broder slayne / And ther for she lete make another scauberd lyke it by enchaunement and gaf the scauberd Excalibur to her loue / and the knyghtes name was called Accolon that after had nere slayne kyng arthur / After this Merlyn told vnto kyng Arthur of the prophecye / that there shold be a grete batail besyde Salysbury and Mordred his owne sone sholde be ageynste hym / Also he tolde hym that Bafdemegus was his cofyn and germayn vnto kyng Vryence

¶ Capitulum xij. 20

WYthin a daye or two kyng Arthur was somewhat feke / and he lete pytche his paelione in a medowe / & there he leyd hym doune on a paylet to slepe / but he myght haue no rest / Ryght so he herd a grete noyse of an hors and therwith the kyng loked oute at the porche of the paelione / 25
 and sawe a knyght comyng euen by hym making grete dole Abyde fair fyr said Arthur / & telle me wherfor thow makest this forowe / ye maye lytel amend me said the knyghte and soo passed forthe to the castel of Melyot / Anone after ther cam balen / and whan he sawe kyng Arthur / he alyght of his hors / 30
 and cam to the kyng on foote / and salewed hym / by my hede saide Arthur ye be welcome / Sire ryght now cam rydyng this way a knyght making grete moorne / for what cause I can not telle / wherfor I wold desyre of yow of your curtosye and of your gentylnesse to fetche ageyne that knyght / eyther 35
 by force or els by his good wil / I wil do more for your lordship than that said balyn / and so he rode more than a paas and found the knyght with a damoyfel in a forest & said sir knyzt

ye muft come with me vnto kynge Arthur for to telle hym of
 your forow / that wille I not / fayd the knyghte / for hit wylle
 fcathe me gretely / and now do yow none auaylle / fyr fayd Balyn
 I pray yow make yow redy for ye muft goo with me / or els
 5 I muft fyghte with yow and brynge yow by force / and that
 were me loth to doo / wylle ye be my waraunt faid the knyght
 and I goo with yow / ye faide Balyn or els I wylle deye
 therefore / And fo he made hym redy to go with Balyn / and
 lefte the damoyfel ftylle / And as they were euen afore kynge
 10 Arthurs paulione / there came one inuyfybel and fmote thys
 knyghte that wente with Balyn thorow oute the body wyth
 a fpere / Allas fayd the knyght I am flayne vnder youre cō-
 duyt with a knyght called Garlon / therfor take my hors that
 is better than yours and ryde to the damoyfel and folowe the
 15 queft that I was in / as fhe wylle lede yow and reuenge my
 deth whan ye may / That fhalle I doo fayd Balyn / and that
 I make vowe vnto knyghthode / and fo he departed from thys
 knyghte with grete forowe / Soo kyng Arthur lete berye thys
 knyght rychely / and made a menfyon on his tombe / how there
 20 was flayne Herlews le berbeus / and by whome the trechery
 was done the knyght garlon / But euer the damoyfel bare the
 truncheon of the fpere with her that fyr Harlews was fla-
 yn with al

¶ Capitulum xiiij

SO Balyn and the damoyfel rode in to a forest / & ther
 25 met with a knyght that had ben on huntynge / and
 that knyght asked Balyn for what caufe he made fo grete fo-
 rowe / me lyft not to telle yow faide Balyn / Now faide the
 knyghte and I were armed as ye be I wolde fyghte wyth
 yow / that fhold lytel nede fayd Balyn / I am not aferd to
 30 telle yow / and told hym alle the caufe how it was A fayd the
 knyght is this al / Here I enfore yow by the feithe of my bo-
 dy neuer to departe from yow whyle my lyf lafteth / & foo they
 wente to the hoftry and armed hem / and fo rode forth with ba-
 lyn / And as they came by an heremytage euen by a Chyrche
 35 yerd / ther cam the knyghte garlon inuyfybel and fmote thys
 knyghte Peryn de mountebeliard thurgh the body with a fpe-
 re / Allas faide the knyghte I am flayne by this traytoure

knyghte that rydeth Inuyfible / Allas faid balyn it is not the
 fyrst despyte he hath done me / and there the heremyte and Ba-
 lyn beryed the knyght vnder a ryche fstone and a tombe royal
 And on the morne they fond letters of gold wryten / how
 fyr Gaweyn fhalle reuenge his faders deth kynge Lot / on the 5
 kynge Pellinore / Anone after this balyn and the damoyfel
 rode tyl they came to a castel and there balyn alyghte / and he
 and the damoyfel wende to goo in to the castel / and anone as
 balyn came within the castels yate the portecolys fylle doune
 at his bak / and there felle many men about the damoyfel / and 10
 wold haue slayne her / whan balyn fawe that / he was fore a-
 greued / for he myghte not helpe the damoyfel / thanne he
 wente vp in to the toure and lepte ouer wallys in to the
 dyche / and hurte hym not / and anone he pulled oute his fuerd
 and wold haue fouzten with hem / and they all fayd nay they 15
 wold not fyghte with hym / for they dyd no thyng but thold
 custome of the castel / and told hym how her lady was feke / &
 had layne many yeres / and she myghte not be hole but yf she
 had a dyffhe of fyluer ful of blood of a clene mayde & a kyn-
 ges doughter / and therefore the custome of this castel is / there 20
 fhalle no damoyfel passe this way but she shal blede of her blo-
 od in a fyluer dyffhe ful / wel faid Balyn she shal blede as mo-
 che as she may blede / but I wille not lese the lyf of her why-
 les my lyf lasteth / & soo balyn made her to blede by her good
 will / but her blood halpe not the lady / and so he & she rested 25
 there al nyght / & had there ryght good chere / and on the morn
 they passed on their wayes / And as it telleth after in the fan-
 graylle that fyre Percyualis fyfter halpe that lady with her
 blood wherof she was dede

¶ Capitulum xiiij

THenne they rode thre or foure dayes and neuer mette 30
 with aduerture / and by happe they were lodged with
 a gentyll man that was a ryche man and well at ease / And
 as they sat at her foupper balyn herd ouer complayne greuouf-
 ly by hym in a chayer / what is this noyse faid balen / forsothe
 faid his hooft I wylle telle yow / I was but late att a Iust- 35
 ynge / and there I Iusted with a knyghte that is broder vn-
 to kynge Pellam / and twyes fmote I hym doune / & thenne

he promysed to quyte me on my best frynde / and so he wound-
 ded my sone that can not be hole tyll I haue of that knyghtes
 blood / and he rydeth alwey Inuyfyble / but I knowe not his
 name / A sayd Balyn / I knowe that knyght / his name is
 5 Garlon / he hath flayne two knyghtes of myn in the same ma-
 ner / therfor I had leuer mete with that knyght than alle the
 gold in this realme / for the despyte he hath done me / wel said
 his oofte I shalle telle yow kynge Pellam of lyftyneyse hath
 made do crye in all this countrey a grete feest that shal be with-
 10 in these xx dayes / & no knyght may come ther but yf he bryn-
 ge his wyf wyth hym / or his peramour / & that knyghte youre e-
 nemy and myn ye shalle see that daye / Thenne I behote yow
 sayd Balyn parte of his blood to hele youre sone with alle /
 we wille be forward to morne sayd his ooft / So on the morne
 15 they rode all thre toward Pellam / and they had xv dayes Io-
 urney or they cam thyder / and that same day began the greete
 feest / and soo they alyght and stabled theyr horses / and went
 in to the Castel / but balyns ooft myght not be lete in by cause
 he had no lady / thenne Balyn was wel receyued & brought
 20 vnto a chamber and vnarmed hym / and there were brought
 hym robes to his pleasyr / and wold haue had Balen leue
 his sward behynde hym / Nay sayd Balen that doo I not for
 it is the customme of my Countrey a knyghte alweyes to ke-
 pe his wepen with hym and that customme wylle I kepe / or
 25 els I wyll departe as I cam / thenne they gaf hym leue to we-
 re his sward / and so he wente vnto the castel / and was sette
 amonge knyghtes of worship and his lady afore hym / Soo-
 ne balyn asked a knyght / is ther not a knyghte in this court
 whos name is Garlon / yonder he goth sayd a knyght / he with
 30 the blak face / he is the merueyllest knyght that is now lyuyng
 for he destroyeth many good knyghtes / for he goth Inuyfyble
 A wel said Balen is that he / thēne balyn auysed hym long
 yf I flee hym here I shalle not scape / And yf I leue hym now
 perauentur I shalle neuer mete with hym ageyne at suche a
 35 steuen / and moche harme he wille doo and he lyue / Ther with
 this Garlon aspyed that this Balen behelde hym / and then-
 ne he came and smote Balyn on the face with the bak of his
 hand / and sayd knyght why beholdest thou me so for shame

therfor ete thy mete and doo that thou cam for / Thow sayst fo-
 the said Balyn / this is not the fyrst despyte that thou hast do-
 ne me / and therfor I will doo that I cam for and rose vp fy-
 erfly and claued his hede to the sholders / gyue me the truncheon
 sayd Balyn to his lady where with he slewe your knyghte / 5
 anone she gaf it hym / for alwey she bare the troncheon with her
 And therwith Balyn smote hym thurgh the body / and sayd
 openly with that truncheon thou hast slayn a good knyghte /
 and now it stycketh in thy body / And thenne Balyn called
 vnto hym his hooft / sayenge / now may ye fetche blood ynough 10
 to hele your sone with all /

Capitulum xv

None all the knyghtes aroos from the tabyl for to fet
 on Balyn / and kyng Pellam hym self aroos vp fy-
 erfly / & sayd knyzt hast thou slayn my broder / thou
 shalt dye therfor or thou departe / wel said balen do it your self 15
 yis sayde kyng pellā / ther shall no mā haue ado with the / but
 my self for the loue of my broder / Thenne kyng Pellam cauzt
 in his hand a grym wepen and smote egrely at balyn / but ba-
 lyn put his swerd betwixe his hede and the stroke / and ther-
 with his swerd brest in fonder / And whan balyn was wepen- 20
 les he ranne in to a chamber for to seke somme wepen / and soo
 fro chamber to chamber / and no wepen he coude fynde / and al-
 weyes kyng Pellam after hym / And at the last he entryd
 in to a chambyr that was merueillously wel dyzte and ryche-
 ly / and a bedde arayed with clothe of gold the rycheft that my- 25
 ghte be thought / and one lyenge theryn / and therby stode a
 table of clene gold with four pelours of fyluer / that bare vp
 the table / and vpon the table stood a merueillous spere straun-
 gely wrought / And whan balyn sawe that spere / he gat it in
 his hand and tordned hym to kyng Pellam / and smote hym 30
 passyngly fore with that spere that kyng Pellam felle doune
 in a swoune / and therwith the castel roofe and wallys brake
 and fylle to the erthe / and balyn felle doune so that he myghte
 not stere foote nor hand / And so the moost parte of the castel
 that was falle doune thorough that dolorous stroke laye vpon 35
 Pellam and balyn thre dayes

Capitulum xvj

THenne Merlyn cam thyder and toke vp Balyn and
gat hym a good hors for his was dede / and bad hym
ryde oute of that countrey / I wold haue my damoyfel
fayd balyn / Loo fayd Merlyn where she lyeth dede & kynge
5 Pellam lay so many yeres fore wounded / and myght neuer
be hole tyl Galahad / the haute prynce heled hym in the quest of
the Sangraille / for in that place was part of the blood of our
lord Ihesu cryst that Ioseph of Armathe broughte in to this
lond / and ther hym self lay in that ryche bed / And that was
10 the fame spere that Longeus smote oure lorde to the herte / and
kynge Pellam was nyghe of Ioseph kynne / and that was
the moost worshipful man that lyued in tho dayes / and gre-
te pyte it was of his hurte / for thorow that stroke torned to
grete dole tray and tene / Thenne departed Balyn from Mer-
15 lyn and fayd in this world we mete neuer nomore / Soo
he rode forth thorowe the fayr countreyes and Cytees & fond
the peple dede slayne on euery fyde / and alle that were on ly-
ue cryed O balyn thow hast caused grete dommage in these cō-
trayes for the dolorous stroke thow gauest vnto kynge Pellā
20 thre countreyes are destroyed / and doubte not but the vengeaun-
ce wil falle on the at the last / whanne Balyn was past tho
contrayes he was passyng fayne / so he rode eyzt dayes or he met
with auenture / And at the last he came in to a fayr forest in
a valey and was ware of a Toure / And there besyde he fawe
25 a grete hors of werre tayed to a tree / and ther besyde satte a
fayr knyght on the ground and made grete mornynge and he
was a lykely man and a wel made / Balyn fayd God faue
yow why be ye so heuy / telle me and I wylle amende it and
I may to my power / Syr knyghte said he ageyne thow doest
30 me grete gryef / for I was in mery thoughtes and now thou
puttest me to more payne / Balyn wente a lytel from hym / &
loked on his hors / thenne herd Balyn hym faye thus / a fair
lady why haue ye broken my promyse / for thow promyfest me
to mete me here by none / and I maye curse the that euer ye
35 gaf me this sward / for with this sward I flee my self / and
pulled it oute / and therwith Balyn sterte vnto hym & took
hym by the hand / lete goo my hand fayd the knyght or els I
shal flee the / that shal not nede said balyn / for I shal promyse

yow my helpe to gete yow your lady / and ye wille telle me
 where she is / what is your name sayd the knyght / myn name
 is Balyn le faueage / A fyr I knowe yow wel ynough ye
 are the knyght with the two fwerdys and the man of moost
 prowesse of your handes lyuyng / what is your name sayd ba- 5
 len / my name is garnyssh of the mount a poure mans sone /
 But by my prowesse and hardynesse a duke hath maade me
 knyght / and gaf me landes / his name is duke Hermel / and
 his doughter is she that I loue and she me as I demed / hou
 fer is she hens sayd Balyn / but xj myle said the knyghte 10
 Now ryde we hens sayde these two knyghtes / so they rode mo-
 re than a paas tyll that they cam to a fayr castel wel wallyd
 and dyched / I wylle in to the castel sayd Balen / and loke
 yf she be ther / Soo he wente in and ferched fro chamber to chā-
 bir / and fond her bedde but she was not there / Thenne Balen 15
 loked in to a fayr lital gardyn / and vnder a laurel tre he sawe
 her lye vpon a quylt of grene famyte and a knyght in her ar-
 mes fast halfynge eyther other and vnder their hedes graffe &
 herbes / whan Balen sawe her lye so with the fowlest knyghte
 that euer he sawe and she a fair lady / thenne Balyn wente 20
 thurgh alle the chambers ageyne and told the knyghte how
 he fond her as she had slepte fast / and so brought hym in the
 place there she lay fast slepyng

¶ Capitulum xvij

ANd whan Garnyssh beheld hir so lyeng for pure forou
 his mouth and nose braft oute on bledynge and with 25
 his swerd he smote of bothe their hedes / and thenne he maade
 forowe oute of mesure and sayd O Balyn / Moche sorow haft
 thow brought vnto me / for haddest thow not shewed me that
 fyght I shold haue passed my sorow / forsoth said balyn I did
 it to this entent that it sholde better thy courage / and that ye 30
 myght see and knowe her falskede / and to caufe yow to leue
 loue of suche a lady / god knoweth I dyd none other but as
 I wold ye dyd to me / Allas said garnyssh now is my sorow
 doubel that I may not endure / Now haue I slayne that I
 moost loued in al my lyf / and therwith sodenly he rooffe hym 35
 self on his own swerd vnto the hyltys / when balen sawe that

he dresseid hym thens ward / left folke wold say he had slayne
 them / and so he rode forth / and within thre dayes he cam by a
 croffe / & theron were letters of gold wrytē that said / it is not
 for no knyght alone to ryde toward this Castel / thēne sawe he
 5 an old hore gentyelman comyng toward hym that sayd Ba-
 lyn le Saueage thow passyft thy bandes to come this waye /
 therfor torne ageyne and it will auaille the / and he varysshed
 away anone / and soo he herd an horne blowe as it had ben the
 dethe of a best / That blast said Balyn is blowen for me / For
 10 I am the pryse and yet am I not dede / anone with al he sa-
 we an hondred ladyes and many knyghtes that welcommed
 hym with fayr semblaunt and made hym passyng good chere /
 vnto his fyght and ledde hym in to the castel / and ther was
 daunfyng and mynstralsye and alle maner of Ioye / Then-
 15 ne the chyef lady of the castel said / knyghte with the two fuer-
 dys ye must haue adoo and Iuste with a knyght hereby that
 kepeth an Iland / for ther may no man passe this way but he
 must Iuste or he passe / that is an vnhappy customme said Ba-
 lyn that a knyght may not passe this wey / but yf he Iuste / ye
 20 shalle not haue adoo but with one knyghte sayd the lady /
 Wel sayd Balyn syn I shalle therto I am redy but traueil-
 lunge men are ofte wery and their horses to / but though my
 hors be wery / my hert is not wery / I wold be fayne ther my
 deth shold be / Syr said a knyght to Balyn / me thynketh your
 25 sheld is not good / I wille lene yew a bygger / therof I pray
 yow / and so he tooke the sheld that was vnknowen and lefte
 his owne and so rode vnto the Iland / and put hym and his
 hors in a grete boote / and whan he came on the other syde / he
 met with a damoyfel / and she said / O knyght balyn why haue
 30 ye lefte your owne sheld / allas ye haue put your self in grete
 daunger / for by your sheld ye shold haue ben knowen / it is gre-
 te pyte of yow as euer was of knyght / for of thy prowesse &
 hardynes thou hast no felawe lyuyng / Me repenteth said ba-
 lyn that euer I cam within this Countrey / but I maye not
 35 torne now ageyne for shame and what auenture shalle falle
 to me be it lyf or dethe I wille take the aduenture that shalle
 come to me & / thenne he loked on his armour / & vnderstood he
 was wel armed / and therwith bleffid hym and mounted

vpon his hors

¶ **Capitulum xviii**

THenne afore hym he sawe come rydyng oute of a castel a knyght and his hors trapped all reed and hym self in the same colour / whan this knyghte in the reed beheld Balyn hym thought it shold bee his broder Balen by 5
 cause of his two swerdys / but by cause he knewe not his sheld he demed it was not he / And so they auentryd theyr speres & came merueillously fast to gyders / and they smote other in the sheldes / but theire speres and theire cours were soo bygge that it bare doune hors & man that they lay bothe in a swoun 10
 But balyn was bryfed fore with the falle of his hors / for he was wery of trauaille / And Balan was the fyrst that rose on foote and drewe his swerd and wente toward Balyn / and he aroos and wente ageynst hym / But balan smote balyn fyrste / and he put vp his shelde and smote hym thorow 15
 the shelde and tamed his helme / thenne Balyn smote hym ageyne with that vnhappy swerd and wel nyghe had fellyd his broder Balan / and so they fought ther to gyders tyl theyr brethes faylled / thenne Balyn loked vp to the castel and sawe the Towres stand ful of ladyes / Soo they went vnto 20
 bataille ageyne and wounded eueryche other dolefully / and thenne they brethed oftymes / and so wente vnto bataille that alle the place there as they fought was blood reed / And att that tyme ther was none of them bothe but they hadde eyther smyten other feuen grete woundes so that the lest of them myzt 25
 haue ben the dethe of the myghtyest gyaunt in this world / Thenne they wente to batail ageyn so merueillously that doute it was to here of that bataille for the grete blood shedyng
 And their hawberkes vnailed that naked they were on euery fyde / Atte last balan the yonger broder withdrewe hym a 30
 lytel & leid hym doune / Thenne said balyn le Saueage what knyghte arte thou / for or now I found neuer no knyzt that matched me / my name is said he balan broder vnto the good knyght balyn / Allas sayd balyn that euer I shold see this day / and therwith he felle backward in a swoun / Thenne ba- 35
 lan yede on al four feet and handes and put of the helme of his broder and myght not knowe hym by the vyfage / it was so ful hewen and bledde / but whan he awoke he sayd O balan

my broder thow haft slayne me and I the / wherefore alle the
 wyde world shalle speke of vs bothe / ¶ Allas sayd Balan
 that euer I sawe this day that thorow myshap I myght not
 knowe yow / for I aspyed wel your two swerdys / but by cau-
 5 fe ye had another shild I demed ye had ben another knyzt
 Allas saide Balyn all that maade an vnhappy knyght in the
 castel / for he caused me to leue myn owne shelde to our bothes
 destruction / and yf I myzt lyue I wold destroye that castel
 for ylle customes / that were wel done said Balan / For I
 10 had neuer grace to departe fro hem syn that I cam hyther / for
 here it happed me to flee a knyght that kepte this Iland / &
 syn myght I neuer departe / and nomore shold ye broder & ye
 myght haue slayne me as ye haue and escaped your self with
 the lyf / Ryght so cam the lady of the Toure with iiij knygh-
 15 tes and vj ladyes and vj yomen vnto them and there she herd
 how they made her mone eyther to other and sayd we came
 bothe oute of one tombe that is to say one moders bely / And
 so shalle we lye bothe in one pytte / So Balan prayd the lady
 of her gentylnesse for his true feruyse / that she wold burye
 20 them bothe in that same place there the bataille was done / and
 she graunted hem with wepyng it shold be done rychely in the
 best maner / Now wille ye fende for a preeft that we may recey-
 ue our sacrament and receyue the bleffid body of our lord Ihe-
 su cryst / ye said the lady it shalle be done / and so she sente for a
 25 preeft and gaf hem her ryghtes / Now sayd balen whan we are
 buried in one tombe and the menfyon made ouer vs / how ij
 bretheren slewe eche other / there wille neuer good knyght nor
 good man see our tombe but they wille pray for our soules / &
 so alle the ladyes and gentylwymen wepte for pyte / Thenne
 30 anone Balan dyed but Balyn dyed not tyl the mydnyghte
 after / and so were they buried bothe / and the lady lete make
 a menfyon of Balan how he was ther slayne by his broders
 handes / but she knewe not balyns name /

¶ Capitulum xix

FIN the morne cam Merlyn and lete wryte balyns na-
 35 me on the tombe with letters of gold / that here lyeth
 balyn le Saugeage that was the knyzt with the two swerdes

and he that smote the dolorous stroke / Also Merlyn lete make there a bedde / that ther shold neuer man lye therin / but he wente oute of his wytte / yet Launcelot de lake fordyd that bed thorow his nobleffe / and anone after Balyn was dede / merlyn toke his fwerd / and toke of the pomel and fet on an
 5 other pomel / so merlyn bad a knyght that stode afore hym handeld that fwerd / and he assayed / and he myght not handle hit Thenne Merlyn lough / why laugh ye said the knyghte / this is the cause said Merlyn / ther shalle neuer man handle this fuerd
 10 but the best knyght of the world / and that shalle be fyr Launcelot or els Galahad his sone / and Launcelot with this fuerd shalle flee the man that in the world he loued best that shalle be fyr Gawayne / Alle this he lete wryte in the pomel of the fwerd / Thenne Merlyn lete make a brydge of yron & of stele
 15 in to that Iland / and it was but half a foote brode / & there shalle neuer man passe that brydge nor haue hardynes to goo ouer / but yf he were a passyng good man and a good knyght withoute trechery or vylonye / Also the scaubard of Balyns fwerd Merlyn leste it on this fyde of the Iland that galahad shold fynde it / Also merlyn lete make by his subtyl-
 20 te that Balyns fwerd was put in a marbel stone standyng vp ryght as grete as a mylle stone / and the stone houed al weyes aboute the water and dyd many yeres / and so by aduēture it swam doun the streme to the Cyte of Camelot that is in englyfthe wynchestre / & that same day galahad the haute pry-
 25 ce came with kyng Arthur / and soo galahad broughte wyth hym the scaubard and encheued the fwerde / that was there in the marbel stone / houynge vpon the water / And on whytsonday he encheued the fwerd as it is reherced in the book of Sāc grayll / Soone after this was done Merlyn came to kyng Ar-
 30 thur and told hym of the dolorous stroke that Balyn gaf to kyng Pellam / and how Balyn and Balan foughte to gyders the merueillous batail that euer was herd of / and how they were buryed bothe in one Tombe / Allas said kyng Arthur / this is the grettest pyte that ouer I herd telle of two
 35 kny3tes / for in the world I knowe not suche two knyghtes / ¶ Thus endeth the tale of Balyn and of Balan two bretheren born in northüberlād good kni3tes / ¶ Sequitur iij liber

¶ Capitulum primum

IN the begynnyng of Arthur after he was cho-
 sen kyng by aduēture and by grace for the most
 party of the barons knewe not that he was V-
 ther pendragons sone / But as Merlyn made it
 5 openly knowen / But yet many kynges & lordes
 helde grete werre ayenst hym for that caufe / But wel Arthur
 ouercame hem alle / for the mooste party the dayes of his lyf he
 was ruled moche by the counceil of Merlyn / Soo it fell on a
 tyme kyng Arthur sayd vnto Merlyn / my barons wille lete
 10 me haue no rest but nedes I muste take a wyf / and I wylle
 none take / but by thy counceill and by thyne aduys / it is wel
 done said Merlyn / that ye take a wyf / for a man of your boun-
 te and nobleffe shold not be without a wyf / Now is ther ony
 that ye loue more than another / ye said kyng Arthur / I loue
 15 gweneuer the kynges doughter Lodegrean of the land of Cam-
 melerd / the whiche holdeth in his hows the table round that ye
 told he had of my fader Vther / And this damoyfel is the mo-
 ost valyaunt and fayrest lady that I knowe lyuyng or yet
 that euer I coude fynde / Syre sayd Merlyn as of her beaute
 20 and fayrenes she is one of the fayrest on lyue / But and ye
 loued her not so wel as ye doo / I shold fynde yow a damoy-
 fel of beaute and of goodenesse that shold lyke yow & ple-
 se yow and your herte were not fette / But there as a mans
 herte is fet / he wylle be lothe to retorne / that is trouth said kyng
 25 Arthur / but Merlyn warned the kyng couertly that gwene-
 uer was not holsome for hym to take to wyf / for he warned
 hym that launcelot shold loue her and she hym ageyne / and so
 he torned his tale to the auentures of Sancgreal / Thenne mer-
 lyn defyred of the kyng for to haue men with hym that shold
 30 enquere of gweneuer / and so the kyng graunted hym / & Mer-
 lyn wente forth vnto kyng Lodegrean of Camyllerd / & told
 hym of the defyre of the kyng that he wold haue vnto his wyf
 Gweneuer his doughter / that is to me sayd kyng Lodegreans
 the best tydynges that euer I herd that so worthy a kyng of
 35 prowesse and nobleffe wille wedde my doughter / And os for
 my landes I wylle gyue hym wyf I it myght please hym /

[leaf 50 verso]

but he hath londes ynowe / hym nedeth none / but I shalle fende
 hym a gyfte shalle please hym moche more / for I shalle gyue
 hym the table round / the whiche Vtherpendragon gaue me / &
 whan it is ful complete / ther is an C knyghtes & fyfty / And
 as for on C good knyghtes I haue my self / but I fawte / 1 / 5
 for so many haue ben slayne in my dayes / and so Ladegreans
 delyuerd his doughter Gweneuer vnto Merlyn / and the table
 round with the C knyghtes / and so they rode frehly with gre-
 te royalte / what by water and what by land / tyl that they
 came nyghe vnto london 10

¶ Capitulum Secundum

WHanne kyng Arthur herd of the comyng of gwene-
 uer and the C knyghtes with the table round / thenne
 kyng Arthur maade grete Ioye for her comyng / and
 that ryche presente / and said openly this fair lady is passyng
 welcome vnto me / for I haue loued her longe / And therefore 15
 ther is nothyng so lyef to me / And these knyghtes with the
 round table pleasen me more than ryght grete rycheffe / And in
 alle hast the kyng lete ordeyne for the maryage and the Co-
 ronacyon in the moost honorable wyse that coude be deuysed
 Now Merlyn said kyng Arthur / goo thow and aspye me in 20
 al this land I knyghtes whiche ben of most prowesse & wor-
 ship / within short tyme merlyn had founde suche knyghtes that
 shold fulfyllen xx & xiiij knyghtes but no mo he coude fynde
 Thenne the Bisskop of Caunterbury was fette and he bleffid
 the syeges with grete Royalte and deuoycyon / and there fette 25
 the viij and xx knyghtes in her syeges / and whan this was
 done / Merlyn said fayr fyrs ye must al aryse and come to ky-
 ng Arthur for to doo hym homage / he will haue the better wil
 to mayntene yow / and so they arofe and dyd their homage / &
 when they were gone / merlyn fond in euery syeges letters of 30
 gold that told the knyghtes names that had fyttten therin /
 But two syeges were voyde / And so anone cam yong gawayn
 & asked the kyng a yeste Aske said the kyng / & I shal graunte
 it yow / fyr I aske that ye will make me knyght / that same day
 ye shall wedde faire Gweneuer / I will do it with a good wil 35
 said kyng arthur & do vnto yow all the worship that I may /
 for I must by reson ye ar myn newew my fusters sone / ¶ Ca iij

JOrth with alle ther cam a poure man in to the Courte
 and broughte with hym a fayre yonge man of xviiij
 yere of age rydyng vpon a lene mare / and the poure
 man asked all men that he met / where shall I fynde kyng ar-
 5 thur / yonder he is sayd the knyghtes / wylt thou ony thyng
 with hym / ye sayd the poure man / therfor I cam hyder / anone
 as he came before the kyng he salewed hym and sayd O kyng
 Arthur the floure of all knyghtes and kynges I byfeche Ihe-
 su faue the / Syr it was told me that at this tyme of your ma-
 10 ryage ye wolde yeue any man the yeste that he wold aske /
 oute excepte that were vnrefonable / that is trouthe said the ky-
 nge fuche cryes I lete make / and that will I holde so it apay-
 re not my realme nor myne estate / ye say wel and graciously
 said the poure man / Syre I aske no thyng els but that ye wil
 15 make my fone here a knyghte / it is a grete thyng thou askest
 of me said the kyng / what is thy name said the kyng to the po-
 ure man / fyr my name is Aryes the Cowherd / whether cometh
 this of the or of thy fone said the kyng / Nay fyre said Aryes /
 this defyre cometh of my fone and not of me / For I shal telle
 20 yow I haue xiiij fones / & alle they will falle to what labour
 I put them & wille be ryght glad to doo labour / but this child
 wylle not labour for me for ony thyng that my wyf or I may
 doo / but alweyes he wille be shotyng or castyng dartes /
 and glad for to see batailles and to behold knyghtes / And
 25 alweyes day and nyghte he defyreth of me to be made a knyght
 what is thy name sayd the kyng vnto the yonge man / Syre
 my name is Tor / the kyng beheld hym fast / and sawe he was
 passyngly wel vyfaged and passyngly wel made of his yeres
 Wel said kyng Arthur vnto Aryes the Cowherd fetch al thy
 30 fones afore me that I may see them / and so the poure man did
 and al were shapen moche lyke the poure man / But Tor was
 not lyke none of hem al in shap ne in contenance / for he was
 moche more than ony of hem / Now said kyng Arthur vnto the
 Cowherd / where is the swerd he shalle be made knyght with
 35 al / it is here sayd Tor / take it oute of the sheathe sayd the ky-
 nge / and requyre me to make yow a knyght
 Thenne Tor alyght of his mare and pulled oute his swerd
 knelyng and requyryng the kyng / that he wold maake

hym knyght / & that he myghte be a knyght of the table round
 As for a knyzt I will make yow / & therwith smote hym in
 the neck with the fwerd fayēg be ye a good knyzt / & fo I pray
 to god fo ye may be / & yf ye be of prowesse and of worthy-
 nesse ye shalle be a knyght of the table round / Now Merlyn 5
 fayd Arthur fay wether this Tor shall be a good knyghte /
 or no / ye fyre he ought to be a good knyght / for he is comen
 of as good a man as ony is on lyue / and of kynges blood
 how fo fyr fayd the kyng / I shalle telle yow fayd Merlyn /
 This poure man Aryes the cowherd is not his fader / he is no 10
 thyng syb to hym / for kyng Pellinore is his fader / I suppose
 nay said the Cowherd / fetch thy wyf afore me said merlyn /
 and she shalle not say nay / anon the wyf was fet which was
 a fair houswyf / and there she anfuerd Merlyn ful womanly /
 and there she told the kyng and Merlyn that whan she was 15
 a maide & went to mylke kyen / ther met with her a sterne kny-
 ght / & half by force he had my maidenhede / & at that tyme he bi-
 gat my sone Tor / & he toke away from me my greyhound that
 I had that tyme with me / & faide that he wold kepe the grey-
 hound for my loue / A said the Cowherd I wende not thys / 20
 but I may bileue it wel / for he had neuer no tatches of me / fir
 said Tor vnto Merlyn dishonoure not my moder / fyr said mer-
 lyn it is more for your worship than hurte / for your fader is
 a good man & a kyng / & he may ryght wel auance you and
 your moder / for ye were begoten or euer she was wedded / that 25
 is trouth said the wyf / hit is the lasse gryef vnto me said the
 Cowherd

¶ Capitulum Quartum

SO on the morne kyng Pellinore cam to the Court of
 kyng Arthur / whiche had grete ioye of hym and told
 hym of Tor / how he was his sone / and how he hadde 30
 made hym knyght at the request of the Cowherd / Whan Pel-
 linore beheld Tor / he pleasyd hym moche / fo the kyng made ga-
 wayne knyght / but Tor was the fyrst he made at the feest /
 What is the cause said kyng Arthur that there ben two places
 voyde in the syeges / Syre said Merlyn / ther shalle no man fyt 35
 in tho places / but they shall be of moost worship / But in
 the sege perillous there shall no man sytte therin but one / and
 yf ther be ony so hardy to doo it he shall be destroyed / & he that

shalle fyttre there shalle haue no felawe / And therwith Merlyn tooke kynge Pellinore by the hand / and in the one hand next the two feges and the fege peryllous he said in open audience this is your place and best ye are worthy to fyttre there
 5 in of ony that is here / there at fat fyr gawayne in grete enuy & told Gaherys his broder / yonder knyghte is put to grete worship / the whiche greueth me fore / for he slewe our fader kynge Lot / therfor I wille flee hym said Gauayne with a fwerd / that was fente me that is passyng trenchaunt / ye shall not foo
 10 said Gaherys at this tyme / For at this tyme I am but a squyer / and whan I am made knyght / I wol be auenged on hym and therfor broder it is best ye suffre tyl another tyme that we may haue hym oute of the Courte / for & we dyd so / we shold trouble this hyhe feeft / I wyl wel said gauayn as ye wylle /

¶ Capitulum quintum

15 **T**Henne was the hyghe feestre made redy / and the kynge was wedded att Camelott vnto Dame Gweneuer in the chirche of faynt steuyns with grete solempnyte / And as euery man was set after his degree / Merlyn wente to alle the knyghtes of the round table / and bad hem fyttre styll that none of hem remeue / for ye shalle see a straunge and a merueilous aduenture / Ryght so as they fat ther came rennyng in a whyte hert in to the halle and a whyte brachet next hym and xxx couple of black rennyng houndes cam after with a greete crye / and the hert went aboute the table round as he went by
 20 other boordes / the whyte brachet boot hym by the buttoke & pulled oute a pees / where thurgh the herte lepte a grete lepe / and ouerthrewe a knyght that sat at the boord syde / and therwith the knyght aroos & toke vp the brachet / & so went forth oute of the halle & toke his hors & rode his wey with the brachet / right
 30 so anone cam in a lady on a whyte palfrey & cryed aloude for the kyng Arthur / Syre suffre me not to haue this despyte for the brachet was myn that the knyght lad awaye / I maye not doo therwith said the kynge
 ¶ With this there came a knyght rydyng al armed on a grete hors / and tooke the lady
 35 dy away with hym with force / and euer she cryed and made grete dole / whanne she was gone the kynge was glad for she

made fuche a noyfe / Nay faid merlyn / ye may not leue this ad-
 vētures fo lyghtely / For thefe adventures muft be brought a-
 gayne or els it wold be difworship to yow and to your feeft
 I wyll faid the kyng that al be done by your aduys / Then-
 ne faide merlyn lete calle fyr gauayne / for he muft brynge a- 5
 geyne the whyte herte / Also fyr ye muft lete calle Syre Tor /
 for he muft brynge ageyne the brachet / and the knyght or els
 flee hym / Also lete calle kyng Pellinore for he muft brynge a-
 geyne the lady and the knyght or els flee hym / and thefe thre
 knyghtes fhalle doo merueillous auētures or they come ageyn 10
 Thenne were they called al thre as it reherceth afore / and eue-
 ryche of hem toke his charge / and armed them furely / But fir
 gauayne had the fyrft request / and therefore we wille begynne
 at hym /

¶ Capitulum vj

Syre gauayne roode more than a paas and gaheryfe his 15
 broder that roode with hym in ftede of a fquyer to doo
 hym feruyfe / Soo as they rode they fawe two kny3tes
 fyghte on horfbak paffyng fore / fo fyr gauayn & his broder ro-
 de betwixe them / and asked them for what caufe they foughte
 fo / the one knyght anfuerd and fayd / we fyghte for a fymple 20
 mater / for we two be two bretheren born & begoten of one man
 & of one woman / allas faid fir gauayn why do ye fo / fyr faid
 the eldar / ther cam a whyte hert this way this day & many hou-
 des chaced hym / & a whyte brachet was alwey next hym / and
 we vnderftood it was aenture made for the hyhe feeft of ky- 25
 nge Arthur / and therefore I wold haue gone after to haue
 wonne me worship / and here my yonger broder faid he wolde
 go after the herte / for he was better knyght than I / And for
 this caufe we felle at debate / & fo we thou3t to preue whiche of
 vs bothe was better kny3t / This is a fymple caufe faid fir ga- 30
 uayn / vncouth mē ye fhould debate with al & no broder with bro-
 der / therfor but yf ye wil do by my couceil I wil haue ado with
 yow / that is ye fhall yelde you vnto me / & that ye go vnto kyng
 Arthur and yelde yow vnto his grace / fir kny3t faid the ij bre-
 theren we are forfoughten & moche blood haue we lofte thorow 35
 our wilfulneffe / And therefore we wolde be loth to haue adoo
 with yow / thenne do as I will haue yow faid fir gauayne /

we wille agree to fulfyller your wylle / But by whom shalle
 we faye that we be thyder fente / ye maye fay / by the knyzt that
 foloweth the quest of the herte that was whyte / Now what is
 your name sayd gauayne / Sorloufe of the forest said the eldar
 5 & my name is sayde the yonger Bryan of the forest and foo
 they departed and wente to the kynges Court / and Syr ga-
 uayne on his quest / and as gauayne folowed the herte by the
 crye of the houndes euen afore hym ther was a grete Ryuer /
 and the hert swamme ouer / and as fyr gauayne wold folo-
 10 we after / ther stode a knyght ouer the other fyde and sayd /
 Syre knyghte come not ouer after this herte / but yf thou wilt
 Iuste with me / I wille not faille as for that said fir gauayn
 to folowe the quest that I am in / and soo maade his hors to
 fwymme ouer the water / and anone they gat their speres /
 15 and ranne to gyder ful hard / but fyre gauayne smote hym
 of his hors / and thenne he tord his hors & bad hym yelde
 hym / Nay sayd the knyght not so though thou haue the bet-
 ter of me on horfbak / I pray the valyaunt knyght alyghte a
 foote and matche we to gyders with fwerdes / what is youre
 20 name said fir gauayne / Alardyn of the Ilys said the other /
 thenne eyther drestid her sheldes and smote to gyders / but fir
 gauayne smote hym so hard thorow the helme that it went to
 the braynes and the knyght felle doune dede / A said Gaheryse
 that was a myghty stroke of a yonge knyght /

¶ Capitulum Septimum

25 **T**Hēne Gauayne and Gaheryse rode more than a paas
 after the whyte herte / and lete slyppe at the herte three
 couple of greyhoundes / and so they chace the herte in to a cas-
 tel / and in the chyef place of the castel they slewe the hert / fyr
 gauayne and gaheryse folowed after / Ryght soo there came a
 30 knyght oute of a chamber with a sward drawe in his hand
 and slewe two of the greyhoundes euen in the syghte of fyre
 gauayne / and the remenaunte he chaced hem with his sward
 oute of the castel / And whan he cam ageyne he sayd / O my
 whyte herte / me repenteth that thou art dede / for my fouerayne
 35 lady gaf the to me / and euyll haue I kepte the / and thy deth

fhalle be dere bought and I lyue / and anone he wente in to
 his chamber and armed hym / and came oute fyerfly / & there
 mette he with fyr gauayne / why haue ye slayne my houndes
 said fyr gauayn / for they dyd but their kynde / and leuer I
 had ye had wroken your angre vpon me than vpon a dom best 5
 thow faist trowth said the knyght I haue auengyd me on thy
 houndes and so I wille on the or thow goo / Thenne fyr Ga-
 uayne alyght afoote and drestid his shelde and stroke to gy-
 ders myghtely / and clafe their sheldes and stoned their helmes
 and brak their hawberkes that the blood ranne doune to their 10
 feet / Atte last fyr gauayne smote the knyght so hard that he
 felle to the erthe / and thenne he cryed mercy / and yelded hym
 and befought hym as he was a knyghte and gentylman / to
 faue his lyf / thow shalt dye said fir gauayne for sleynge of my
 houndes / I wille make amendys said the knyght vnto my po- 15
 wer / Syr gauayne wold no mercy haue but vnlacyd his hel-
 me to haue stryken of his hede / Ryght soo came his lady oute
 of a chamber and felle ouer hym / and soo he smote of her hede
 by myfauenture / Allas saide Gaheryse that is fowle and sha-
 mefully done / that shame shal neuer from yow / Also ye shold 20
 gyue mercy vnto them that aske mercy / for a knyzt without
 mercy is withoute worship / Syr gauayne was so stonyed of
 the deth of this fair lady / that he wiste not what he dyd / and
 said vnto the knyght aryse I wille gyue the mercy / nay nay
 said the knyght / I take no force of mercy now / for thou hast 25
 slayne my loue and my lady that I loued best of alle er-
 ly thyng / Me fore repentith it said fyr gauayn / for I thought
 to stryke vnto the / But now thow shalt goo vnto kyng Ar-
 thur and telle hym of thyne aduentures and how thow arte o-
 uercome by the knyghte that wente in the queste of the whyte 30
 herte / I take no force said the knyzt whether I lyue or I dye
 but so for drede of deth he swore to goo vnto kyng Arthur / &
 he made hym to bere one greyhound before hym on his hors and
 another behynde hym / what is your name said fir gauayn or
 we departe / my name is said the knyght Ablamor of the ma- 35
 rise / soo he departed toward Camelot

¶ Capitulum Octauum

ANd fyr gauayne went in to the castel and made hym
 redy to lye there al nyght / and wold haue vnarmed
 hym / what wylle ye doo sayd gaheryse / wylle ye vn-
 arme yow in this Countrey / ye may thynke ye haue many e-
 5 nemyes here / they had not fooner sayd that word but ther cā
 four knyghtes wel armed and affayled fyr gauayne hard
 and said vnto hym thou newe made knyght thow hast shamed
 thy knyghthode / for a knyght withoute mercy is dishonoured
 Also thow hast slayne a fayr lady to thy grete shame to the
 10 worldes ende / and doubte thow not thow shalt haue grete ne-
 de of mercy or thow departe from vs / And therwith one of
 hem smote fyr gauayne a grete stroke that nygh he felle to the
 erthe / and gaheryse smote hym ageyne fore / and soo they were
 on the one syde and on the other / that fyr gauayne and gahe-
 15 ryse were in ieopardy of their lyues / and one with a bowe an
 archer smote fyr gauayne thurȝ the arme that it greued hym
 wonderly fore / And as they shold haue ben slayne / there cam
 four fair ladyes / and befought the knyghtes of grace for fyre
 gauayne / and goodely atte request of the ladyes they gaf fyr
 20 gauayne and gaheryse their lyues / & made hem to yelde them
 as prysoners / thenne gauayne and gaheryse made grete dole /
 Allas sayd fyre gauayne myn arme greueth me fore / I am
 lyke to be maymed and so made his complaynt pytously / er-
 ly on the morow ther cam to fyr gauayne one of the four la-
 25 dyes / that had herd alle his complaynte and said fyr knyȝte
 what chere / not good said he it is your owne defaulte sayd the
 lady / for ye haue doone a passyng fowle dede in the sleynge
 of the lady / the whiche will be grete vylany vnto yow / But
 be ye not of kyng Arthurs kyn faide the lady / yes truly
 30 sayd fyr gauayne / what is your name faide the lady / ye must
 telle it me or ye passe / my name is gauayne the kyng Lott of
 Orkeney sone / and my moder is kyng Arthurs syfter / A
 thenne are ye neuewe vnto kyng Arthur sayd the lady / and
 I shalle so speke for yow that ye shall haue conduyte to go to
 35 kyng Arthur for his loue / and soo she departed / and told
 the foure knyghtes how their prysoner was kyng Arthurs
 neuewe / and his name is fyr gauayne kyng Lots sone of
 Orkeney / and they gaf hym the hertes hede by cause it was in

his quest / ¶ Thenne anone they delyuerd fyr Gauayne vnder
 this promyse that he shold bere the dede lady with hym in this
 maner / The hede of her was hanged aboute his neck and the
 hole body of hyr lay before hym on his hors mane / Ryght soo
 rode he forth vnto Camelot / And anone as he was come mer- 5
 lyn defyred of kyng Arthur þ^t Syre Gauayne shold be sworne
 to telle of alle his auentures / and how he slewe the lady / and
 how he wold gyue no mercy vnto the knyght / where thurgh
 the lady was slayne / Thenne the kynge and the quene were
 gretely displeasyd with fyr gauayn for the sleynge of the la- 10
 dy / And ther by ordenaunce of the quene ther was set a quest
 of ladyes on fyr gauayn / and they Iuged hym for euer why-
 le he lyued to be with all ladyes & to fyzte for her quarels / &
 that euer he shold be curteys / & neuer to refuse mercy to hym /
 that asketh mercy / Thus was gauayne sworne vpon the four 15
 euuangelystes that he shold neuer be ageynst lady ne gentil-
 woman / but yf he fought for a lady / and his aduersary fouzt
 for another / And thus endeth the auenture of fyr gauayn that
 he dyd at the maryage of kyng Arthur Amen

¶ Capitulum ix

THan Syre Tor was redy he mounted vpon his hors- 20
 bak / and rode after the knyght with the brachet / so as
 he rode he mette with a dwarf fodenly / that smote hys
 hors on the hede with a staf / that he wente backward his spere
 lengthe / why dost thou so said fyre Tor / for thou shalt not pas-
 se this way / but yf thou Iuste with yonder knyghtes of the pa- 25
 uelions / Thenne was Tor ware where two paelions were / &
 grete sperys stood oute / and two sheldes henge on trees by the
 paelions / I may not tary said fyr Tor / for I am in a quest
 that I must nedes folowe / thou shalt not passe said the dwarf
 and therwith alle he blewe his horne / thenne ther cam one ar- 30
 med on horsbak / and dresseyd his shelde / and cam fast toward
 Tor / and he dresseyd hym ageynst hym / and so ranne to gyders
 that Tor bare hym from his hors / and anone the knyght yeld
 hym to his mercy / But fyr I haue a felawe in yonder paeli-
 one that wille haue adoo with yow anone / he shall be welcome 35
 said fyr Tor / Thenne was he ware of another knyght comyng
 with grete raundon / and eche of them dresseyd to other / that

merueille it was to see / but the knyght smote fyre Tor a grete
 stroke in myddes of the shelde that his spere all to sheuered
 And fyr Tor smote hym thurgh the sheld by lowe of the sheld
 and it wente thorow the coost of the knyzt / but the stroke fle-
 5 we hym not / And therwith fyr Tor alyght & smote hym on
 the helme a grete stroke / and therwith the knyght yelded hym
 and befought hym of mercy / I wille wel said fyr Tor / But
 thou and thy felawe must goo vnto kynge Arthur / and yelde
 yow prysoners vn to hym / by whome shall we say are we thy-
 10 der sente / ye shall say by the knyght that wente in the quest of
 the knyght that wente with the brachet / Now what be your ij
 names said fyr Tor / my name is sayd the one Sire Felot of
 Langduk / & my name is said the other Sir Petypase of wyn-
 chylse / Now go ye forth saide fyre Tor and god spede yow &
 15 me / Thenne cam the dwarf and saide vnto fyr Tor / I praye
 yow gyue me a yeste / I wylle wel said fyr Tor / aske / I af-
 ke no more saide the dwarf / but that ye wille suffre me to doo
 yow feruyse / for I will ferue no more recreaunt knyghtes /
 Take an hors said fyr Tor and ryde on with me / I wote ye
 20 ryde after the knyght with the whyte brachet / and I shalle
 brynge yow there he is said the dwerf / And soo they rode tho-
 row oute a forest / and at the last they were ware of two pael-
 ions euen by a pryory with two sheldes / And the one shyld
 was enewed with whyte / and the other shelde was reed

¶ Capitulum 1

25 **T**Her with fyr Tor alyghte and toke the dwarf his gla-
 yue / and soo he cam to the whyte paelione / and sawe
 thre damoyfels lye in it / and one paylet slepyng / & so he wente
 to the other paelione / and found a lady lyeng slepyng ther
 in / But ther was the whyte brachet that bayed at her fast / and
 30 therwith the lady yede oute of the paelione & all her damoy-
 fels / But anone as fyr Tor aspyed the whyte brachet / he took
 her by force and took her to the dwerf / what / wille ye so sayd
 the lady take my brachet from me / ye sayd fyr Tor / this bra-
 chet haue I fought from kynge Arthurs Courte hyder / well
 35 said the lady / knyght ye shalle not go fer with her / but that ye
 shalle be mette and greued / I shall abyde what auenture that

cometh by the grace of god / and so mounted vpon his hors /
 and passed on his way towarde Camelot / but it was so nere
 nyght he myzt not passe but lytel ferther / knowe ye ony lod-
 gyng said Tor I knowe none said the dwarf / but here besy-
 des is an hermytage / and there ye muste take lodgyng as ye 5
 fynde / And within a whyle they cam to the heremytage & took
 lodgyng / and was there gras otys and breed for their horses
 soone it was sped / and full hard was their souper but there
 they rested hem al nyght tyl on the morne / and herd a masse
 deuoutely / and tooke their leue of the heremyte / and fyre Tor 10
 prayed the heremyte to pray for hym / he sayd he wold and be-
 tooke hym to god / And soo mounted vpon horsbak and rode
 towardes Camelot a long whyle / with that they herd a knyghte
 calle lowde that came after hem / and he sayd knyghte abyde / &
 yelde my brachet that thou took from my lady / Syr Tor retor- 15
 ned ageyne / and behelde hym how he was a femely knyghte
 and wel horsed and wel armed at al poyntes / thenne Syre
 Tor dresseyd his shelde and took his spere in his handes and
 the other cam fyerfly vpon hym / and smote bothe hors & man
 to the erthe / anone they aroos lyghtely and drewe her fwerdes 20
 as egrely as lyons and put their sheldes afore them and smote
 thorow the sheldes that the cantels felle of bothe partyes /
 Also they tamyd their helmes that the hote blood ranne oute /
 and the thyck maylles of their hawberkes they carfe and rose
 in sonder that the hote blood ranne to the erthe / and both they 25
 had many woundes and were passyng wery / But fyr Tor as-
 pyed that the other knyght faynted / and thenne he sewed fast
 vpon hym and doubled his strokes and garte hym go to the
 erthe on the one fyde / thenne Syre Tor bad hym yelde hym /
 that wille I not said Abilleus whyle my lyf lasteth and the 30
 soule is within my body onles that thou wilt yeue me the bra-
 chet / that wylle I not doo sayd fyre Tor / for it was my quest
 to brynge ageyne thy brachet / the or bothe /

¶ Capitulum xi

Wyth that cam a damoyfel rydyng on a palfrey as fast
 as she myzt dryue and cryed with a lowde voys vnto 35
 Syre Tor / what wille ye with me sayd fyr Tor / I byseche the

said the damoyfel for kynge Arthurs loue / gyue me a yefte / I
 requyre the gentyl knyght as thow arte a gentilman / Now
 said Tor Afke a yefte and I wille gyue it yow / gramercy
 said the damoyfel / Now I aske the hede of the fals knyght A-
 5 belleus / for he is the mooste outragyouus knyght that lyueth &
 the gretteft murtherer / I am loth feid fyr Tor of that gyfte I
 haue gyuen yow / lete hym make amendys in that he hath tre-
 spaced vnto yow / now said the damoyfel he may not / for he fle-
 we myn owne broder afore myn owne eyen that was a better
 10 knyght than he / and he hadde had grace / and I kneled half
 an houre afore hym in the myre for to saue my broders lyf that
 had done hym no dammage but fought with hym by auenture
 of armes / and so for al that I coude do / he stroke of his hede
 wherfore I requyre the as thow arte a true knyght to gyue
 15 me my yefte or els I shal shame the in al the Court of kyng
 Arthur / for he is the falsest knyght luyng and a grete def-
 troyer of good knyghtes / Thenne whan Abelleus herd this / he
 was more aferd / and yelded hym and asked mercy / I maye
 not now faide fyr Tor / but yf I shold be founde fals of my
 20 promesse / for whyle I wold haue taken you to mercy / ye wold
 none aske but yf ye had the brachet ageyn that was my quest
 And therwith he tooke of his helme / and he aroos and fled /
 and fyr Tor after hym and smote of his hede quyte / ¶ Now
 fyr said the damoyfel / it is nere nyght / I pray yow come & lod-
 25 ge with me here at my place / it is here fast by / I will wel said
 fyr Tor / for his hors and he had ferd euyll fyn they departed
 from Camelot / and soo he rode with her and had passyng go-
 od chere with her / and she hadde a passyng fair old knyght to
 her husband that made hym passyng good chere and wel ea-
 30 syd bothe his hors and he / and on the morne he herd his masse
 and brake his fast and tooke his leue of the knyghte and of
 the lady that befought hym to telle hym his name / Truly he fa-
 id my name is fyr Tor that was late made knyght / and this
 was the fyrst queste of armes that euer I dyd to bryng a-
 35 geyn that this knyght Abelleus toke away fro kyng arthurs
 courte / O fayr knyght said the lady and her husband / and ye
 come here in oure marches / come and see oure poure lodgyng /
 and it shalle be alweyes at your commaundement / Soo fyre

Tor departed and came to Camelot on the thyrdde day by none / and the kyng & the quene & alle the Courte was passyng fayne of his comyng and made grete ioye that he was come ageyne / for he wente from the Court with lytel focour / but as kyng Pellinore his fader gaf hym an old courser / and kyng 5 Arthur gaf hym armour and a swerd / and els had he none other focour / but rode so forthe hym self alone / And thenne the kyng and the quene by merlyns aduys made hym to fwere to telle of his auentures / and soo he told and made pryuees of his dedes as it is afore reherced / wherfor the kyng and the que- 10 ne made hym grete ioye / nay nay faide Merlyn these ben but Iapes to that he shalle doo / for he shalle preue a noble knyght of prowesse as good as ony is lyuyng and gentyl and curteis & of good tatches and passyng true of his promesse / and neuer shalle outrage where thorow Merlyns wordes kyng Arthur 15 gaf hym an erldome of londes that felle vnto hym / and here endeth the queft of Syr Tor kyng Pellinors fone

¶ Capitulum xii

THenne kyng Pellinore armed hym and mounted vpon his hors and rode more than a paas after the lady that the knyzt ladde away / And as he rode in a forest 20 he sawe in a valey a damoyfel fitte by a welle and a wounded knyght in her armes / and Pellinore sawed her / And whan she was ware of hym she cryed ouer lowde / helpe me knyghte for crystes sake kyng Pellinore & he wold not tarye he was so eger in his queft / and euer she cryed an C tymes after help 25 Whanne she sawe he wold not abyde / she prayd vnto god to fende hym as moche nede of help as she had / and that he myzt fele it or he dyed / Soo as the book telleth the knyght there dyed that there was wounded / wherfor the lady for pure sorowe flew her self with his swerd / As kyng Pellinore rode in 30 that valey he met with a poure man a labourer / Sawest thou not faide Pellinore a knyghte rydyng and ledyng awaye a lady / ye said the man / I sawe that knyght and the lady that made grete dole / And yonder byneth in a valey ther shal ye see two pauelions and one of the knyzttes of the pauelions 35

chalengyd that lady of that knyght and fayd she was his
cofyn nere / wherfor he shold lede her no ferther / And soo they
waged bataill in that quarel / the one saide he wold haue her
by force / and the other saide he wold haue the rule of her by
5 caufe he was her kynnesman and wold lede her to her kyn / for
this quarel he lefte them fyghtyng / And yf ye wille ryde a
paas ye shalle fynde them fyghtyng / and the lady was beleft
with the two squyers in the pavelions / god thanke the fayd
kynge Pellenore / Thenne he rode a wallop tyll he had a fyght
10 of the two pavelions and the two knyghtes fyghtyng / anon
he rode vnto the pavelions / and sawe the lady that was his
quest / and fayd fayre lady ye must goo with me vnto the co-
urt of kynge Arthur / Syr knyght saide the two squyers that
were with her yonder are two knyghtes that fyghte for thys
15 lady / goo thyder and departe them / and be agreed with hem / &
thenne may ye haue her at your pleasyr / ye say wel fayd kyng
Pellenore / And anone he rode betwixt them and departed hem
and asked hem the causes why that they fought / Sir knyght
saide the one / I shalle telle yow / this lady is my kynneswo-
20 man nygh myn aunes doughter / And whan I herd her com-
playne that she was with hym maulgre her hede / I waged ba-
taille to fyghte with hym / Syre knyght fayd the other whoos
name was Hontlake of wentland / and this lady I gat by
my prowesse of armes this day at Arthurs courte / that is vn-
25 truely saide / saide kynge Pellenore / for ye cam in fodenly ther as
we were at the hyghe feest and tooke away this lady or ony
man myght make hym redy and therefore hit was my quest to
brynge her ageyne and yow bothe / or els the one of vs to aby-
de in the felde / therfor the lady shalle goo with me / or I wille
30 dye for it / for I haue promysed hit kynge Arthur / And ther-
for fyghte ye no more / for none of yow shalle haue no parte
of her at this tyme / And yf ye lyst to fyzte for her / fyzte with
me / and I wille defende her / wel saide the knyghtes make you
redy / and we shalle affaile yow with al our power / And as
35 kynge Pellenore wold haue put his hors fro them fyr Hont-
lake rooffe his hors thorow with a fwerd and saide / Now art
thow on foote as wel as we are / whan kynge Pellinore af-
pyed that his hors was slayne / lyztely he lepte from his hors /

and pulled oute his swerd / and put his sheld afore hym /
 and sayde knyghte kepe wel thy heede / for thow shalt haue a
 buffet for the sleynge of my hors / So kyng Pellenore gaf hym
 fuche a stroke vpon the helme that he clafe the hede doune to the
 chynne that he fylle to the erthe dede

5

¶ Capitulum xiiij

ANd thenne he tordned hym to the other knyghte that was
 fore wounded / but whan he sawe the others buffet / he
 wold not fyghte / but kneled doune and sayd take
 my cofyn the lady with yow at youre request / and I requyre
 yow as ye be a true knyghte / put her to no shame nor vylony / 10
 What sayd kyng Pellenore wylle ye not fyghte for her / no
 fyr sayd the knyghte I wylle not fyghte with fuche a knyghte
 of prowesse as ye be / wel said Pellenore / ye fay wel / I pro-
 myse yow she shall haue no vylony by me as I am true kny-
 ght / but now me lacketh an hors said Pellenore / but I wylle 15
 haue hontzakes hors / ye shalle not nede sayd the knyght / for
 I shalle gyue yow fuche an hors as shalle please yow / so that
 ye wille lodge with me / for it is nere nyghte / I wille wel sa-
 yd kyng Pellenore abyde with yow al nyghte / and there he
 hadde with hym ryght good chere / and faryd of the best with 20
 passynge good wyne and had mery rest that nyghte / And on
 the morne he herd a masse and dyned / And thenne was bro-
 ughte hym a fayre bay courser / and kyng Pellenors fadel
 sette vpon hym / Now what shalle I calle yow said the knyght
 in as moche as ye haue my cofyn at your desyre of your quest 25
 Syr I shalle telle yow my name is kyng Pellenore of the I-
 lys and knyghte of the table round / Now I am glad said
 the knyght that fuche a noble man shalle haue the rule of my
 cofyn / Now what is your name said Pellenore / I pray yow
 telle me / Syr my name is syr Meliot of Logurs / and this la- 30
 dy my cofyn hyght Nymue / and the knyghte that was in the
 other paelione is my sworne broder a passynge good knyghte
 and his name is Bryan of the Ilys / and he is ful loth to do
 wronge and ful lothe to fyghte with ony man / but yf he be fo-
 re fouzt on / so that for shame he may not leue it / It is merueil 35

said Pellinore that he wille not haue adoo with me / fyr he wil
 not haue adoo with no man but yf it be at his request / Bryn-
 ge hym to the Courte said Pellenore one of these dayes / Syr
 we wyll come to gyders / and ye fhalle be welcome said Pel-
 5 linore to the Courte of kynge Arthur / and gretely allowed
 for your comynge and so he departed with the lady / & brouzt
 her to Camelot / Soo as they rode in a valey it was ful of ston-
 es / and there the ladyes hors stumbled and threwe her doun
 that her arme was fore bryfed and nere she swounded for pa-
 10 yne / Allas fyr fayd the lady myn arme is oute of lythe wher
 thorow I must nedes reſte me / ye ſhal wel ſaid kyng Pelli-
 nore / and ſo he alyzt vnder a fayr tree where was fayr graſſe
 and he put his hors therto / and ſo leyd hym vnder the tree /
 and ſlepte tyl it was nyghe nyght / And whan he awoke / he
 15 wold haue ryden / Sir ſaid the lady it is ſo derke that ye may
 as wel ryde backward as forward / ſoo they abode ſtyll & made
 there their lodgyng / Thenne fyr Pellenore put of his armour
 thēne a lytel afore mydnyzt they herd the trottyng of an hors
 be ye ſtyll ſaid kyng Pellenore / for we fhalle here of ſomme a-

20 **A** uenture **¶ Capitulum xiiii**
 Nd ther with he armed hym / ſo ryght euen afore hym
 ther met two knyghtes / the one cam froward Came-
 lot / and the other from the northe / and eyther falewed other /
 what tydynges at Camelot fayd the one / by my hede faide the
 25 other ther haue I ben & aſpyed the courte of kynge Arthur
 And ther is fuche a ſelaufhip they may neuer be broken / and
 wel nyghe al the world holdeth with Arthur / for there is the
 flour of chyualrye / Now for this cauſe I am rydyng in to the
 north to telle our chyuetayns of the ſelaufhip that is withhol-
 30 den with kyng Arthur / as for that ſaid the other knyght I ha-
 ue brought a remedy with me that is the gretteſt poyſon that
 euer ye herd ſpeke of & to Camelot wyll I with it / for we ha-
 ue a frend ryght nyghe kyng Arthur and wel cheryfſhed that
 ſhal poyſone kynge Arthur / for ſo he hath promyfed oure chy-
 35 uetayns & receyued grete yeſtes for to do it / Beware ſaid the
 other knyght of Merlyn / for he knoweth all thynges by the
 deuyls craſte / therfore wille I not lete it ſaid the knyghte / &
 ſo they departed in fonder / Anone after Pellenore maade hym

redy and his lady rode toward Camelot / And as they
 cam by the wel there as the wounded knyght was and the la-
 dy / there he fond the knyghte and the lady eten with lyons
 or wylde beeftes al fauf the hede / wherfor he made grete forowe
 and wepte passyng fore and said Allas her lyf myghte I 5
 haue faued / but I was so fyers in my quest therefore I wold
 not abyde / wherfore make ye suche doole said the lady / I wote
 not said Pellinore / but my herte morneth fore of the deth of her
 for she was a passyng fayr lady and a yonge / Now wylle ye
 doo by myne aduys said the lady / take this knyghte and lete 10
 hym be buried in an heremytage / and thenne take the ladyes
 hede and bere it with yow vnto Arthur / Soo kyng Pellinore
 took this dede knyght on his sholders / and broughte hym to
 the heremytage and charged the heremyte with the corps / that
 feruyse shold be done for the foule / and take his harneys for 15
 your payne / it shalle be done said the heremyte as I wille an-

fuer vnto god **¶ Capitulum xv**

ANd ther with they departed and cam there as the he-
 de of the lady lay with a fair yelow here that greued
 kyng Pellinore passyngly fore whan le loked on hit / for mo- 20
 che he cast his herte on the vyfage / And soo by none they came
 to Camelot / and the kyng and the quene were passyng fayn
 of his comyng to the Courte / And there he was made to swe-
 re vpon the four euuangelystes to telle the trouth of his quest
 from the one to the other / A fyr Pellinore sayd quene Gwe- 25
 neuer ye were gretely to blame that ye faued not this ladyes
 lyf / Madame said Pellinore ye were gretely to blame and ye
 wold not faue your owne lyf & ye myzt / but fauf your plea-
 fir I was so furyous in my quest that I wold not abyde / & that
 repenteth me & shal the dayes of my lyf / Truly saide Merlyn 30
 ye ouzt fore to repente it / for that lady was your own douzter
 begoten on the lady of the rule / & that knyght that was dede
 was her loue / and shold haue wedded her / and he was a ry-
 ght good knyght of a yonge man and wold haue preued a
 good man / & to this court was he comyng & his name was fir 35
 Myles of the laūdys / & a knyzt cam behynde hym / & slewe him
 with a spere & his name is Lorayne le faueage a fals knyzt
 & a coward / & she for grete sorow & dole slewe her self with

his fwerd / and her name was Eleyne / And by cause ye wold
 not abyde and helpe her / ye fhalle fee youre best frende faylle
 yow whan ye be in the gretteft distrefse that euer ye were / or
 fhalle be / And that penaūce god hath ordeyned yow for that
 5 dede / that he that ye fhalle moft truste to of ony man alyue / he
 fhalle leue yow ther ye fhalle be flayne / Me forthynketh said
 kynge Pellinore that this fhalle me betyde but god may for-
 doo wel defteny / Thus whan the quest was done of the why-
 te herte / the whiche folowed fyr gawayne and the quest of the
 10 brachet folowed of fyr Tor Pellenors sone / & the quest of the
 lady that the knyghte tooke aweye / the whiche kyng Pellinre
 at that tyme folowed / Thenne the kyng stablyffhed all his kny-
 ghtes and gaf them that were of londes not ryche / he gaf them
 londes / and charged hem neuer to doo outragyoufyte nor mor-
 15 dre / and alweyes to flee treason / Also by no meane to be cru-
 el / but to gyue mercy vnto hym that asketh mercy vpon payn
 of forfeiture of their worship and lordship of kyng Arthur for
 euermore / and alweyes to doo ladyes / damoyfels / and gen-
 tylwymmen focour vpon payne of dethe / Also that no man ta-
 20 ke noo batails in a wrongful quarel for noo lawe ne for noo
 worldes goodes / Vnto this were all the knyghtes fworne of
 the table round both old and yong / And euery yere were they
 fworne at the hyghe feest of Pentecost

¶ Explicit the weddyng of kynge Arthur

¶ Sequitur quartus liber ¶ Capitulum Primum

25 **S**Oo after these questys of Syr Gawayne / Syre
 Tor / and kynge Pellinore / It felle so that Mer-
 lyn felle in a dottage on the damoifel that kyng
 Pellinore broughte to the Courte / and she was o-
 ne of the damoyfels of the lake that hyzte Ny-
 neue / But Merlyn wold lete haue her no rest but alweyes he
 30 wold be with her / And euer she maade Merlyn good chere tyl
 she had lerned of hym al maner thyng that she desyred and
 he was affoted vpon her that he myghte not be from her / Soo
 on a tyme he told kynge Arthur that he sholde not dure longe
 but for al his craftes he shold be put in the erthe quyck and

fo he told the kynge many thynges that shold befall / but alle
 wayes he warned the kynge to kepe wel his swerd and the
 scaubard / for he told hym how the swerd and the scaubard
 shold be stolen by a woman from hym that he most trusted /
 Also he told kynge Arthur that he shold mysse hym / yet had 5
 ye leuer than al your landes to haue me ageyne / A sayd the
 kynge / fyn ye knowe of your aduventure puruey for hit / and
 put away by your crates that myfauventure / Nay said Merlyn
 it wylle not be / soo he departed from the kynge / And within a
 whyle the damoyfel of the lake departed / and Merlyn wente 10
 with her euermore where some euer she wente / And oftymes
 merlyn wold haue had her pryuely away by his subtile craf-
 tes / thenne she made hym to swere that he shold neuer do none
 enchaument vpon her yf he wold haue his wylle / And so
 he sware / so she and Merlyn wente ouer the see vnto the land 15
 of Benwyck there as kynge Ban was kynge that had gre-
 te warre ageynst kynge Claudas / and there Merlyn spake
 with kynge Bans wyf a fair lady and a good / and her na-
 me was Elayne / and there he sawe yonge Launcelot / there the
 quene made grete forowe for the mortal werre þ^t kyng claudas 20
 made on her lord and on her landes / Take none heuyneffe said
 Merlyn / for this fame child within this xx yere shall reuenge
 yow on kynge Claudas that all Crystendom shalle speke of it
 And this fame child shalle be the moost man of worship of
 the world / and his fyrst name is galahad / that knowe I 25
 wel said Merlyn / And fyn ye haue confermed hym Launce-
 lot / that is trouthe said the quene / his fyrst name was Gala-
 had / O Merlyn said the quene shalle I lyue to see my sone
 suche a man of prowesse / ye lady on my parel ye shal see hit /
 and lyue many wynters after / And soo sone after the lady 30
 and Merlyn departed / and by the waye Merlyn shewed her
 many wondres / and cam in to Cornewaille / And alweyes
 Merlyn lay aboute the lady to haue her maydenhode / and she
 was euer passyng wery of hym / and fayne wold haue ben
 delyuerd of hym / for she was aferd of hym by cause he was a 35
 deuyls sone / and she coude not beskyfte hym by no meane /
¶ And soo on a tyme it happed that Merlyn shewed to her
 in a roche where as was a greete wonder / and wroughte by

enchautement that wente vnder a grete stone / So by her sub-
 tyle wyrchyng she maade Merlyn to goo vnder that stone to
 lete her wete of the merueilles there / but she wroughte so ther
 for hym that he came neuer oute for alle the crafte he coude doo /
 5 And so she departed and lefte Merlyn /

¶ Capitulum Secundum

ANd as kynge Arthur rode to Camelot / and helde ther
 a grete feest with myrthe and Ioye / so soone after he re-
 turned vnto Cardoylle / and ther cam vnto Arthur newe ty-
 dynges that the kynge of Denmarke and the kynge of Ire-
 10 land that was his broder and the kynge of the vale and the
 kynge of Soleyse / and the kynge of the yle of Longtaynse al
 these fyue kynges with a grete hoost were entrid in to the lād
 of kynge Arthur and brente and flewe clene afore hem / both
 Cyttes and castels that it was pyte to here / ¶ Allas sayd
 15 Arthur yet had I neuer reſte one monethe fyn I was crow-
 ned kyng of this land / Now ſhalle I neuer reſte tyl I me-
 te with tho kynges in a fayre feld / that I make myn auowe
 for my true lyege peple ſhalle not be deſtroyed in my defaul-
 te / goo with me who wille and abyde who that wille / thenne
 20 the kynge lete wryte vnto kynge Pellenore and prayd hym in
 alle haſte to make hym redy with fuche peple as he myght lyz-
 tlyeſt rere and hye hym after in al haſt / All the Barons we-
 re pryuely wrothe / that the kynge wold departe ſo ſodenly but
 the kynge by no meane wold abyde / but made wrytyng vn-
 25 to them that were not there / and bad them hye after hym fu-
 che as were not at that tyme in the Courte / Thenne the kynge
 came to quene gweneuer and ſayd lady make yow redy / for
 ye ſhall goo with me / for I may not longe myſſe yow / ye ſhal
 cauſe me to be the more hardy / what auenture ſo befall me / I
 30 wille not wete my lady to be in no ieopardy / Sire ſaid ſhe I
 am at your commaundement / and ſhalle be redy what tyme ſo
 ye be redy / So on the morne the kynge and the quene departed
 with fuche ſelauſhip as they hadde / and came in to the Northe
 in to a foreſt beſyde humber and there lodged hem
 35 ¶ Whanne the word & tydyng came vnto the fyue kynges

[leaf 60 verso]

aboue fayd that Arthur was befyde humber in a foreste there
 was a knyght broder vnto one of the fyue kynges that gafe
 hem this counceille / ye knowe wel that fyre Arthur hath the
 floure of Chyualrye of the world with hym as it is preued
 by the grete bataille he dyd with the xj kynges / And therfor 5
 hye vnto hym nyghte and daye tyl that we be nyghe hym / for
 the lenger he taryeth the bygger he is / and we euer the waiker
 And he is fo couragious of hym felf that he is come to the fel-
 de with lytel peple / And therefore lete vs fet vpon hym or day
 and we shalle flee doune of his knyghtes ther shal none esca- 10
 pe

¶ Capitulum Tercium

WN to this counceille thefe fyue kynges affented / and
 fo they passed forth with her hooft thorow Northwalis
 and came vpon Arthur by nyghte and fett vpon his
 hooft as the kynge and his knyghtes were in their paelions 15
 kynge Arthur was vnarmed / and had leid hym to rest with
 hys quene Gweneuer / Sir said fyr kaynus it is not good we
 be vnarmed / we shalle haue no nede said fyre Gawayne and
 Syr Gryflet that laye in a lytel paelione by the kynge /
 With that they herd a grete noyse and many cryed trefon tre- 20
 fon / Allas said kynge Arthur we ben bitrayed / Vnto armes
 felawes thenne he cryed / fo they were armed anone at al po-
 yntes / Thenne cam ther a wounded knyghte vnto the kynge &
 faide fyr faue your felf and my lady the quene for our hooft
 is destroyed and moche peple of ours slayne / Soo anone the 25
 kynge and the quene and the thre knyghtes took her horfes &
 rode toward humber to passe ouer it / and the water was fo ro-
 ugh that they were aferd to passe ouer / Now may ye chefe fayd
 kynge Arthur whether ye wille abyde and take the aduentur
 on this fyde / for and ye be taken / they wille flee yow / It were 30
 me leuer fayd the quene to dye in the water than to falle in
 your enemyes handes & there be slayne / And as they stode soo
 talkyng / fyr kaynus sawe the fyue kynges comynge on horf-
 bak by hem felf alone with her speres in her handes euen toward
 hem / loo said fyr kaynus yonder be the fyue kynges / lete vs go 35
 to them and matche hem / that were foly fayd sire gawayne /
 for we are but thre and they ben fyue that is trouthe said fyre
 Gryflet / No force said fyr kay I wille vndertake for two of

them / and thenne may ye thre vndertake for the other thre / and
 ther with al fyr kay lete his hors renne as fast as he myghte
 and strake one of them thorow the shelde / and the body a fa-
 dom that the kynge felle to the erthe stark dede / That sawe fyr
 5 Gawayne and ranne vnto another kyng so hard that he smote
 hym thurgh the body / And ther with all kyng Arthur ran
 to another / and smote hym thurgh the body with a spere that
 he fylle to the erthe dede / Thenne fyr Gryflet ranne vnto the iiij
 kyng and gaf hym fuche a falle that his neck brake / Anone
 10 fyr kay ranne vnto the fyfthe kynge and smote hym so hard
 on the helme that the stroke clafe the helme and the hede to the
 erthe / that was wel stryken sayd kynge Arthur / and wor-
 shipfully haft thow hold thy promesse / therfor I shal honou-
 re the / whyle that I lyue / and ther with all they fet the que-
 15 ne in a barge in to humber / but alweyes quene gweneuer pra-
 yfed fyr kay for his dedes / and sayd what lady that ye loue /
 and she loue yow not ageyne she were gretely to blame / and
 amonge ladyes said the Quene I shalle bere youre noble fa-
 me / for ye spak a grete word and fulfilled it worshipfully
 20 and therwith the quene departed / Thenne the kyng and the
 thre knyghtes rode in to the forest / for there they supposed to he-
 re of them that were escaped / and there he fond the most par-
 ty of his peple / and told hem all how the fyue kynges were
 dede / and therefore lete vs hold vs to gyders tyll it be day / and
 25 whan their hoost have aspyed that their chyuetayns be slayn
 they wille make fuche dole that they shalle not mowe helpe hem
 self / and ryght so as the kynge said / so it was / for whan they
 fonde the fyue kynges dede / they made fuche dole that they fell
 fro their horses / Ther with all cam kyng Arthur but with a fe-
 30 we peple and flewe on the lyfte hand and on the ryght hand
 that wel nyhe ther escaped no man / but alle were slayne to the
 nombre of xxx M / And whan the bataille was all ended the
 kynge kneled doune and thanked god mekely / and thenne
 he sente for the quene and soone she was come / and she maade
 35 grete Ioye of the ouercomynge of that bataille

¶ Capitulum iiij

THere with alle came one to kyng Arthur / and told
 hym that kyng Pellinore was within thre myle with
 a grete hooft / and he said / go vnto hym and lete hym
 vnderstande how we haue spedde / Soo within a whyle kyng
 Pellinore cam with a grete hooft / and falewed the peple and 5
 the kyng / and ther was grete ioye made on euery syde / Then-
 ne the kyng lete ferche how moche people of his party ther was
 flayne / And ther were founde but lytel past two honderd men
 flayne and viij knyghtes of the table round in their paelions
 Thenne the kyng lete rere and deuyse in the same place there 10
 as the batail was done a faire abbeye and endowed it wyth
 grete lyuelode and lete it calle the Abbey of la beale aduentu-
 re / but whanne somme of them cam in to their Countreyes ther
 of the fyue kynges were kynges and told hem how they were
 flayne / ther was made grete dole / And alle kyng Arthurs 15
 enemyes as the kyng of Northwales and the kynges of the
 North wyfte of the bataille they were passyng heuy / and soo
 the kyng retorned vnto Camelot in haft / And whan he was
 come to Camelot / he called kyng Pellinore vnto hym & sayd
 ye vnderstand wel that we haue losse viij knyghtes of the best 20
 of the table round / and by your aduys we wille chese viij a-
 geyne of the best we may fynde in this Courte / Syr said Pel-
 linore / I shal counceille yow after my conceyte the best / there
 are in your Courte ful noble knyghtes bothe of old & yonge
 And therfor by myn aduys ye shal chese half of the old and 25
 half of the yonge / whiche be the old said kyng Arthur / Syre
 said kyng Pellinore me semeth that kyng Vryence that hath
 wedded your syster Morgan le fay and the kyng of the lake
 and syr Heruyse de reuel a noble knyght / and syr galagars
 the iiij / this is wel deuysed said kyng Arthur and right soo 30
 shal it be / Now whiche are the four yong knyghtes said Arthur
 Syre saide Pellinore the fyrst is syr Gawayne your neuewe
 that is as good a knyght of his tyme / as ony is in this lād
 And the second as me semeth best is fyre Gryflet le fyse the
 dene that is a good knyght and ful desyrous in armes / and 35
 who may see hym lyue he shal preue a good knyghte / And
 the thyrd as me semeth is wel to be one of the knyghtes of the
 round table syr kay the fenefcha for many tymes he hath done

ful worshipfully / And now at your last bataille he dyd full
honourably for to vndertake to flee two kynges / By my hede
said Arthur he is best worthy to be a knyght of the rounde ta-
ble of ony that ye haue reherced / and he had done no more pro-
5 weffe in his lyf dayes

¶ Capitulum Quintum

Now said kynge Pellenore I shalle putte to yow two
knyghtes / and ye shalle chese whiche is moost worthy /
that is Syr Bagdemagus and fyr Tor my sone /
But by cause Syre Tor is my sone I may not prayse hym /
10 but els and he were not my sone / I durst faye that of his a-
ge ther is not in this land a better knyghte than he is nor of
better condycions and lothe to doo ony wronge / and loth to ta-
ke ony wronge / By my hede said Arthur he is a passyng go-
od knyght / as ony ye spak of this day that wote I wel fa-
15 id the kyng / for I haue fene hym preued but he seyth lytyll
and he doth moche more / for I knowe none in al this courte &
he were as wel borne on his moder fyde as he is on your fyde
that is lyke hym of prowesse and of myghte / And therfor I
wille haue hym at this tyme and leue fyr Bagdemagus tyll
20 another tyme / Soo whan they were so chofen by the assente of
alle the barons / Soo were there founden in her syeges eury
knyghtes names that here are reherced / and so were they fet in
their syeges / wherof fyr Bagdemagus was wonderly wrothe
that fyr Tor was auanced afore hym / and therefore sodenly
25 he departed from the Courte and toke his squyer with hym / &
rode longe in a forest tyll they came to a crosse and there alyzt
and sayd his prayers deuoutely / The meane whyle his squyer
founde wryten vpon the crosse that Bagdemagus shold ne-
uer retorne vnto the Courte ageyne / tyll he had wonne a kny-
30 tes body of the round table body for body / lo fyr said his squy-
er / here I fynde wrytyng of yow / therfor I rede yow retorne
ageyne to the Courte / that shalle I neuer said Bagdemagus
by men speke of me grete worship / and that I be worthy to
be a knyghte of the round table / and soo he rode forthe / And
35 ther by the way he founde a braüche of an holy herbe that was
the fygne of the Sancgraill / and no knyght founde sliche to-
kens but he were a good lyuer / So as sir Bagdemagus rode

to see many adventures / it happed hym to come to the roche / ther
 as the lady of the lake had put Merlyn vnder the stone / and
 there he herde hym make grete dole / wherof fyre Bagdemagus
 wold haue holpen hym and wente vnto the grete stone / and
 he was so heuy that an C men myght not lyfte hyt vp / whan 5
 Merlyn wyfte he was there he bad leue his labour / for al was
 in vayne / for he myght neuer be holpen but by her that put hym
 ther / and so Bagdemagus departed and dyd many auentu-
 res and preued after a full good knyght / and came ageyne
 to the Courte and was made knyght of the round table / So 10
 on the morne ther felle newe tydynges and other auentures

¶ Capitulum Sextum

THenne it befelle that Arthur and many of his knygh-
 tes rode on huntyng in to a grete forest / and it hap-
 ped kyng Arthur / kyng Vryens and fyr Accolon of gaulle
 folowed a grete herte for they thre were wel horfed / and soo 15
 they chaced so fast that within a whyle they thre were thenne
 x myle from her felauship / And at the last they chaced so fore
 that they slewe theyr horses vnderne the them / thenne were they
 al thre on foote / and euer they sawe the herte afore them pas-
 syng wery and enbuffed / What wille we doo said kyng ar- 20
 thur we are hard bestad / lete vs goo on foote said kyng Vry-
 ens tyl we may mete with some lodgyng / Thenne were they
 ware of the herte that lay on a grete water banke / and a bra-
 chet bytyng on his throte and mo other houndes cam after /
 Thenne kyng Arthur blewe the pryse and dyghte the herte / 25
 Thenne the kyng loked aboute the world / and sawe afore
 hym in a grete water a lytel ship al apparailled with fylke
 doune to the water / and the ship cam ryghte vnto hem and la-
 ded on the sandes / Thenne Arthur wente to the banke & loked
 in / and sawe none erthely creature therin / Sirs said the kyng 30
 come thens / and lete vs see what is in this ship / Soo they
 wente in al thre and founde hit rychely behanged with clothe
 of fylke / By thenne it was derke nyghte / and there sodenly
 were aboute them an C torches sette vpon alle the fydes of the
 ship bordes and it gaf grete lyghte / And ther with all there 35

cam out twelue fayr damoyfels and falewed kyng Arthur
 on her knees and called hym by his name / and sayd he was
 ryght welcome / and suche chere as they had he shold haue of
 the best / the kyng thanked hem fayre / There with all they lad
 5 the kyng and his two felawes in to a faire chambre / and ther
 was a clothe leyd rychely bysene of al that longed vnto a ta-
 bel / and there were they serued of al wynes and metes that
 they coude thynke / of that the kyng had grete merueille / for
 he ferd neuer better in his lyf as for one souper / And so when
 10 they had souped at her leyser / kyng Arthur was ledde vnto a
 chamber / a rycher befene chamber sawe he neuer none / and soo
 was kyng Vryens serued / and ledde in to suche another chā-
 byr / and fyr Accolon was ledde in to the thyrd chamber pas-
 syng rychely and wel bysene / and so were they layde in the-
 15 ire beddes easly / And anone they felle on slepe / and slepte
 merueilloufly fore all the nyght / And on the morowe kyng
 Vryens was in Camelott abed in his wyues armes Morgan
 le fay / And whan he awoke / he had grete merueylle / how he
 cam there / for on the euen afore he was two dayes Iourney frō
 20 Camelot / And whan kyng Arthur awoke he found hym self
 in a derke pryson herynge aboute hym many complayntes of
 woful knyghtes

¶ Capitulum Septimum

WHat are ye that soo complayne said kyng Arthur /
 we ben here xx knyghtes prysoners sayd they / & some
 25 of vs haue layne here seuen yere and somme more and somme
 laffe / for what cause sayd Arthur / we shalle telle yow said the
 knyghtes / this lord of this castel his name is fyr Damas / &
 he is the falsest knyght that lyueth / and ful of treason / and a
 very coward as ony lyueth / and he hath a yonger broder a
 30 good knyghte of prowesse / his name is fyr Ontzlake / and
 this traytour Damas the elder broder wylle gyue hym noo
 parte of his lyelode / But as fyre Ontzlake kepeth thorow
 prowesse of his handes / and so he kepeth from hym a ful fair
 maner and a ryche and therin fyre Ontzlake dwelleth wor-
 35 shipfully / and is wel biloued of al peple / & this fyre Damas
 our maister is as euyll beloued for he is without mercy / and

he is acoward / and grete werre hath ben betwyxe them bothe /
 but Ontzlake hath euer the better / and euer he profereth fyre
 Damas to fyghte for the lyuelode body for body / but he wylle
 not doo / other els to fynde a knyghte to fyghte for hym / Vnto
 that fyr Damas hath graunted to fynde a knyghte / but he is 5
 so euyll byloued and hated / that there nys neuer a knyghte
 wylle fyghte for hym / And whan Damas sawe this that ther
 was neuer a knyght / wold fyghte for hym / he hath daily layn
 a wayte with many knyghtes with hym / and taken alle the
 knyghtes in this countrey to see and aspye her auentures / he 10
 hath taken hem by force and broughte hem to his pryson / and
 so he tooke vs feueratly as we rode on oure auentures / & many
 good knyghtes haue dyed in this pryson for hongre to the nom-
 bre of xviiij knyghtes / And yf ony of vs alle that here is or
 hath ben wold haue foughten with his broder Ontzlake / he 15
 wold haue delyuerd vs / but for by cause this Damas is so
 fals and so ful of treason we wold neuer fyghte for hym to
 dye for it / And we be soo lene for hongre that vnnethe we
 may stande on oure feete / god delyuer yow for his mercy sayd
 Arthur / Anone there with alle ther cam a damoyfel vnto 20
 Arthur / and asked hym what chere / I can not say sayd he / fir
 sayd she and ye wylle fyghte for my lord ye shall be delyuerd
 oute of pryson / and els ye escape neuer the lyf / Now sayd
 Arthur that is hard / yet had I leuer to fyghte with a kny-
 ght than to dye in pryson / With this said Arthur I may be de- 25
 lyuerd and alle these prysoners I wylle doo the batail / yes
 said the damoyfel / I am redy sayd Arthur and I had hors
 and armour / ye shalle lacke none said the damoyfel / Me femeth
 damoyfel I shold haue sene yow in the Courte of Arthur /
 Nay said the damoyfel I cam neuer there / I am the lordes do- 30
 ughter of this castel / yet was she fals for she was one of the
 damoyfels of Morgan le fay / Anone she wente vnto fyr Da-
 mas and told hym how he wold doo bataille for hym / and so
 he sente for Arthur / And whan he cam he was wel coloured
 and wel made of his lymmes / that al knyghtes that sawe hym 35
 said it were pyte that suche a knyghte shold dye in pryson / soo
 fyr Damas and he were agreed that he shold fyghte for hym
 vpon this couenaüt that all other knyghtes shold be delyuerd

And vnto that was fyr Damas fworne vnto Arthur / and
also to doo the bataille to the vttermeft / And with that all the
xx knyghtes were brought oute of the derke pryson in to the
halle and delyuerd / and so they all abode to see the bataille

¶ Capitulum Octauum

5 **N**ow torne we vnto Accolon of Gaulle that whanne he
awoke / he found hym self by a depe welle fyde within
half a foote in grete perylle of dethe / And there cam oute of
that fontayne a pype of fyluer / and oute of that pype ranne
water all on hyhe in a stone of marbel / whan fyre Accolon fa-
10 we this / he blessing hym and sayd Ihesu saue my lorde kyng
Arthur and kyng Vryens / for these damoyfels in this ship
haue bitrayed vs / they were deuyls and noo wymmen / And
yf I may escape this misaventure / I shalle destroye all where
I may fynde these fals damoyfels that vsen enchaüementys /
15 ¶ Ryght with that ther cam a dwarf with a grete mouthe &
a flat nose and fawed fyre Accolon and said how he came
from Quene Morgan le fay / and she greteyth yow wel / and
byddeth yow be of strong herte / for ye shal fyzte to morne with
a knyghte at the houre of pryme / And therefore she hath sente
20 yow here Excalibur Arthurs swerd and the scaubard / and
she byddeth yow as ye loue her that ye doo batail to the vt-
termeft without ony mercy lyke as ye had promysed her whā
ye spake to gyder in pryete / And what damoyfel that bryn-
geth her the knyghtes hede whiche ye shal fyghte with al / she
25 wille make her a quene / Now I vnderstand yow wel sayd
Accolon / I shalle holde that I haue promysed her now I ha-
ue the swerd / whan sawe ye my lady Quene Morgan le fay
Ryghte late sayd the dwarf / thenne Accolon tooke hym in
his armes / and said recommaunde me vnto my lady Quene /
30 and telle her all shal be done that I haue promysed her / and
els I wille dye for hit / Now I suppose said Accolon she hath
made alle these craftes and enchaument for this bataille /
ye may wel bileue it said the dwarf / Ryzt so there cam a kny-
ghte and a lady with fyxe squyers / and fawed Accolon /
35 and prayd hym for to aryse and come and reste hym at his

maner / and so Accolon mounted vpon a voyde hors / & wente
 with the knyghte vnto a fayre maner by a pryory / and there
 he had passyng good chere / Thenne fyr Damas sente vnto his
 broder fyr Ontzelake / and badde make hym redy by to morne
 at the houre of pryme / and to be in the felde to fyghte wyth a 5
 a good knyght / for he had founden a good knyght that was redy
 to doo bataill at all poyntes / whan this word cam vnto fyr
 Ontzelake / he was passyng heuy / for he was wounded a lytel
 to fore thorow bothe his thyes with a spere / and made grete
 dole / But as he was wounded he wold haue taken the ba- 10
 taille on hand / Soo it happed at that tyme by the meanes of
 Morgan le fay Accolon was with fyr Ontzelake lodged / and
 whan he herd of that bataille and how Ontzelake was wou-
 ded / he sayd that he wold fyghte for hym by cause Morgan le
 fey had sente hym Excalibur and the shethe for to fyzte with 15
 the knyght on the morne / This was the cause fyr Accolon to-
 ke the bataille on hand / thenne fyre Ontzelake was passyng
 glad / and thāked fyr Accolon with alle his herte that he wold
 do fo moche for hym / & ther with al fyr Ontzelake sente word
 vnto his broder fyre Damas / that he had a knygte þ^t for hym 20
 fhold be redy in the felde by the houre of pryme / Soo on the
 morne fyr Arthur was armed and wel horfed / and asked
 fyr Damas whan fhalle we to the felde / fyr faid fyr Damas
 ye fhalle here masse / and so Arthur herd a masse / And whan
 masse was done / there cam a squyer on a grete hors & asked 25
 fyr Damas yf his knyght were redy / for oure knyght is redy
 in the felde / Thenne fyre Arthur mounted vpon horsbak / &
 there were alle the knyghtes and comyns of that countrey / &
 fo by alle aduyfes ther were chofen xij good men of the coun-
 trey for to wayte vpon the two knyghtes / And ryght as Ar- 30
 thur was on horsbak / ther cam a damoisel from Morgan le fey
 and broughte vnto fyr Arthur a fwerd lyke vnto Excalibur /
 and the scaubard / and sayd vnto Arthur Morgan le fey fen-
 deth here your fwerd for grete loue / and he thanked her / & wen-
 de it had ben so / but she was fals / for the fwerd and the scau- 35
 bard was counterfeet & brutyll and fals

¶ Capitulum ix

ANd thenne they dresfyd hem on bothe partyes of the felde / & lete their horses renne so fast that eyther smote other in the myddes of the shelde / with their speres hede / that bothe hors and man wente to the erthe / And thenne
 5 they sterte vp bothe / and pulled oute their swerdys / the meane whyle that they were thus at the bataille cam the damoyfel of the lake in to the felde / that put Merlyn vnder the stone / & she cam thydder for loue of kynge Arthur / for she knewe how Morgan le fay had soo ordeyned / that kynge Arthur shold
 10 haue ben slayne that daye / and therfor she cam to saue his lyf And so they went egrely to the bataille / and gaf many grete strokes / but alweyes Arthurs swerd bote not lyke Accolon swerd / But for the most party euery stroke that Accolon gaf he wounded fore Arthur / that it was merueille he stode / And
 15 alweyes his blood fylle from hym fast / whan Arthur beheld the ground so fore bebledde he was defmayed / and thenne he demed treason that his swerd was chaunged / for his swerd boote not styl as it was wonte to do / therfor he dredde hym fore to be dede / for euer hym semed that the swerd in Accolons
 20 hand was Excalibur / for at euery stroke that Accolon stroke he drewe blood on Arthur / Now knyghte said Accolon vnto Arthur kepe the wel from me / but Arthur anserd not agayne / and gaf hym fuche a buffet on the helme that he made hym to stoupe nygh fallynge doune to the erthe / Thenne fyr Accolon
 25 withdrewre hym a lytel / and cam on with Excalibur on hyghe / and smote fyr Arthur fuche a buffet that he felle nyhe to the erthe / Thenne were they wroth bothe / and gaf eche other many fore strokes / but alweyes fyr Arthur lost so moche blood that it was merueille he stode on his feet / but he was soo
 30 ful of knyghthode that knyghtly he endured the payne / And fyr Accolon lost not a dele of blood / therfor he waxt passynge lyghte / and fyr Arthur was passynge feble / and wende veryly to haue dyed / but for al that he made countenaunce as though he myghte endure / and helde Accolon as shorte as he myght / But Accolon was so bolde by cause of Excalibur that he
 35 waxed passynge hardy / But alle men that beheld hym sayd they sawe neuer knyghte fyghte so wel as Arthur dyd confyderynge the blood that he bled / Soo was all the peple fory for

hym / but the two bretheren wold not accorde / thenne alweyes
 they fought to gyders as fyers knyghtes / and fyre Arthur
 withdrewe hym a lytel for to reſte hym / and fyre Accolon cal-
 led hym to bataille and ſaid it is no tyme for me to ſuffre the
 to reſte / And therwith he cam fyerſly vpon Arthur / and fyre 5
 Arthur was wrothe for the blood that he had loſt / and ſmote
 Accolon on hyhe vpon the helme ſoo myztely that he made hym
 nyhe to falle to the erthe / And therwith Arthurs ſwerd braſt
 at the croſſe and felle in the graſſe amonge the blood and the
 pomel and the ſure handels he helde in his handes / When fyr ar- 10
 thur ſawe that / he was in grete fere to dye / but alweyes he hel-
 de vp his ſhelde and loſt no ground nor bated no chere /

¶ Capitulum 8

THenne fyre Accolon beganne with wordes of treaſon
 and ſayd knyghte thow arte ouercome / and maxſte
 not endure and alſo thow arte wepenles / and thow haſt loſte 15
 moche of thy blood / and I am ſul lothe to flee the / therfor yel-
 de the to me as recreaunt / Nay ſaide fyre Arthur I maye not
 ſo / for I haue promyſed to doo the bataille to the vttermoſt by
 the feythe of my body whyle me laſteth the lyf / and therfor I
 had leuer to dye with honour than to lyue with ſhame / And 20
 yf it were poſſyble for me to dye an C tymes I had leuer to
 dye ſo ofte / than yelde me to the / for though I lacke wepen / I
 ſhalle lacke no worſhip / And yf thow flee me wepenles that
 ſhalle be thy ſhame / wel ſayd Accolon as for the ſhame I wyl
 not ſpare / Now kepe the from me for thow arte but a dede mā 25
 And therwith Accolon gaf hym ſuche a ſtroke that he felle ny-
 ghe to the erthe / and wolde haue had Arthur to haue cryed
 hym mercy / But fyre Arthur preſſed vnto Accolon with his
 ſheld / and gaf hym with the pomel in his hand ſuche a buſ-
 fet that he went thre ſtrydes abak / whan the damoiſel of the la- 30
 ke beheld arthur / how ful of prowefſe his body was & the fals
 trefon that was wrouzt for hym to haue had hym ſlayn ſhe had
 grete pyte that ſo good a knyzt & ſuche a mā of worſhip ſhold
 ſo be deſtroyed / And at the next ſtroke fyr Accolon ſtroke hym
 ſuche a ſtroke that by the damoyfels enchaument the ſwerd 35
 Excalibur felle oute of Accolons hande to the erthe / And
 therwith alle Syre Arthur lyghtely lepte to hit / and gate hit

in his hand / and forthwith al he knewe that it was his fuerd
 Excalibur / & fayd thow haft ben from me al to long / & moche
 dommage haft thow done me / & ther with he aspyed the scau-
 bard hangynge by his fyde / and sodenly he sterte to hym and
 5 pulled the scaubard from hym and threwe hit fro hym as fer
 as he myghte throwe hit / O knyghte faide Arthur this daye
 haft thow done me grete dommage with this sward / Now are
 ye come vnto your dethe / for I shalle not waraunt yow but
 ye shalle as wel be rewarded with this sward or euer we de-
 10 parte as thow haft rewarded me / for moche payne haue ye ma-
 de me to endure / and moche blood haue I lost / And therwith
 fyr Arthur ruffhed on hym with alle his myghte and pulled
 hym to the erthe / and thēne ruffhed of his helme / and gaf hym
 suche a buffet on the hede that the blood cam oute at his eres /
 15 his nose & his mouthe / Now wylle I flee the said Arthur /
 Slee me ye may wel said Accolon and it please yow / for ye ar
 the best knyghte that euer I fonde / and I see wel that god is
 with yow / But for I promysed to do this batail said Acco-
 lon to the vttermost and neuer to be recreaunt whyle I lyued
 20 therefore shal I neuer yelde me with my mouthe / but god doo
 with my body what he wyll / ¶ Thenne fyr Arthur remembrid
 hym and thoughte he shold haue sene this knyghte / Now telle
 me said Arthur or I wylle flee the / of what cōtrey art thou
 and of what courte / Syre knyghte sayd fyr Accolon I am of
 25 the courte of kynge Arthur / & my name is Accolon of gaulle
 Thenne was Arthur more desmayed than he was before hand
 For thenne he remembryd hym of his syster Morgan le fay /
 and of the enchaument of the ship / O fyre knyghte sayd he
 I pray yow telle me who gaf yow this sward and by whom
 30 ye had it /

¶ Capitulum xi

Thenne fyre Accolon bethouzte hym and said wo worth
 this sward / for by hit haue I geten my dethe / it may
 wel be / said the kynge / Now fyre said Accolon I wil
 telle yow this sward hath ben in my kepyng the moost party
 35 of this twelue moneth / And Morgan le fay kynge Vryens
 wyf sente it me yester daye by a dwerf to this entente that I
 shold flee kynge Arthur her broder / For ye shall vnderstand

entente to flee kyng Arthur her broder / for ye shal vnderstand
 kyng Arthur is the man in the world that she moost hateth
 by cause he is moost of worship and of prowesse of ony of her
 blood / Also she loueth me oute of mesure as paramour / and I
 her ageyne / And yf she myghte brynge aboute to flee Arthur 5
 by her craftes / she wold flee her husband kyng Vryens ly-
 ghtely / And thenne hadde she me deuysed to be kyng in this
 land / and soo to regne / and she to be my quene / but that is
 now done faide Accolon / for I am sure of my dethe wel sayd
 fyre Arthur / I fele by yow ye wold haue ben kyng in this 10
 land / It had ben grete dommage to haue destroyed your lord
 sayd Arthur / it is trouthe said Accolon / but now I haue told
 yow trouthe / wherfore I praye yow telle me of whens ye are
 and of what courte / O Accolon sayd kyng Arthur now I
 lete the wete / that I am kyng Arthur to whome thow hafte 15
 done grete dommage / Whanne Accolon herd that / he cryed on
 lowde fayre swete lord haue mercy on me / for I knewe not
 yow / O fyr Accolon sayd kyng Arthur mercy shalt thow
 haue / by cause I fele by thy wordes at this tyme / thow kno-
 west not my persone / But I vnderstand wel by thy wordes 20
 that thow hast agreed to the dethe of my persone / and therefore
 thow arte a traytour / but I wyte the the lasse / for my fyter
 Morgan le fay by her fals craftes made the to agree and con-
 sente to her fals lustes / but I shalle be fore auengyd vpon
 her and I lyue that alle Crystendome shalle speke of it / god 25
 knoweth / I haue honoured her and worshipped her more than
 alle my kynne / and more haue I trusted her than myn owne
 wyf and alle my kynne after /

¶ Thenne fyr Arthur called the kepars of the felde and said
 Syrs cometh hyder / for here are we two knyghtes that haue 30
 foughten vnto a grete dommage vnto us both / and lyke echone
 of vs to haue slayne other / yf it had happed soo / And hadde
 ony of vs knowen other / here had ben no bataille / nor stroke
 stryken

¶ Thenne al a lowde cryed Accolon
 vnto alle the knyghtes and men that were thēne there gadred 35
 to gyder / and sayd to them in this manere / O lordes this noble
 knyghte that I haue foughten with all / the whiche me fore
 repenteth is the mooste man of prowesse of manhode and of

worship in the world / for it is hym self kynge Arthur our al
ther liege lord & with myshap and with myfaüeture have I do-
ne this bataill with the kyng and lord that I am holden with
all

¶ Capitulum xij

5 **T** Henne alle the peple felle doune on her knees and cry-
ed kynge Arthur mercy / mercy shalle ye haue sayd
Arthur / here maye ye see what auentures befallen oftyme of
erraunte knyghtes how that I haue foughten with a knyght
of myn owne vnto my grete dommage and his bothe /
10 But fyrs by cause I am fore hurte and he bothe / and I had
grete nede of a lytel rest / ye shalle vnderstande the oppynyon
betwixe yow two bretheren as to the fyre Damas / for whom
I haue ben champion and wonne the feld of this knyghte /
yet wylle I Iuge by cause ye fyre Damas are called an orgu-
15 lous knyghte and full of vylony and not worthe of prowesse
of youre dedes / therfor I wylle that ye gyue vnto your bro-
der alle the hole manoir with the appertenaüce vnder thys for-
me / that fir Ontzelake hold the manoir of yow / and yerely to
gyue yow a palfrey to ryde vpon / for that wylle become yow
20 better to ryde on than vpon a courser / Also I charge the fyre
Damas vpon payne of deth / that thow neuer destresse no kny-
tes erraunte that ryde on their aduenture / And also that thow
restore these xx knyghtes that thow hast longe kepte prysoners
of all their harneis that they be content for / and yf any of hem
25 come to my court and complayne of the / by my hede thou shalt
dye therefore / Also fyre Ontzelake as to yow by cause ye are
named a good knyghte and ful of prowesse and true and
gentyll in all your dedes this shalle be youre charge I wylle
gyue yow that in al goodely haste ye come vnto me and my
30 courte and ye shalle be a knyghte of myne / and yf your dedes
be there after I shall so proferre yow by the grace of god that
ye shalle in shorte tyme be in ease for to lyue as worshipfully
as your broder fyre Damas / God thanke your largeness of
your goodenes & of your bounte / I shall be from hens forward
35 at all tymes at your commaundement / For syr said syr Ontze-
lake as god wold as I was hurte but late with an aduen-
tures knyght thurgh both my thyes that greued me fore / & els

had I done this bataille with yow / god wold fayd Arthur
 it had ben fo / for thenne had not I ben hurte as I am / I
 fhalle telle you the caufe why / for I had not ben hurte as I
 am hadde not ben myne owne fwerd / that was ftolen from
 me by treason / And this bataille was ordeyned afore hand to 5
 haue flayne me / and fo it was brouzte to the purpos by fals
 treason and by fals enchauntement / Allas faid fyr Ontzela-
 ke that is greeete pyte that euer foo noble a man as ye are of
 your dedes and prowesse / that ony man or woman myzt fyn-
 de in their hertes to worche ony treason ageynst yow / I fhalle 10
 reward them faid Arthur in fhort tyme by the grace of god
 Now telle me faid Arthur how fer am I from Camelot / fyr ye
 are two dayes iourney ther fro / I wold fayn be at fome pla-
 ce of worship faid fyr Arthur that I myghte refte me / Syre
 faid fyr Ontzelake / here by is a ryche abbey of your elders fou- 15
 dacyon of Nonnes but thre myle hens / So the kyng took his
 leue of alle the peple / and mounted vpon horfbak / and fir Ac-
 colon with hym / And whan they were come to the Abbaye / he
 lete fetche leches and ferche his woundes and Accolons bothe /
 but fyr Accolon dyed within four dayes / for he had bled foo 20
 moche blood that he myghte not lyue / but kyng Arthur was
 wel recouerd / Soo whan Accolon was dede / he lete fende hym
 on a horfbere with fyxe knyghtes vnto Camelot / and faid / be-
 re hym to my fyfter Morgan le fay / and fay that I fende her
 hym to a prefente / and telle her I haue my fwerd Excalibur 25
 and the fcaubard / foo they departed with the body

¶ Capitulum xliij

THe meane whyle Morgan le fay hadde wend kyng
 Arthur had been dede / foo on a day fhe afpyed kyng
 Vryens lay in his bedde flepyng / thenne fhe called vnto her a
 mayden of her counceyll / & faid go fetche me my lordes fwerd 30
 for I fawe neuer better tyme to flee hym than now /

¶ O Madame fayd the damoyfel / and ye flee my lord ye can
 neuer efcape / Care not yow faid Morgan le fay / for now I
 fee my tyme in the whiche it is beft to doo hit / And therfor hye
 the faft and fetche me the fwerd / Theñe the damoifel departed 35

fonde fyre Vwayne slepyng vpon a bedde in another chamber
 soo she wente vnto fyre Vwayne and awaked hym / and badde
 hym aryse and wayte on my lady youre moder / for she wille
 flee the kyng your fader slepyng in his bedde / for I goo to
 5 fette his fwerd / wel said fyr Vwayne go on your waye / and
 lete me dele / Anone the damoyfel brought Morgan the fwerd
 with quakyng handes / and lyghtely took the fwerd / & pul-
 led it out / and wente boldely vnto the beddes fyde / and away-
 ted how and where she myght fle hym best / And as she lyfte
 10 vp the fwerd to smyte / fir Vwayne lepte vnto his moder and
 caughte her by the hand and sayd A fende what wilt thou do
 And thou were not my moder with this fwerd I shold smy-
 te of thy hede / A sayd fyr Vwayn men faith that Merlyn was
 begoten of a deuylle / but I may faye an erthely deuylle bare
 15 me / O fayre sone Vwayne haue mercy vpon me / I was temp-
 ted with a deuylle / wherfore I crye the mercy / I wylle neuer
 more doo soo and faue my worship and difcouer me not / On
 this couenaunt said fyr Vwayne I wille forgyue it yow / soo
 ye wille neuer be aboute to doo fuche dedes / Nay sone said she / &
 20 that I make yow affuraunce /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

THenne came tydynges vnto Morgan le fay that Ac-
 colon was dede / and his body brought vnto the chirche
 And how kyng Arthur had his fwerd ageyne /

But whanne Quene Morgan wyfte that Accolon was dede /
 25 she was soo sorouful that nere hir herte to braft / But by cause
 she wold not it were knowen / oute ward she kepte her counte-
 ce **naun** / & maade no semblaunt of sorowe / But wel she wyfte
and she abode tyll her broder Arthur cam thyder / there shold
no gold goo for her lyf

30 ¶ **T**henne she wente vnto Quene Gweneuer / and asked her
leue to ryde in to the countreye / ye maye abyde sayde Quene
Gweneuer tyll youre brother the kyng come home / I maye
not sayde Morgan le fay / for I haue fuche hasty tydynges /
that I may not tary / wel saide Gueneuer ye maye departe

whanne ye wille / So erly on the morne or hit was daye she
 tooke her hors and rode alle that daye and moofte parte of the
 nyghte / And on the morn by none she cam to the fame Abbay
 of Nonnes / where as lay kyng arthur / & she knowyng he was
 there she asked where he was / And they anfuerd how he had 5
 leyd hym in his bed to slepe / for he had had but lytel reſte theſe
 thre nyghtes / Wel ſaid ſhe I charge yow that none of yow
 awake hym tyl I doo / and thenne ſhe alyghte of her hors / &
 thoughte for to ſtele away Excalibur his ſwerd / and ſoo ſhe
 wente ſtreighte vnto his chamber / And noo man durſte dyſ- 10
 obeye her commaundement / and there ſhe fond Arthur a ſlepe
 in his bedde and Excalibur in his ryght hand naked / Whan
 ſhe ſawe that ſhe was paſſyng heuy that ſhe myghte not come
 by the ſwerd withoute ſhe had awaked hym / and thenne
 ſhe wyſt wel ſhe had ben dede / Thenne ſhe tooke the ſcaubard 15
 and wente her wey on horſbak / whan the kyng awoke and
 myſſed his ſcaubard / he was wrothe / and he asked who had
 ben there / and they ſaid his ſyſter quene Morgan had ben ther
 and had put the ſcaubard vnder her mantel and was gone /
 Allas ſayd Arthur falſly ye haue watched me / Syre ſayd 20
 they alle we durſte not diſobeye your ſyſters commaundement
 A ſaid the kyng lete ſetche the beſt hors maye be founde / And
 byd ſyre Ontzlake arme hym in al haſt / and take another go-
 od hors and ryde with me / Soo anone the kyng and Ontze-
 lake were wel armed / and rode after this lady / and ſoo they 25
 cam by a croſſe and found a Cowherd / and they asked the
 poure man yf ther cam ony lady rydyng that way / Syre
 ſaid this poure man / ryght late cam a lady rydyng with a xl
 horſes / and to yonder foreſt ſhe rode / Thenne they ſpored their
 horſes / and folowed faſt / And within a whyle Arthur had 30
 a fyghte of Morgan le fay / thenne he chaced as faſt as he my-
 ghte / whanne ſhe aſpyed hym folowyng her / ſhe rode a gretter
 paas thorowe the foreſt tyl ſhe cam to a playne / And whanne
 ſhe ſawe ſhe myghte not eſcape ſhe rode vnto a lake ther by / &
 ſayd what ſoo euer come of me / my broder ſhall not haue this 35
 ſcaubard / And thenne ſhe lete throwe the ſcaubard in the de-
 peſt of the water ſoo it ſanke / for it was heuy of gold and pre-
 cious ſtones

¶ Thenne ſhe rode in to a valeye

where many grete stones were / And whan she sawe she muste
 be ouertake she shope her self hors and man by enchauntemēt
 vnto a grete marbyl stone / Anone with al cam Syr Arthur /
 and fyr Ontzelake where as the kynge myght knowe his fyf-
 5 ter and her men / and one knyght from another / A fayd the
 kynge here may ye see the vengeaunce of god / & now am I
 sory that this mysfaenture is befallē / & thenne he loked for the
 scaubard / but it wold not be founde / so he retorned to the Ab-
 beye there he came fro / So whan Arthur was gone / she torned
 10 alle in to the lykenesse as she and they were before / and sa-
 yd fyrs now may we goo where we wylle /

¶ Capitulum xv

THenne said Morgan sawe ye Arthur my broder / ye fa-
 id her knyghtes ryght wel / and that ye shold haue
 founde and we myghte haue stered from one stede / for by his
 15 armyuestal contenaunce he wold haue caused vs to have fled
 I byleue yow said Morgan / Anone after as she rode she met
 a knyght ledyng another knyzt on his hors before hym boun-
 de hand and foote blyndefeld to haue drowned hym in a fon-
 tayne / whan she sawe this knyzt so boude / she asked hym what
 20 wylle ye doo with that knyght / lady said he I wylle drowne
 hym / for what cause she asked / for I fonde hym with my wyf
 and she shalle haue the same dethe anone / that were pyte fayd
 Morgan le fay / Now what faye ye knyzt is it trouthe þ^t he fa-
 ith of yow she said to the knyght that shold be drowned / nay
 25 truly madame he seith not ryght on me / Of whens be ye fayd
 Morgan le fay and of what countre / I am of the Courte of
 kynge Arthur / and my name is Manassen cofyn vnto Acco-
 lon of gaulle / ye fay wel said she / and for the loue of hym ye
 shalle be delyuerd / and ye shalle haue your adueryary in the
 30 same caas ye be in / So Manessen was lofed & the other kny-
 ght bounde / And anone Manessen vnarmed hym and armed
 hym self in his harneis / and soo mounted on horfbak / and the
 knyght afore hym and soo threwe hym in to the fontayne and
 drowned hym / And thenne he rode vnto Morgan ageyne / &
 35 asked yf she wold ony thyng vnto kynge Arthur / Telle hym
 that I rescued the / not for the loue of hym but for the loue of
 Accolon / and telle hym I fere hym not whyle I can make me

and them that ben with me in lykenes of stones / And lete
 hym wete I can doo more whan I fee my tyme / And
 so she departed in to the countrey of Gorre / and there was she
 rychely receyued / and maade her castels and townes passyng
 stronge / for alweyes she drad moche kyng Arthur / Whanne 5
 the kyng had wel rested hym at the Abbey he rode vnto Ca-
 melot / and fonde his quene and his barons ryght glad of his
 comyng / And whan they herd of his straunge auentures as
 is afore reherced / they alle hadde merueille of the falskede of
 Morgan le fay / many knyghtes wysshed her brent / thenne cam 10
 Manessen to courte and told the kyng of his auenture / well
 said the kyng she is a kynde syster / I shalle soo be auengid
 on her and I lyue / that alle Crystendome shalle speke of hit /
 So on the morne ther cam a damoifel from Morgan to the ky-
 nge and she brought with her the rycheft mantel that euer was 15
 sene in that Courte / for it was fette as ful of precious stones
 as one myght stand by another / and there were the rycheft sto-
 nes that euer the kyng sawe / And the damoyfel faide youre
 syster sendeth yow this mantel / and desyreth that ye shold ta-
 ke this gyfte of her / And in what thyng she hath offended you 20
 she wille amende it at youre owne pleasyr / whan the kyng be-
 held this mantel it pleasyd hym moche / but he said but lytel

¶ Capitulum xvj

Wyth that came the damoyfel of the lake vnto the kyng
 and said fyr I must speke with yow in pryuyte / fay
 on said the kyng what ye wille / Syr sayd the damoyfel put 25
 not on yow this mantel tyl ye haue sene more / and in no wy-
 se lete it not come on yow nor on no knyghte of yours tyl ye
 commaunde the brynger thereof to put it vpon her / wel said ky-
 nge Arthur / It shalle be done as ye counceille me / And thenne
 he said vnto the damoyfel that cam fro his syster / damoifel this 30
 mantel that ye haue brought me I wille see it vpon yow / fyr
 she said / it wille not bifeme me to were a kynges garment / by
 my hede said Arthur / ye shalle were it or it come on my bak or
 ony mans that here is / and so the kyng made it to be putt vp-
 on her / And forth with al she felle doune dede / and neuer more 35

spake word after and brente to coles / Theinne was the kyng
 wonderly wrothe more than he was to fore hand / and fayd
 vnto kynge Vryens my fyfter your wyf is alwey aboute to
 bytraye me / and wel I wote outhere ye or my neuewe youre
 5 fone is of counceille with her to haue me destroyed / But as for
 yow said the kyng to kynge Vryens I deme not gretely that
 ye be of her counceill / For Accolon confessyd to me by his own
 mouth that she wold haue destroyed yow as wel as me ther
 for I hold yow excused / But as for your fone Syr Vwa-
 10 yn I hold hym suspect / therefore I charge yow put hym oute
 of my courte / So fyr Vwayne was discharged / And whanne
 Syr Gawayne wyft that he made hym redy to go with hym / &
 said who so bannyssheth my cosyn germayn / shal bannyfsheth me
 Soo they two departed / and rode in to a grete forest / and soo
 15 they came to an Abbay of Monkes / and ther were wel lodged
 But whanne the kyng wyft that fyr Gawayne was depar-
 ted from the Courte / ther was made grete forowe amonge alle
 the estates / Now sayd Gaherys Gawayns broder we haue lost
 two good knyghtes for the loue of one / So on the morne they
 20 herd their maffes in the abbay / and so they rode forth tyl that
 they came to a grete forest / thenne was fyr Gawayne ware in
 a valey by a turret xij fayre damoyfels / and two knyghtes ar-
 med on grete horses / and the damoyfels wente to and fro by a
 tree / And thenne was fyr Gawayne ware how ther henge a
 25 whyte shelde on that tree / And euer as the damoyfels cam by
 it / they spytte vpon it / and some threwe myre vpon the sheld /

¶ Capitulum xvij

THenne fyr Gawayne and fyr Vwayne wente and sa-
 lewed them / and asked why they dyd that despyte to
 the shelde / Syrs faiden the damoyfels / we shalle telle yow /
 30 There is a knyght in this cōtrey that oweth this whyte sheld
 and he is a passyng good man of his handes / but he hateth al
 ladyes and gentylywymmen / and therfor we doo alle this des-
 pyte to the shelde / I shal say yow said fyr gawayne / hit byse-
 meth euylle a good knyghte to despyse all ladyes and gentil
 35 wymmen / And parauentur though he hate yow he hath somme

[leaf 70 verso]

And paraenture he loueth in fomme other places ladyes and gentylywymmen / and to be loued ageyne / and he be fuche a mā of prowesse as ye speke of / Now what is his name / fyr fayd they / his name is Marhaus the kynges fone of Ireland I knowe hym wel fayd fyre Vwayne / he is a passyng good knyght as ony is on lyue / for I sawe hym ones preued at a Iuftes where many knyghtes were gadered / and that tyme ther myghte no man withftande hym / A fayd fyr Gawayne Damoyfels me thynketh ye are to blame / for hit is to suppose / he that henge that sheld ther / he wille not be longe ther fro / & 10
 thenne may tho knyghtes matche hym on horfbak / and that is more your worship than thus / For I wille abyde no lenger to see a knyghtes sheld dishonoured / And therwith fyre Vwayne and Gawayne departed a lytel fro them / And thenne were they ware where fyre Marhaus cam rydyng on a grete hors streyghte toward them / And whanne the xij damoyfels sawe fyr Marhaus they fled in to the turret as they were wylde so that fomme of them felle by the wey / Thenne the one of the knyghtes of the Toure drefsid his shelde and said on hyghe fyr Marhaus defende the / and soo they ranne to gyders that the knyzt brake his spere on Marhaus / & Marhaus smote hym so hard that he brake his neck and the hors back / That sawe the other knyght of the turret and drefsyd hym toward Marhaus / and they mette so egrely to gyders that the knyght of the Turret was soone smyten doune hors and man 25
 stark dede /

¶ Capitulum xviiij

ANd thenne fyre Marhaus rode vnto his shelde / and sawe how it was defowled / and fayd of this despyte I am a parte auengyd / But for her loue that gaf me this whyte shelde I shalle were the / and hange myn where thou was 30
 and soo he hanged it aboute his neck / Thenne he rode streyght vnto fyr Gawayn and to fyr Vwayne / and asked them what they dyd there / They anfuerd hym that they cam from kyng Arthurs courte for to see auentures / wel fayd fyre Marhaus here am I redy an auentures knyghte that wille fulfyllen ony 35

aduenture that ye wylle defyre / And soo departed fro them /
 to fetche his raunge / lete hym goo feid fyr Vwayn vnto fyre
 Gawayne / for he is a passyng good knyghte as ony is ly-
 uynge / I wold not by my wille that ony of vs were matched
 5 with hym / Nay said sir Gawayne not so / it were shame to vs
 were he not affayed were he neuer soo good a knyghte / wel
 said fyr Vwayne I wylle affaye hym afore yow / for I am
 more weyker than ye / And yf he smyte me doune / thenne may
 ye reuenge me / soo these two knyghtes cam to gyders with gre-
 10 te raundon that fyr Vwayne smote fyr Marhaus that his spe-
 re brafte in pyeces on the shelde / and Syre Marhaus smote
 hym so fore that hors and man he bare to the erthe / and hurte
 fyre Vwayne on the lyfte syde / Thenne fyr Marhaus tord
 his hors and rode toward Gawayne with his spere / and when
 15 fyr Gawayne sawe that / he dressid his sheld / and they auen-
 tryd their speres / and they cam to gyders with alle the myzte
 of their horses / that eyther knyght smote other so hard in myd-
 des of theyr sheldes / but fyr Gawayns spere brak / but sir mar-
 haus spere helde / And therwith fyre Gawayne and his hors
 20 ruffhed doune to the erthe / And lyghtly fyre Gawayne rose on
 his feet / and pulled out his sward / and dressyd hym toward
 fyr Marhaus on foote / and fyr marhaus sawe that / and pul-
 led oute his sward / and beganne to come to fyr Gawayne on
 horsbak / Syre knyght said fyr gawayn alyzte on foote or els
 25 I wylle flee thy hors / gramercy sayd fyr Marhaus of youre
 gentylnes ye teche me curtosye / for hit is not for one knyzt to
 be on foote / and the other on horsbak / & therwith fyr Mar-
 haus sette his spere ageyne a tree and alyghte and tayed his
 hors to a tree / and dressid his shelde / and eyther cam vnto o-
 30 ther egerly / and smote to gyders with her swardes that her shel-
 des flewe in cantels / and they bryfed their helmes and their
 hauberkes and wounded eyther other / but Syre gawayne fro
 it passed ix of the klok waxed euer stronger and stronger /
 for thenne hit cam to the houre of noone & thryes his myghte
 35 was encreaced / Alle this aspyed fyr Marhaus and had grete
 wonder how his myghte encreaced / and so they wounded other
 passyng fore / And thenne whan it was past noone / and whan
 it drewe toward euensonge fyre gawayns strengthe febled &

waxt passyngge faynte that vnnethes he myght dure ony lenger / and fyr Marhaus was thenne bygger and bygger / fyre knyght said fyr Marhaus / I haue wel felt that ye are a passyngge good knyghte and a merueyllous man of myghte as euer I felt ony / whyle hit lasteth / And oure quarels are not grete / and therfor it were pyte to doo yow hurte / for I fele ye are passyngge feble / A said fyr Gawayn gentyl knyghte ye say the word that I shold say / And therwith they took of their helmes / and eyther kyssed other / and there they fwore to gyders eyther to loue other as bretheren / And fyr Marhaus pra- yd fyr gawayn to lodge with hym that nyghte / And so they toke their horses / and rode toward fyr Marhaus hous / And as they rode by the wey / fyr knyghte said fyr gawayne I haue merueylle that so valyaunt a man as ye be loue no ladyes ne damoyfels / Syre sayd fyr marhaus they name me wrong- fully tho that gyue me that name / but wel I wote it ben the damoyseles of the Turret that so name me and other suche as they be / Now shalle I telle yow for what cause I hate them / For they be forcereffes and enchaunters many of them / & be a knyzt neuer so good of his body and ful of prowesse as man may be / they wille make hym a stark coward to haue the better of hym / and this is the pryncipal cause that I hate them & to al good ladyes and gentyl wymmen I owe my seruyse as a knyght ouzte to do / As the book reherceth in frenshethere were many knyghtes that ouermatched fyr gawayne for alle the thryes myghte that he had / Syr Launcelot de lake / fyr Trystrams / fyr Bors de ganys / fyr Percyuale / fyr Pellias & fyr Marhaus / these fixe knyzttes had the better of fir gawayn Thenne within a lytel whyle they cam to fyr Marhaus place / whiche was in a lytel pryory / and there they alyghte and ladedes and damoyfels vnarmed them / and hastely loked to their hurtes / for they were all thre hurte / and so they had all thre good lodgyngge with fyr Marhaus and good chere / for whan he wyft that they were kyng Arthurs syster fones / he maade them al the chere that lay in his power / and so they foiourned there a vij nyghte / and were wel eafyd of their woundes and at the last departed / Now said fyre Marhaus we wylle not departe soo lyztely / for I wylle bryngge you thorow the forest

And rode daye by day wel a feuen dayes or they fond ony a-
 uenture / At the last they cam in to a grete forest that was na-
 med the countreye and foreste of Arroy and the countrey of
 straunge auentures / In this countrey sayd fyr Marhaus cam
 5 neuer knyghte fyn it was crystened / but he fonde straunge
 auentures / and soo they rode / and cam in to a depe valey ful
 of stones / and ther by they sawe a fayr streme of water / abo-
 ue ther by was the hede of the streme a fayr fontayne / & thre
 damoyfels fyttynge therby / And thenne they rode to them / and
 10 eyther falewed other / and the eldest had a garland of gold
 aboute her hede / and she was thre score wynter of age / or more
 and her here was whyte vnder the garland / The second da-
 moyfel was of thyrty wynter of age with a ferkelet of gold
 aboute her hede / The thyrd damoyfel was but xv yere of age /
 15 and a garland of floures aboute her hede / when these knygh-
 tes had soo beholde them / they asked hem the cause why they
 sat at that fontayne / we be here sayd the damoyfels for thys
 cause / yf we may see ony erraunt knyghtes to teche hem vnto
 straunge auentures / and ye be thre knyghtes that seken auen-
 20 tures and we be thre damoyfels / and therefore eche one of yow
 must chefe one of vs / And whan ye haue done soo / we wylle
 lede yow vnto thre hyhe wayes / and there eche of yow shal che-
 fe a wey and his damoyfel with hym / And this day twelue
 monethe ye must mete here ageyn / and god fende yow your ly-
 25 ues / and there to ye must plyzte your trouthe / this is wel fa-
 id sayd fyr Marhaus

¶ Capitulum xx

Now shalle eueryche of vs chefe a damoyfel / I shalle
 telle yow sayd fyre Vwayne I am the yongest and
 moost weykeft of yow bothe / therfor I wyl haue the eldest da-
 30 moyfel / for she hath sene moche and can best helpe me whan I
 haue nede / for I haue moost nede of helpe of yow bothe / Now
 said fyr Marhaus I wyl haue the damoyfel of thyrty wyn-
 ter age for she falleth best to me / wel sayd fyre gawayne / I
 thanke yow for ye haue lefte me the yongest and the fayrest /
 35 and she is moost leuest to me / Thenne euery damoyfel tooke her

[leaf 72 verso]

knyght by the raynes of his brydel / and broughte him to the
 thre wayes / and there was their othe made to mete at the fon-
 tayne that day twelue moneth and they were lyuynge / and
 soo they kyft and departed / and eueryche knyghte sette his la-
 dy behynd hym / and fyr Vwayne took the wey that lay west 5
 And fyr Marhaus took the wey that lay fouth / and fyr ga-
 wayne took the weye that laye northe / Now wyll we begyn-
 ne at fyr gawayne that helde that wey tyll that he cam vnto a
 fayre manoir where dwellyd an old knyghte & a good houf-
 holder / and there fyr Gawayn asked the knyght yf he knewe 10
 ony auentures in that countrey / I shalle shewe yow somme to
 morne sayd the old knyghte / and that merueyllous / Soo on
 the morne they rode in to the forest of aduentures tyl they cam
 to a launde / and ther by they fond a croffe / and as they sto-
 de and houed / ther cam by them the fayrest knyght and the fe- 15
 melyest man that euer they sawe / makynge the gretteft dole
 that euer man made / And thenne he was ware of fyr gawa-
 yn and falewed hym and praid god to sende hym moche wor-
 ship / As to that said fyr gawayn gramercy / Also I praye to
 god that he fend yow honour and worship / A said the kny- 20
 ghte I may laye that on fyde / for sorowe and shame cometh
 to me after worship /

¶ Capitulum xxi

ANd ther with he passed vnto the one fyde of the laun-
 de / And on the other fyde sawe fyr Gawayne & kny-
 tes that houed styll and make hem redy with her sheldes and 25
 speres ageynst that one knyght that cam by fyr gawayn /
 Thenne this one knyght auntryd a grete spere / and one of
 the x knyghtes encountred with hym / but this woful knyght
 smote hym so hard that he felle ouer his hors taylle / So this
 fame dolorous knyzt serued hem al / that at the left way he smo- 30
 te doune hors and man / and alle he dyd with one spere / and
 soo whan they were all x on fote / they wente to that one kny-
 ght / and he stode stonystyll / and suffred hem to pulle hym dou-
 ne of his hors / and bound hym hande and foote / and tayed
 hym vnder the hors bely / and so ledde hym with hem / O Ihesu 35

sayd fyr gawayne this is a dooleful fyghte / to see the yonder
knyghte so to be entreted / and it semeth by the knyght that he
suffreth hem to bynde hym soo / for he maketh no resyftence / Noo
said his hooft that is trouthe / for and he wold they al were to
5 weyke soo to doo hym / Syr said the damoyfel vnto fyr Gawayn
/ me semeth hit were your worship to helpe that dolorous
knyghte / for me thynketh he is one of the best knyghtes that
euer I sawe / I wold doo for hym sayd fyre gawayn but hit
semeth he wylle haue no helpe / thenne sayd the damoyfel me
10 thynketh ye haue no luste to helpe hym / Thus as they talked
they sawe a knyghte on the other syde of the launde al armed
sauf the hede / And on the other syde ther cam a dwerf on horf-
bak all armed sauf the hede with a grete mouthe / and a shorte
nose / And whan the dwerf came nyghe he said where is the la-
15 dy shold mete vs here / and ther with all she came forth out of
the wood / And thenne they began to stryue for the lady / For
the knyghte sayd he wold haue her / & the dwerf said he wold
haue her / Wylle we doo wel sayd the dwerf / yonder is a kny-
ht at the croffe / lete vs put it bothe vpon hym / and as he de-
20 meth so shalle it be / I wylle wel said the knyght / and so they
wente all thre vnto fyre gawayn and told hym wherfor they
strofe / wel fyrs said he wylle ye put the mater in my hand / ye
they sayd both / Now damoyfel sayd fyr gawayn ye shal stande
betwixe them both / and whether ye lyst better to go to / he shal
25 haue yow / And whan she was sette bitwene them both she left
the knyghte and wente to the dwerf / and the dwerf took her
and wente his waye syngyng / and the knyghte wente hys
wey with grete mornyng / Thenne cam ther two knyghtes all
armed and cryed on hyghe Syre gawayn / knyghte of kyng
30 Arthurs make the redy in al hast and Iuste with me / soo they
ranne to gyders that eyther felle doune / and thenne on foote
they drewe their fwerdes and dyd ful actually / the mene why-
le the other knyghte wente to the damoyfel / and asked her /
why she abode with that knyghte / and yf ye wold abyde with
35 me / I wylle be your feythful knyghte and with yow wylle
I be said the damoyfel / for with fyr Gawayn I may not syn-
de in myn herte to be with hym / For now here was one knyght
scomfyte x knyghtes / And at the laste he was cowardly led

away / and therefore lete vs two goo whylest they fyghte / and
 fyre Gawayne fought with that other knyght longe / but at the
 last they accorded both / And thenne the knyght prayd fyr ga-
 wayn to lodge with hym that nyghte / Soo as fyre Gawayn
 wente with this knyghte he asked hym what knyghte is he in 5
 this countrey that smote doune the ten knyghtes / for whan he
 had done so manfully he suffred hem to bynde hym hand and
 foote / and soo ledde hym away / A sayd the knyghte that is the
 best knyght I trowe in the world / and the moost man of pro-
 wesse / and he hath be serued soo as he was ēne more than x 10
 tymes / and his name hyghte fyr Pelleas / and he loueth a gre-
 te lady in this countrey and her name is Ettard / and so when
 he loued her there was cryed in this country a greete Iustes
 thre dayes / And alle the knyghtes of this countrey were there
 and gentylwymmen / And who that preued hym the best kny- 15
 ght shold haue a passyng good fwerd and a Serklet of gold
 and the ferklet the knyght shold gyue hit to the fayrest lady
 that was at the Iustes / And this knyghte fyre Pelleas was
 the best knyghte that was there / and there were fyue honderd
 knyghtes / but there was neuer man that euer fyre Pelleas 20
 met with al / but he stroke hym doune or els from his hors /
 And euery day of thre dayes he strake doune twenty knygh-
 tes / therefore they gaf hym the pryse / & forthe with all he wente
 there as the lady Ettard was / and gaf her the ferklet / & said
 openly / she was the fayrest lady that ther was / & that wold 25
 he preue vpon any knyghte that wold say nay / ¶ **Ca xxij**

ANd soo he chose her for his souerayne lady / & neuer to
 loue other but her / but she was so proude that she had
 scorne of hym and sayd that she wold neuer loue hym
 thouz he wold dye for her / wherfor al ladyes and gentylwym- 30
 men hadde scorne of her that she was so proude / for there were
 fayrer than she / & ther was none that was ther but & sir Pel-
 leas wold haue proferd hem loue they wold haue loued hym
 for his noble prowesse / & so this knyzt promysed the lady et-
 tard to folowe her in to this coūtrei / & neuer to leue her tyl she 35
 loued hym / & thus he is here the moost party nyghe her and lod-
 ged by a pryory / and euery weke she sendeth knyghtes to fyzte
 with hym / And whan he hath put hem to the wers than wylle

he suffre hem wyfully to take hym pryfoner by cause he wold
 haue a fyghte of this lady / And alweyes she doth hym grete
 despyte / for some tyme she maketh her knyghtes to taye hym to
 his hors taylle and some to bynd hym vnder the hors bely

5 Thus in the moost shamefullest wyse that she can thynke he is
 broughte to her / And alle she doth hyt for to cause hym to leue
 this countreye and to leue his louynge / But all this can not
 make hym to leue / for and he wold haue foughte on foote
 he myghte haue had the better of the ten knyghtes as wel on
 10 foote as on horsbak / Allas sayd fyr gawayn it is grete pyte
 of hym / And after this nyghte I wylle seke hym to morowe
 in this forest to doo hym alle the helpe I can / So on the mor-
 ne fyr gawayne tooke his leue of his hooft fyre Carados and
 rode in to the forest / And at the last he mette with fyr Pelle-
 15 as makynge grete moone oute of mesure / so eche of hem fawed
 other / and asked hym why he made suche forowe / And as it
 is aboue reherced / fyre Pelleas told fyre Gawayne / but alwe-
 yes I suffre her knyghtes to fare soo with me as ye fawe yef-
 terdaye in truste at the last to wynne her loue / for she knoweth
 20 wel alle her knyghtes shold not lyghtely wynne me / and
 me lyfte to fyghte with them to the vttermost / Wherefore and
 I loued her not so fore I hadde leuer dye an honderd tymes /
 and I myght dye soo ofte rather than I wold suffre that des-
 pyte / but I truste she wylle haue pyte vpon me at the laste /
 25 for loue causeth many a good knyght to suffre to haue his en-
 tent / but allas I am vnfortunate / And ther with he maade soo
 grete dole & forowe that vnnethe he myghte holde hym on hors-
 back

¶ Now sayd fyre gawayne leue your mor-
 nyng and I shalle promyse yow by the feythe of my body
 30 to doo alle that lyeth in my power to gete yow the loue of yo-
 ur lady / and ther to I wylle plyte yow my trouth / A sayd
 fyr Pelleas of what Courte are ye telle me I praye yow my
 good frend / And thenne fyr gawayne sayd I am of the co-
 urte of kynge Arthur / and his susters sone / and kynge Lott
 35 of Orkeney was my fader / and my name is fyre Gawayne /
 And thenne he sayd my name is Syre Pelleas borne in the
 Iles / and of many Iles I am lord / and neuer haue I lo-
 ued lady nor damoyfel tyl now in an vnhappy tyme / and fyr

knyghte fyn ye are soo nyghe cofyn vnto kynge Arthur and
 a kynges sone / therfor bytraye me not but helpe me / for I may
 neuer come by her but by fomme good knyghte / for she is in a
 fronge castel here fast by within this four myle / and ouer all
 this countrey she is lady of / And so I may neuer come to her
 presence / but as I suffre her knyghtes to take me / and but yf I
 dyd so that I myghte haue a fyghte of her I had ben dede long
 or this tyme / and yet fayre word had I neuer of her / but whā
 I am brought to fore her she rebuketh me in the fowlest man-
 ner / And thenne they take my hors and harneis and putten
 me oute of the yates / and she wylle not suffre me to ete nor
 drynke / and alweyes I offre me to be her prysoner / but that
 she wylle not suffre me / for I wold defyre no more what pay-
 nes so euer I had / soo that I myzte haue a fyghte of her day-
 ly / wel sayd fyr gawayne / Al this shalle I amende and ye
 wylle do as I shal deuyse / I wylle haue your hors and yo-
 ur armour / and so wylle I ryde vnto her castel and telle her
 that I haue slayne yow / and soo shal I come withynne her
 to cause her to cherysse me / And thenne shalle I do my true
 parte that ye shalle not faylle to haue the loue of her

¶ Capitulum xxiii

ANd there with fyr Gawayne plyghte his trouthe vn-
 to fyr Pelleas to be true and feythful vnto hym / soo
 eche one plyghte their trouthe to other / and soo they chaunged
 horses and harneis / and sire Gawayn departed / and came to
 the castel where as stoode the paelions of this lady withoute
 the yate / And as soone as Ettard had aspyed fyr Gawayn
 she fledde in toward the castel / fyr Gawayn spak on hyghe /
 and badde her abyde / for he was not fyre Pelleas / I am ano-
 ther knyghte that haue slayne fyr Pelleas / doo of youre hel-
 me said the lady Ettard that I maye see your vyfage / And
 soo whan she sawe that it was not fyr Pelleas / she made hym
 alyghte / and ledde hym vnto her castel / and asked hym feyth-
 fully / whether he had slayne fyr Pelleas / and he sayd her ye /
 and told her his name was fyre gawayn of the courte of ky-
 nge Arthur and his syfter sone / Truly sayd she that is grete
 pyte for he was a passyng good knyghte of his body / but

of al men on lyue I hated hym moost / for I coude neuer be
 quyte of hym / And for ye haue slayne hym / I shalle be your
 woman and to doo any thyng that myghte please yow / Soo
 she made fyr Gawayne good chere / Thenne fyr gawayn fayd
 5 that he loued a lady / and by no meane she wold loue hym /
 She is to blame sayd Ettard and she wylle not loue yow /
 for ye that be soo wel borne a man and fuche a man of pro-
 wesse / there is no lady in the world to good for yow / wylle
 ye sayd fyre Gawayne promyse me to doo alle that ye maye
 10 by the feythe of youre body to gete me the loue of my lady / ye
 fyre sayd she / and that I promyse yow by the feythe of my
 body / Now sayd fyre Gawayne it is your self that I loue so
 wel / therefore I praye yow hold your promyse / I maye not
 chese sayd the lady Ettard / but yf I shold be forfworne / and
 15 soo she graunted hym to fulfyll alle his desyre /

¶ Soo it was thenne in the moneth of May that she and fyre
 Gawayn wente oute of the castel and fouped in a paelione /
 and there was made a bedde / and there fyre gawayne and the
 lady Ettard wente to bedde to gyders / and in another pael-
 20 ionie she layd her damoyfels / and in the thyrd paelione she
 leyd parte of her knyghtes / for thenne she had no drede of fyr
 Pelleas / And there fyre gawayn lay with her in that pael-
 ionie two dayes and two nyghtes / And on the thyrd day in
 the mornyng erly fyr Pelleas armed hym / for he hadde neuer
 25 slepte syn fyr Gawayn departed from hym / for fyr Gawayne
 had promysed hym by the feythe of hys body to come to hym
 vnto his paelione by that pryory within the space of a daye
 and a nyghte

¶ Thenne fyre Pelleas moun-
 ted vpon horfbak / and cam to the paelions that stode without
 30 the castel / and fonde in the fyrst paelione thre knyghtes in
 thre beddes / and thre squyers lyggyng at their feet / thenne
 wente he to the seconde paelione & fond four gentyll wymmen
 lyenge in four beddes / & thenne he yede to the thyrd paelion
 & fond fyr gawayn lyggyng in bedde with his lady Ettard
 35 & eyther clyppying other in armes / and whan he sawe that his
 herte wel nyghe braft for sorow / & said Allas that euer a knyzt
 shold be founde so fals / and thēne he took his hors & myzt not
 abyde no lenger for pure sorowe / And whanne he hadde ryden

nyghe half a myle he torned ageyne and thoughte to flee hem
 bothe / And whanne he sawe hem bothe soo lye slepyng faste /
 vnnethe he myght holde hym on horsbak for forowe / and sayd
 then to hym self / though this knyght be neuer soo fals I wyl
 neuer flee hym slepyng / For I wylle neuer destroye the hy- 5
 gh ordre of knyghthode / and therwith he departed ageyne
 And or he hadde ryden half a myle he returned ageyne / and
 thoughte thenne to flee hem bothe / makynge the gretteft forou
 that euer man made / And whanne he came to the pavelions /
 he tayed his hors vnto a tree / and pulled oute his sward na- 10
 ked in his hand / and wente to them there as they lay / and
 yet he thought it were shame to flee them slepyng / and layd
 the naked sward ouerthwart bothe their throtes / and soo to-
 oke his hors and rode his awaye

¶ And whanne fyre Pelleas came to his pavelions he told 15
 his knyghtes and his squyers how he had sped / and sayd
 thus to them for your true and good seruyse ye haue done me
 I shall gyue you alle my goodes / for I wylle goo vnto my
 bedde and neuer aryse vntyl I am dede / And whan that I
 am dede / I charge yow that ye take the herte oute of my body 20
 and bere it her betwyxe two syluer dyffhes / and telle her how
 I sawe her lye with the fals knyght Syr Gawayne / Ryght
 soo fyr Pelleas vnarmed hym selfe and wente vnto his bedde
 makynge merueyllous dole and forowe /

¶ Thenne fyre Gawayne and Ettard awoke of her slepe / & 25
 fonde the naked sward ouerthwart theire throtes / thenne she
 knewe wel it was fyr Pelleas sward / Allas sayd she to sir
 Gawayne ye haue bitrayed me and fyr Pelleas bothe / for ye
 told me ye had slayne hym / and now I knowe wel it is not
 soo he is on lyue / And yf fyr Pelleas had ben as vncurteis 30
 to yow as ye haue ben to hym ye hadde bene a dede knyghte /
 but ye haue deceyued me and bytrayd me falsly / that al la-
 dyes and damoyfels may beware by yow and me / And ther
 with fyr gawayn made hym redy / and wente in to the forest /
 Soo it happed thenne that the damoyfel of the lake Nymue 35
 mette with a knyghte of fyr Pelleas that wente on his foote
 in the forest makynge grete dole / and she asked hym the cause
 And soo the woful knyghte told her how his mayster and

lorde was bitrayed thurgh a knyghte and a lady / and how
 he wyll neuer aryse oute of his bed tyl he be dede / Brynge me
 to hym sayd she anone / and I wyl waraunt his lyf he shal
 not dye for loue / and she that hath caused hym so to loue / she
 5 shalle be in as euyl plyte as he is or it be long to / for it is no
 Ioy of fuche a prowde lady that wylle haue no mercy of fuche
 a valyaunt knyght / anone that kny3te broughte her vnto hym
 And whan she sawe hym lye in his bedde / she thoughte she fa-
 we neuer so lykely a knyght / and ther with she threwe an en-
 10 chaument vpon hym / and he felle on slepe / And ther why-
 le she rode vnto the lady Ettard / and charged no man to a-
 wake hym tyl she came ageyne / Soo within two houres she
 broughte the lady Ettard thydder / and both ladyes fonde hym
 on slepe / loo sayd the damoyfel of the lake ye oughte to be asha-
 15 med for to murdre fuche a knyght / And therwith she threwe
 fuche an enchaument vpon her that she loued hym fore / that
 wel nyghe she was oute of her mynde / O lord Ihesu faide the
 lady Ettard / how is it befallen vnto me / that I loue now hym
 that I haue moost hated of ony man alyue / that is the ryght
 20 wys Iugement of god sayd the damoyfel / And thenne anone
 fyr Pelleas awaked and loked vpon Ettard / And whan he
 sawe her / he knewe her / & thēne he hated her more than ony wo-
 man alyue / and said away traitresse come neuer in my sy3t
 And whan she herd hym say so / she wepte and made grete fo-
 25 rou oute of mesure

¶ Capitulum xxiiii

Syre knyghht Pelleas sayd the damoyfel of the lake / ta-
 ke your hors / and come forthe with me oute of this co-
 untrey / and ye shal loue a lady that shal loue yow / I wylle
 wel said fyr Pelleas / for this lady Ettard hath done me gre-
 30 te despyte and shame / and there he told her the begynnyng
 and endyng / And how he had purposed neuer to haue aryfen
 tyll that he hadde ben dede / And now fuche grace god hath fente
 me / that I hate her as moche as euer I loued her thanked
 be our lord Ihesus / Thanke me sayde the damoyfel of the lake

[leaf 76 verso]

anone fyre Pellas armed hym and tooke his hors and com-
maunded his men to brynge after his pavelions and his
stuffe where the damoyfel of the lake wold assigne / foo the la-
dy Ettard dyed for forowe / and the damoyfel of the lake re-
ioysed fyr Pellas and loued to gyders durynge their lyf da- 5
yes

¶ Capitulum xxv

Now torne we vnto fyr Marhaus that rode with the da-
moyfel of xxx wynter of age fouthard / and foo they
cam in to a depe forest / and by fortune they were nyz-
ted / and rode longe in a depe way / and at the last they came 10
vnto the courtelage / and there they asked herborow / but the mā
of the courtelage wold not lodge them for no treatyce that they
coude treate / but thus moche the good man sayd / and ye will
take the aduerture of youre lodgyng / I shal brynge you there
ye shalle be lodged / what auenture is that that I shal haue / 15
for my lodgyng sayd fyr Marhaus / ye shalle wete whan ye
come there sayd the good man / fyr what auenture so it be bryng
me thyder I pray the sayd fyr Marhaus / for I am wery / my
damoyfel and my hors / So the good man wente and opened
the gate / and within an houre he broughte hym vnto a fayre 20
castel / and thenne the poure man called the porter / and anon
he was lete in to the castel / & foo he told the lord how he brouzt
hym a knyght erraunt and a damoyfel that wold be lodged
with hym / lete hym in said the lord / it may happen he shalle re-
pente that they toke their lodgyng here / So fyr Marhaus was 25
lete in with torche lyghte / and there was a goodely fyghte of
yonge men that welcomed hym / And thenne his hors was
ledde in to the stable / and he and the damoyfel were broughte
in to the halle / and there stode a myghty duke and many go-
odely men about hym / thēne this lord asked hym what he hy- 30
ghte / and fro whens he cam / and with whome he dwelt / fyre
he said I am a knyghte of kynge Nrthurs and knyght of the
table round / and my name is fyre Marhaus / and borne I
am in Irland / And thenne sayd the duke to hym / that me
fore repenteth / the caufe is this / for I loue not thy lord / nor 35

none of thy felawes of the table round / And therfor ease thy
 self this nyghte as wel as thow mayst / for as to morne I &
 my fixe sonnes shal matche with yow / Is ther no remedy but
 that I must haue a doo with yow and your vj fones at ones
 5 fayd fyr Marhaus / No fayd the duke for this cause I maade
 myn auowe / for fyr gawayne flewe my feuen sonnes in a re-
 counter / therfore I made myn auowe / there shold neuer knyzt
 of kynge Arthurs court lodge with me or come there as I my-
 ght haue adoo with hym / but that I wold haue a reuengyng
 10 of my sonnes dethe / what is your name said fyr Marhaus I
 requyre yow telle me and it please yow / wete thow wel I am
 the duke of fouth marchys / A fayd fir Marhaus I haue herd
 faye that ye haue ben longe tyme a grete foo vnto my lord ar-
 thur and to his knyghtes / that shalle ye fele to morne said the
 15 duke / Shalle I haue adoo with yow fayd fyr Marhaus / ye
 fayd the duke / therof shalt thow not chefe / and therefore take
 yow to your chambre and ye shalle haue all that to yow long-
 geth / So fyr Marhaus departed and was led to a chamber /
 and his damoyfel was led vnto her chamber / And on the morn
 20 the duke fente vnto fyre Marhaus and bad make hym redy /
 And so fyr Marhaus arose and armed hym / and thenne ther
 was a masse songe afore hym and brake his fast / and so mou-
 ted on horfback in the courte of the castel there they shold doo
 the batail / So ther was the duke al redy on horfbak clene ar-
 25 med and his syxe sonnes by hym / and eueryche had a spere
 in his hand / and soo they encountred where as the duke and
 his two fones brak theyr speres vpon hym / but fir Marhaus
 helde vp his spere and touched none of them /

¶ Capitulum xxvj

30 **T**Henne cam the foure fones by couple / and two of them
 brake their speres / and soo dyd the other two / And
 alle this whyle fyre marhaus touched hem not / Thenne fir mar-
 haus . ranne to the duke / and smote hym with his spere that
 hors and man felle to the erthe / And so he serued his fones /
 And thenne fyr Marhaus alyghte doune and bad the duke

[leaf 77 verso]

yelde hym or els he wold flee hym / And thenne some of his
 fones recouerd / and wold haue fet vpon fyr Marhaus / then-
 ne fyr Marhaus sayd to the duke feace thy fones or els I will
 doo the vttermost to yow all / Thenne the duke sawe he myghte
 not efcape the deth he cryed to his fones and charged them to
 yelde them to fyr Marhaus / And they kneled al doune / and
 put the pomels of their fwerdes to the knyght / and soo he re-
 ceuyed them / And thenne they halp vp their fader / and soo
 by their comynal affente promysed to fyr Marhaus neuer to be
 foes vnto kyng Arthur / and therupon at whytfontyde after
 to come he and his fones and putte them in the kynges grace
 Thenne fyr Marhaus departed and within two dayes his da-
 moyfel brought hym where as was a grete tornement that the
 lady de Vawfe had cryed / And who that dyd best shold ha-
 ue a ryche ferklet of gold worthe a thousand befauntes / And
 there fyr Marhaus dyd so nobly that he was renomed / & had
 fomtyme doune fourty knyghtes / and soo the ferklet of gold
 was rewarded hym / Thenne he departed fro them with grete
 worship / And soo within feuen nyghtes his damoyfel brought
 hym to an erles place / his name was the erle Fergus / that af-
 ter was fyre Tryftrams knyghte / and this Erle was but a
 yonge man / and late come in to his landes / and there was a
 gyant fast by hym that hyzte Taulurd / and he had another
 broder in Cornewaille that hyghte Taulas that fyr Tryfram
 flewe whanne he was oute of hys mynde / So this Erle maade
 his complaynte vnto fyre Marhaus that there was a gyaunt
 by hym that destroyed al his londes / & how he durst nowhere
 ryde nor goo for hym / Syr sayd the knyghte whether vfeth he
 to fyghte on horsbak or on foote / nay sayd the erle there maye
 no hors bere hym / Wel said fyr marhaus thenne wille I fygh-
 te with hym on foote / Soo on the morne fyr Marhaus prayd
 the erle that one of his men myghte brynge hym where as the
 gyaüt was / and so he was / for he sawe hym fytted vnder a tree
 of hoolly / and many clubbes of Iron and gyfarms about hym
 Soo thys knyghte dresfid hym to the gyant puttyng his sheld
 afore hym / and the gyant toke an Iron clubbe in his hande / &
 at the fyrste stroke he clafe fyr Marhaus shelde in ij pyeces /
 And there he was in grete peryl / for the gyant was a wyly

fyghter / but atte laft fyr Marhaus fmote of his ryght arme
 aboute the elbowe / thēne the gyant fledde and the knyght after
 hym / and foo he drofe hym in to a water / but the gyant was
 foo hyghe that he myghte not wade after hym / And thenne fir
 5 Marhaus made the erle Fergus man to fetche hym ftones / &
 with tho ftones the knyghte gaf the gyaunt many fore knoc-
 kes / tyl at the laft he made hym falle doune in to the water / &
 fo was he there dede / thēne fyr Marhaus wēte vnto the gyants
 caftel / and there he delyuerd xxiiij ladyes and twelue kny-
 10 tes oute of the gyants pryfon / and there he had grete rycheffe
 withoute nombre / foo that the dayes of his lyf he was neuer
 poure man / thenne he retorned to the erle Fergus / the whiche
 thanked hym gretely / and wold haue gyuen hym half his lā-
 des but he wold none take / Soo fyr Marhaus dwellyd with
 15 the erle nyghe half a yere / for he was fore bryfed with the gy-
 aunt / and at the lafte he took his leue / And as he rode by the
 way / he mette with fyr gawayne and fyr Vwayne / and fo by
 aduenture he mette with foure knyghtes of Arthurs courte /
 the fyrft was fyr Sagramore defyrus / fyr Ozanna / fyr Do-
 20 dynas le faueage / and fyre felot of lyftynoyfe / and there fyr
 Marhaus with one fperre fmote doune thefe foure knyghtes /
 and hurte them fore / Soo he departed to mete at his day afore
 fette

¶ Capitulum xxvij

25 **N**ow tourne we vnto fyr Vwāyne that rode westwarde
 with his damoyfel of thre fcore wynter of age / and
 ſhe broughte hym there as was a turnement nyghe the marche
 of walys / and at that tornement fyre Vwayne fmote doune
 xxx knyghtes / therefore was gyuen hym the pryfe / and that
 was a gerfaukon / and a whyte ſtede trapped with clothe of
 30 gold / Soo thenne fyr Vwayn dyd many ſtraunge auentures
 by the meanes of the old damoyfel / and fo ſhe broughte hym
 to a lady that was called the lady of the roche / the which was
 moche curtois / So there were in the cuntrye two knyghtes that
 were bretheren / and they were called two peryllous knygh-
 35 tes / the one knyghte hyght fyre Edward of the reed caftel / &

the other fyr Hue of the reed castel / And these two bretheren
had difheryted the lady of the roche of a Baronry of landes
by their extorfion / And as this knyzt was lodged with this
lady she made her compleynt to hym of these two knyghtes /
Madame sayd fyr Vwayne / they are to blame / for they doo a- 5
geynst the hyghe ordre of knyghthode & the othe that they ma-
de / And yf hit lyke yow I wille speke with hem by caufe I
am a knyghte of kynge Arthurs / and I wylle entrete them
with fayrenesse / And yf they wylle not I shalle doo bataille
with them and in the deffense of youre ryghte / gramercy sayd 10
the lady / and there as I maye not acquyte yow / god shalle /
Soo on the morne the two knyghtes were sente for / that they
shold come thyder to speke with the lady of the roche / and we-
te ye wel they fayled not / for they cam with an C hors / But
whan this lady sawe them in this maner soo bygge / she wold 15
not suffre fyr Vwayne to goo oute to them vpon no surete ne
for no fayr langage / but she made hym speke with them ouer a
toure / but fynally these two bretheren wold not be entreated
and anfuerd that they wold kepe that they had / wel said fyr
Vwayne / thenne wylle I fyghte with one of yow / and pre- 20
ue that ye doo this lady wronge / that wille we not said they
For and we doo bataille we two wyl fyghte with one knyzt
at ones / and therefore yf ye wille fyghte soo we wille be redy
at what houre ye wille affigne / And yf ye wyne vs in bata-
ille the lady shal haue her landes ageyne / ye fay wel sayd fir 25
Vwayne / therfor make yow redy so that ye be here to morne in
the defence of the ladyes ryght

¶ Capitulum xxviii

WO was there fykerneffe made on both partyes that no
treason shold be wrought on neyther partye / soo thenne
the knyghtes departed and made hem redy / and that nyghte 30
fyr Vwayn had grete chere / And on the morne he arose erly
and herd masse and brake his fast / and soo he rode vnto the
playn withoute the gates where houed the two bretheren a-
bydyng hym / Soo they rode to gyders passyng fore that fyre
Edward and fyr Hue brake their speres vpon fyr Vwayne 35

And fyr Vwayne fmote fyre Edward that he felle ouer his
 hors and yet his spere braft not / And thenne he spored his
 hors and came vpon fyr Hue and ouerthrewe hym / but they
 foone recouerd and drefsid their sheldes and drewe their fwer-
 5 des and bad fyre Vwayne alyghte and doo his bataill to the
 vttermest / Thenne fyr Vwayn deuoyded his hors sodenly / &
 put his shelde afore hym and drewe his fwerde / and foo they
 drefsyd to gyders and eyther gaf other fuche strokes / & there
 these two bretheren wounded fyr Vwayne paffyng greuoufly
 10 that the lady of the roche wende he shold haue dyed / And thus
 they fought to gyders fyue houres as men raged oute of rea-
 son / And at the lafte fyr Vwayne fmote fyre Edward vpon
 the helme fuche a stroke that his fwerd kerued vnto his canel-
 bone / and thenne fyr Hue abated his courage / but fyr Vwa-
 15 yn pressed fast to haue slayne hym / That fawe fyr Hue he kne-
 led doune and yelde hym to fyr Vwayne and he of his gentil-
 nesse receyued his fwerd and took hym by the hand & went
 in to the castel to gyders / thenne the lady of the roche was paf-
 fyng glad and the other broder made grete sorowe for his bro-
 20 ders dethe / thenne the lady was restored of al her landes / and
 fyr Hue was commaunded to be at the Courte of kyng Ar-
 thur at the next feest of penthecoft / So fir Vwayn dwelt with
 the lady nyghe half a yere / for it was longe or he myghte be ho-
 le of his grete hurtes / and foo whan it drewe nygh the terme
 25 day that fyr gawayn fyr Marhaus and fyre Vwayne shold
 mete at the crosse way / thenne euery knyght drewe hym thy-
 der to holde his promyse that they had made / & fyr Marhaus
 and fyr Vwayne broughte their damoyfels with them / but fir
 Gawayn had lost his damoyfel as it is afore reherced

Capitulum xxix

30 **R**Yght foo at the twelue monethes ende they mette alle
 three knyghtes at the fontayne and their damoifels but
 the damoyfel that fyr gawayn had coude faye but lytel wor-
 ship of hym / foo they departed from the damoyfels and roode

thurgh a grete forest / and there they mette with a messager
 that cam fro kynge Arthur that foughte them wel nyhe a
 xij moneth thorow oute al Englonde / walys and Scotland /
 and charged yf euer he myght fynde fyre Gawayn and fyre
 Vwayn to brynge hem to the courte ageyne / And thenne we- 5
 re they al gladde / and soo prayd they fyre Marhaus to ryde
 with hem to the kynges courte / And soo within twelue dayes
 they cam to Camelot / and the kynge was passyng glad of the-
 ir comyng and soo was alle the Courte / thenne the kyng ma-
 de hem to fwere vpon a booke to telle hym alle theire aduentures 10
 that had befallen hem that twelue moneth and soo they dyd /
 And there was sir Marhaus wel knowen / for ther were kny-
 ghtes that he had matched afore tyme / and he was named o-
 ne of the best knyghtes luyng / Ageyne the feest of pentecost
 cam the damoyfel of the lake and broughte with hir fyr Pelle- 15
 as / and at that hye feest there was grete Iustyng of knygh-
 tes / and of al knyghtes that were at that Iustes / fyr Pelle-
 as had the pryse / and fyr Marhaus was named the next / but
 fyr Pelleas was soo stronge / there myght but fewe knyghtes
 fyte hym a buffet with a spere / And at that next feest sir pel- 20
 leas and fyr marhaus were made knyghtes of the table roude
 For there were two seges voyde / for two knyghtes were slayn
 that twelue moneth / and grete ioye had kynge Arthur of sire
 Pelleas and of sire Marhaus / but Pelleas loued neuer after
 sire Gawayne but as he spared hym for the loue of kyng ar- 25
 thur / But oftymes at Iustes and turnementes sire Pelleas
 quyte sire Gawayn / for so it reherceth in the booke of Frenshe /
 Soo sire Trystram many dayes after faughte with sire Mar-
 haus in an yland / and there they dyd a grete bataylle / but at
 the last sire Trystram slewe hym / soo sire Trystram was wou- 30
 ded that vnnethe he myght recouer and lay at a nonnery halfe
 a yere / and sire Pelleas was a worshipful knyghte / & was o-
 ne of the four that encheued the fancgreal / and the damoyfel of
 the lake made by her meanes that neuer he had adoo with sire
 launcelot de lake / for where sire launcelot was at ony Iustes / 35
 or ony tornement / she wold not suffre hym be there that daye /
 but yf it were on the fyde of sire launcelot /

¶ Explicit liber quartus

¶ Incipit liber quintus

A
5
 Hanne kyng Arthur had after longe werre re-
 sted / and helde a Ryal feeste and table rounde
 with his alyes of kynges / prynces / and noble
 knyghtes all of the round table / there came in to
10
 his halle he fyttynge in his throne Ryal xij aū-
 cyen men / berynge eche of them a braunche of Olyue in token
 that they cam as Embassatours and messagers fro the Empe-
 rour Lucyus / whiche was called at that tyme / Dictatour or
 procurour of the publyke wele of Rome / whiche sayde messa-
15
 gers after their entryng & comyng in to the presence of kyng
 Arthur dyd to hym theyr obeyssaūce in makyng to hym reue-
 rence said to hym in this wyse / The hyghe & myghty Emperour
 Lucyus sendeth to the kyng of Bretayne gretyng / cōmaūdyng
 the to knoueleche hym for thy lord / and to sende hym the trua-
20
 ge due of this Royamme vnto thempyre / whiche thy fader and
 other to fore thy precessours haue paid as is of record / And
 thou as rebelle not knowynge hym as thy fouerayne withhol-
 dest and reteyneft contrary to the statutes and decrees maade
 by the noble and worthy Iulius Cezar conquerour of this
25
 Royame / and fyrst Emperour of Rome / and yf thou refuse
 his demaunde and commaundement / knowe thou for certayne
 that he shal make stronge werre ageynst the / thy Royames &
 londes / and shall chaftyse the and thy subgettys / that it shal be
 ensamble perpetuel vnto alle kynges and prynces / for to denye
30
 their truage vnto that noble empyre whiche domyneth vpon the
 vnyuerfal world / Thenne whan they had shewed theffecte of
 their message / the kyng commaunded them to withdrawe them
 And said he shold take auyce of counceylle and gyue to them
 an ansuere / Thenne somme of the yonge knyghtes heryng this
 their message wold haue ronne on them to haue slayne them
 fayenge that it was a rebuke to alle the knyghtes there beyng
 present to suffre them to saye so to the kyng / And anone the

[leaf 8o verso]

kyng commaunded that none of them vpon payne of dethe to myffaye them ne doo them ony harme / and commaunded a knyghte to bryng them to their lodgyng / and fee that they haue alle that is necessary and requyfyte for them / with the best chere / and that noo deyntee be spared / For the Romayns ben grete lordes / and though theyr message please me not ne my court yet I must remembre myn honour / ¶ After this the kyng lete calle alle his lordes and knyghtes of the round table to counceyl vpon this mater / and defyred them to saye their aduys / thenne fyr Cador of Cornewaile spacke fyrste and sayd Syre this message lyketh me wel / for we haue many dayes rested vs and haue ben ydle / and now I hope ye shalle make sharp warre on the Romayns where I doubt not we shal gete honour / I byleue wel sayd Arthur that this mater pleafeth the wel / but these anfuers may not be anfuerd / for the demaunde greueth me fore / For truly I wyl neuer paye truage to Rome / wherfore I pray yow to counceylle me / I haue vnderstande that Bellinus and Brenius kynges of Bretayne haue had thempyre in their handes many dayes / And also Constantyn the sone of Heleyne / whiche is an open euydence that we owe noo trybute to Rome / but of ryght we that ben defended of them haue ryght to clayme the tytyle of thempyre /

¶ Capitulum Secundum

THenne anfuerd kyng Anguyffhe of Scotland / Syr ye oughte of ryght to be aboue al other kynges / for vnto yow is none lyke ne pareylle in Crystendome / of knyght-hode ne of dygnyte / & I counceylle you neuer to obey the Romayns / for whan they regned on vs / they destreffyd oure elders / and putte this land to grete extorcions & taylles / wherfore I make here myn auowe to auenge me on them / and for to strengthe youre quarel I shal furnyffhe .xyM good men of warre and wage them on my costes / whiche shal awayte on yow with my self whan it shal please yow / and the kyng of lytel Bretayne graunted hym to the fame xxxM / wherfor kyng Arthur thanked them / And thenne euery man

agreed to make warre / and to ayde after their power / that is
 to wete the lord of westwalis promysed to brynge xxx M men
 And fyr Vwayne / fyre Ider his sone with their cofyns pro-
 mysed to brynge xxx M / thenne fyre launcelot with alle other
 5 promysed in lyke wyfe euery man a grete multytude / ¶ And
 whan kynge Arthur vnderstood their courages and good
 wylles / he thanked them hertely / and after lete calle themba-
 fatours to here their anfuere / And in presence of alle his lor-
 des and knyghtes he sayd to them in thys wyfe / I wylle that
 10 ye retorne vnto your lord and procurour of the comyn wele for
 the Romayns / and faye ye to hym Of his demaunde and com-
 maundement I fette nothyng / And that I knowe of no tru-
 age ne trybute that I owe to hym / ne to none erthely prynce /
 Cryften ne hethen / but I pretende to haue and occupye the fo-
 15 ueraynte of thempyre / wherin I am entytled by the ryght of
 my predeceffours fomtyme kynges of this lond / and faye to
 hym that I am delybered and fully concluded to goo wyth
 myn armye with strengthe and power vnto Rome by the gra-
 ce of god to take possession in thempyre / and subdue them that
 20 ben rebelle / wherfore I commaunde hym and alle them of Ro-
 me that incontynent they make to me their homage or to knou-
 leche me for their Emperour and gouernour vpon payne that
 shal ensuewe / And thenne he commaunded his treforer to gy-
 ue to them grete and large yestes / and to paye alle theyr dif-
 25 pencys / and assygned fyre Cador to conueye them oute of the
 land / and soo they took their leue and departed / and tooke
 theyr shyppyng at Sandwyche / and passed forthe by flaun-
 drys / Almayn / the montayns / and all ytalye vntyl they cam
 vnto Lucius / And after the reuerence made / they made relacy-
 30 on of their anfuere lyke as ye to fore haue herd / whan thempe-
 rour Lucyus had wel vnderfonde theyre credence / he was fore
 meued as he had ben al araged / & sayd / I had supposed that
 Arthur wold haue obeyed to my commaundement / and haue
 ferued yow hym self / as hym wel byfemed or ony other kyng
 35 to doo / O fyre sayd one of the fenatours late be fuche vayn wor-
 des / for we late yow wete that I and my felawes were ful
 fore aferd to beholde his countenance / I fere me ye haue made
 a rodde for your self / for he entendeth to be lord of this empyre

whiche fore is to be doubted yf he come / for he is al another mā
 than ye wene / and holdeth the most noble courte of the world
 alle other kynges ne prynces maye not compare vnto his no-
 ble mayntene / On newe yeres daye we fawe hym in his estate
 whiche was the ryallest that euer we fawe / for he was ferued 5
 at his table with ix kynges / and the noblest felawship of other
 prynces lordes and knyghtes that ben in the world / and eue-
 ry knyghte approued and lyke a lord and holdeth table rōūd
 And in his persone the moost manly man that lyueth / and is
 lyke to conquere alle the world / for vnto his courage it is to 10
 lytel / wherfore I aduyse yow to kepe wel youre marches and
 fraytes in the montayns / For certaynly he is a lord to be do-
 ubted / Wel sayd Lucius bifore Eester I suppose to passe the
 moūtayns and soo forth in to fraunce / and there byreue hym
 his londes with Ianeweyes and other myghty warryours of 15
 Tuskane and lombardye / And I shall sende for them all that
 ben subgettys and alyed to thēpyre of Rome to come to myn
 ayde / and forthwith sente old wyse knyghtes vnto these coun-
 trayes folowyng / fyrste to ambage and arrage / to Alyfaun-
 drye / to ynde . to hermony / where as the ryuer of Eufrates ren- 20
 neth in to Asye / to Auffryke / and Europe the large / to erta-
 yne and Elamyne to Arabye / Egypte and to damaske / to da-
 myete and Cayer / to Capadoce / to tarce / Turkye / pounce / and
 pampoylle / to Surrye and gallacye / And alle these were sub-
 gette to Rome and many moo / as Grece / Cypres / Macydone 25
 Calabre / Cateland / portyngale with many thousandes of spay-
 nardys / Thus alle these kynges / dukes / and admyrals affem-
 bled aboute Rome with xvj kynges attones with grete mul-
 titude of peple / whan themperour vnderstood their comyng / he
 made redy his Romayns / and alle the people bytwene hym & 30
 Flaundes

¶ Also he hadde gotten wyth
 hym fyfty Geaunts whiche had ben engendred of fendys
 And they were ordeyned to garde his persone / and to breke
 the frounte of the bataylle of kynge Arthur /
 And thus departed fro Rome and came doune the montayns 35
 for to destroye the londes that Arthur had conquerd and cam
 vnto Coleyne / and byseged a Castel there by / and wanne it
 soone and stuffed hit with two honderd farafyns or Infydeles

and after destroyed many fayr countrees / whiche Arthur had
 wonne of kyng Claudas / And thus Lucius cam with alle
 his hooft whiche were disperplyd lx myle in brede / and com-
 maunded them to mete with hym in Burgoyne / for he purpo-
 5 sed to destroye the Royame of lytyl Bretayne /

Capitulo tercio

Now leue we of Lucius the emperour and speke we of
 kyng Arthur / that commaunded alle them of his re-
 tenue to be redy atte vtas of hyllary for to holde a parlement
 at yorke / And at that parlement was concluded to areste alle
 10 the nauye of the lond and to be redy within xv dayes at sand-
 wyche / and there he shewed to his armye how he purposed to
 conquere thempyre whiche he ought to haue of ryght / And the-
 re he ordeyned two gouernours of his Royame that is to say
 Syre Bawdewyn of Bretayne for to counceille to the best and
 15 fyr Constantyn sone to fyre Cador of Cornewaylle / whiche af-
 ter the dethe of Arthur was kyng of this Royamme / And in
 the presence of alle his lordes he refyned the rule of the roya-
 me and Gweneuer his quene to them / wherfore fyre launcelot
 was wrothe / for he lefte fyre Trystram with kynges marke for
 20 the loue of beal Ifoulde / Thenne the quene Gweneuer made gre-
 te sorowe for the departynge of her lord and other / and swou-
 ned in fuche wyse that the ladyes bare her in to her chambre
 Thus the kyng with his grete armye departed leuyng the que-
 ne and Royamme in the gouernaunce of fyre Bawduyn and
 25 Constantyn / And whan he was on his hors / he sayd with an
 hyhe voys yf I dye in this iourney I wyl that fyre Constan-
 tyn be myn heyer and kyng crowned of this royame as next
 of my blood / And after departed and entred in to the see atte
 Sandwyche with alle his armye with a greete multitude of
 30 shyppes / galeyes / Cogges / and dromoundes / fayllynge on the
 see /

¶ Capitulum iiii

ANd as the kyng laye in his caban in the shyp / he fyll
 in a flomerynge and dremed a merueyllous dreme /
 hym semed that a dredeful dragon dyd drowne moche of his
 peple / and he cam fleynge oute of the west / and his hede was
 enameled with asure / and his sholders shone as gold / his be- 5
 ly lyke maylles of a merueyllous hewe / his taylle ful of tat-
 ters / his feet ful of fyne fable / & his clawes lyke fyne gold
 And an hydous flamme of fyre flewe oute of his mouthe /
 lyke as the londe and water had flammed all of fyre / After
 hym semed there came oute of thoryent / a grymly bore al blak 10
 in a clowde / and his pawes as bygge as a post / he was rug-
 ged lokyng roughly / he was the foulest beest that euer man
 sawe / he rored and romed soo hydously that it were merueill
 to here / Thenne the dredeful dragon auanced hym and cam in
 the wynde lyke a sawcon gyuyngre grete strokes on the bore / 15
 and the bore hytte hym ageyne with his gryfly tuskes / that
 his breft was al bloody / and that the hote blood made alle the
 see reed of his blood /

Thenne the dragon flewe away al on an heyzte / and come dou-
 ne with fuche a swough and smote the bore on the rydge whi- 20
 che was x foote large fro the hede to the taylle / and smote the
 bore all to powdre bothe fleshe and bonys / that it flutteryd al
 abroad on the see / And therwith the kyng awoke anone / and
 was sore abasshed of this dreme / And sente anone for a wyse
 philosopher / commaundyng to telle hym the fygnifycacion of 25
 his dreme / Syre sayd the philosopher / the dragon that thow
 dremedest of / betokeneth thyn owne persone that fayllest here / &
 the colours of his wynges ben thy Royames that thow haste
 wonne / And his taylle whiche is al to tattered fygnifyeth the
 noble knyghtes of the round table

¶ And the 30
 bore that the dragon slough comyng fro the clowdes / betokeneth
 some tyraunt that tormenteth the peple / or else thow arte lyke
 to fyghte with somme Geaunt thy self / beyng horryble and ab-
 homynable whoos pere ye sawe neuer in your dayes / wherfore

of this dredeful drede doubte the no thyng / but as a Conquerour come forth thy self / Thenne after this soone they had fyghte of londe and faylled tyl they arryued atte Barfiete in Flaundes / and whanne they were there he fond many
5 of his grete lordes redy / as they had ben commaunded to awa-
yte vpon hym

¶ Capitulum v

THenne came to hym an hufbond man of the countrey / and told hym how there was in the countre of Constantyn befyde Bretayne a grete gyaunt whiche hadde
10 flayne murdered and deuoured moche peple of the countreye and had ben susteyned feuen yere with the children of the comyns of that land / in soo moche that alle the children ben alle flayne and destroyed / and now late he hath taken the duchesse of Bretayne as she rode by with her meyne / and hath ledde her
15 to his lodgyng whiche is in a montayne for to rauysshe and lye by her to her lyues ende / and many people folowed her moo than v C / but alle they myghte not rescowe her / but they lefte her shrykyng and cryenge lamentably / wherfore I suppose that he hath flayn her in fulfyllynge his fowle lust of lechery / She was wyf vnto thy Cosyn fyre Howel / whome we calle ful nyhe of thy blood / Now as thow a ryghtful kynge haue pyte on this lady / and reuenge vs al as thow arte a noble conquerour / ¶ Alas sayd kynge Arthur / this is a grete meschyef / I had leuer than the best Royame that I haue /
25 that I hadde ben a forlonge way to fore hym for to haue rescowed that lady / ¶ Now felawe sayd kynge Arthur canst thou brynge me there as thys gyaunt haunteth / ye fyre sayd the good man / loo yonder where as thow seest the two grete fyres / there shalt thou fynde hym / and more tresour
30 than I suppose is in al Fraunce / whanne the kynge hadde vnderstanden this pyteous caas / he returned in to his tente / ¶ Thenne he callyd to hym fyre kaye and fyre Bedewere / & commaunded them secretelly to make redy hors and harnais for hym self and them tweyne / For after euenfonge he wold
35 ryde on pylgremage with them two only vnto faynt Mychels

mounte / And thenne anone he maad hym redy / and armed
 hym at alle poyntes / and tooke his hors and his sheld /
 And soo they thre departed thens and rode forthe as faste as
 euer they myzt tyl that they cam to the forlond of that mount
 And there they alyghted / and the kynge commaunded them 5
 to tarye there / for he wold hym self goo vp in to that mounte
 And soo he ascended up in to that hylle tyl he came to a grete
 fyre / and there he fonde a careful wydowe wryngyng her han-
 des and makyng grete forowe fyttynge by a graue newe ma-
 de / And thenne kynge Arthur falewed her / and demaunded 10
 of her wherfore she made suche lamentacion / to whome she an-
 fuerd and sayd Syre knyghte speke softe / for yonder is a de-
 uyll yf he here the speke / he wylle come and destroye the / I
 hold the vnhappy what dost thou here in this mountayne /
 For yf ye were suche fyfty as ye be / ye were not able to ma- 15
 ke refystence ageynst this deuyl / here lyeth a ducheffe deede the
 whiche was the fayrest of alle the world wyf to fyre Howel /
 duc of Bretayne / he hath murthred her in forcyng her / and
 has flytte her vnto the nauyl / ¶ Dame sayd the kynge / I
 came fro the noble Conqueroure kynge Arthur for to treate 20
 with that tyraunt for his lyege peple / Fy on suche treatys fay-
 yd she / he setteth not by the kynge ne by no man els / But
 and yf thou haue broughte Arthurs wyf dame Gweneuer /
 he shalle be gladder than thou haddest gyuen to hym half fra-
 unce / Beware approche hym not to nygh / for he hath vaynquyf- 25
 shed xv kynges / and hath maade hym a cote ful of precious
 stones enbrowdred with theyre berdes / whiche they fente hym
 to haue his loue for sauacion of theyr peple at this laste Cry-
 stemasse / And yf thou wylt / speke with hym at yonder grete
 fyre at souper / wel sayd Arthur I wyl accomplyshe my mes- 30
 sage for al your ferdful wordes / and wente forth by the creast
 of that hylle / and sawe where he fatte atte souper gnawynge
 on a lymme of a man / bekyng his brode lymmes by the fyre
 and brecheles / and thre fayr damoyfels tornynge thre broches
 wheron were broched twelue yonge children late borne lyke 35
 yonge byrdes ¶ Whanne kynge Arthur beheld that
 pyteous fyte / he had grete compassion on them so that his hert

bledde for forowe / and hayled hym fayeng in this wyfe he that
 alle the world weldeth gyue the shorte lyf & shameful dethe /
 And the deuyll haue thy foule / why hast thou murthred the-
 se yonge Innocent children / and murthred this duchesse / Ther-
 5 fore aryfe and dresse the thow gloton / For this day shall thou
 dye of my hand / Thenne the gloton anone starte vp and tooke
 a grete clubbe in his hand / and smote at the kynge that his
 coronal fylle to the erthe / and the kynge hytte hym ageyn that
 he carf his bely and cutte of his genytours / that his guttes &
 10 his entraylles fylle doune to the ground / thenne the gyaunt
 threwe away his clubbe / and caught the kynge in his armes
 that he cruffhyd his rybbes / Thenne the thre maydens knelyd
 doune and callyd to Cryft for helpe and comforte of Arthur
 And thenne Arthur weltred and wrong / that he was other
 15 whyle vnder and another tyme aboue / And so weltryng and
 walowyng they rolled doune the hylle / tyl they came to the
 fee marke / and euer as they foo weltred / Arthur smote hym
 with his daggar / and it fortunod they came to the place / whe-
 re as the two knyghtes were and kepte Arthurs hors / then-
 20 ne when they fawe the kynge fast in the gyaunts armes / they
 came and losed hym / And thenne the kynge commaunded fyr
 kaye to smyte of the gyaunts hede / and to sette it vpon a trun-
 cheon of a spere / and bere it to fyre howel / and telle hym that
 his enemy was slayne / and after late this hede be bounden to
 25 a barbycan that alle the peple may see and behold hit / and go
 ye two up to the montayn / and fetche me my sheld / my fuerd
 and the clubbe of yron / And as for the trefour take ye it / for
 ye shalle fynde there good oute of nombre / So I haue the ker-
 tyl and the clubbe I desyre no more / This was the fyrst gy-
 30 aunt that euer I mette with / fauf one in the mount of Arabe /
 whiche I ouercame / but this was gretter and fyrfer / Thenne
 the knyghtes fette the clubbe and the kyrtyl / and some of the
 trefour they took to them self / and retorned ageyne to the host
 And anone this was knowen thurgh alle the country / wher
 35 for the peple came and thanked the kynge / And he fayd a-
 geyne yeue the thanke to god / and departe the goodes among
 yow / And after that kynge Arthur fayd and commaunded
 his Cofyn howel that he shold ordeyne for a chirche to be bylded

on the same hylle in the worship of faynte Mychel / ¶ And
 on the morne the kynge remeuyn with his grete bataylle / and
 came in to Champayne and in a valeye / and there they pyght
 their tentys / and the kynge beyng set at his dyner / ther cam
 in two messagers / of whome that one was Marchal of frauce 5
 and fayd to the kyng that themperour was entryd in to fra-
 unce / and had destroyed a grete parte and was in Burgoyne
 and had destroyed and made grete slaughter of peple & brente
 townes and borowes / wherfor yf thou come not hastely / they
 must yelde vp their bodyes and goodes / 10

¶ Capitulum sextum

THenne the kynge dyd doo calle fyre Gawayne / fyre
 Borce / fyr Lyonel and fyre Bedwere / and comma-
 unded them to goo frayte to fyre Lucius / and faye ye
 to hym that hastely he remeue oute of my land / And yf he wil
 not / bydde hym make hym redy to bataylle and not distresse the 15
 poure peple / Thenne anone these noble knyghtes dresyd them
 to horsbak / And whanne they came to the grene wood / they fa-
 we many paelions sette in a medowe of fylke of dyuerse co-
 lours besyde a ryuer / And themperours paelione was in the
 myddle with an egle displayed aboue / To the whiche tente 20
 our knyghtes rode toward / and ordeyned fyr Gawayn and
 fyr Bors to doo the message / And leste in a buffhement fyre
 Lyonel / and fyre Bedwere / And thenne fyr Gawayn and
 fyr Borce dyd their message / and commaunded Lucius in Ar-
 thurs name to auoyde his lond / or shortly to adresse hym to ba- 25
 taylle / To whome Lucius anfuerte and fayd ye shalle retorne
 to your lord and faye ye to hym that I shall subdue hym and
 alle his londes / Thenne fyr Gawayn was wrothe and fayde
 I hadde leuer than alle Fraunce fyghte ageynst the / and
 soo hadde I faide fyr Borce leuer than alle Bretayne or bur- 30
 goyne

¶ Thenne a knyght named fyre Gaynus
 nyghe cofyn to the Emperour fayde / loo how these Bretons ben
 ful of pryde and boost / and they bragge as though they bare
 up alle the worlde / Thenne fyr Gawayne was fore greued

with these wordes / and pulled oute his swerd and smote of
his hede / And therewith torded theyr horses and rode ouer wa-
ters and thurgh woodes tyl they came to theyre buffement /
where as fyr Lyonel and fyr Bedeuer were houyng / The ro-
5 mayns folowed fast after on horsbak and on foote ouer a chā-
payn vnto a wood / thenne fyre Boors torded his hors / and
fawe a knyghte come fast on / whome he smote thurgh the bo-
dy with a spere that he fylle dede doune to the erthe / thenne cam
Callyburne one of the strengest of pauye and smote doun ma-
10 ny of Arthurs knyghtes / And whan fyr Bors sawe hym do
foe moche harme he adreffyd toward hym & smote hym thur
the brest that he fylle doune dede to the erthe / Thenne fyr Fel-
denak thought to reuenge the dethe of gaynus vpon fyre Ga-
wayn / but fyre gawayn was ware therof and smote hym on
15 the hede / whiche stroke stynted not tyl it came to his breste /
And thenne he retorned and came to his felawes in the buf-
fement / And there was a recountre / for the buffement brake
on the Romayns / and flewe and hewe doune the Romayns
and forced the Romayns to flee and retorne / whome the no-
20 ble knyghtes chaced vnto theyr tentes / Thenne the Romayns
gadred more peple / and also foote men cam on / and ther was
a newe bataille and foe moche peple that fyr Bors and fyr
Berel were taken / but whan fyre gawayn sawe that / he tooke
with hym fyre Idrus the good knyght and sayd he wold ne-
25 uer see kyng Arthur but yf he rescued them / and pulled out
galatyn his good swerd / and folowed them that ledde tho ij
knyghtes awaye / and he smote hym that lad fyre Bors / and
took fyr Bors fro hym and delyuerd hym to his felawes /
And fyre Idrus in lyke wyse rescowed fyre Berel / thenne
30 beganne the bataill to be grete that oure knyghtes were in grete
Iopardy / wherfore fyre Gawayn sente to kyng Arthur for so-
cour and that he hie hym for I am fore wounded / and that
oure prysoners may paye good oute of nombre / And the mes-
sager came to the kyng and told hym his message / And anon
35 the kyng dyd doo affemble his armye / but anone or he depart-
ted the prysoners were comen / and fyre gawayn and his fe-
lawes gate the felde and put the Romayns to flyght / and af-
ter retorned and came with their felauship in fuche wyse / that

no man of worship was lofte of them / fauf that fyr Gawayn was fore hurte / Thenne the kynge dyd do ranfacke his woundes and comforted hym / And thus was the begynnyng of the fyrft iourney of the brytons and Romayns / and ther were flayne of the Romayns moo than ten thoufand / and grete ioye and myrthe was made that nyghte in the hooft of kynge Arthur / And on the morne he fente alle the pryfoners in to parys vnder the garde of fyre launcelot with many knyghtes & of fyr Cador

¶ Capitulum vij

Now torne we to the Emperour of Rome whiche afpyed that thefe pryfoners fhould be fente to Parys / and anone he fente to leye in a buffhement certayne knyghtes and prynces with fyxty thoufand men for to refcowe his knyghtes and lordes that were pryfoners / And fo on the morne as Launcelot and fyre Cador chyuetayns and gouernours of all them that conueyed the pryfoners as they fhoulde paffe thurgh a wode fyr Laūcelot fente certayne knyghtes tefpye yf ony were in the woodes to lette them / And whanne the faid knyghtes cam in to the wood / anone they afpyed and fawe the grete enbuffhement / and retorned and told fyr Laūcelot that ther lay in a wayte for them thre fcore thoufand Romayns / And thenne fyr Launcelot with fuche knyghtes as he hadde and men of warre to the nombre of x M put them in araye and met wyth them and foughte with them manly / and flewe and drenchid many of the Romayns / and flewe many knyghtes & admirals of the party of the Romayns and farafyns / ther was flayne the kynge of lylie and thre grete lordes Aladuke / herawde and heryngdale / but fyr Launcelot fought foo nobly that no man myght endure a froke of his hande / but where he came he fhewed his prowefse and myght / for he flewe doune ryght on euery fyde / And the Romayns and farafyns fledde from hym as the fheep fro the wulf or fro the lyon / and putt them alle that abode alyue to flyght / And fo longe they fouzte that tydynges came to kynge Arthur / And anone he graythed hym and came to the bataille / and fawe his knyghtes how they had

vaynquyffhed the bataylle / he embraced them knyght by kny3te
 in his armes and faid ye be worthy to welde all your honour
 and worship / there was neuer kynge fauf my felf that had fo
 noble knyghtes / Syre fayd Cador there was none of vs fail-
 5 led other / but of the prowefse and manhode of fyre Launcelot
 were more than wonder to telle / and alfo of his cofyns whi-
 che dyd that daye many noble feates of werre / And alfo fyre
 Cador tolde who of his knyghtes were flayne / as fyr beriel &
 other fyr Morys and fyr Maurel two good knyghtes / then-
 10 ne the kynge wepte and dryed his eyen with a keuerchyef / &
 fayd your courage had nere hand destroyed yow / For though
 ye had returned ageyne / ye had loft no worship / For I calle
 hit foly / knyghtes to abyde whan they be ouermatched / Nay
 fayd Launcelot and the other / For ones shamed maye neuer
 15 be recouerd

¶ Capitulum viij

Now leue we kynge Arthur and his noble knyghtes
 whiche had wonne the felde / and had brought theyre
 pryfoners to parys / and speke we of a fenatour whiche efca-
 ped fro the bataille / and came to Lucius themperour & fayd to
 20 hym / Syre emperour I aduyfe the for to withdrawe the / what
 doft thou here / thou fhalt wynne noo thyng in thefe marches
 but grete frokes oute of al mefure / For this day one of Ar-
 thurs knyghtes was worth in the batayll an honderd of ours
 Fy on the fayd Lucius thou fpekest cowardly / for thy wor-
 25 des greue me more than alle the loffe that I had this day / and
 anone he fende forth a kynge whiche hyghte fyr leomye with a
 grete armye / and badde hym hye hym faft to fore / and he wold
 folowe haftely after / kynge Arthur was warned pryuely / &
 fente his peple to Seffoyne / and toke vp the townes & castels
 30 fro the Romayns / Thenne the kyng commaunded fyr Cador to
 take the rereward / & to take with hym certayne knyghtes of
 the round table / and fyre Launcelot / fyre Bors / fyr kay / fyre
 Marrok with fyre Marhaus fhalle awayte on our perfone /
 Thus the kynge Arthur disperplyd his hooft in dyuerfe par-
 35 tyes / to thende that his enemyes fhould not efcape / whanne the

Emperour was entryd in to the vale of Seffoyne / he myghte
 fee where kynge Arthur was enbatailled and his baner dyf-
 played / and he was byfette round aboute with his enemyes /
 that nedes he must fyghte or yelde hym / for he myght not flee /
 But fayd openly vnto the Romayns / fyrs I admoneste you 5
 that this day ye fyghte and acquyte yow as men / and remem-
 bre how Rome domyneth and is chyef and hede ouer alle the
 erthe and vnyuerfal world / and suffre not these bretons thys
 day to abyde ageynste vs / & ther with he dyd commaunde hys
 trōpettes to blowe the bloody fownes in fuche wyfe that the gro- 10
 und trembled and dyndled / Thenne the bataills approuched
 and shoue and showted on bothe fydes and grete strokes were
 smyten on bothe fydes / many men ouerthrowen / hurte / & flayn
 and grete valyaunces / prowesses and appertyces of werre we-
 re that day shewed / whiche were ouer long to recounte the no- 15
 ble feates of euery man / For they shold conteyne an hole vo-
 lume / But in especyall kynge Arthur rode in the bataille ex-
 hortynge his knyghtes to doo wel / and hym self dyd as no-
 bly with his handes as was possyble a man to doo / he drewe
 oute Excalibur his swerd / and awayted euer where as the ro- 20
 mayns were thyckest and moost greued his peple / and anone
 he adressyd hym on that parte and hewe and flewe doune ryȝt
 and rescued his peple / and he flewe a grete gyaunt named ga-
 lapas / whiche was a man of an huge quantyte and heyghte
 he shorted hym and smote of bothe his legges by the knees / fa- 25
 yenge Now arte thou better of a fyse to dele with / than thou
 were / and after smote of his hede / there fyre gawayn foughte
 nobly and flewe thre admyrales in that bataill / And so dyd
 alle the knyghtes of the round table / Thus the bataill bitwe-
 ne kynge Arthur and Lucius themperour endured longe / Lu- 30
 cius had on his fyde many farafyns / whiche were flayn / and
 thus the bataille was grete / and oostfydes that one party was
 at a fordele and anone at an afterdele / whiche endured so longe
 tyl at the last kyng Arthur aspyed / where Lucius themperour
 fought / and dyd wonder with his owne handes / And anon he 35
 rode to hym / And eyther smote other fyersly / and atte last Lu-
 cyus smote Arthur thwart the vyfage / and gaf hym a large
 wound / And whanne kyng Arthur felte hym self hurte / anon

he smote hym ageyne with Excalibur that it clefted his hede fro
 the fomette of his hede / and stynted not tyl it cam to his brefte
 And thenne themperour fylle doune dede / and there ended his
 lyf / And whan it was knowen that themperour was slayne
 5 anone alle the Romayns with all their hooft put them to fly-
 ght / and kyng Arthur with alle his knyghtes folowed the
 chaas / and flewe doune ryght alle them that they myghte at-
 teyne / And thus was the vyctory gyuen to kyng Arthur &
 the tryumphe / and there were slayne on the party of Lucius
 10 moo than an hondred thousand / And after kyng Arthur dyd
 doo ranfak the dede bodyes / and dyd doo burye them that were
 slayne of his retenue eury man accordyng to thestate & de-
 gree that he was of / And them that were hurte he lete the fur-
 gyens doo ferche their hurtes and woundes / and commaun-
 15 ded to spare no salues ne medecynes tyl they were hole /
 Thenne the kyng rode straye to the place where themperour lu-
 cius lay dede / and with hym he fond slayne the Sowdan of
 Surrey / the kyng of Egypte and of Ethyope / whiche we-
 re two noble kynges with xvij other kynges of dyuerse regy-
 20 ons / and also fyxty fenatours of Rome al noble men / whome
 the kyng dyd do bawme and gomme with many good gomme
 mes aromatyk / and after dyd do cere them in fyxty fold of ce-
 red clothe of Sendale / and leyd them in cheftys of leed / by ca-
 use they shold not chauffe ne fauoure / and vpon alle these bo-
 25 dyes their sheldes with their armes and baners were sette / to
 thende they shold be knowen of what country they were / and
 after he fonde thre Senatours whiche were on lyue to whome
 he sayd / for to faue your lyues I wylle that ye take these dede
 bodyes / and carye them with yow vnto grete Rome / and pre-
 30 sente them to the potestate on my behalve shewyng hym my let-
 ters / and telle them that I in my persone shal hastely be atte
 Rome / And I suppose the Romayns shalle beware how they
 shal demaunde ony trybute of me / And I commaunde yow to
 saye whan ye shal come to Rome to the potestate and all the
 35 counceylle and Senate / that I fende to them these dede bodyes
 for the trybute that they haue demaunded / And yf they be not
 content with these / I shal paye more at my comyng / for other
 trybute owe I none / ne none other wylle I paye / And me

thynketh this suffyseth for Bretayne / Irlond and al Alma-
 yne with germanye / And ferthermore I charge yow to faye
 to them / that I commaunde them vpon payne of theyre hedes ne-
 uer to demaunde trybute ne taxe of me ne of my londes
 Thenne with this charge and commaundement the thre Sena- 5
 tours afore fayd departed with alle the fayd dede bodyes le-
 ynge the body of Lucius in a carre couerd with tharmes of the
 Empyre al alone / And after alwey two bodyes of kynges in
 a charyot / and thenne the bodyes of Senatours after them
 and foo wente toward Rome / and shewed theyr legacyon & 10
 message to the potestate and Senate / recountyng the bataylle
 done in Fraunce / and how the feld was loft and moche peo-
 ple & Innumerable slayne / wherfore they aduyfed them in no
 wyfe to meue no more warre ageynste that noble conqueroure
 Arthur / For his myght and prowesse is most to be doubted 15
 feen the noble kynges and grete multytude of knyghtes of
 the round table / to whome none erthely prynce may compare /

¶ Capitulo nono

Now torne we vnto kynge Arthur and his noble kny-
 ghtes whiche after the grete bataylle acheued ageynste
 the Romayns / entryd in to Lorayne braban and Flaundes 20
 and fythen returned in to hault Almayn / and so ouer the mō-
 tayns in to lombardye / and after in to Tuskane / wherin was
 a Cyte / whiche in no wyfe wold yelde them self ne obeye / wher-
 fore kynge Arthur bifeged it / and lay longe aboute hit / and
 gaf many assaultes to the Cyte / And they within deffended 25
 them valyauntly / Thenne on a tyme the kynge called fyr flo-
 rence a knyght / and fayd to hym they lacked vytaylle / and
 not ferre from hens ben grete forestes and woodes / wherin ben
 many of myn enemyes with moche bestyayl / I wyl that thou
 make the redy and goo thyder in foreyeng / and take with the 30
 fyr Gawayn my newew / Syre wyffhard / fyre Clegys / Syre
 Clermond and the Captayn of Cardef with other / & brynge
 with yow alle the beeftes that ye there can gete / And anone
 these knyghtes made them redy / and rode ouer holtys & hyllys
 thurgh forestes and woodes / tyl they cam in to a fayr medow 35

ful of fayre floures and graffe / And there they rested them &
 theyr horses alle that nyghte / And in the spryngyng of the
 day in the next morne / fyre Gawayn took his hors and stale
 away from his felauship to seke some aduentures / And anon
 5 he was ware of a man armed walkyng his hors easly by
 a wodes fyde / and his sheld laced to his sholdre fyttyng on
 a stronge courser withoute ony man sauynge to a page beryng a
 myghty spere . The knyght bare in his sheld thre gryffons of
 gold in fable charbuncle the chyef of syluer / whan fyre Ga-
 10 wayn aspyed this gay knyght / he fewtryd his spere and rode
 strait to hym / and demaunded of hym from whens that he was
 that other ansuerd and sayd he was of Tuscane / and dema-
 unded of fyre gawayn / what profyft thou proude knyghte
 the so boldly / here getest thou no praye / thou mayst proue whā
 15 thou wylt / for thou shalt be my prysoner or thou departe /

¶ Thenne sayd gawayn / thou auauntest the gretely and spe-
 keft proude wordes / I couceylle the for alle thy boost that thou
 make the redy / and take thy gere to the / to fore gretter game
 falle to the

¶ Capitulum 1

20 **T**henne they took theyr speres and ranne eche at other
 with alle the myghte they had / and smote eche other
 thurgh their sheldes in to theyr sholders / wherfore anone they
 pulled oute their swardes / and smote grete strokes that the fy-
 re sprange oute of their helmes / Thenne fyre gawayne was al
 25 abashed and with galatyn his good sward he smote thurgh
 shelde and thycke hauberke made of thyck maylles and al to
 ruffhed and brake the precious stones / and made hym a large
 wounde / that men myghte see bothe lyuer and long / Thenne gro-
 ned that knyght / and adressyd hym to fyr Gawayn / & with
 30 an awke stroke gaf hym a grete wound and kytte a vayne /
 whiche greued gawayn fore / and he bledde fore / ¶ Thenne the
 knyghte sayd to fyre Gawayn / bynde thy wounde or thy blee
 change / for thou bybledest al thy hors and thy fayre armes /
 For alle the Barbouris of Bretayne shal not conne staunche
 35 thy blood / For who someuer is hurte with this blade he shalle

neuer be staunched of bledynge / Thenne anfuerd gawayn hit
 greueth me but lytyl / thy grete wordes shalle not feare me ne
 lasse my courage / but thow shalt fuffre tene and forow or we
 departe / but telle me in haft who maye staunche my bledynge /
 That may I doo sayd the knyght yf I wylle / And so wyl 5
 I yf thou wylt focoure and ayde me that I maye be crystned
 and byleue on god / And therof I requyre the of thy man-
 hode / and it shalle be grete meryte for thy soule I graunte sa-
 id Gawayne so god helpe me taccomplyfthe alle thy defyre /
 But fyrst telle me what thou foughtest here thus allone / and 10
 of what londe and legeaunce thou arte of / Syre he sayd my na-
 me is Pryamus / and a grete prynce is my fader / and he hath
 ben rebelle vnto Rome and ouer ryden many of theyr londes /
 My fader is lyneally descended of Alyfaunder and of hector
 by ryght lygne / And duke Iofue and Machabeus were of 15
 oure lygnage / I am ryght enherytour of Alyfaunder and au-
 ffryke and alle the oute yles / yet wyl I byleue on thy lord
 that thow byleuest on / And for thy laboure I shalle yeue the
 trefour ynough / I was soo elate and hauteyn in my hert that
 I thought no man my pere ne to me semblable / I was fente 20
 in to this werre with feuen score knyghtes / and now I haue
 encountred with the whiche haft gyuen to me of fyghtyng my
 fyllle / wherfore fyr knyghte I pray the to telle me what thow
 arte / I am no knyght sayd gawayn / I haue ben brought vp
 in the garderobe with the noble kyng Arthur many yeres for 25
 to take hede to his armour and his other araye / and to poynte
 his paltockes that longen to hym self / At yole last he made
 me yoman and gaf to me hors and harneys and an honderd
 pound in money / And yf fortune be my frend / I doubte not /
 but to be wel auauanced and holpen by my lyege lord / A fa- 30
 yd Pryamus / yf his knauys be so kene and fyers / his kny-
 tes ben passyng good / Now for the kynges loue of heuen whe-
 ther thou be a knaue or a knyghte telle thou me thy name /
 By god sayd fyre Gawayn / Now wyl I faye the sothe / my
 name is fyre gawayn and knowen I am in his courte and in 35
 his chambre / and one of the knyghtes of the round table / he
 dubbed me a duke with owne hand / Therefore grutche not
 yf this grace is to me fortunad / hit is the goodnesse of god

that lente to me my strengthe / Now am I better pleasyd fayd
Pryamus than thou haddest gyuen to me al the prouynce and
parys the ryche / I had leuer to haue ben torn with wylde hor-
fes / than ony varlet had wonne fuche loos / or ony page or pry-
5 ker shold haue had prys on me / But now fyre knyghte I
warne the / that here by is a duke of Lorayne with his armye
and the noblest men of Dolphyne and lordes of lombardye /
with the garneson of godard / and farafyns of Southland y-
nombred lx M of good men of armes / wherfor but yf we
10 hye vs hens / it wylle harme vs bothe / for we ben fore hurte / ne-
uer lyke to recouer / but take hede to my page that he no horne
blowe / For yf he doo ther ben houynge fast by an C kny3-
tes awaytynge on my perfone / and yf they take the / ther shal
no raunfon of gold ne fyluer acquyte the / Thenne fyre gawa-
15 yne rode ouer a water for to saue hym / And the knyghte folo-
wed hym / and soo rode forthe tyl they came to his felawes /
whiche were in the medowe / where they had ben al the nyghte
Anone as fyre wychard was ware of fyre gawayn and sawe
that he was hurte / he ranne to hym soroufully wepynge / and
20 demaunded of hym who had soo hurte hym / and gawayn told
how he had foughten with that man / and eche of them hadde
hurte other / and how he had salues to hele them / but I can tel-
le yow other tydynges / that soone we shal haue adoo with ma-
ny enemyes / Thenne fyre pryamus and fyre gawayn alygh-
25 ted / and lete their horses grafe in the medowe and vnarmed
them / And thenne the blood ranne freshly fro theyre woun-
des / And pryamus toke fro his page a vyolle ful of the four
waters that came oute of paradys / and with certayne baume
enoynted theyr woundes / and weffhe them with that water / &
30 within an houre after / they were both as hole as euer they we-
re / And thenne with a trompet were they alle affembled to co-
unceylle / And there pryamus told vnto them / what lordes and
knyghtes had sworne to rescowe hym / and that without faille
they shold be affailed with many thousandes / wherfor he coun-
35 ceilled them to withdrawe them / Thenne fyre gawayn sayd it
were grete shame to them to auoyde withoute ony strokes /
Wherfore I aduyse to take oure armes and to make vs redy
to mete with these farafyns and mysbyleuyng men / and wyth

the helpe of god we shal ouerthrowe them and haue a fayre day on them / And fyre Florens shall abyde styll in thys felde to kepe the stale as a noble knyghte / and we shal not forsake yonder felawes / Now sayd Pyramus seaffe your wordes / for I warne yow ye shal fynde in yonder woodes many peryllo- 5
us knyghtes / they wylle put forthe beestes to calle yow on / they be out of nombre / and ye are not past vij C whiche ben ouer fewe to fyght with soo many / Neuertheles sayd fyr gawayn we shal ones encountre them / and see what they can do and the beste shalle haue the vyctory 10

¶ Capitulo xj

THenne fyre Florence callyd to hym fyre florydas with an honderd knyghtes and droofe forth the herde of beestes / Thenne folowed hym vij honderd men of armes / and fyr Feraunt of spayne on a fayr stede came spryngynge oute of the woodes / and came to fyre Florence and axyd hym why he fledde / Thenne fyre Florence took his spere / and rode ageynste hym / and smote hym in the forhede and brake his necke bone / Thenne all thother were meued / and thought to auenge the dethe of fyr Feraunt / and smote in emonge them / and there was grete fyghte and many slayne and leyd doune to gro- 20
unde / and fyr Florence with his C knyghtes alwey kepte the stale and foughte manly / ¶ Thenne whan Pryamus the good knyght perceyued the grede fyght / he wente to fyre Gawayn / and badde hym that he shold goo and socoure his felauship / whiche were fore bystad with their enemyes / Syr gre- 25
ue yow not sayd fyre Gawayn / For theyr gree shall be theirs I shall not ones meue my hors to them ward / but yf I see mo than ther ben / For they ben stronge ynough to matche them / & with that he sawe an erle called fyre Ethelwold and the duk of duchemen cam lepyng out of a wood with many thousades 30
& pryamus knyghtes / & cam strayte vn to the bataylle / thēne sir gawayn comforted his knyghtes / and bad them not to be abasshed / for al shal be ours / thēne they began to wallope & mette with their enemyes / there were mē slayn & ouerthrowen on euery

fyde / Thenne threstyd in amonge them the knyghtes of the ta-
 ble round / and smote doune to the erthe alle them that wyth-
 stode them / in foo moche that they made them to recuyelle & flee /
 By god sayd fyre Gawayn this gladeth my herte / for now
 5 ben they lasse in nombre by xx M / Thenne entryd in to the ba-
 taylle Iubaunce a geaunt / and fought and flewe doune ryght
 and distressyd many of our knyghtes / emonge whome was
 slayne fyre Gherard a knyght of walys / Thenne oure knygh-
 tes toke herte to them / and flewe many farafyns / And thenne
 10 came in fyr Priamus with his penon / and rode with the kn-
 yghtes of the round table / and fought so manfully that ma-
 ny of their enemyes lost theyr lyues / And ther fyr Pryamus
 flewe the Marquys of Moyfes land / and fyre gawayn with
 his felawes so quytte hem that they had the feld / but in that
 15 stoure was fyr Chestelayne a chyld and ward of fyre Ga-
 wayne slayne / wherfore was moche forou made / and his deth
 wes soone auengyd / Thus was the bataille ended and ma-
 ny lordes of lombardye and farafyns left dede in the feld /

¶ Thenne fyre florence and fyre Gawayne herberowed furely
 20 theyr peple / and token grete plente of bestyal of gold & fyluer
 and grete trefour and rycheffe and returned vnto kyng Ar-
 thur whiche lay styl at the fyege / And whanne they came to
 the kyng / they presented theyr pryfoners and recounted the-
 yre aduentures / and how they had vaynquysshed theyre ene-
 25 myes

¶ Capitulum xij

Now thanked be god sayd the noble kyng Arthur /
 But what maner man is he that standeth by hym self
 hym semed no pryfoner / Syre sayd Gawayne this is a good
 man of armes / he hath matched me / but he is yolden vnto god
 30 and to me for to bycome Crysten . had not he haue be we shold
 neuer haue rotorned / wherfor I pray yow that he may be bap-
 tyfed / for ther lyueth not a nobler man ne better knyght of his
 handes / thenne the kyng lete hym anon be crystned / and dyd
 doo calle hym his fyrste name Pryamus / and made hym a du-
 35 ke and knyghte of the table round

¶ And thenne anon
 the kyng lete do crye assaulte to the cyte / and there was re-
 rynge of laddres brekyng of wallys and the dyche fylled /

that men with lytel payne myzt entre in to the cyte / thēne cam
 out a duchesse / & Claryfyn the countesse with many ladyes &
 damoyfels / and knelyng bifore kynge Arthur requyred hym
 for the loue of god to receyue the cyte / & not to take it by affa-
 ulte for thenne shold many gyltles be slayne / thēne the kyng 5
 aualyd his vyfer with a meke & noble cōtenaūce / & said ma-
 dame ther shal none of my subgettys myfdoo you ne your ma-
 ydens / ne to none that to yow longen / but the duke shal abyde
 my Iugement / thenne anone the kyng commaunded to leue the
 assault / & anon the dukes oldest sone brought out the keyes / & 10
 knelyng delyuerd them to the kyng / & byfouzt hym of grace / &
 the kyng seafed the toun by assent of his lordes / & toke the duc
 & sent hym to douer there for to abyde pryfoner terme of his lyf
 & assigned certayn rentes for the dower of the duchesse & for
 her children / Thenne he made lordes to rule tho londes & lawes 15
 as a lord ought to do in his owne countrey / & after he took his
 iourney toward Rome / & sent sir Florys & fyr florydas to fore
 with v C men of armes / & they cam to the cyte of vrbyne & leid
 there a buffhement there as them semed most best for them / & ro-
 de to fore the toun / where anon yssued oute moche peple & skar- 20
 muffhed with the fore rydars / thēne brake out the buffhement &
 wan the brydge & after the toun / & fet vpon the wallis the kyn-
 ges baner / thēne cam the kyng vpon an hille & sawe the Cyte
 & his baner on the wallis / by whiche he knewe that the Cyte
 was wonne / & anone he sente & commaunded that none of his 25
 lyege men shold defoule ne lygge by no lady / wyf / ne maide / &
 whan he cam in to the cyte / he passid to the castel / and comforted
 them that were in forou / & ordeyned ther a captayn a knyzt of
 his own cōtrey / & whan they of Melane herd that thylk cyte
 was wōne / they sent to kyng Arthur grete sōmes of money / & 30
 befouzt hym as their lord to haue pyte of them / promysyng to be
 his subgettys for euer / & yelde to hym homage & fealte for the
 lādes of plefaūce & pauye / peterfaynt & the port of tremble / &
 to gyue hym yerly a melyon of gold al his lyf tyme / thēne he
 rydeth in to Tuslane & wynneth tounes & castels & wasted al 35
 in his way that to hym wil not obeye / & so to spolute & viterbe
 & fro thens he rode in to the vale of vycecoūte among the vynes
 And fro thens he sente to the fenatours to wete / whether they

wold knowe hym for theyr lord / But foone after on a fater-day
 came vnto kynge Arthur alle the fenatours that were left
 on lyue / and the noblest Cardynals that thenne dwellyd in
 Rome / And prayd hym of pees / and profered hym ful large
 5 And byfought hym as gouernour to gyue lycence for vj we-
 kes for to affemble alle the Romayns / And thenne to crowne
 hym Emperour with creme as it bylongeth to fo hyhe aftate / I
 affente sayd the kynge lyke as ye haue deuysed / and at cry-
 stemas there to be crowned / and to holde my round table with
 10 my knyghtes as me lyketh / And thenne the fenatours maade
 redy for his Intronysacyon / And at the day appoynted as the
 Romaunce telleth he came in to Rome / and was crowned em-
 perour by the popes hand with all the ryalte that coude be ma-
 de / And sudgeined there a tyme / and establysshed all his lon-
 15 des from Rome in to Fraunce / and gaf londes and royammes
 vnto his feruautes and knyghtes to eueryche after his desert
 in fuche wyse that none complayned ryche ne poure / & he gaf
 to fyre Pryamus the duchye of Lorayne / and he thanked hym
 and sayd he wold ferue hym the dayes of his lyf / and after
 20 made dukes and erles / and made euery man ryche / Thenne
 after this alle his knyghtes and lordes affembled them afore
 hym / and sayd bleffyd be god your warre is fynysshed and
 your conquest acheued / in foo moche that we knowe none foo
 grete ne myghty that dar make warre ageynst yow / wherfore
 25 we byfeche you to retorne homeward / and gyue vs lycence to
 goo home to our wyues / fro whome we haue ben longe / and
 to reste vs / for your Iourney is fynysshed with honour & wo-
 ship / Thenne sayd the kyng / ye faye trouthe / and for to temp-
 te god it is no wyfedome / And therefore make you redy and
 30 retorne we in to Englund / Thenne there was truffyng of har-
 neis and bagage and grete caryage / And after lycence gyuen
 he retorned and commaunded that noo man in payne of dethe
 shold not robbe ne take vytaylle / ne other thyng by the way
 but that he shold paye therfore / And thus he came ouer the see
 35 and loded at sandwyche / ageynste whome Quene Gweneuer
 his wyf came and mette hym / and he was nobly receyued of
 alle his comyns in euery cyte and burgh / and grete yeftes
 presented to hym at his home comyng to welcome hym with /

¶ Thus endeth the fyfthe booke of the conquette that kynge Arthur hadde ageynste Lucius the Emperoure of Rome / and here foloweth the fyrth booke whiche is of fyr Launcelot du lake

¶ Capitulum primum

SOone after that kyng Arthur was come / fro rome in to Englund / thenne alle the knyghtes of the table round reforted vnto the kyng / & made many Iustes & turnementes / & some there were that were but knyghtes whiche encreaced fo in ar- 5
mes and worfhip that they passed alle their felawes in pro-
wesse and noble dedes / and that was wel preued on many
But in especyal it was preued on fyre launcelot du lake / for
in al turnementys and Iustes and dedes of armes both for lyf
and deth he passed al other knyghtes / and at no tyme he was 10
neuer ouercome / but yf it were by trefon or enchaument / fo
fyr Launcelot encreaced soo merueyllously in worfhip / and in
honour / therfor is he the fyrst knyght that the frensche book ma-
keth mencyon of after kynge Arthur came fro rome / wherfore
quene gweneuer had hym in grete fauour aboute al other kny- 15
ghtes . and in certayne he loued the quene ageyne aboute al o-
ther ladyes damoyfels of his lyf / And for her he dyd many
dedes of armes and faued her from the fyer thorou his noble
chyualry / Thus fyre launcelot rested hym longe with play &
game / And thenne he thought hym self to preue hym self in 20
ftraunge auentures / thenne he badde his neuewe fyre Lyonel
for to make hym redy / for we two wylle feke aduentures / So
they mounted on their horses armed at al ryghtes / and rode
in to a depe forest & soo in to a depe playne / ¶ And thenne the
weder was hote about noone / and fyre launcelot had grete lust 25
to slepe / Thenne fyr lyonel aspyed a grete Appyl tree that sto-
de by an hedge / & said broder yonder is a fayre shadowe / there
maye we reft vs on oure horses / hit is wel faide faire broder
said fyr launcelot / for this viij yere I was not fo slepy as I am
now / and so they there alyghted & tayed their horses vnto fon- 30
dry trees / and so fyr launcelot layd hym doune vnder an ap-
pyl tree / and his helme he layd vnder his hede / And Syre

lyonel waked whyle he slepte / Soo fyre launcelot was a slep-
 passyng fast / And in the mene whyle there came thre kny-
 ghtes rydyng as faste fleyng as euer they myghte ryde
 And there folowed hem thre but one knyghte / And whanne
 5 fyr lyonel sawe hym / hym thought he sawe neuer soo grete a
 knyghte nor soo wel faryng a man neyther soo wel appa-
 rilled vnto al rygthes / Soo within a whyle this strong knyzt
 had ouertaken one of these knyghtes / and there he smote hym
 to the cold erth that he lay styll / And than he rode vnto the se-
 10 cond knyght / and smote hym soo that man and hors felle do-
 ne / And thenne freyghte to the thyrdde knyghte he rode and
 smote hym behynde his hors ars a spere length / And thenne
 he alyghte doune arayned his hors on the brydel & bonde
 alle the thre knyghtes fast with the raynes of their owne bry-
 15 dels / Whan fyr lyonel sawe hym doo thus / he thought to assay
 hym / & made hym redy & styll / and pryuely he took his hors &
 thoughte not for to awake fyr launcelot / And whan he was
 mounted vpon his hors / he ouertoke this strong knyght / & bad
 hym torne / and the other smote fyr lyonel so hard that hors &
 20 man he bare to the erthe / & so he alyght down & bound hym fast
 and threwe hym ouerthwart his owne hors / and soo he ferued
 hem al foure / & rode with hem away to his owne castel / And
 whan he came there he garte vnarme them & bete hem with thorn-
 nys al naked / & after put hem in a depe pryson where were ma-
 25 ny mo knyghtes that made grete doloure

¶ Capitulum secundum /

WHan fyre Ector de marys wyft that fyre laūcelot was
 past out of the court to seke aduentures he was wroth
 with hym self / & made hym redy to seke fyre laūcelot / & as he
 had ryden long in a grete forest he mette with a man was ly-
 30 ke a foster / Fayre felaw said fyre Ector knowest thou in thys
 countrey ony aduentures that ben here nyghe hand / Syr sayd
 the foster / this countrey knowe I wel . and here by within thys
 myle / is a stronge manoir and wel dyked / & by that manoir
 on the lyfte hand there is a faire fourde for horses to drynke
 35 of / and ouer that fourde there groweth a fayr tree / and theron
 hangen many fayre sheldes that welded somtyme good knygh-
 tes / & atte hoole of the tree hangeth a bacyn of copen /

and ftryke vpon that bacyn with the but of thy spere thryes /
 And soone after thou shalt here newe tydynges / And ellys
 haft thou the fayrest grace that many a yere had euer knyght
 that passed thorou this forest / gramercy sayd fyre Ector / and
 departed / and came to the tree and sawe many fayre sheldes 5
 And amonge them he sawe his broders sheld fyr Lyonel and
 many moo that he knewe that were his felawes of the round
 table / the whiche greued his herte / and promysed to reuenge
 his broder / Thenne anone fyr Ector bete on the bacyn as he we-
 re wood / and thenne he gaf his hors drynke at the fourde / & 10
 ther came a knyghte behynd hym / and bad hym come oute of
 the water and make hym redy / and fyre Ector anone torned
 hym shortly and in fewter cast his spere and smote the other
 knyghte a grete buffet that his hors torned twyes aboute /
 This was wel done said the strong knyzt / & knyztly thou haft 15
 ftryken me / And therwith he ruffhed his hors on fyre Ector /
 and cleyzte hym vnder his ryght arme & bare hym clene out
 of the fadel / and rode with hym away in to his owne halle / &
 threwe hym doune in myddes of the floore / the name of thys
 knyghte was fyre Turquyne / than he said vnto fyre Ector for 20
 thou haft done this day more vnto me than ony knyghte dyd
 these xij yeres / Now wille I graunte the thy lyf so thou wilt
 be sworn to be my prysoner all thy lyf dayes / Nay said fir Ec-
 tor / that wylle I neuer promyse the / but that I will do myne
 auauntage / That me repenteth sayd fyre Turquyne / and then- 25
 ne he garte to vnarme hym and bete hym with thornys all na-
 ked / and sythen putte hym doune in a depe dungeon where he
 knewe many of his felawes / But whan fyre Ector sawe fyr
 lyonel thenne made he grete forowe / Allas broder sayd fir Ec-
 tor / where is my broder fyre Launcelot / Fayre broder I lefte 30
 hym on slepe whan that I from hym yode vnder an appel tree
 and what is become of hym I can not telle yow / Allas said
 the knyghtes / but fyre launcelot helpe vs we may neuer be de-
 lyuerd / for we knowe now noo knyght that is able to matche
 oure mayster Turquyn

35

¶ Capitulum tercium

Now leue we these knyghtes prysoners and speke we of fyre Launcelott du lake that lyeth vnder the Appyl Tree slepynge / euen aboute the noone there come by hym foure quenes of grete estate / And for the hete shold
 5 not nyhe hem there rode foure knyghtes aboute hem / and bare a clothe of grene fylke on foure speres betwixe them and the sonne / And the quenes rode on foure whyte mules

¶ Thus as they rode they herde by them a grete hors grymly neye / thenne were they ware of a slepynge knyghte that laye
 10 alle armed vnder an appyl tree / anone as these quenes loked on his face / they knewe it was fyre launcelot / Thenne they byganne for to stryue for that knyghte / euerychone sayd they wold haue hym to her loue / ¶ We shalle not stryue sayd Morgan le fay that was kynge Arthurs syster / I shalle putte an
 15 enchaument vpon hym / that he shalle not awake in fyxe owres / And thenne I wylle lede hym away vnto my castel / And whanne he is surely within my hold / I shalle take the enchaument from hym / And thenne lete hym chese whyche of vs he wylle haue vnto peramour / ¶ Soo thys enchaunte-
 20 ment was caste vpon fyre Launcelot / And thenne they leyd hym vpon his shelde / and bare hym foo an horfback betwixt two knyghtes / and brought hym vnto the castel charyot / and there they leyd hym in a chambyr cold / and att nyghte they sente vnto hym a fayre damoyfel with his souper redy dyght
 25 By that the enchaument was past / And whan she came she falewed hym / and asked hym what chere / I can not faye fayre damoyfel said fyre Launcelot / for I wote not how I cam in to this castel / but it be by an enchaument / Syre sayd she ye must make good chere / And yf ye be fuche a knyghte as it is
 30 sayd ye ben / I shalle telle you more to morne by pryme of the daye / Gramercy fayre damoyfel sayd fyre Launcelot of youre good wyl I requyre yow / And foo she departed / And there he laye alle that nyght withoute comferte of ony body

¶ And on the morne erly came these foure quenes passyng-
 35 ly wel byfene / Alle they byddyng hym good morne / and he them ageyne / ¶ Syre knyghte the foure quenes sayd thou must vnderstande thou arte our prysoner / and we here knowe the wel that thou arte fyre Launcelot du laake / kynge Bans

sone / And by cause we vnderstande your worthynes that thou
 arte the noblest knyght lyuyng / And as we knowe wel ther
 can no lady haue thy loue but one / and that is quene Gwene-
 uer / and now thou shalt lose her for euer and she the / and ther-
 fore the behoueth now to chese one of vs four / I am the quene 5
 Morgan le fay quene of the land of Gorre / and here is the
 quene of Northgalys and the quene of Eestland / and the que-
 ne of the oute yles / ¶ Now chese one of vs whiche thou wylt
 haue to thy peramour / for thou mayst not chese or els in thys
 pryson to dye / This is an hard caaas sayd fyre Launcelot that 10
 eyther I muste dye or els chese one of yow / yet had I leuer
 to dye in this pryson with worship than to haue one of you to
 my peramour maugre my hede / And therefore ye be anfuerd I
 wylle none of yow for ye be fals enchauntresses / And as for
 my lady dame Gweneuer / were I at my lyberte as I was / 15
 I wold preue hit on you or on yours / that she is the trueest
 lady vnto her lord lyuyng / Wel sayd the quenes / is this yo-
 ur anfuere that ye wylle reffuse vs / ye on my lyf sayd fyr laū-
 celot / reffused ye ben of me / Soo they departed and lefte hym
 there alone that made grete forowe 20

¶ Capitulum quartum

RYght so at the noone came the damoyfel vnto hym with
 his dyner / and asked hym what chere / truly fayre da-
 moyfel sayd fyre Launcelot in my lyf dayes neuer so ylle / fir
 she sayd that me repentest / but and ye wylle be reulyd by me /
 I shal help you out of this distresse / and ye shal haue no sha- 25
 me nor vylony soo that ye hold me a promyse / fayre damoyfel
 I wil graunte yow / and fore I am of these quenes forcereffes
 aferd / for they haue destroyed many a good knyght / fyre sayd
 she that is sothe and for the renome and bounte that they here
 of you / they wold haue your loue / and fir they sayne / your na- 30
 me is fyre Launcelot du laake the floure of knyghtes / & they
 be passyng wrothe with yow that ye haue reffused hem / But
 fyre and ye wold promyse me to helpe my fader on tewsdaye
 next comynge / that hath made a turnement betwixe hym and

the kynge of Northgalys / for the laft tewefdaye pafte my fader
 loft the felde thorough thre knyghtes of Arthurs courte / And
 ye wyll be there on tewefday next comyng / and helpe my fader
 to morne or pryme by the grace of god I fhalle delyuer yow
 5 clene / Fayre mayden fayd fyr launcelot telle me what is your
 faders name / and thenne fhall I gyue you an anfuer / Syre
 knyghte fhe fayd / my fader is kyng Bagdemagus that was
 foule rebuked at the laft turnement / I knowe your fader wel
 faid fyre launcelot for a noble kyng and a good knyghte /
 10 And by the feythe of my body ye fhalle haue my body redy to
 doo your fader and you feruyfe at that day / Syre fhe fayd gra-
 mercy / and to morne awayte ye be redy by tymes and I fhall
 be fhe that fhall delyuer you / and take you your armour and
 your hors fhelde and fperre / And here by within this x myle is
 15 an Abbey of whyte monkes / there I praye you that ye me a-
 byde / and thyder fhall I brynge my fader vnto you / alle thys
 fhall be done faide fyre Launcelot as I am true knyghte / and
 foo fhe departed and came on the morne erly / and found hym
 redy / thenne fhe brought hym oute of twelue lockes & brougt
 20 hym vnto his armour / & whan he was clene armed / fhe brougt
 hym vntyl his owne hors / and lyghtely he fadeled hym
 and toke a grete fperre in his hand / and foo rode forth / and fa-
 yd fayre damoyfel I fhall not faile you by the grace of god /
 And foo he rode in to a grete foreft all that day / and neuer co-
 25 ude fynde no hyghe waye / and foo the nyght felle on hym / and
 thenne was he ware in a flade of a paelione of reed fendel /
 By my feythe fayd fyre launcelot in that paelione wil I lod-
 ge alle this nyghte / and foo there he alyghte doune and tayed
 his hors to the paelione / and there he vnarmed hym / and
 30 there he fond a bedde / and layd hym thereyn / and felle on flepe
 fadly

¶ Capitulum v

THenne within an houre there came the knyghte to who-
 me the paelione ought / And he wende that his lemā
 had layne in that bedde / and foo he laid hym doune befyde fyr
 35 Launcelot / and toke hym in his armes and beganne to kyffe

[leaf 94 verso]

hym / And whanne fyre launcelot felte a rough berd kyffyng
 hym / he starte oute of the bedde lyghtely / and the other knyzt
 after hym / and eyther of hem gate their fwerdes in their han-
 des / and oute at the paelione dore wente the knyghte of the
 paelione / and fyre launcelot folowed hym / and ther by a ly- 5
 tyl flake fyr launcelot wounded hym fore nyghe vnto the deth
 And thenne he yelded hym vnto fyre launcelot / and fo he graū-
 ted hym fo that he wold telle hym why he came in to the bedde
 Syre sayd the knyght the paelione is myn owne / and there
 thys nyght I had affygned my lady to haue flepte with me 10
 And now I am lykely to dye of this wounde / that me repen-
 teth sayd Launcelot of youre hurte / but I was adrad of tre-
 fon / for I was late begyled / and therefore come on your way
 in to your paelione and take your rest / And as I suppose I
 fhalle staunche your blood / and soo they wente bothe in to the 15
 paelione / And anone fyre launcelot staunched his blood /
 There with al came the knyghtes lady / that was a passyng
 fayre lady / And whanne she aspyed that her lord Belleus
 was fore wounded she cryed oute on fyre launcelot / and ma-
 de grete dole oute of mesure / Pees my lady and my loue said 20
 Belleus / for this knyght is a good man and a knyght ad-
 uenturous / and there he told her all the cause how he was wou-
 ded / And whan that I yolde me vnto hym / he lefte me goode-
 ly and hath staunched my blood / Syre sayd the lady I re-
 quyre the telle me what knyght ye be / and what is youre na- 25
 me / Fayr lady he sayd / my name is fyre launcelot du lake / soo
 me thought euer by your speche sayd the lady / for I haue se-
 ne yow ofte or this / and I knowe you better than ye wene /
 ¶ But now and ye wold promyse me of your curtosy for the
 harmes that ye haue done to me and to my lord Belleus that 30
 whanne he cometh vnto Arthurs courte for to cause hym to be
 made knyghte of the rouūd table / for he is a passyng good man
 of armes and a myghty lord of landes of many oute yles /
 ¶ Fayre lady said fyr launcelot lete hym come vnto the cou-
 rte the next hyte feest / and loke that ye come with hym / and I 35
 shal doo my power / and ye preue you doughty of your handes
 that ye shalle haue your desyre ¶ So thus within a whyle as
 they thus talked the nyghte passed / and the daye shone / and

thenne fyre launcelot armed hym / and took his hors / and they
taught hym to the Abbaye and thyder he rode within the spa-
ce of two owrys

¶ Capitulum tertium /

ANd foone as fyre launcelott came withyn the Abbeye
5 yarde / the doughter of kynge Bagdemagus herd a gre-
te hors goo on the payment / And she thenne aroos and yede
vnto a wyndowe / and there she sawe fyr launcelot / and anone
she made men fast to take his hors from hym / & lete lede hym
in to a stabyl / and hym self was ledde in to a fayre chamber /
10 and vnarmed hym / and the lady sente hym a longe goune / &
anone she came her self / And thēne she made launcelot passyng
good chere / and she sayd he was the knyzt in the world was
moost welcome to her / Thenne in al hafte she sente for her fader
Bagdemagus that was within xij myle of that Abbay and
15 afore euen he came with a fayre felauship of knyghtes wyth
hym / And whanne the kynge was alyghte of his hors he yo-
de streyte vnto fyr launcelots chamber / and there he fond hys
doughter / and thenne the kyng embraced fyr Launcelot in hys
armes / and eyther made other good chere / Anone fyre launce-
20 lot made his complaynt vnto the kynge how he was bytrayed
And how his broder fyre lyonel was departed from hym / he
nyft not where / and how his doughter had delyuerd hym out
of pryson / therfor whyle I lyue I shal doo her seruyse and al
her kynred / Thenne am I sure of youre helpe sayd the kynge
25 on tewesday next comynge / ye fyr sayd fyr launcelot / I shalle
not faylle yow / for soo I haue promysed my lady your do-
ughter / But fyre what knyghtes be they of my lord Arthurs
that were with the kynge of Northgalys / and the kyng sayd
it was fyre madore de laporte / and fyr Mordred and fyr ga-
30 halaytyne that al fur fared my knyghtes / for ageynst hem thre
I nor my knyghtes myghte bere no strengthe / Syre fayde fyre
launcelot as I here fay that the turnement shal be here within
this thre myle of this abbay / ye shal sende vnto me thre knygh-
tes of yours suche as ye trust and loke that the thre knyghtes
35 haue al whyte sheldes & I also & no paynture on the sheldes / &
and we four will come out of a lytel wood in myddes of both

partyes / and we shalle falle in the frounte of oure enemyes &
 greue hem that we may / And thus shal I not be knowen what
 knyght I am / Soo they took their rest that nyght / and thys
 was on the sonday / and soo the kyng departed / and sente vnto
 fyre launcelot thre knyghtes with the four whyte sheldes 5
 And on the tewesday they lodged hem in a lytyl leued wood
 besyde there the turnement shold be / And there were scaffoldis
 and holes that lordes and ladyes myghte beholde and to gy-
 ue the pryse / Thenne came in to the feld the kyng of Northga-
 lys with eyght score helmes / And thenne the thre knyghtes of 10
 Arthur stode by them self / ¶ Thenne cam in to the feld kyng
 Bagdemagus with four score of helmys / And thenne they fe-
 wtryd their sperys / and cam to gyders with a grete dasshe / &
 there were slayn of knyghtes at the first recountre xij of kyng
 Bagdemagus parte / and fyx of the kyng of Northgalys par- 15
 ty / and kyng Bagdemagus party was ferre fette a back /

¶ Capitulum septimum

Wyth that came fyr Launcelot du lake and he threste in
 with his spere in the thyckest of the prees / and there he
 smote doune with one spere fyue knyghtes / and of foure of
 hem he brake their backs / And in that throng he smote doune 20
 the kyng of Northgalys / and brake his thye in that falle /
 Alle thys doying of fyre Launcelot sawe the thre knyghtes of
 Arthurs / Yonder is a shrewde gest sayd fyre Madore de la port
 therfore haue here ones at hym / soo they encountred / and fyre
 Launcelot bare hym doune hors and man / soo that his sholder 25
 wente oute of lyth / Now befalleth it to me to Iuste sayd Mor-
 dred / for fyr Mador hath afore falle / Syre Launcelot was wa-
 re of hym / and gate a grete spere in his hand / and mette hym
 and fyr Mordred brake a spere vpon hym / and fyre launce-
 lot gaf hym fuche a buffet that the arsson of his fadel brake / & 30
 soo he flewe ouer his hors taylle that his helme butte in to the
 erthe a foote and more that nyhe his neck was broken / & there
 he lay longe in a swoune / ¶ Thenne came in fyr Gahalantyne
 with a grete spere / and Launcelot ageynst hym with al theyre
 strength that they myzt dryue that both her speres to braff euen 35

to their handes / and thenne they flang out with their fwerdes
 and gaf many a grym fstroke / Thenne was fyr launcelot wroth
 oute of mefure / and theñe he smote fyr galahantyne on the hel-
 me that his nofe brafte oute on blood and eerys and mouthe
 5 bothe / and ther with his hede henge lowe / And therwith his
 hors ranne away with hym / and he felle doune to the erthe /
 Anone there with al fyre launcelot gate a greete fpere in hys
 hand / And or euer that grete fpere brake / he bare doune to the
 erthe xvj knyghtes some hors and man / and some the man &
 10 not the hors / & there was none but that he hyt furely he bare no-
 ne armes that day / And thenne he gate another grete fpere &
 smote doune twelue knyghtes / and the mooft party of hem ne-
 uer throfe after / And thēne the kny3tes of the kyng of north-
 galys wold Iufte nomore / And there the gree was was gyuen to
 15 kyng Bagdemagus / So eyther party departed vnto his ow-
 ne place / and fyr launcelot rode forth with kyng Bagdema-
 gus vnto his caftel / and there he had paffynge good chere both
 with the kyng and with his doughter / and they profred hym
 grete yeftes / And on the morne he took his leue / and told the
 20 kyng that he wold goo and feke his broder fyre Lyonel that
 wente from hym whan that he flepte / fo he toke his hors / and
 betaught hem alle to god / And there he fayd vnto the kynges
 doughter yf ye haue nede ony tyme of my feruyfe I praye you
 lete me have knouleche / and I fhall not faylle you as I am
 25 true knyght / and fo fyr launcelot departed / and by aduenture
 he came in to the fame forest / there he was take fleepyng / And in
 the myddes of an hyhe way he mette a damoyfel rydyng on a
 whyte palfroy / and there eyther falewed other / Fayre damoy-
 fel faid fyre launcelot knowe ye in this countray ony aduen-
 30 tures / fyre knyghte fayd that damoyfel / here are aduentures
 nere hand / and thou durft preue hem / why fhould I not pre-
 ue aduentures faid fyre launcelot for that caufe come I hyder /
 Wel fayd ſhe thou femeft wel to be a good knyght / And yf
 thou dare mete with a good knyght / I fhall brynge the where
 35 is the beft knyght / and the myghtyefte that euer thou fond / fo
 thou wylt telle me what is thy name / and what knyght thou
 arte / damoyfel as for to telle the my name I take no grete for-
 ce / Truly my name is fyre laūcelot du lake / fyre thou byfemyft

[leaf 96 verso]

wel / here ben aduentures by that fallen for the / for here by du-
 elleth a knyght that wylle not be ouermatched for no man I
 knowe but ye ouermatche hym / & his name is fyre Turquyne
 And as I vnderstand he hath in his pryson of Arthurs co-
 urte good knyghtes thre score and foure / that he hath wonne 5
 with his owne handes / But whan ye haue done that Iourney
 ye shal promyse me as ye are a true knyght for to go with me
 and to helpe me / and other damoyfels that are distreßid day-
 ly with a fals knyghte / All your entente damoyfel and desyre
 I wylle fulfyller / soo ye wyl brynge me vnto this knyghte 10
 Now fayre knyght come on your waye / and soo she broughte
 hym vnto the fourde and the tre where henge the bacyn / So fir
 launcelot lete his hors drynke / and fythen he bete on the bacyn
 with the butte of his spere so hard with al his myzt tyl the bo-
 ttom felle oute / and longe he dyd soo but he sawe noo thyng 15
 Thenne he rode endlong the gates of that manoyre nyghe half
 an houre / And thenne was he ware of a grete knyzt that dro-
 fe an hors afore hym / and ouerthwarte the hors there lay an
 armed knyght bounden / And euer as they came nere and nere
 / fyre launcelot thouzt he shold knowe hym / Thenne fir laun- 20
 celot was ware that hit was fyre gaherys Gawayns broder a
 knyghte of the table round / Now fayre damoyfel sayd fir la-
 uncelot / I see yonder cometh a knyght fast bounden that is a
 felawe of myne / and broder he is vnto fyr gawayne / And att
 the fyrst begynnyng I promyse yow by the leue of god to re- 25
 scowe that knyght / But yf his mayster fytt better in the sa-
 del I shal delyuer alle the prysoners that he hath oute of daun-
 ger / for I am sure he hath two bretheren of myne prysoners
 with hym / By that tyme that eyther had sene other / they gryp-
 ped theyr speres vnto them / Now fayre knyghte sayd fyr la- 30
 uncelot / put that wounded knyghte of the hors / and lete hym
 reste a whyle / and lete vs two preue oure strengthes / For as
 it is enformed me thou doest and hast done grete despyte and
 shame vnto knyghtes of the round table / and therfor now de-
 fende the / And thow be of the table round sayd Turquyne I 35
 desyre the and alle thy felausship / that is ouermocher sayd / sa-
 yd fyre launcelot

¶ Capitulum viii

ANd thēne they put theyr speres in the restys / & cam to
 gyders with her horses as fast as they myght renne /
 And eyther smote other in myddes of theyre sheldes that bothe
 theyre horse backes brafte vnder them / and the knyghtes were
 5 bothe astonyed / and as soone as they myghte auoyde theyre
 horses / they took their sheldes afore them / and drewe oute her
 swerdes / and came to gyder egerly / and eyther gaf other ma-
 ny stronge strokes / for there myght neyder sheldes nor harnes
 hold theyr strokes / And soo within a whyle they hadde bothe
 10 grymly woundes / and bledde passynge greuouly / Thus they
 ferd two houres or mo trasynge and rasynge eyther other where
 they myght hytte ony bare place / Thenne at the last they were
 bretheles bothe / and stode lenyng on theyre swerdes / Now fe-
 lawe sayd fyr Turquyne hold thy hand a whyle / and telle
 15 me what I shal aske the / Say on thenne Turquyne sayd thou
 arte the byggest man that euer I mette with al / and the beste
 brethed / and lyke on knyzt that I hate aboue al other kny-
 ghtes / so be hit that thou be not he I wyl lyghtly accorde with
 the / & for thy loue I wil delyuer al the pryfoners that I haue
 20 that is thre score and foure / soo thou wylt telle me thy name /
 And thou and I we wyl be felawes to gyders and neuer to
 fayle the whyle that I lyue / it is wel sayd / sayd fyr launce-
 lot / but fythen hit is soo that I may haue thy frendship what
 knyght is he that thou soo hatest aboue al other / Feythfully sa-
 25 yd fyr Turquyne his name is fyre launcelot du lake / for he fle-
 we my broder fyr Caradus at the dolorous toure that was one
 of the best knyghtes on lyue / And therefore hym I excepte of
 al knyghtes / for may I ones mete with hym / the one of vs
 shal make an ende of other I make myn auowe / And for fir
 30 launcelots sake I haue slayne an C good knyghtes / and as
 many I haue maymed al vtterly that they myght neuer af-
 ter helpe them self / and many haue dyed in pryson / and yet ha-
 ue I thre score and foure / and al shal be delyuerd so thou wilt
 telle me thy name / so be it that thou be not fyre launcelot /
 35 ¶ Now see I wel sayd fyre launcelot that suche a man I my-
 ghte be I myght haue peas / and suche a man I myghte be

that ther shold be warre mortal betwyxte vs / and now fyre
 knyghte at thy request I wyl that thou wete and knowe that
 I am Launcelot du lake kynge Bans sone of Benwyck / &
 very knyghte of the table round / And now I defye the and
 doe thy best / A fayd Turquyne / launcelot / thou arte vnto me 5
 moost welcome that euer was knyghte / for we shalle neuer de-
 parte tyl the one of vs be dede / Thenne they hurtled to gyders
 as two wilde bulles roffhyng and lasshyng with their shel-
 des and swerdes that somtyme they felle bothe ouer theyr nos-
 ses / Thus they foughte styll two houres and more / and ne- 10
 uer wolde haue reste / and fyre Turquyn gaf fyre laūcelot ma-
 ny woundes / that alle the ground there as they foughte was
 al bespeckled with blood

¶ Capitulum ix

THenne at the last fyr Turquyn waxed faynte / and
 gaf somwhat a bak / and bare his shelde lowe for wery- 15
 nesse / That aspyed fyre Launcelot / and lepte upon hym fyrf-
 ly and gate hym by the Bauowre of his helmet / and plucked
 hym doune on his knees / And anone he racyd of his helme /
 and smote his neck in sondyr / And whanne fyre laūcelot had
 done this / he yode vnto the damoyfel and fayd / damoyfel I am 20
 redy to goo with yow where ye wylle haue me / but I haue no
 hors / Fayre fyre fayd she / take this wounded knyghtes hors
 and sende hym in to this manoyr and commaunde hym to de-
 lyuer alle the prysoners / Soo fyr launcelot wente vnto Gahe-
 ryes and praid hym not to be agreued for to leue hym his hors 25
 Nay fayr lord said Gaheryes I wyll that ye take my hors atte
 your owne commaundement / for ye houe bothe saued me and
 my hors / & this day I faye ye are the best knyghte in the worlde
 For ye haue slayne this daye in my fyghte the myztest man
 & the best knyghte excepte yow that euer I sawe / & fore fyre 30
 said Gaheryes I pray you telle me your name / Syre my na-
 me is fyr launcelot du lake that ouzte to helpe you of ryghte
 for kyng arthurs sake / & in especial for my lord sir gawayns
 sake your owne dere broder / & whan that ye come within yon-
 der manayr / I am sure ye shal fynde ther many knyghtes of the 35
 round table / for I haue sene many of their sheldes that I knowe

on yonder tree / there is kayes shelde / & fir braundeles sheld /
 and fyr Marhaus sheld and fyre Galyndes shelde and fyre
 Bryan de lyftnoyfe sheld and fyr Alydukes sheld with ma-
 ny mo that I am not now auysed of / and also my two brethe-
 5 ren sheldes fyre Ector de marys and fyr Lyonel / wherfore I
 pray yow grete them al from me / and fay that I bydde them
 take fuche stuffe there as they fynd / and that in ony wyfe my
 bretheren goo vnto the courte and abyde me there tyl that I
 come / for by the feest of pentecost I cast me to be there / for as at
 10 this tyme I must ryde with this damoyfel for to faue my pro-
 myse / and foo he departed from Gaheryse / & Gaheryse yede in to
 the manore / and ther he fond a yoman porter keypyng ther ma-
 ny keyes / Anone with al fyre gaheryse threwe the porter vnto
 the gr^{und} / and toke the keyes from hym / and hastely he ope-
 15 ned the pryson dore / and there he lete oute all the prysoners /
 and euery man losed other of their boundes / And whan they
 sawe fyre Gaheryse / alle they thanked hym / for they wend that
 he was wounded / Not foo sayd Gaheryse / hit was launcelot
 that slewe hym worshipfully with his owne handes / I sawe
 20 it with myn owne eyen / and he greteth you al wel / and pra-
 yeth you to haste you to the courte / And as vnto fyr Lyonel
 and Ector de marys he prayeth yow to abyde hym at the court
 That shalle we not doo says his bretheren / we wyll fynde hym
 and we may lyue / So shal I sayd fyr kay fynde hym or I
 25 come at the courte as I am true knyghte / Thenne alle the kn-
 yghtes fought the hous there as the armour was / and thenne
 they armed hem / and euery knyght fonde his owne hors / &
 al thet euer longed vnto hym / And whan this was done ther
 cam a foster with foure horses lade with fatte veneson / A none
 30 fyr kay sayd / here is good mete for vs for one meale / for we
 had not many a day no good repast / And so that veneson
 was rosted baken and soden / and so after souper somme abode
 there al that nyghte / But fyre Lyonel and Ector de marys
 and fyre kay rode after fyre launcelot to fynde hym yf they
 35 myghte

¶ Capitulum Decimum

Now torne we vnto fyre launcelot that rode with the damoyfel in a fayre hyghe waye / fyr sayd the damoyfel / here by this way haunteth a knyght that destressyd al ladyes and gentylywymmen / And at the leest he robbeth them or lyeth by them / what said fir launcelot is he a theef & a knyght & a rauysshur of wymmen / he doth shame vnto the ordre of knyghthode / and contrary vnto his othe / hit is pyte that he lyueth / But fayr damoyfel ye shal ryde on afore your self / and I wylle kepe my self in couerte / And yf that he trouble yow or distresse yow / I shalle be your rescowe and lerne hym to be ruled as a knyghte / Soo the mayde rode on by the way a soft ambelynge paas / And within a whyle cam oute that knyght on horfbak oute of the woode / and his page with hym / & there he put the damoyfel from her hors / and thenne she cryed / With that came launcelot as fast as he myghte tyl he came to that knyght / sayenge / O thou fals knyght and traytour vnto knyghthode / who dyd lerne the to dystresse ladyes and gentylywymmen / whanne the knyghte sawe fyre launcelot thus rebukynge hym / he answerd not / but drewe his sward and rode vnto fyre launcelot / and fyre launcelot threwe his spere fro hym / and drewe oute his sward / and frake hym fuche a buffet on the helmet that he clafe his hede and neck vnto the throte Now hast thou thy payement that long thou hast deserued / that is trouthe sayd the damoyfel / For lyke as fyr Turquyne watched to destroye knyghtes / soo dyde this knyght attende to destroye and dystresse ladyes damoyfels and gentylywymmen / & his name was fyre Perys de foreyst saueage / Now damoyfel fayde fyre launcelot wylle ye any more feruyse of me / Nay fyre she sayd at this tyme / but almyghty Ihesu perferue you where someuer ye ryde or goo / for the curteyst knyghte thou arte and mekest vnto all ladyes and gentylywymmen that now lyueth / But one thyng fyre knyghte me thynketh ye lacke / ye that are a knyghte wyueles that ye wyl not loue some mayden or gentylywoman / for I coude neuer here say that euer ye loued any of no maner degree and that is grete pyte / but hit is noyfed that ye loue quene Gueneuer / and that she hath ordeyned by enchaument that ye shal neuer loue none other / but her / ne none other damoyfel ne lady shal reioyse you / wherfor

many in this land of hyghe estate and lowe make grete so-
 rowe / ¶ Fayre damoyfel sayd fyr launcelot I maye not war-
 ne peple to speke of me what it pleafeth hem / But for to be a
 wedded man / I thynke hit not / for thenne I muft couche with
 5 her / and leue armes and turnementys / batayls / and aduentu-
 res / And as for to fay for to take my plesaunce with peramo-
 urs that wylle I refuse in pryncypal for drede of god / For
 knyghtes that ben auenturous or lecherous shal not be happy
 ne fortunate vnto the werrys / for outhere they shalle be ouerco-
 10 me with a fymplyer knyghte than they be hem self / Outher els
 they shal by vnhap and her curfydnes flee better men than
 they ben hem self / And soo who that vfeth peramours shalle be
 vnhappy / and all thyng is vnhappy that is aboute hem / And
 soo fyre Launcelot and she departed / And thenne he rode in a
 15 depe forest two dayes and more / and had strayte lodgyng /
 Soo on the thyrdde day he rode ouer a longe brydge / and there
 starte vpon hym sodenly a passyng foule chorle / and he smote
 his hors on the nose that he torned aboute / & asked hym why
 he rode ouer that brydge withoute his lycence / why shold I not
 20 ryde this way sayd fyr launcelot / I may not ryde befyde / thou
 shall not chese sayd the chorle and lasshyd at hym with a gre-
 te clubbe shod with yron / Thenne fyre launcelot drewe his fuerd
 and put the stroke abak / and clafe his hede vnto the pappys /
 At the ende of the brydge was a fayre village / & al the peple
 25 men and wymmen cryed on fyre launcelot / and sayd A wers
 dede dydest thou neuer for thy self / for thou hast slayn the chyef
 porter of oure castel / fyr launcelot lete them fay what they wold
 And streyghte he wente in to the castel / And whanne he cam
 in to the castel he alyghte / and teyed his hors to a rynge on
 30 the walle / And there he sawe a fayre grene courte / and thyder
 he dresyd hym / For there hym thought was a fayre place to
 fyghte in / Soo he loked aboute / and sawe moche peple in do-
 res and wyndowes that sayd fayr knyghte thou arte vnhap-
 py

¶ Capitulum xi

¶ Capitulum xij

A None with al cam there vpon hym two grete gyaunts
 wel armed al fauf the hedes with two horryble club-
 bes in theyr handes / Syre Launcelot put his fhield afore hym
 and put the stroke aweye of the one gyaunt / and with his
 fwerd he clafe his hede a fandre / Whan his felaw fawe that / he 5
 ran away as he were wood / for fere of the horryble strokes / &
 laūcelot after hym with al his myzt & smote hym on the fhoulder
 / and clafe hym to the nauel / Thenne fyre launcelot went in
 to the halle / and there came afore hym thre score ladyes and 10
 damoyfels / and all kneled vnto hym / and thanked god & hym
 of their delyueraunce . For fyre fayd they / the moofte party of
 vs haue ben here this feuen yere their pryfoners / and we haue
 worched al maner of fylke werkes for oure mete / and we are
 al grete gentylywymmen borne / and bleffyd be the tyme knyzte
 that euer thou be borne / For thou haft done the moofst worship 15
 that euer dyd knyght in this world / that wyl we bere recorde
 and we al pray you to telle vs your name / that we maye telle
 our frendes who delyuerd vs oute of pryfon / Fayre damoyfel
 he fayd / my name is fyre launcelot du lake / A fyre fayde they
 al / wel mayft thou be he / for els faue your felf / as we demed / 20
 there myghte neuer knyght haue the better of thefe two gya-
 unts / for many fayre knyghtes haue affayed hit / and here haue
 ended / and many tymes haue we wyffhed after yow / and
 thefe two gyaunts dredde neuer knyghte but you / Now maye
 ye fayre fayd fyr launcelot vnto youre frendes how & who hath 25
 delyuerd you / and grete them al from me / and yf that I come
 in ony of your marches / shewe me fuche chere as ye haue caufe
 and what trefour that there in this caftel is I gyue it you for a
 reward for your greuaunce / And the lorde that is owner of
 this caftel I wold he receyued it as is ryght / Fayre fyre faide 30
 they / the name of this caftel is Tyntygayl / & a duke oughte
 it fomtyme that had wedded fair Igrayn / & after wedded her V-
 therpendragon / & gate on her Arthur / wel faide fir launcelot I
 vnderftande to whome this caftel longeth / and foo he departed
 from them / and bytaughte hem vnto god ¶ And thenne 35
 he mounted vpon his hors & rode in to many ftraunge & wyld

countreyes and thorou many waters and valeyes and euyl
 was he lodged / And at the lasfe by fortune hym happend a-
 ageynft a nyghte to come to a fayr courtelage / & therin he fond
 an old gentylwoman that lodged hym with good wyl / and
 5 there he had good chere for hym and his hors / And whan ty-
 me was his ooft brought hym in to a fayre garet ouer the ga-
 te to his bedde / There fyre Launcelot vnarmed hym & fette hys
 harneys by hym / and wente to bed / and anone he felle on flepe /
 So foone after ther cam one on horfback / & knocked at the ga-
 10 te in grete hafte / and whan fyr launcelot herd this / he arofe vp
 and loked oute at the wyndowe / & fawe by the mone lyghte
 thre knyghtes cam rydyng after that one man / and al thre laf-
 fhed on hym at ones with fwerdes / & that one knyzt tourned
 on hem knyztly ageyne / and deffended hym / Truly faide fyre
 15 launcelot yonder one knyzte fhall I helpe / for it were fhame for
 me to fee thre knyzttes on one / And yf he be flayne I am parte-
 ner of his deth / & ther with he took his harneis / and went out
 at a wyndowe by a fhete doune to the four knyzttes / & thenne
 fyr launcelot fayd on hyghe / torne you knyghtes vnto me and
 20 leue your fyghtyng with that knyght / And thenne they alle
 thre lefte fyr kay / and torned vnto fyr launcelot / and there be-
 ganne grete bataylle / for they alyghte al thre / and strake ma-
 ny grete ftrokes at fyr launcelot / and affayled hym on eue-
 ry fyde / Thenne fyre kay drefsid hym for to haue holpen fyre
 25 Launcelot / nay fyre fayd he I wylle none of your helpe / ther-
 for as ye wylle haue my helpe / lete me alone with hem / Syre
 kay for the pleafyre of the knyghte fuffred hym for to doo hys
 wylle / and foo ftode on fyde / And thenne anon within vj ftro-
 kes / fyre launcelot had ftryken hem to the erthe
 30 ¶ And thenne they al thre cryed fyre knyghte we yelde vs
 vnto you as man of myght makeles / As to that faid fyr laū-
 celot I will not take your yeldyng vnto me / But fo that ye
 wylle yelde you vnto fyr kay the Senefchal on that couena-
 unt I wyl faue your lyues and els not / ¶ Fayre knyghte
 35 fayd they that were lothe to doo / For as for fyr kay / we
 chaced hym hyder / and had ouercome hym had not ye ben /
 therfor to yelde vs vnto hym it were no refon / wel as to that
 faid laūcelot / auyfe you wel / for ye may chefe whether ye wyll

dye or lyue / for and ye be yolden it shal be vnto fyr kay /
¶ Fayre knyght thenne they sayd in fauyng of oure lyues
we wylle doo as thou commaundys vs / Thenne shal ye sayd
fyr launcelot on whytsonday nexte comyng go vnto the courte
of kynge Arthur / and there shal ye yelde you vnto quene Gue- 5
neuer / and put you al thre in her grace and mercy / and saye
that fir kay sente you thyder to be her prysoners / Syre they said
it shalle be done by the feythe of oure bodyes / and we ben ly-
uyng / and there they swore euery knyghte vpon his fwerd /
And so fir launcelot suffred hem soo to departe / And thenne fir 10
launcelot knocked at the yate with the pomel of his fwerd /
and with that came his ooft / and in they entred fir kay and he
Syre sayd his hooft I wende ye had ben in youre bedde / so I
was / sayd fire launcelot / But I arofe and lepte oute atte my
wyndowe for to helpe an old felawe of myne / And so whanne 15
they came nyghe the lyghte / fir kay knewe wel / that it was fir
launcelot / and ther with he kneled doune and thanked hym of
al his kyndenesse that he had holpen hym twyes from the deth
Syre he sayd I haue no thyng done but that me ought for to
doo / and ye are welcome / and here shal ye repose yow and ta- 20
ke your rest / Soo whan fir kay was vnarmed / he asked after
mete / soo there was mete fette hym / and he ete strongly / And
whan he hadde souped they went to theyr beddes and were lod-
ged to gyders in one bedde / On the morne fir launcelot arofe er-
ly / and lefte fyre kay slepyng / and fir launcelot toke fire ka- 25
yes armour and his shelde and armed hym / and so he wente to
the stable / and toke his hors and toke his leue of his ooft / and
soo he departed / Thenne soone after arofe fyr kay and myffed
fir launcelot / And thenne he aspyed that he had his armoure
and his hors / Now by my feythe I knowe wel that he wylle 30
greue some of the courte of kynge Arthur . For on hym knyghtes
wylle be bolde / and deme that it is I / and that wyll begyle
them / And by cause of his armoure and shelde I am fure I
shal ryde in pees / And thenne soone after departed fir kay &
thanked his hooft

35

¶ Capitulum xij

Now torne we vnto fyre launcelot that had ryden long
 in a grete forest / and at the last he came in to a lowe co-
 untray ful of fayre Ryuers and medowes / And a-
 fore hym he sawe a longe brydge / and thre paelions stode ther
 5 on of fylke and fendel of dyuers hewe / And withoute the pa-
 uelions henge thre whyte sheldes on truncheons of sperys / &
 grete longe sperys stode vpryght by the paelions / and at eue-
 ry paelions dore stode thre fresshe squyers / and soo fyre laun-
 celot passed by them and spake no worde / whan he was paste
 10 the thre knyghtes sayden hym that hit was the proud kay / he
 weneth no knyght soo good as he / and the contrary is ofty-
 me preued / By my feythe sayd one of the knyghtes / his na-
 me was fyre gaunter / I wylle ryde after hym / & assaye hym /
 for alle his pryde / and ye may beholde how that I spede / Soo
 15 this knyght fyre Gaunter armed hym / and henge his shelde
 vpon his sholder / and mounted vpon a grete hors / and gate
 his spere in his hand / and wallopt after fyre launcelot / and
 whanne he came nyghe hym / he cryed Abyde thou proude kny-
 ght fyr kay / for thou shalt not passe quyte / Soo fyr launcelot
 20 torned hym / and eyther feutryd their speres / and came to gy-
 ders with alle theyr myghtes / and fyre Gaunters spere brake
 but fyre launcelot smote hym doune hors and man / and whan
 fyr gaunter was at the erthe / his bretheren sayd echone to o-
 ther yonder knyght is not fyre kay / for he is bygger than he /
 25 I dare laye my heed sayd fyre Gylmere yonder knyghte hath
 flayne fyr kay and hath taken his hors and his harneis / whe-
 ther it be soo or no sayd fyr Raynold the thyrd broder / lete vs
 now goo mounte vpon oure horfes and rescowe our broder fir
 Gaunter vpon payne of dethe / we alle shal haue werke ynou3
 30 to matche that knyght / for euer me semeth by his persone it is
 fyre Launcelot / or fyr Trystram / or fyr Pelleas the good kny-
 ght / Thenne anon they toke theyr horfes and ouertook fyr la-
 uncelot / and fyre gylmere put forth his spere / and ranne to fir
 launcelot / and fyre launcelot smote hym doune that he lay in a
 35 swoune / Syre knyght sayd fyr Raynold thou arte a strong
 man / and as I suppose thou hast flayne my two bretheren /
 for the whiche rasyth my herte fore ageynst the / And yf I my-
 ght with my worship I wold not haue a doo with yow but

nedes I must take parte as they doo / And therfor knyghte he
 fayd / kepe thy self / And soo they hurtled to gyders with alle
 theyr myghtes / and al to sheuered bothe theyre speres / And
 thenne they drewe her swardes and lashed to gyder egerly /
 Anone there with aroos fyre Gaüter / and came vnto his bro- 5
 der fyre gylmere / and bad hym aryse and helpe we oure bro-
 der fyr Raynold that yonder merueylloufly matched yonder
 good knyght / There with alle they lepte on theyr horses & hurt-
 led vnto fyre launcelot / ¶ And whanne he sawe them come / he
 smote a fore stroke vnto fyr Raynold that he felle of his hors 10
 to the ground / And thenne he stroke to the other two brethe-
 ren / and at two strokes he strake them doune to the erthe /
 With that fir Raynold beganne to starte vp with his heede al
 bloody / and came streyte vnto fyre launcelot / Now late be fayd
 fir launcelot / I was not ferre from the whan thou were maade 15
 knyght fir Raynold / and also I knowe thou arte a good
 knyght / and lothe I were to flee the / Gramercy fayd fyr ray-
 nold as for your goodnes / And I dare faye as for me and
 my bretheren we wyl not be lothe to yelde vs vnto you / with
 that we knewe your name / for wel we knowe ye are not fire 20
 kay / As for that be it as it be maye / for ye shal yelde yow vn-
 to dame gweneuer / and loke that ye be with her on whytsonday
 and yelde you vnto her as pryfoners / and faye that fyre kay
 sente yow vnto her / thenne they swore hit shold be done / and so
 passed forthe fire launcelot / and echone of the bretheren halpe 25
 other as wel as they myght

¶ Capitulum xiii

SOo fir launcelot rode in to a depe forest / and ther by in
 a flade / he sawe four knyghtes houyng vnder an oke /
 and they were of Arthurs courte / one was fir Sagramour le
 defyrus and Ector de marys / and fir Gawayn and fir Vwa- 30
 yne / Anone as these four knyghtes had aspyed fir Launcelot
 they wend by his armes it hadde ben fir kay / Now by my fe-
 ythe fayd fir Sagramour / I wylle preue fir kayes myghte / &
 gate his spere in his hand / and came toward fir launcelot
 Ther with fir launcelot was ware and knewe hym wel / and 35

feutryd his spere ageynst hym / and smote fyre Sagramore so
 fore that hors and man felle bothe to the erthe / Lo my felaus
 sayd he yonder ye may see what a buffet he hath / that knyzt is
 moche bygger than euer was fyre kay / Now shal ye see what
 5 I may doo to hym / Soo fyr Ector gate his spere in his hand
 and wallopte toward fyre Laūcelot / and fyre Launcelot smote
 hym thorou the shelde & sholder that man and hors went to
 the erthe / and euer his spere held / By my feythe sayd sir V-
 wayne yonder is a strong knyghte / and I am sure he hath sla-
 10 yne fyr kay / And I see by his grete strengthe it wyll be hard
 to matche hym / And there with al fyre Vwayne gate his spe-
 re in his hand and rode toward fyre Launcelot / and fyr laun-
 celot knewe hym wel / and soo he mette hym on the playne / &
 gafe hym suche a buffette that he was astroyed / that longe he
 15 wyft not where he was / Now see I wel sayd fyre gawayne
 I must encoūtre with that knyzt / Thenne he dressid he his sheld
 and gate a good spere in his hand / and fyre launcelot kne-
 we hym wel / and thenne they lete renne theyr horses with all
 theyr myghtes / and eyther knyght smote other in myddes of
 20 the shelde / But fyre gawayns spere to braft / and fyre launcelot
 charged so fore vpon hym that his hors reuerfed vp so doune
 And moche sorowe had fyre gawayn to auoyde his hors / and
 so fyre launcelot passed on a paas and smyled and said god
 gyue hym ioye that this spere made / for there came neuer a bet-
 25 ter in my hand / Thenne the four knyghtes wente echone to o-
 ther and comforted eche other / what saye ye by this gest sayd
 fyre Gawayne / that one spere hath feld vs al foure / we com-
 maunde hym vnto the deuyll they sayd al / for he is a man of
 grete myght / ye may wel saye it / sayd fyre gawayne / that he is
 30 a man of myght / for I dare lay my hede it is fyre Launcelot
 I knowe it by his rydyng / Lete hym goo sayd fyre Gawayn
 for whan we come to the courte than shal we wete / and then-
 ne had they moche sorowe to gete theyr horses ageyne

¶ Capitulum xiiij

35 **N**ow leue we there & speke of fyr Launcelot that rode a
 grete whyle in a depe forest where he saw a black brachet
 [leaf 102 verso]

sekyng in maner as it had ben in the feaute of an hurt dere /
And ther with he rode after the brachet and he sawe lye on the
ground a large feaute of blood / And thenne fyre launcelot
rode after / And euer the Brachet loked behynd her / and soo
she wente thorou a grete mareyfe / and euer fyre launcelot folo- 5
wed / And thenne was he ware of an old manoyr / and thy-
der ranne the brachet / and soo ouer the brydge / Soo fyre laun-
celot rode ouer that brydge that was old and feble / and whan
he cam in myddes of a grete halle ther he sawe lye a dede kny-
ght that was a femely man / and that brachet lycked his wo- 10
undes / and there with al came oute a lady wepyng & wryn-
gyng her handes / And thenne she fayd / O knyghte to moche
forowe hast thou broughte me / Why faye ye soo fayd fyre laun-
celot / I dyd neuer this knyghte no harme / for hyther by feau-
te of blood this Brachet broughte me / And therfor fayre la- 15
dy be not displeasid with me / for I am ful fore agreued of
your greuauce / Truly fyre she fayd I trowe hit be not ye that
hath slayne my husband / for he that dyd that dede is fore wo-
unded / & he is neuer lykly to recouer / that shal I ensure hym /
What was your husbandes name fayd fyre launcelot / Syre fayd 20
she / his name was called fyre Gylbert the bastard one of the
best knyghtes of the world / and he that hath slayne hym I
knowe not his name / Now god fende you better comferte fay-
yd fyre launcelot / and soo he departed and wente in to the fo-
rest ageyne / and there he met with a damoyfel / the whiche kne- 25
we hym wel / and she fayd on loude wel be ye fond my lord
And now I requyre the on thy knyghthode helpe my brother
that is fore wounded / and neuer stynteth bledyng / for this day
he fought with fyre gylbert the bastard & flewe hym in playn
bataylle / and there was my broder fore wounded / and there is 30
a lady a forcereffe that duelleth in a castel here befyde / and this
day she told me / my broders woundes shold neuer be hole tyl I
coud fynde a knyght that wold go in to the chappel peryllous / &
ther he shold fynde a sward and a blody clothe that the wound-
ded knyght was lapped in / and a pyece of that clothe & sward 35
shold hele my broders woundes so that his woundes were fer-
ched with the swerde and the clothe / This is a merueyllous
thyngge fayd fyre launcelot / but what is your broders name /

Syre she fayd / his name was fyre Melyot de logurs / that me
 repenteth faid fyre launcelott / for he is a felawe of the table
 round / and to his helpe I wylle doo my power / Thenne fyre
 fayd she / folowe euen this hyhe waye / and it wyl brynge you
 5 vnto the chappel peryllous / And here I shalle abyde tyl god
 fend you here ageyne / and but you spede I knowe no knyzte
 lyuynge that may encheue that aduenture

¶ Capitulum xv

RYght soo fyr Launcelot departed / And whan he cam
 vnto the chappel peryllous / he alyghte doune / and te-
 10 yed his hors vnto a lytyl gate / and as soone as he was with
 in the chirche yard / he sawe on the frount of the chappel many
 fayre ryche sheldes torned vp so doune / and many of the shel-
 des fyre launcelot had fene knyghtes bere byfore hand / wyth
 that he sawe by hym there stonde a xxx greete knyghtes more
 15 by a yarde than ony man that euer he had fene / and all tho
 greued and gnasted at fyre launcelot / And whan he sawe
 theyr countenaunce he dred hym fore / and soo putte his shelde
 afore hym / and toke his fwerd redy in his hand redy vnto ba-
 taylle / and they were al armed in black harneis redy with her
 20 sheldes and her fwerdes drawen / And whan fyr Launcelot
 wold haue gone thorou oute them / they scateryd on euery sy-
 de of hym / and gaf hym the way / and ther with he waxed al
 bold / and entred in to the chappel / and thenne he sawe no ly-
 ght / but a dymme lamp brennynge / and thenne was he ware
 25 of a corps hylled with a clothe of fylke / Thenne fyre Launce-
 lot stouped doune / and cutte a pyece away of that clothe / and
 thenne it ferd vnder hym as the erthe had quaked a lytel /
 there with al he feryd / And thenne he sawe a fayre fwerd lye
 by the dede knyghte / and that he gate in his hand and hyed
 30 hym oute of the chapel / Anone as euer he was in the chappel
 yarde / alle the knyghtes spak to hym with a grymly voys / and
 fayd knyghte fyr launcelot leye that fwerd from the or ellys
 thou shalt dye / whether that I lyue or dye fayd fyr launcelot
 with noo grete word gete ye hit ageyne / therfor fyghte for it
 35 and ye lyst / Thenne ryght soo he passed thorou out them / and

by yonde the chappel yarde ther mette hym a fayre damoyfel &
 fayd fyr launcelot leue that swerd behynde the / or thou wil
 dye for it / I leue it not fayd fyr launcelot for no treatys /
 No fayd she and thou dydest loue that swerd / quene gwene-
 uer shold thou neuer see / thenne were I a foole and I wold 5
 leue this swerd fayd launcelot / Now gentyl knyghte fayde
 the damoyfel / I requyre the to kyffe me but ones / Nay fayd
 fyr launcelot that god me forbede / wel fyr fayd she / and thou
 haddeft kyffed me / thy lyf dayes had ben done / but now allas
 she said I haue lofte al my labour / for I ordeyned this chap- 10
 pel for thy sake / and for fyre gawayne / And ones I had fyr
 Gawayne within me / and at that tyme he foughte with that
 knyghte that lyeth there dede in yonder chappel fyre Gylbert
 the bastard . and at that tyme he smote the lyfte hand of of fir
 Gylbert the bastard / And fyre Launcelot now I telle the / I 15
 haue loued the this feuen yere / but there may no woman ha-
 ue thy loue but quene Gweneuer / But fythen I maye not
 reioyce the to haue thy body on lyue I had kepte no more ioye
 in this world / but to haue thy body dede / Thenne wold I ha-
 ue baumed hit and serued hit / and soo haue kepte it my lyfe 20
 dayes / and dayly I shold haue clypped the / and kyffed the in
 despyte of Quene Gweneuer / ye faye wel fayd fyr launcelot
 Ihesu preferue me from your subtyle craftes / And ther with al
 he took his hors and soo departed from her / And as the book fa-
 yth whan fyr launcelot was departed she took suche sorou that 25
 she dyed within a fourteen nyghte / and her name was Hella-
 wes the forcereffe lady of the castel Nygramous / Anone fyre
 launcelot mette with the damoyfel fyre Melyotis syster / And
 whan she sawe hym she clapped her handes / and wepte for ioye
 And thenne they rode vnto a castel there by where lay fyr Me- 30
 lyot / And anone as fyre launcelot sawe hym / he knewe hym /
 but he was passyng pale as the erthe for bledyng / whan fyre
 Melyot sawe fyre launcelot he kneled vpon his knees and cry-
 ed on hyghe / O lord fyr launcelot helpe me / Anone fyre laun-
 celot lepte vnto hym and touched his woundes with fyr Gyl- 35
 bertes swerde / And thenne he wyped his woundes with a part
 of the bloody clothe that fir gylbert was wrapped in / and anon
 an holer man in his lyf was he neuer / And thenne ther was

grete ioye bytwene hem / and they made fyr launcelot all the chere that they myghte / and soo on the morne fyre launcelot toke his leue / and badde fyre Melyot hye hym to the courte of my lord Arthur / for it draweth nyhe to the feeft of pentecoste / and
 5 there by the grace of god ye shal fynde me / and therwith they departed /

¶ Capitulum xvj

ANd soo fyre Launcelot rode thorou many straunge countreyes ouer marys and valeyes tyl by fortune he came to a fayre castel / and as he paste beyonde the castel / hym
 10 thought he herde two bellys ryngge . And thenne was he ware of a Faucon came fleynge ouer his hede toward an hyghe elme / and longe lunys aboute her feet / and she flewe vnto the elme to take her perche / the lunys ouer cast aboute a bough / And whanne she wold haue taken her flyghte / she henge by the leg-
 15 ges fast / and fyre launcelot fawe how he henge / and byheld the fayre faucon perygot / & he was fory for her / The meane whyle came a lady oute of the castel and cryed on hyghe O launcelot launcelot as thou arte floure of alle knyghtes helpe me
 20 to gete my hauke / for and my hauke be lost / my lord wyl destroye me / for I kepte the hauke and she flypped from me / and yf my lord my husband wete hit / he is soo hafty that he wyll flee me / What is your lordes name sayd fir Launcelot / fir she
 25 said his name is sire Phelot a knyghte that longeth vnto the the kynge of Northgalys / wel fayre lady syn that ye knowe my name and requyre me of knyghthode to helpe yow I wylle doo
 what I may to gete your hauke / and yet god knoweth I am an ylle clymber and the tree is passynge hyghe / and fewe bowes to helpe me with alle / And ther with fir launcelot alyzte
 30 and teyed his hors to the same tree / and prayd the lady to vnarme hym / And soo whan he was vnarmed / he put of alle his clothes vnto his sherte and breche / and with myghte &
 force he clamme vp to the faucon / and teyed the lunys to a grete rotten boyshere / and threwe the hauke doune and it with alle /
 Anone the lady gate the hauke in her hand / and there with al
 35 came oute fyre phelot oute of the greuys fodenly / that was her

husband al armed / and with his naked fwerd in his hand
 and sayd O knyghte launcelot now haue I fond the as I
 wold and stode at the bole of the tree to flee hym / A lady fayd
 fyre Launcelot why haue ye bytrayed me / She hath done
 fayd fyre Phelot but as I commaunded her / and therfor ther 5
 nys none other boote but thyne houre is come that thou muste
 dye / That were shame vnto the fayd fyre launcelot thou an ar-
 med knyghte to flee a naked man by treason / thou getest no-
 ne other grace fayd fyre phelot and therefor helpe thy self and
 thou canst / Truly sayde fyre launcelot that shal be thy shame / 10
 but fyn thou wylt doo none other / take myn harneys with the
 and hange my fwerde vpon a bough that I maye gete hit / &
 thenne doo thy best to flee me and thou canst / Nay nay said fir
 Phelot / for I knowe the better than thou wenest / therfor thou
 getest no wepen and I may kepe you ther fro / Allas said fir 15
 launcelot that euer a knyghte shold dye wepenles / And ther
 with he wayted aboute hym and vnder hym / and ouer his he-
 de he fawe a rownsfepyk a bygge bough leueles / and ther with
 he brake it of by the body / And thenne he came lower & away-
 ted how his owne hors stode / and sodenly he lepte on the fer- 20
 ther fyde of the hors froward the knyghte / And thenne fir phe-
 lot lashed at hym egerly wenyng to haue slayne hym / But
 fyr Launcelot putte awaye the stroke with the rounsfepyk / and
 ther with he smote hym on the one fyde of the hede that he felle
 doune in a fwoune to the ground / Soo thenne fyre launcelot 25
 took his fwerd oute of his hand and stroke his neck fro the
 body / Thenne cryed the lady / Allas why hast thou slayne my
 husband / I am not causer sayd fyre launcelot / for with fals-
 hede ye wold haue had slayne me with treson / and now it is
 fallen on you bothe / And thenne she souned as though she 30
 wold dye / And ther with al fyre launcelot gate al his armo-
 ur as wel as he myght / and put hit vpon hym for drede of
 more resorte / for he dredde that the knyghtes castel was soo nygh
 And soo as foone as he myght he took his hors and departed
 and thanked god that he had escaped that aduenture 35

¶ Capitulum xvij

SOo fyre launcelot rode many wylde wayes thorou out
 mareys and many wylde wayes / And as he rode in
 a valey he fawe a knyght chacynge a lady with a naked
 fwerd to haue slayn her / And by fortune as this knyghte
 5 shold haue slayne thys lady she cryed on fyr Launcelot and
 prayd hym to rescowe her / Whan fyre launcelot fawe that me-
 fchyef / he took his hors and rode bytwene them / fayeng knyghte
 fy for shame / why wolt thou flee this lady / thou dost shame vn-
 to the and alle knyghtes / what haste thou to doo betwyx me &
 10 my wyf / fayd the knyght / I wylle flee her maugre thy hede /
 that shalle ye not sayd fyr launcelot / for rather we two wylle
 haue adoo to gyders / Syre Launcelot fayd the knyght thow
 doest not thy part / for this lady hath bytrayed me / hit is not
 so sayd the lady / truly he sayth wronge on me / And for by ca-
 15 use I loue and cheryfthe my cofyn germayne / he is Ialous
 betwixe hym and me / And as I shalle anfuere to god three
 was neuer synne betwyxe vs / But fir fayd the lady as thou
 arte called the worshipfullest knyghte of the world I requyre
 the of true knyghtode kepe me and faue me / For what fom-
 20 euer ye faye he wyl flee me / for he is withoute mercy / haue ye
 no doubte sayd launcelot it shal not lye in his power / Syr fayd
 the knyghte in your fyghte I wyl be ruled as ye wylle
 haue me / And soo fir launcelot rode on the one fyde and she on
 the other / he had not ryden but a whyle / but the knyghte badde
 25 fir Launcelot torne hym and loke behynde hym / and fayde fyre
 yonder come men of armes after vs rydyng / And soo fir la-
 uncelot torned hym and thoughte no trefon / and there wyth
 was the knyghte and the lady on one fyde / & sodenly he swap-
 ped of his ladyes hede / And whan fyr Launcelot hadde aspy-
 30 ed hym what he had done / he fayd and called hym traytour
 thou hast shamed me for euer / and sodenly fir launcelot alyzte
 of his hors and pulled oute hrs fwerd to flee hym / and there
 with al he felle flat to the erthe / and grypped fir launcelot by
 the thyes and cryed mercy / Fy on the fayd fir launcelot thow
 35 shameful knyght thou mayst haue no mercy / and therfor ary-
 fe and fyghte with me / nay fayde the knyghte I wyl neuer
 aryfe tyl ye graunte me mercy / Now wyl I profer the fayr fa-
 id launcelot I wyl vnarme me vnto my sherte / and I wylle

haue nothyng vpon me / but my fherte and my fwerd and my
 hand / And yf thou canst flee me / quyte be thou for euer / nay
 fir faid Pedyuere that wille I neuer / wel faid fir Launcelott
 take this lady and the hede / and bere it vpon the / and here fhalt
 thou fwere vpon my fwerd to bere it alweyes vpon thy back 5
 and neuer to reſte tyl thou come to quene Gueneuer / Syre fa-
 yd he that wylle I doo by the feithe of my body / Now faid la-
 uncelot telle me what is your name / fir my name is Pedyue-
 re / In a ſhameful houre were thou borne faid launcelot / Soo
 Pedyuere departed with the dede lady and the hede / and fond 10
 the quene with kynge Arthur at wynchefſtre / and there he told
 alle the trouthe / Syre knyzt faid the quene this is an horryble
 dede and a ſhameful / and a grete rebuke vnto fire launcelott
 But not withſtondyng his worſhip is not knowen in many
 dyuerſe countreyes / but this ſhalle I gyue you in penaunce 15
 make ye as good ſkyfte as ye can ye ſhal bere this lady with
 you on horſbak vnto the pope of Rome / and of hym receyue
 your penaunce for your foule dedes / and ye ſhalle neuer reſte
 one nyghte there as ye doo another / and ye goo to ony bedde the
 dede body ſhal lye with you / this othe there he made and foo de- 20
 parted / And as it telleth in the frenſſhe book / whan he cam to
 Rome / the pope badde hym goo ageyne vnto quene Gueneuer
 and in Rome was his lady beryed by the popes commaunde-
 ment / And after this fir Pedyuere felle to grete goodneſſe / &
 was an holy man and an heremyte 25

¶ Capitulum xviii

Now torne we vnto fir launcelot du lake that came ho-
 me two dayes afore the feeft of Pentecoſt / and the ky-
 ng and alle the courte were paſſyng fayne of his comyng /
 And whanne fire Gawayne / fir Vwayne / fire Sagramore / fir
 Ector de marys ſawe fire Launcelot in Kayes armour / thenne 30
 they wiſt wel it was he that ſmote hem doune al with one ſpe-
 re / Thenne there was laughyng and ſmylyng amonge them /
 and euer now and now came alle the Knyghtes home that fir
 Turquyn hadde pryſoners and they alle honoured and wor-
 ſhipped fyre launcelot / ¶ Whanne fire Gaheryes herd them 35

speke / he said / I sawe alle the bataille from the begynnyng to
 the endynge / and there he told kyng Arthur alle how it was
 and how fyre Turquyn was the strongest knyghte that euer
 he sawe excepte fyre launcelot / there were many knyghtes bare
 5 hym record nyghe thre score / Thenne fyre kay told the kyng /
 how fyr launcelot had rescowed hym whan he shold haue ben
 slayne / and how he made the knyghtes yelde hem to me / and
 not to hym / And there they were al thre / and bare record / and
 by Ihesu said fyr kay by cause fyr launcelot took my harneis
 10 and leste me his / I rode in good pees / and no man wold ha-
 ue adoo with me / ¶ Anone there with alle ther came the thre
 knyghtes that fought with fyre launcelot at the longe brydge
 And there they yelded hem vnto fyr kay / and fyr kay forfoke
 hem and said he foughte neuer with hem / but I shall ease yo-
 15 ur herte said fyr kay / yonder is fyr launcelot that ouercam you
 whan they wyft that / they were glad / And thenne fyr Mely-
 ot de logrys came home / and told the kyng how fyr launcelot
 had faued hym fro the dethe / and all his dedes were knowen
 how foure quenes forcereffes had hym in pryson / and how he
 20 was delyuerd by kyng Bagdemagus daughter / Also there
 were told alle grete dedes of armes that fyr launcelot dyd
 betwixe the two kynges / that is for to saye the kyng of north-
 galys and kyng Bagdemagus Alle the trouthe fyr Gaha-
 lantyne dyd telle / and fyre Mador de la porte and fyre Mor-
 25 dred / for they were at that fame turnement / ¶ Thenne cam in
 the lady that knewe fyr launcelot whan that he wounded fyr
 Bellyus at the paelione / And there atte request of fyr laū-
 celot fyr Bellyus was made knyghte of the round table /
 And soo at that tyme fyr launcelot had the gretteft name of
 30 ony knyghte of the world / and most he was honoured of hye
 and lowe

¶ **Explicit the noble tale of fyr Launcelot du lake whiche is the vj book**

¶ **Here foloweth the tale of fyr Gareth of Orkeney that was called Beaumayns by fyr kay and is the seuenth book**

¶ Capitulum primum



Han Arthur held his round table moost ple-
 nour / it fortunèd that he commaunded that the
 hyhe feest of Pentecost shold be holden at a cy-
 te and a Castel the whiche in tho dayes was
 called kynke kenadonne vpon the fondes that 5
 marched nyghe walys / ¶ Soo euer the kyng hadde a custome
 that at the feest of Pentecost in especyal afore other feestes in
 the yere he wold not goo that daye to mete vntyl he had herd
 or sene of a grete merueyille / And for that custome alle man-
 ner of straunge aduentures came before Arthur as at that fe- 10
 est before alle other feestes / And soo sire Gawayne a lytyl to
 fore none of the daye of Pentecost aspyed att a wyndowe thre
 men vpon horsbak and a dwarf on foote / and soo the thre men
 alighte and the dwarf kepte their horses / and one of the thre
 men was hyher than the other tweyne by a foote and a half 15
 Thenne sir Gawayne wente vnto the kyng and sayd / sire go
 to your mete / for here at the hande comen straunge aduentures
 So Arthur wente vnto his mete with many other kynges /
 And there were all the knyghtes of the round table only tho
 that were prysoners or slayn at a recountre / thenne at the hy- 20
 he feest euermore they shold be fulfilled the hole nombre of an
 C and fyfty / for thenne was the round table fully compliffhed
 Ryght soo cam in to the halle two men wel bifene and ryche-
 ly / and vpon their sholders there lened the goodlyest yong man
 & the fairest that euer they al sawe / & he was large and long 25
 and brode in the sholders & wel vyfaged / and the fayrest and
 the largeft handed that euer man sawe / but he ferd as though
 he myght not goo nor bere hym self / but yf he lened vpon their
 sholders / Anon as Arthur sawe hym there was made pees &
 rome / & ryght so they yede with hym vnto the hyghe deyse with- 30
 out sayeng of ony wordes / thenne this moche yong man pul-
 led hym a bak and easly stretched vp streyghte / sayeng kyng
 Arthur god you blisse and al your fair felaufhip / and in espe-
 cial the felaufhip of the table rounde / And for thys cause I
 am come hyder to praye you and requyre you to gyue me thre 35
 yestes / and they shalle not be vnresonably asked / but that ye
 may worshipfully and honorably graunte hem me / and to you

no grete hurte nor losse / And the fyrst done and gyfte I wil
 aske now / and the other two yestes I wylle aske this daye
 twelue moneth / where someuer ye hold your hyghe feest / Now
 aske sayd Arthur / and ye shalle haue your askyng

5 ¶ Now fyre this is my petycyon for thys feest / that ye wylle
 gyue me mete and drynke suffycyauntly for this twelue mo-
 neth / and at that day I wylle aske myn other two yestes

¶ My fayr fone sayd Arthur aske better I counceille the for
 this is but a fymple askynge / for my herte geueth me to the
 10 gretely that thou arte come of men of worshyp / and gretely
 my confayte fayleth me / but thou shalt preue a man of ryghte
 grete worship / Syre he sayd / ther of be as it be may I haue af-
 ked that I wylle aske / wel sayd the kynge ye shal haue me-
 te & drynke ynou3 / I neuer deffended þ^t none / nother my fren-
 15 de ne my foo / But what is thy name I wold wete / I can
 not telle you sayd he / that is merueylle sayd the kynge / that
 thou knowest not thy name / and thou arte the goodlyest yong
 man one that euer I fawe / Thenne the kyng betook hym to fir
 kay the steward / and charged hym that he shold gyue hym
 20 of al maner of metes and drynkes of the best / and also that
 he hadde al maner of fyndynge as though he were a lordes fo-
 ne / that shal lytel nede sayd fyr kay to doo fuche cost vpon hym
 For I dare undertake he is a vylayne borne / and neuer will
 make man / for and he had come of gentylnen he wold haue
 25 axed of you hors and armour / but fuche as he is so he asketh
 And fythen he hath no name / I shall yeue hym a name that
 shal be Beaumayns that is fayre handes / and in to the kechen
 I shalle brynge hym / and there he shal haue fatte broweys
 euery day þ^t he shall be as fatte by the twelue monethes ende
 30 as a porke hog / ryght soo the two men departed and belefte
 hym to fyr kay / that scorned hym and mocked hym ¶ **Ca ij**

T Here at was fir Gawayn wroth / & in especial fir la-
 uncelot bad fir kay leue his mockyng / for I dare laye
 my hede he shall preue a man of grete worship / lete be /
 35 said fir kay / it may not be by no reafon / for as he is / so he hath
 asked / Beware said fyre Launcelot / so ye gafe the good knyzt
 Brewnor fyre Dynadamys broder a name / and ye called
 hym la cote male tayle / and that tourned you to anger after-

ward / As for that sayd fyr kay this fhall neuer preue none
 fuche / For fyr Brewnor defyred euer worship and thys defy-
 reth breed & drynke / & brothe vpon payne of my lyf he was
 fostred vp in some abbay / and how someuer it was they fay-
 led mete and drynke / and foo hyther he is come for his suf- 5
 tenaunce

¶ And foo fyre kay badde gete hym a
 place and fytte doune to mete / foo Beaumayns wente to the
 halle dore / and fette hym doune amonge boyes and laddys / &
 there he ete fadly / And thenne fyre launcelot after mete badde
 hym come to his chamber / And there he shold haue mete and 10
 drynke ynough / And foo dyd fyre Gawayne / but he reffused
 hem al / he wold doo none other / but as fyr kay commaunded
 hym for no profer / But as touchynge fyre Gawayn he hadde
 refon to profer hym lodgyng mete and drynke / for that profer
 came of his blood / for he was nere kynne to hym than he wyft 15
 But that as fyre launcelot dyd was of his grete gentylnes
 and curtosye

¶ Soo thus he was putte in to the
 kechyn and laye nyghtly as the boyes of the kechen dyd /
 And foo he endured alle that twelue moneth / and neuer dif-
 pleafyd man nor chylde / but alweyes he was meke & mylde / 20
 But euer whanne that he sawe ony Iustyng of knyghtes /
 that wold he see and he myght / And euer fyre launcelot wold
 gyue hym gold to spende and clothes / and foo dyd fyre Ga-
 wayne / and where there were ony maystryes done / there atte
 wold he be / and there myghte none cast barre nor ston to hym 25
 by two yerdys / Thenne wold fyre kay faye how lyketh yow
 my boye of the kechyn / foo it past on tyl the feest of Whytson-
 tyde / And at that tyme the kynge helde hit att Carlyon in the
 moost royallest wyse that myghte be / lyke as he dyd yerly /

But the Kynge wold no mete ete vpon the whyyfonday vn- 30
 tyl he herd some aduentures / Thenne cam ther a squyer to the
 Kyng / and faid / fyre ye maye goo to your mete / for here cometh
 a damoyfel with somme straunge aduentures / thenne was the
 Kynge gladde and fette hym doune / ¶ Ryghte foo ther came
 a damoyfel in to the halle and falewed the Kynge and prayd 35
 hym of focour / for whome sayd the Kynge what is the aduen-
 ture / ¶ Syre she sayd I haue a lady of grete worship and
 renomme / and she is byseged with a tyraunte so that she may

not oute of her castel / And by cause here are callyd the noblest knyghtes of the world / I come to you to praye you of focour / What heteth your lady and where dwelleth she / & who is he / & what is his name that hath byfeged her / fyre kyng she
 5 faide / as for my ladyes name that shall not ye knowe for me as at this tyme / but I lete you wete she is a lady of grete worship and of grete landes / And as for the tyraunt that byfyegeth her and destroyeth her landes he is called the rede knyght of the reed laundes / I knowe hym not sayd the kyng / Syre
 10 said fyre Gawayne / I knowe hym wel for he is one of the perillouft knyghtes of the world / men faye that he hath feuen mennys strengthe / and from hym I escaped ones ful hard / with my lyf / Fayre damoyfel sayd the kyng there ben knyghtes here wolde doo her power for to rescowe your lady / but by
 15 cause ye wylle not telle her name nor where she dwelleth / therfor none of my knyghtes that here be now shal goo with yow by my wylle / thenne must I speke further sayd the damoyfel

¶ Capitulum iij

Wyth these wordes came before the kyng Beaumayns whyle the damoyfel was ther / & thus he said fyr Kyng
 20 god thanke you I haue ben this xij monethe in your kechyn and haue hadde my ful sustenaūce and now I will aske my two yestes that ben behynde / Aske vpon my peryl said the kyng / Syre this shal be my two gyftes / fyrst that ye wil graunte me to haue this aduenture of the damoyfel / for hit belon-
 25 geth vnto me / thou shalt haue hit sayd the kyng I graunte it the / thenne fyr this is the other yest / that ye shal bydde Launcelot du lake to make me knyzt for of hym I wil be made knyght and els of none / And whanne I am paste I praye yow lete hym ryde after me and make me Knyght / whan I requyre hym / Al this shal be done sayd the Kyng / Fy on the sayde
 30 the damoyfel / shalle I haue none but one that is your kechyn page / thenne was she wrothe and toke her hors and departed / And with that there cam one to Beaumayns and told hym his hors and armour was come for hym / and there was the
 35 dwarf come with all thyng that hym neded in the rycheft manner / ther at al the court had moche merueill from whens cam al þ^t

MISSING PAGE

MISSING PAGE

the greece and talowe that thou gaynt in kyng Arthurs ke-
 chyn / weneft thou fayd she that I allowe the for yonder knyzt
 that thou kyllest / Nay truly / for thou flewest hym vnhappely
 and cowardly / therfor torne ageyn bawdy kechyn page / I kno-
 we the wel / for fyre kay named the Beaumayns / what arte 5
 thou but a lufke and a torner of broches and a ladyl weffher
 Damoyfel fayd Beaumayns faye to me what ye wylle / I
 wylle not goo from you what someuer ye fay / for I haue vn-
 tertake to kyng Arthur for to acheue your aduenture / and fo
 fhall I fynyffe it to the ende / eyther I fhall dye therefore / Fy 10
 on the kechyn knaue wolt thou fynyffe myn aduenture / thou
 fhalt anone be met with al / that thou woldest not for alle the
 brothe that euer thou foupeft ones loke hym in the face / I fhall
 affaye fayd Beaumayns / Soo thus as they rode in the wo-
 ode / ther came a man fleynge al that euer he myghte / whether 15
 wolt thou fayd Beaumayns / O lord he faid / helpe me / for he-
 re by in a flade are fyxe theues that haue taken my lord and
 bounde hym / foo I am aferd lest they wyl flee hym / Brynge
 me thyder faid Beaumayns / and foo they rode to gyders vn-
 tyl they came there as was the knyghte bounden / and thenne 20
 he rode vnto hem / and strake one vnto the dethe / and thenne an
 other / and at the thyrd stroke he flewe the thyrdde theef / and
 thenne the other thre fledde / And he rode after hem / and he o-
 uertook hem / and thenne tho thre theues tourned ageyne and
 affayled Beaumayns hard / but at the laft he flewe them / & re- 25
 torned and vnbounde the knyghte / And the knyght thanked
 hym / and prayd hym to ryde with hym to his castel there a ly-
 tel beyde / and he shold worshopfully rewarde hym for his go-
 od dedes / Syr fayd Beaumayns I wille no reward haue /
 I was this day made knyghte of noble fyr launcelot / & ther- 30
 for I wille no reward haue / but god rewarde me / And also
 I muft folowe this damoyfel / And whan he came nyghe her
 she bad hym ryde fro her / for thou smellyft al of the kechyn /
 Weneft thou that I haue Ioye of the / for al this dede that thou
 haft done nys but myfhappen the / But thou fhalt see a fyghte 35
 fhall make the torne ageyne and that lyghtly / Thenne the fa-
 me knyght whiche was rescowed of the theues rode after that
 damoyfel and prayed her to lodge with hym alle that nyghte
 And by caufe it was nere nyght / the damoyfel rode with hym

to his castel / and there they had grete chere / and at foupper the
 knyght sat fyr Beaumayns afore the damoifel / Fy fy said she
 fyr knyghte ye are vncurtoys to sette a kechyn page afore me
 hym byfemeth better to stycke a fwyne than to fyttre afore a da-
 5 moyfel of hyhe parage / thenne the knyght was ashamed atte
 her wordes / and took hym vp / and sette hym at asyde bord /
 and sette hym self afore hym / and soo al that nyght they had
 good chere and mery reste /

¶ Capitulum sextum

ANd on the morn the damoifel & he took their leue & than-
 10 ked the knyght / and soo departed / and rode on her
 way / vntyl they came to a grete forest / And there was a grete
 ryuer and but one passage / and ther were redy two knyghtes
 on the ferther syde to lette them the passage / what saist thou sa-
 yd the damoyfel / wylt thou matche yonder knyghtes or torne
 15 ageyne / Nay sayd fyr Beaumayns I wyl not torne ageyn
 and they were fyxe mo / And ther with al he rasshyd in to the
 water / and in myddes of the water eyther brake their speres
 vpon other to their handes / and thenne they drewe their swer-
 des / and smote egerly at other / And at the last fyr Beauma-
 20 yns smote the other vpon the helme that his hede stonyed / and
 there with alle he felle doune in the water / and there was he
 drowned / And thēne he sporyd his hors vpon the londe / whe-
 re the other knyghte felle vpon hym / and brake his spere / and
 soo they drewe theyr swerdes / and foughte longe to gyders
 25 At the laste fyre Beaumayns clafe his helme and his heede
 doune to the sholders / and soo he rode vnto the damoyfel & bad
 her ryde forth on her way / Allas she sayd that euer a kechen
 page shold haue that fortune to destroye suche two douzty kn-
 yghtes / thou weneft thou hast done doughtely that is not soo /
 30 For the fyrste knyghte his hors stumbled / and there he was
 drowned in the water / and neuer it was by thy force / nor by
 thy myght / And the last knyghte by myshap thou camyft be-
 hynde hym and myshappely thou slewe hym / Damoyfel sayd
 Beaumayns ye maye faye what ye wyl / but with whom som-
 35 euer I haue a doo with al I truste to god to serue hym or he

departe / And therfor I recke not what ye say foo that I may
 wyne youre lady / Fy fy foule kechen knaue thou shalt see
 knyghtes that shal abate thy boost / Fayre damoyfel gyue me
 goodly langage / and thenne my care is past / for what knygh-
 tes someuer they be / I care not ne I doubte hem not / Also fayd 5
 yd she I fayd it for thyne auayle / yet mayst thou torne ageyne
 with thy worship / for and thou folowe me / thou arte but fla-
 yne / for I see alle that euer thou doft is but by myfauenture /
 and not by prowesse of thy handes / wel damoyfel ye may say
 what ye wylle / but where someuer ye goo I wylle folowe you 10
 Soo this Beaumayns rode with that lady tyl euenfong tyme
 and euer she chyde hym and wold not reste / And they cam
 to a black launde / and there was a black hauthorne / & theron
 henge a blak baner / and on the other syde there henge a black
 shelde / and by hit stode a black spere grete and longe / and a 15
 grete black hors couerd with fylke / and a black stone fast by

¶ Capitulum septimum

T Her sat a knyghte al armed in black harneis / and
 his name was þ^e knyzt of the blak laūde / thēne þ^e da-
 moyfel whanne she sawe that knyghte she badde hym flee doun
 that valey for his hors was not fadeled / Gramercy sayd Be- 20
 aumayns / for alweyes ye wold haue me a coward / with that
 the black knyghte / whanne she came nyghe hym spak / & sayd
 damoyfel haue ye broughte this knyghte of kynge Arthur to
 be your champyon / Nay fayr knyghte sayd she / this is but a
 kechyn knaue that was fedde in kynge Arthurs kechyn for 25
 almesse / Why cometh he sayd the knyghte in suche aray / hit is
 shame that he bereth you company / fyr I can not be delyuerd
 of hym sayd she / for with me he rydeth maugre myn hede / god
 wold that ye shold put hym from me / outhur to flee hym and
 ye may / for he is an vnhappy knaue / and vnappely he hath do- 30
 ne this day / thorou myfhappe I sawe hym flee two knyghtes
 at the passage of the water / and other dedes he dyde beforne ry-
 ght merueyllous and thorou vnhappynges / that merueyllled
 me sayd the black knyghte that ony man that is of worshyp
 wylle haue adoo with hym / they knowe hym not sayd the da- 35
 moyfel / And for by cause he rydeth with me / they wene that he

be some man of worship borne / that may be / fayd the blak knyghte / how be it as ye fay that he be no man of worshyp he is a ful lykely perfone / and ful lyke to be a stronge man / but thus moche shal I graunte you fayd the black knyghte / I
 5 shal putte hym doune vpon one foote / and his hors and hys harneys he shal leue with me / for it were shame to me to doo hym ony more harme / Whanne fyre Beaumayns herd hym fayre thus / he fayd fyre knyghte thou art ful large of my hors and my harneys / I lete the wete it coste the noughte / & whether hit lyketh the or not this launde wyll I passe maulgre
 10 thyn hede / And hors ne harneys getest thou none of my / but yf thou wynne hem with thy handes / and therfor lete see what thou canst doo / Sayst thou that fayd the black knyghte / now yelde thy lady fro the / for it befemeth neuer a kechyn page to
 15 ryde with suche a lady / Thou lyeft fayd Beaumayns I am a gentyl man borne and of more hyghe lygnage than thou / & that wyl I preue on thy body / Thenne in grete wrathe they departed with theyr horses / and came to gyders as hit had ben the thonder / and the black knyghtes spere brake / and Beaumayns threste hym thorou bothe his sydes / and there with his
 20 spere brak / and the truncheon lefte styll in his syde / But neuertheles the black knyght drewe his fuerd / and smote many eger strokes and of grete myghte / and hurte Beaumayns ful fore / But at the laste the black knyghte within an houre
 25 and an half he felle doune of his hors in swoune / and there he dyed / And thenne Beaumayns sawe hym soo wel horsed and armed / thenne he alyghte doune and armed hym in his armour / and soo took his hors and rode after the damoyfel /
 Whanne she sawe hym come nyghe / she fayd away kechyn knaue
 30 ue oute of the wynde / for the smelle of thy baudy clothes greueth me / Allas she fayd that euer suche a knaue shold by myshap flee soo good a knyghte as thou hast done / but alle thys is thyn vnhappynes / But here by is one shal paye the alle thy payement / and therefore yet I counceylle the / flee / it may hap-
 35 pen me fayd Beaumayns to be beten or slayne / but I warne you fayre damoyfel I wyll not flee away / nor leue your company for al that ye can fay / for euer ye fay that they wil kylle me or bete me / but how someuer hit happeneth I escape / and

they lye on the groūd / And therefore it were as good for you
to hold you styll thus al day rebukyng me / for aweye wille I
not tyl I see the vttermest of this Iourneye / or els I wylle
be slayne / outhr truly beten / therfore ryde on your waye / For
folowe you I wille what someuer happen

5

¶ Capitulum octauum

THus as they rode to gyders they sawe a knyght come
dryuend by them al in grene bothe his hors & his har-
neis / And whanne he came nyghe the damoyfel he af-
ked her / is that my broder the black Knyzte that ye haue bro-
ught with yow / Nay nay she sayd this vnhappy kechen knaue 10
hath slayne your broder thorou unhappynesse / Allas sayd the
grene knyghte that is grete pyte that soo noble a knyghte as
he was shold soo unhappely be slayne / and namely of a knaue
hand as ye say that he is / a traytour sayd the grene kny-
ghte thou shalt dye for sleynge of my broder / he was a ful no- 15
ble knyghte and his name was fyr Pereard / I defye the fa-
id Beaumayns / for I lete the wete I slewe hym knyghtely
and not shamefully / There with al the grene knyghte rode vn-
to an horne that was grene / and hit henge vpon a thorne / and
there he blewe thre dedely motys / and there came two damoyfels 20
and armed hym lyghtely / And thenne he took a grete hors /
and a grene shelde and a grene spere / And thenne they ranne
to gyders with al their myghtes and brake their speres vnto
their handes / And thenne they drewe their swardes / and gaf
many fadde strokes / and either of them wounded other ful yll 25
And at the last at an ouerthwart Beaumayns with his hor-
rs strake the grene knyghtes hors vpon the fyde that he felle to
the erthe / And thenne the grene knyghte auoyded his hors
lightly / and drestid hym vpon foote / That sawe Beaumayns
And there with al he alighte and they rasshed to gyders ly- 30
ke two myghty kempys a longe whyle / and fore they bledde
bothe / with that cam the damoyfel / and said my lord the gre-
ne knyghte / why for shame stande ye soo longe fyghtyng with
the kechyn knaue / Allas it is shame that euer ye were made
knyghte to see fuche a ladde to matche fuche a knyghte / as the 35

wede ouer grewe the corne / There with the grene knyght was
 ashamed / and there with al he gaf a grete stroke of myghte &
 clafe his shelde thorou / Whan Beaumayns sawe his shelde clo-
 uen a fonder / he was a lytel ashamed of that stroke and of her
 5 langage / And thenne he gaf hym fuche a buffet vpon the hel-
 me that he felle on his knees / And soo fodenly Beaumayns
 pulled hym vpon the ground grouelynge / And thenne the
 grene knyghte cryed hym mercy / and yelded hym vnto fyre
 Beaumayns / and prayd hym to flee hym not / Al is in vayn
 10 said Beaumayns for thou shalt dye but yf this damoyfel that
 came with me praye me to saue thy lyf / and ther with al he vn-
 laced his helme lyke as he wold flee hym / Fy vpon the falsse
 kechen page / I wyll neuer pray the to saue his lyf / for I will
 neuer be soo moche in thy daunger / Thenne shalle he deye sayde
 15 Beaumayns / Not soo hardy thou bawdy knaue sayd the da-
 moyfel / that thou flee hym / Allas sayd the grene knyghte suf-
 fre me not to dye for a fayre word may saue me / Fayr knyzt
 said the grene knyghte saue my lyf / & I wyl foryeue the / the
 dethe of my broder / and for euer to become thy man / and xxx
 20 knyghtes that hold of me for euer shal doo you feruyse / In
 the deuyls name sayd the damoyfel that fuche a bawdy kechen
 knaue shold haue the and thyrty knyghtes feruyse / Syr kn-
 yght said Beaumayns alle this auaylleth the not / but yf my
 damoyfel speke with me for thy lyf / And therwith al he ma-
 25 de a semblaunt to flee hym / lete be sayd the damoyfel thou bau-
 dy knaue / flee hym not / for and thou do / thou shalt repente it
 Damoyfel said Beaumayns your charge is to me a pleasyr
 and at your commaundement his lyf shal be saued / & els not
 Thenne he said sir Knyghte with the grene armes I releace the
 30 quyte at this damoyfels request / for I wylle not make her
 wrothe / I wille fulfyll al that she chargeth me / And thenne
 the grene knyghte kneled doune / and dyd hym homage with
 his swerd / thenne said the damoyfel me repenteth grene kny-
 ghte of your dommage / and of youre broders dethe the black
 35 knyghte / for of your helpe I had grete myster / For I drede
 me fore to passe this forest / Nay drede you not sayd the grene
 knyghte / for ye shal lodge with me this nyghte / and to morne
 I shalle helpe you thorou this forest / Soo they tooke theyre

horfes and rode to his manoyr whiche was fast there befyde

¶ Capitulum ix

ANd euer she rebuked Beaumayns and wold not suf-
 fre hym to fyttre at her table / but as the grene knyghte
 took hym and fat hym at a fyde table / Merueylle me thynketh
 faid the grene knyght to the damoyfel why ye rebuke this noble
 knyghte as ye doo / for I warne you damoyfel he is a full
 noble knyght / and I knowe no knyght is abel to matche hym
 therfor ye doo grete wrong to rebuke hym / for he shall do yow
 ryght good feruyse / for what someuer he maketh hym felf / ye
 shalle preue at the ende that he is come of a noble blood and
 of kynges lygnage / Fy fy faid the damoifel it is shame for
 you to saye of hym fuche worship / Truly faid the grene knyzt
 it were shame for me to sey of hym ony disworship / for he hath
 preued hym felf a better knyght than I am / yet haue I mett
 with many knyghtes in my dayes / and neuer or this tyme ha-
 ue I fond no knyght his matche / and so that nyghte they ye-
 de vnto rest / and al that nyght the grene knyght commaunded
 thyrtty knyghtes pryuely to watche Beaumayns for to kepe
 hym from al treason / And soo on the morne they al arose and
 herd their masse and brake theyr fast / and thenne they tooke
 their horfes / and rode on their waye / and the grene knyghte
 conueyed hem thorou the forest / and there the grene Knyghte
 faid my lord Beaumayns I & these thyrtty knyghtes shall
 be alweye at your somons both erly and late at your callyng
 and whether that euer ye wille fende vs / it is wel faid / fayd
 Beaumayns / whanne that I calle vpon you / ye must yelde
 you vnto kynge Arthur and all your knyghtes / yf that ye so
 commaunde vs / We shal ben redy at all tymes faid the grene
 knyght / Fy fy vpon the in the deuyls name faide the damoyfel
 that ony good knyghtes shold be obedyent vnto a kechyn kna-
 ue / Soo thenne departed the grene Knyghte and the damoy-
 fel / And thenne she faid vnto Beaumayns why folowest thou
 me thou kechyn boye / caste away thy shelde and thy spere / and
 flee awaye / yet I counceille the by tymes or thou shalt fay ry-
 ght soone Allas for were thou as wyzte as euer was wade

or Laücelot / Tryfram / or the good knyghte fyr lamaryk thou
 shalt not passe a paas here that is called the paas perillous /
 Damoyfel said Beaumayns who is aferd lete hym flee / for
 it were shame to torne ageyne fythen I haue ryden foo longe
 5 with yow / wel said the damoyfel ye shal sone whether ye wyll
 or not

¶ Capitulum 1

Soo within a whyle they sawe a toure as whyte as o-
 ny snowe wel matchecold al aboute / and doubel dy-
 ked / And ouer the toure gate there henge a fyfty sheldes of
 10 dyuerse colours / and vnder that toure there was a fayr medow
 And therin were many knyghtes and squyers to behold scaf-
 foldes and paelions / for there vpon the morn shold be a gre-
 te turnement / and the lord of the toure was in his castel and
 loked out at a wyndowe / and sawe a damoyfel / a dwarf and
 15 a knyzt armed at al poyntes / So god me helpe said the lord
 with þ^t knyzt wyll I Iuste / for I see that he is a knizt arraüt &
 foo he armed hym and horfed hym hastely / And whanne he
 was on horsbak with his shelde and his spere / it was al re-
 de bothe his hors and his harneis / and alle that to hym lon-
 20 geth / And whanne that he came nyghe hym he wende it hadde
 ben his broder the black knyghte / And thenne he cryed a loude
 broder what doo ye in these marches / nay nay sayd the damoy-
 fel / it is not he / this is but a kechyn knaue that was brought
 vp for almesse in kyng Arthurs courte / Neuertheles sayd
 25 the reed knyghte I wylle speke with hym or he departe / A sa-
 yd the damoyfel this knaue hath kylled thy broder / and fyre
 kay named hym Beaumayns / and this hors and this har-
 neis was thy broders the black knyghte / Also I sawe thy bro-
 der the grene knyghte ouercome of his handes / Now maye ye
 30 be reuenged vpon hym / for I may neuer be quyte of hym

¶ With this eyther knyghtes departed in sondre / and they cam
 to gyder with alle their myght / and eyther of their horses fell
 to the erthe / and they auoyded their horses / and put their sheldes
 afore them and drewe their swerdes / and either gaf other
 35 sadde stokes / now here / now there / rasyng / tracyng / foynnyng
 and hurlyng lyke two bores the space of two houres / And
 thenne she cryed on hye to the rede knyghte / Allas thou noble

reed knyghte / thynke what worship hath folowed the / lete ne-
 uer a kechyn knaue endure the foo longe as he doth / Thenne
 the reed knyght waxed wrothe and doubled his strokes and
 hurte Beaumayns wonderly fore that the blood ranne doune
 to the ground that it was wonder to see that stronge bataille / 5
 Yet at the last fyre Beaumayns strake hym to the erthe / and
 as he wold haue flayne the reed knyghte he cryed mercy fa-
 yeng Noble knyghte flee me not / and I shall yelde me to the
 with fyfty knyghtes with me that be at my commaundement
 And I forgyue the al the despyte that thou hast done to me / 10
 and the dethe of my broder the black knyghte / All this auail-
 leth not said Beaumayns / but yf my damoyfel praye me to
 faue thy lyf / And therwith he maade semblaunt to stryke of
 his hede / Lete be thou Beaumayns flee hym not / for he is a no-
 ble knyghte / and not foo hardy vpon thyne hede but thou faue 15
 hym / Thenne Beaumayns badde the reed knyghte stand vp
 and thanke the damoyfel now of thy lyf / ¶ Thenne the reed
 knyght praid hym to see his castel / and to be there al nyghte
 Soo the damoyfel thenne graunted hym / and there they had
 mery chere / But alweyes the damoyfel spak many foule wor- 20
 des vnto Beaumayns wherof the reed knyght had grete mer-
 ueylle / and alle that nyghte the reed knyghte maade thre
 score knyghtes to watche Beaumayns that he shold haue no
 shame nor vylony / And vpon the morne they herd masse and
 dyned / and the reed knyghte came before Beaumayns with 25
 his thre score knyghtes / and there he profered hym his homa-
 ge and feaute at al tymes he and his knyghtes to doo hym
 feruyse / I thanke you said Beaumayns / but this ye shalle
 graunte me / whanne I calle vpon you to come afore my lord
 kynge Arthur and yelde you vnto hym to be his knyghtes / 30
 Syr said the reed knyghte I wille be redy and my felauship
 at your fomons / So fyr Beaumayns departed and the damoy-
 fel and euer she rode chydyng hym in the fowlest manere /

¶ Capítulum xi

DAmoyfel said Beaumayns ye are vncurteis so to re-
 buke me / as ye doo / for me semeth I haue done you
 good feruyse / and euer ye threate me I shal be betyn
 with knyghtes that we mete / but euer for al your boost they
 5 lye in the duft or in the myre / and therfor I pray you rebuke
 me no more / And whan ye see me beten or yolden as recreaüt
 thenne may ye bydde me goo from you shamefully / but fyrste
 I lete you wete I wylle not departe from you / for I were
 werse than a foole and I wold departe from you all the why-
 10 le that I wynne worship / wel said she / ryght soone ther shall
 mete a knyght shal paye the alle thy wages / for he is the most
 man of worship of the world excepte kyng Arthur / I will
 wel said Beaumayns / the more he is of worship / the more
 shalle be my worship to haue adoo with hym / Thenne anone
 15 they were ware / where was afore them a Cyte ryche and fayre
 And betwixe them and the Cyte a myle and a half there
 was a fayre medowe that semed newe mowen / and therin we-
 re many paelions fayre to beholde / Lo said the damoyfel yon-
 der is a lord that oweth yonder cyte / and his custome is whan
 20 the weder is fayr to lye in this medowe to Iuste and torneye /
 And euer there ben aboute hym fyue honderd knyghtes & gen-
 tilmen of armes / and there ben alle maner of games that ony
 gentylman can deuysse / That goodly lord saide Beaumayns
 wold I fayne see / thou shalt see hym tyme ynough saide the
 25 damoyfel / and soo as she rode nere she aspyed the paelione /
 where he was / Loo sayd she seest thou yonder paelione that is
 al of the coloure of Inde and al maner of thyng that there
 is aboute men and wymmen / and horfes trapped / sheldes and
 speres were all of the colour of Inde and his name is sir per-
 30 fant of Inde the moost lordlyest knyghte that euer thou lokest
 on / Hit may wel be said Beaumayns / but be he neuer so sto-
 ute a knyghte in this felde / I shalle abyde tyl that I see hym
 vnder his shelde / A foole said she thou were better flee by ty-
 mes / why sayd Beaumayns and he be suche a knyghte as ye
 35 make hym he wylle not sette vpon me with alle his men / or
 with his / v / C knyghtes / For and ther come no more but one

at ones / I shall hym not fayle whylest my lyf lasteth / Fy fy
 said the damoyfel that euer fuche a stynkyng knaue shold
 blowe fuche a boost / Damoyfel he said ye ar to blame foo to re-
 buke me / For I had leuer do fyue batails / than so to be rebu-
 ked / lete hym come and thenne lete hym doo his werft / Syre 5
 she said I merueylle what thou arte and of what kyn thou
 arte come / boldly thou spekest / and boldly thou hast done / that
 haue I fene / therefore I praye the faue thy self and thou ma-
 yst / for thy hors and thou haue had grete traueylle / And I
 drede we dwelle ouer longe from the fege / For hit is but hens 10
 feuen myle / and alle perillous passages we ar past faue al on-
 ly this passage / and there I drede me fore lest ye shalle ketch
 some hurte / therefore I wold haue ye were hens that ye were not bry-
 sed nor hurte with this stronge knyghte / But I lete you we-
 te this fyr Perfant of ynde is no thyng of myzte nor strength 15
 vnto the knyghte that leid the syege aboute my lady / As for
 that said fyre Beaumayns be it as it be may / For fythen I
 am come foo nyghe this knyght I wille preue his myghte or
 I departe from hym / and els I shalle be shamed / and I now
 withdrawe me from hym / And therefore damoyfel haue ye 20
 no doubte by the grace of god I shall so dele with this kny-
 ghte that within two houres after none I shalle delyuer hym
 And thenne shal we come to the syege by day lyghte / O Ihe-
 su merueille haue I said the damoyfel what maner a man ye
 be / for hit may neuer ben otherwyse but that ye be comen of a 25
 noble blood / for soo foule ne shamefully dyd neuer woman
 rule a knyghte as I haue done you / and euer curtoisly ye ha-
 ue suffred me / and that cam neuer but of a gentyl blood /

¶ Damoyfel sayd Beaumayns a knyght may lytel do that
 may not suffre a damoifel / for what someuer ye said vnto me / 30
 I took none hede to your wordes / for the more ye sayd the mo-
 re ye angryd me / and my wrathe I wrekyd vpon them that
 I had adoo with al / And therfor alle the myffayenge that
 ye myffayed me / fordered me in my bataill & caused me to thyn-
 ke to shewe & preue my self at the ende what I was / for pera- 35
 ventur thouz I had mete in kyng Arthurs kechyn / yet I myzt
 haue had mete ynou3 in other places / but alle that I dyd it
 for to preue & affaye my frendes / and that shalle be knowen

another day / and whether that I be a gentylman borne or none / I lete you wete fayre damoyfel I haue done you gentilmans feruyfe / and parauentur better feruyfe yet wille I do or I departe from you / Allas she said fayre Beaumayns for-
 5 gyue me alle that I haue myffaid or done ageynst the / wyth alle my herte said he I forgyue it yow / for ye dyde no thyng but as ye shold doo / for al your euyl wordes pleasyd me / & damoyfel faide Beaumayns fyn hit lyketh you to faye thus fayre vnto me / wete ye wel it gladeth my herte gretely / and
 10 now me semeth ther is no knyght lyuyng but I am able ynough for hym

¶ Capítulum Duodecimum

Wyth this sir Perfant of ynde had aspyed them as they houed in the felde / and knyztly he sente to them whether he came in werre or in pees / say to thy lord said beauma-
 15 yns I take no force / but whether as hym lyst hym self / Soo the messager went ageyne vnto fyr Perfaunt / and told hym alle this anfuer / wel thenne will I haue adoo with hym to the vtterance / and soo he purueyed hym and rode ageynst hym / And Beaumayns fawe hym and made hym redy / & ther they
 20 mette with all that euer theyr horses myght renne / and brafte their speres eyther in thre pyeces / & their horses raffed so to gyders that bothe their horses felle dede to the erthe & lyztly they auoyded their horses / and put their sheldes afore them / & drewe their swerdes / and gaf many grete strokes that somtyme
 25 they hurtled to gyder that they felle grouelyng on the ground Thus they fought two houres and more that their sheldes & theyr hauberkes were al forhewen / & in many stedys they were wounded / So at the last fyr Beaumayns smote hym thorou the cost of the body / & thenne he retrayed hym here & there
 30 & knyghtly mayntened his batail long tyme / And at the last though hym lothe were Beaumayns smote sir Perfant aboue vpon the helme that he felle grouelyng to the erthe / & thenne he lepte vpon hym ouerthwart and vnlaced his helme to haue slayne hym / Thenne fyr Perfant yelded hym & asked hym
 35 mercy / with that cam þ^e damoysel & praid to faue his lyf / I wil wel / for it were pyte this noble knyzt shold dye / gramercy fayed Perfaunt gentyl knyzt & damoyfel / For certeynly now I

wote wel it was ye that flewe my broder the black knyghte /
 at the black thorne / he was a ful noble knyghte / his name was
 fyr Perard / Also I am sure that ye are he that wanne myn
 other brother the grene knyght / his name was fyre Pertolepe
 Also ye wanne my broder the reed knyght fyr Perrymones / 5
 And now fyn ye haue wonne these / this shal I do for to ple-
 ase you ye shal haue homage & feaute of me / & an C knyghtes
 to be alweyes at your commaundement to go & ryde where ye
 wil commaunde vs / & so they wente vnto fir Perfautes pael-
 ionie & dranke the wyne / & ete spyeces / & afterward fire Per- 10
 faunte made hym to reste vpon a bedde vntyl souper tyme / and
 after souper to bedde ageyne / whan Beaumayns was abedde
 fyr Perfaunt had a lady a faire douzter of xviiij yere of age
 and there he called her vnto hym / & charged her & commaunded
 her vpon his bleffynge to go vnto the knyghtes bedde / and lye 15
 down by his fyde / & make hym no straunge chere / but good che-
 re / and take hym in thyne armes & kyffe hym / & loke that this
 be done I charge you as ye wil haue my loue & my good wil
 So fyr Perfants doughter dyd as her fader bad her / and soo
 she wente vnto fyr Beaumayns bed / & pryuely she dispoyllled 20
 her / & leid her doune by hym / & thenne he awoke & fawe her &
 asked her what she was / fyre she said I am fir Perfants douz-
 ter that by the commaundement of my fader am come hyder /
 Be ye a mayde or a wyf said he / fir she said I am a clene mai-
 den / God defende sayd he that I shold defoyle you to doo fyre 25
 Perfaunt fuche a shame / therefore fayre damoyfel aryse oute of
 this bedde or els I wille / Syre she said I cam not to you by
 myn owne wille but as I was commaunded / Allas said fyr
 Beaumayns I were a shameful knyghte and I wolde do
 your fader ony disworship / and so he kyft her and soo she de- 30
 parted and came vnto fyr Perfant her fader / & told hym
 alle how she had spedde / Truly saide fyre Perfaunt what som-
 euer he be / he is comen of a noble blood / and soo we leue hem
 there tyl on the morne

¶ Capitulum xiiij

¶ Capitulum xiii

ANd foo on the morne the damoyfel & fir Beaumayns
 herd masse & brake their fast / and foo took their leue
 Fair damoyfel said Perfant whether ward ar ye way ledyng
 this knyghte / fyr she said this knyghte is goyng to the fege /
 5 that besyegeth my fyfter in the castel Dangerus / A a fayd per-
 faunt that is the knyghte of the reed launde / the whiche is the
 moost peryllous knyghte that I knowe now lyuyng / and a
 man that is withouten mercy / and men fayen that he hath feuen
 mens strength / god faue you said he to Beaumayns from þ^t
 10 knyghte / for he doth grete wrong to that lady / and that is gre-
 te pyte / for she is one of the fairest ladyes of the world / & me
 semeth that your damoyfel is her fuster / is not your name Lyn-
 net said he / ye fir said she / and my lady my fusters name is da-
 me Lyoneffe / Now shal I telle you said fyr Perfaunt / thys
 15 reed knyghte of the reed laund hath layne long at the syege
 wel nyghe this two yeres / and many tymes he myghte haue
 had her and he had wold / but he prolongeth the tyme to thys
 entent / for to haue fir laūcelot du lake to doo bataill with hym
 or fir Trystram or fyr Lamerak de galys / or fyre Gawayne / &
 20 this is his taryenge foo longe at the syege / Now my lord fyre
 Perfaunt of ynde faide the damoyfel Lynet I requyre you that
 ye wille make this gentilman knyghte or euer he fyghte with
 the reed knyghte / I will with all my herte said fyr Perfaunt
 and it please hym to take the ordre of knyghthode of so sym-
 25 ple a man as I am / Sire said Beaumayns I thanke you
 for your good wil / for I am better sped / for certainly the no-
 ble knyght fir Launcelot made me knyght / A said fir Perfant
 of a more renommed knyghte myghte ye not be made knyghte /
 For of alle knyghtes he maye be called chyef of knyghthode / &
 30 so all the world saith that betwixe thre knyghtes is departed
 clerly knyghthode / that is laūcelot du lake / fyr Trystram de ly-
 ones and fir Lamerak de galis / these bere now the renommee /
 there ben many other knyghtes as fir Palamydes the farafyn
 and fir Safere his broder / Also fir Bleoberys and sire Bla-
 35 more de ganys his broder / Also fyr Bors de Ganys & fyr Ec-
 tor de marys & fir Percyuale de galis / these & many mo ben no-
 ble kni3tes / but ther be none þ^t passe þ^e iij aboue said / therfor god

spede you wel said fyr Perfant / for and ye may matche the re-
 de knyghte ye shalle be called the fourth of the world / fir said
 Beaumayns I wold fayne be of good fame / and of knygh-
 thode / And I lete you wete I am of good men / for I dare
 fay my fader was a noble man / and soo that ye wil kepe hit 5
 in clofe / and this damoyfel / I wyl telle you of what kyn I am
 We wille not discouer you said they both tyl ye commaunde vs
 by the feythe we owe vnto god / ¶ Truly thenne faide he / my
 name is Gareth of Orkeney and kynge Lot was my fader / &
 my moder is kynge Arthurs fyfter / her name is Dame Mor- 10
 gawfe / and fir Gawayne is my broder / and fir Agrauayne &
 fir Gaheryes / and I am the yongest of hem alle / And yet wo-
 te not kyng Arthur nor fir Gawayn what I am

¶ Capitulum riiij

Soo the book faith / that the lady that was biseged had
 word of her systers comynge by the dwerf and a kn- 15
 yghte with her / and how he had passed al the perillous passa-
 ges / what manere a man is he said the lady / he is a noble kn-
 yght truly madame said the dwerf and but a yong man / but
 he is as lykely a man as euer ye sawe ony / what is he sayd
 the damoyfel / and of what kynne is he comen / and of whome 20
 was he made knyghte / Madame said the dwerf he is the kyn-
 ges sone of Orkeney / but his name I wille not telle you as
 at this tyme / but wete ye wel of fyre launcelot was he maade
 knyght / for of none other wolde he be maade knyghte / and fire
 kay named hym Beaumayns / how escaped he said the lady 25
 from the bretheren of Perfaunt / ¶ Madame he said as a noble
 knyghte shold / Fyrste he slewe two bretheren att a passage of
 a water / A faide she they were good knyghtes but they were
 murtherers / the one hyght Gherard de breuffe / & the other kn-
 yght hyght fir Arnolde le Brewfe / thenne madame he recoun- 30
 tred with the black knyght / and slewe hym in playne batail
 & so he toke his hors & his armour & fouzt with the grene kn-
 yght & wanne hym in playn bataill / & in lyke wyse he ferued
 the reed knyzt / and aftir in the same wyse he ferued the blewe
 knyzt & wan hym in playn batail / thēne said the lady he hath 35
 ouercome fir Perfaüt of Inde / one of the noblest knyzttes of the
 world / & þ^e dwerf said he hath wōne al the iiij bretherē & slayn



the blak knyght / and yet he dyd more tofore he ouerthrewe fir
 kay and lefte hym nyghe dede vpon the ground / Also he dyd
 a grete batayll with fyre launcelot / and there they departed on
 euen handes / And thenne fyre launcelot made hym knyghte /
 5 Dwerf fayd the lady I am gladde of these tydynges / therfor
 go thou in an hermytage of myn here by / and there shalt thou
 bere with the of my wyn in two flagans of filuer / they ar of
 two galons / and also two cast of brede with fatte venefon ba-
 ke and deynte foules / and a cop of gold here I delyuer the /
 10 that is ryche and precyous and bere all this to myn hermyta-
 ge / and put it in the hermytes handes / And fythen go thou
 vnto my fyfter and grete her wel / and commaūde me vnto that
 gentyl knyghte / and praye hym to ete and to drynke and ma-
 ke hym stronge / and say ye hym I thanke hym of his curto-
 15 fy and goodenes that he wold take vpon hym fuche labour
 for me that neuer dyd hym bounte nor curtosye / ¶ Also pray
 hym that he be of good herte & courage / for he shalle mete with
 a ful noble knyghte / but he is neyther of bounte / curtosye / nor
 gentylnes / for he attendyth vnto nothyng but to murther / &
 20 that is the cause I can not prayse hym nor loue hym / So this
 dwerf departed / and came to fyre Perfant where he fond the
 damoyfel lynet and fyr Beaumayns / and there he tolde hem
 alle as ye haue herd / and thenne they took theyr leue / but fyr
 Perfant took an ambelyng hacney and conueyed hem on the-
 25 yr wayes / And thenne belefte hem to god / and soo within a
 lytil whyle they came to that heremytage / and there they dra-
 nke the wyne / and ete the venefon and the foules baken /
 And so whan they had repasted hem wel / the dwerf returned
 ageyn with his vessel vn to the castel ageyne / and there mette
 30 with hym the reed knyght of the reed laundes / and asked
 hym from whens that he came / and where he had ben / Syr fa-
 yd the dwerf I haue ben with my ladyes fyfter of this castel
 and she hath ben at kynge Arthurs courte / and broughte a
 knyghte with her / thenne I accompte her trauaille but lofte /
 35 For though she had broughte with her fyre launcelot / fir Tryf-
 tram / fyr Lamerak or fyr gawayne / I wold thynke my selfe
 good ynough for them all / it may well be said the dwerf / but
 this knyghte hath passed alle the peryllous passages & slayn

[leaf 117 verso]

the black knyghte and other two mo / and wonne the grene
 knyght / the reed knyghte and the blewe knyghte / thenne is he
 one of these four that I haue afore reherced / He is none of the
 said the dwerf / but he is a kynges sone / what is his name fa-
 yd the reed knyght of the reed laund / that wille I not telle 5
 you seyde the dwerf / but sire kay upon scorne named hym Be-
 aumayns / I care not said the knyght what knyghte foo euer
 he be / for I shal soone delyuer hym / And yf I euer matche
 hym he shalle haue a shameful dethe as many other haue had
 that were pyte sayd the dwerf / And it is merueill that ye ma- 10
 ke suche shameful warre vpon noble knyghtes

¶ Capitulum xv

NO leue we the knyghte and the dwerf / and speke we
 of Beaumayns that al nyzt lay in the hermytage / &
 vpon the morne he and the damoyfel lynet herd their masse / &
 and brake their fast / And thenne they toke theyr horses / and 15
 rode thorou oute a fair forest / and thenne they came to a play-
 ne and sawe where were many paelions and tentys / and a
 fayr castel / and there was moche smoke and grete noyse / and
 whanne they came nere the sege / fyr Beaumayns aspyed vp-
 on grete trees as he rode / how there henge ful goodly armed 20
 knyghtes by the neck and their sheldes aboute their neckys
 with their swardes / and gylt spores vpon their heles / and soo
 there henge nyghe a fourty knyghtes shamefully with ful ry-
 che armes / Thenne sir Beaumayns abated his countenance &
 sayd what meneth this / Fayre fyre said the damoyfel abate not 25
 your chere for all this fyghte / for ye must courage your self or
 els ye ben al shente / for all these knyghtes came hyder to this
 sege to rescowe my syster Dame lyones / and whanne the reede
 knyghte of the reed laund hadde ouercome hem / he putte them
 to this shameful dethe withoute mercy and pyte / And in the 30
 same wyse he wyll ferue you / but yf ye quyte you the better
 Now Ihesu deffende me said Beaumayns from suche a vylay-
 nous dethe and shenship of armes / For rather than I sholde
 so be faren with all / I wolde rather be slayn manly in playn

bataille / Soo were ye better said the damoyfel / for trust not in
hym is no curtosye but alle goth to the deth or shameful mur-
ther / and that is pyte / for he is a ful lykely man / wel made
of body / and a ful noble knyghte of prowesse and a lorde
5 of grete laundes and possessions / Truly said Beaumayns /
he may wel be a good knyghte / but he vfeth shameful customs
and it is merueylle that he endureth so longe that none of the
noble knyghtes of my lord Arthurs haue not delt with hym
And thenne they rode to the dykes and sawe them double dy-
10 ked with ful warly wallis / and there were lodged many gre-
te lordes nyghe the wallys / and there was grete noyse of myn-
stralfy / and the see betyd vpon the one fyde of the walles whe-
re were many shippes and maryners noyse with hale & how
And also there was fast by a Sykamore tree / and ther henge
15 an horne the grettest that euer they sawe of an Olyfant's bo-
ne / and this knyght of the reed laund had hanged it vp ther
that yf ther came ony arraunt knyghte / he muste blowe that
horne / and thenne wylle he make hym redy & come to hym to
doo bataille / But fyr I pray you said the damoyfel Lynet blo-
20 we ye not the horne tyl it be hyghe none / for now it is aboute
pryme / & now encreaced his myghte / that as men say he hath
feuen mens strengthe / A fy for shame fair damoifel say ye ne-
uer soo more to me / For and he were as good a knyghte as
euer was I shalle neuer fayle hym in his moost myghte / for
25 outhur I wille wynne worship worshipfully or dye knyghte-
ly in the felde / and ther with he spored his hors streyghte to
the Sykamore tree / and blewe soo the horne egerly that alle
the sege and the castel range therof / And thenne there lepte
oute knyghtes oute of their tentys and paelions / and they
30 within the castel loked ouer the wallis and oute att wyndow-
wes / Thenne the reed knyghte of the reed laundes armed hym
haftely / and two barons sette on his spores vpon his heles /
and alle was blood reed his armour spere and shelde / And
an Erle buclid his helme vpon his hede / and thenne they bro-
35 ughte hym a rede spere and a rede stede / and soo he rode into a
lytyl vale vnder the castel / that al that were in the castel and
at the sege myghte behold the bataill

¶ Capitulum xvj

Wyre sayd the damoyfel Lynet vnto fyr Beaumayns
 loke ye be gladde and lyght / for yonder is your dedely
 enemy / and at yonder wyndowe is my lady fyfter dame
 Lyones / where sayd Beaumayns / yonder said the damoyfel &
 poynted with her fynger / that is trouthe sayd Beaumayns / 5
 She besemeth a ferre the fayrest lady that euer I loked vpon
 and truly he said I aske no better quarel than now for to do
 bataylle / for truly she shalle be my lady / and for her I wylle
 fyghte / And euer he loked vp to the wyndowe with gladde
 countenance / And the lady Lyones made curtosy to hym do- 10
 une to the erthe with holdyng vpon bothe their handes / Wyth
 that the reed knyghte of the reed laundes callid to fyr Be-
 aumayns / leue fyr knyghte thy lokyng / and behold me I cou-
 ceille the / for I warne the wel she is my lady / and for her I
 haue done many stronge batails / Yf thou haue so done said Be- 15
 aumayns / me semeth it was but waste labour / for she loueth
 none of thy felauship / and thou to loue that loueth not the / is
 but grete foly / For and I vnderstode that she were not glad
 of my comyng / I wold be auyfed or I dyd bataille for her /
 But I vnderstande by the syegyng of this castel she may for- 20
 bere thy felauship / And therfor wete thou wel thou rede kny-
 ghte of the reed laundes / I loue her / and wille rescowe her or
 els to dye / Saist thou that said the reed knyghte / me semeth /
 thou oughte of reson to beware by yonder knyghtes that thou
 sawest hange vpon yonder trees / Fy for shame said Beauma- 25
 yns that euer thou sholdest saye or do so euyl / for in that thou
 shamest thy self and knyghthode / and thou mayst be sure ther
 wylle no lady loue the that knoweth thy wycked custommes
 And now thou wenest that the fyghte of these hanged knygh-
 tes shold fere me / Nay truly not so / that shameful fyght cau- 30
 seth me to haue courage and hardynes ageynste the more than
 I wold haue had ageynst the / and thou were a wel ruled
 knyght / make the redy said the reed knyghte of the reed laū-
 des / and talke no lenger with me / Thenne fyre Beaumayns
 badde the damoyfel goo from hym / and thenne they putte their 35
 speres in their reyftes and came to gyders with alle their myzt

that they had bothe / and eyther smote other in myddes of their
 sheldes that the paytrellys / fursenglys and crowpers brafte /
 and felle to the erthe bothe / and the reynys of their brydels
 in their handes / and soo they laye a grete whyle fore stonyed
 5 that al that were in the castel and in the sege wende their nec-
 kes had ben broken / and thenne many a straunger and other
 sayd the straunge knyzt was a bygge man / and a noble Iuf-
 ter / for or now we sawe neuer noo knyghte matche the reed
 knyghte of the reed laundes / thus they sayd bothe within the
 10 castel and withoute / thenne lyghtly they auoyded their hor-
 ses and put their sheldes afore them / and drewe their swardes
 and ranne to gyders lyke two fyers lyons / and eyther gaf
 other fuche buffets vpon their helmes that they relyd backward
 bothe two swardys / and thenne they recouerd bothe and hewe
 15 grete pyeces of their harneis and their sheldes / that a grete
 parte felle in to the felde

¶ Capitulum xvij

ANd thenne thus they foughte tyl it was past none /
 and neuer wold stynte tyl att the laste they lacked
 wynde bothe / and thēne they stode wagyng and scateryng pon-
 20 tyng / blowyng and bledyng that al that behelde them for the
 moost party wepte for pyte / Soo whan they had restyd them
 a whyle / they yede to bataille ageyne / tracyng racyng foynyng
 as two bores / And at some tyme they toke their renne as hit
 had ben two rammys & hurtled to gyders that somtyme they
 25 felle grouelyng to the erthe / And at somtyme they were so a-
 mased that eyther took others sward in stede of his owne /
 Thus they endured tyl euenyng tyme / that there was none
 that beheld them myghte knowe whether was lyke to wynde
 the bataill / and their armour was so fer hewen that men myzt
 30 see their naked fydes / and in other places / they were naked /
 but euer the naked places they dyd defende / and the reed kn-
 yghte was a wyly knyght of werre / and his wyly fyghtyng
 taughte fyr Beaumayns to be wyse / but he aboughte hit fulle
 fore or he dyd aspye his fyghtyng / And thus by assente of
 35 them bothe they graunted eyther other to rest / and so they sette

hem doune vpon two molle hylles there befydes the fyghtynge
 place / and eyther of hem vnlaced his helme / and toke the cold
 wynde / for either of their pages was fast by them to come whā
 they called to vnlace their harneis and to fette hem on ageyn
 at their commaundement / And thenne whan fyr Beaumayns 5
 helme was of / he loked vp to the wyndowe / and there he sawe
 the faire lady Dame Lyones / and she made hym fuche counte-
 nance that his herte waxed lyghte and Ioly / and ther with
 he bad the reed knyghte of the reed laundes make hym redy
 and lete vs doo the bataille to the vtteraunce / I will wel fa- 10
 id the knyghte / and thenne they laced vp their helmes / and
 their pages auoyded / & they stepte to gyders & foughte fresshe-
 ly / but the reed knyghte of the reed laundes awayted hym /
 & at an ouerthwart smote hym within the hand / that his sw-
 erd felle oute of his hand / and yet he gaf hym another buf- 15
 fet vpon the helme that he felle grouelynge to the erthe / & the
 reed knyghte felle ouer hym / for to holde hym doune / Thenne
 cryed the maiden Lynet on hyghe / O fyr Beaumayns where
 is thy courage become / Allas my lady fyfter beholdeth the
 and she fobbeth and wepeth / that maketh myn herte heuy / when 20
 fyr Beaumayns herd her saye soo / he abrayed vp with a gre-
 te myght and gate hym vpon his feet / and lyghtely he lepte
 to his swerd and gryped hit in his hand and doubled hys
 paas vnto the reed knyghte and there they foughte a newe ba-
 taille to gyder / But fir Beaumayns thenne doubled his stro- 25
 kes / and smote soo thyck that he smote the swerd oute of his
 hand / and thenne he smote hym vpon the helme that he felle to
 the erthe / and fir Beaumayns felle vpon hym / and vnlaced
 his helme to haue slayne hym / and thenne he yelded hym and
 asked mercy / and said with a lowde vois O noble knyghte 30
 I yelde me to thy mercy / Thenne fyr Beaumayns bethoughte
 hym vpon the knyghtes that he had made to be hanged shame-
 fully / and thenne he said I may not with my worship faue
 thy lyf / for the shameful dethes that thou hast caufed many
 ful good knyghtes to dye / Syre saide the reed knyghte of the 35
 reed laundes hold your hand and ye shalle knowe the causes
 why I put hem to so shameful a dethe / faye on said fir Beau-
 mayns / Syre I loued ones a lady a faire damoifel / and she

had her broder slayne / and she said hit was fyr launcelot du
lake / or els fyr gawayn / and she praide me as that I loued
her hertely that I wold make her a promyse by the feith of my
knyghthode for to laboure dayly in armes vnto I mette wyth
5 one of them / and alle that I myghte ouercome I shold putte
them vnto a vylaynous dethe / and this is the cause that I ha-
ue putte alle these knyghtes to dethe / and soo I ensured her to
do alle the vylony vnto kyng Arthurs knyghtes / and that I
shold take vengeaūce vpon alle these knyghtes and fyr now
10 I wille the telle that euery daye my strengthe encreaceth tyll
none / and al this tyme haue I seuen mens strengthe

¶ Capitulum rviii

THenne came ther many Erles and Barons and no-
ble knyghtes and praid that knyghte to saue his lyf
and take hym to your pryfoner / And all they felle vpon the-
15 ir knees and prayd hym of mercy / and that he wolde saue
his lyf / and fyr they all fayd it were fairer of hym to take ho-
mage and feaute / and lete hym holde his landes of you than
for to flee hym / by his deth ye shal haue none auantage and
his mysdedes that ben done maye not ben vndone / And ther-
20 for he shal make amendys to al partyes & we al wil become
your men and doo you homage and feaute / Fayre lordes said
Beaumayns / wete you wel I am ful lothe to flee this knyzt
neuertheles he hath done passyng ylle and shamefully / But
in soo moche al that he dyd was at a ladyes request I blame
25 hym the lesse / and so for your sake I wil releace hym that he
shal haue his lyf vpon this couenaunt / that he goo within the
castel / and yelde hym there to the lady / And yf she wil forgy-
ue and quyte hym / I wil wel / with this he make her amen-
dys of al the trespas he hath done ageynst her and her landes /
30 ¶ And also whanne that is done that ye goo vnto the courte
of kyng Arthur / and there that ye aske fyr Launcelot mercy / &
fyr Gawayn for the euyl wil ye haue had ageynst them / sire
said the reed knyght of the reed laundes / al this wil I do as
ye commaunde / and fyker affuraunce and borowes ye shal ha-
35 ue / And soo thenne whan the affurauncé was made / he made

his homage and feaute / and alle tho erles and barons wyth
 hym / And thenne the mayden Lynet came to fyre Beauma-
 yns / and vnarmed hym and ferched his woundes / and styn-
 ted his blood / and in lyke wyfe she dyd to the rede knyghte
 of the reed laundes / and there they foiourned ten dayes in 5
 their tentes / and the reed knyghte made his lordes and serua-
 untes to doo alle the pleafyre that they myghte vnto fyre Be-
 aumayns / And soo within a whyle the reed knyghte of the
 reed laundes yede vnto the castel / and putte hym in her grace
 And soo she receyued hym vpon suffyfaunt feurte / so alle her 10
 hurtes were wel restored of al that she coude complayne / and
 thenne he departed vnto the Courte of kyng Arthur / and
 there openly the reed knyghte of the reed laundes putte hym
 in the mercy of fyre Launcelot and fyr Gawayne / and there
 he told openly how he was ouercome and by whome / and al- 15
 so he told alle the batails from the begynnyng vnto the en-
 dyng / Ihesu mercy sayd kyng Arthur and fyre Gawayne
 we merueylle moche of what blood he is come / for he is a no-
 ble knyghte / Haue ye no merueille faide fyre Launcelot / for ye
 shal ryght wel wete that he is comen of a ful noble blood / 20
 and as for his myghte and hardynes ther ben but fewe now
 lyuyng that is so myghty as he is / and so noble of prowesse
 It semeth by yow said kyng Arthur that ye knowe his na-
 me / and fro whens he is come / and of what blood he is / I sup-
 pose I doo so said Launcelot / or els I wold not haue yeuen 25
 hym thordre of knyghthode / but he gaf me fuche charge at that
 tyme that I shold neuer discouer hym vntyl he requyred me
 or els it be knownen openly by some other

¶ Capitulum xix

Now torne we vnto fyr Beaumayns that defyred of
 Lynet that he myght see her fyfter his lady / Syre she 30
 said I wold fayne ye sawe her / Thenne fyr Beaumayns al
 armed hym and toke his hors and his spere and rode streyzt
 vnto the castel / And whanne he cam to the gate he fond there
 many men armed and pulled vp the drawe brydge / & drewe

the porte cloose / ¶ Thenne merueilled he why they wold not
suffre hym to entre / And thenne he loked vp to the wyndow
And there he sawe the fair Lyones that said on hyghe go thy
way / fyr Beaumayns / for as yet thou shalt not haue holy
5 my loue vnto the tyme that thou be callyd one of the nombre
of the worthy knyghtes / And therfor goo laboure in worship
this twelue monethe / and thenne thou shalt here newe tydyn-
ges / Allas faire lady said Beaumayns I haue not deserued
that ye shold shewe me this fraungenes / and I had wend
10 that I shold haue ryght good chere with you and vnto my
power I haue deserued thanke / and wel I am sure I haue
boughte your loue with parte of the best blood within my body
Fayre curteis knyghte said Dame Lyones / be not displeafyd
nor ouer hafty / for wete you wel / your grete trauaill nor go-
15 od loue shal not be lost / for I confydre your grete trauail & la-
bour / your bounte and your goodenes as me oughte to doo /
And therefore goo on your wey / and loke that ye be of good
comforte for all shal be for your worship / and for the best / &
perde a twelue moneth wille foone be done / and trust me fair
20 knyghte I shal be true to you and neuer te bitraye you / but
to my dethe I shalle loue you / and none other / And ther with
alle she torned her from the wyndowe / and fyr Beaumayns
rode away ward from the castel making grete dole / and soo
he rode here and there & wyfte not ne where he rode tyl hit was
25 derke nyghte / And thenne it happend hym to come to a poure
mans hous and there he was herborowed all that nyghte /
But fyr Beaumayns hadde no rest but walowed and wry-
thed for the loue of the lady of the castel / And soo vpon the
morowe he took his hors and rode vn tyl vnderne / and theñe
30 he came to a brode water / and there by was a grete lodge / and
there he alyghte to slepe and leid his hede vpon the shelde / and
bitoke his hors to the dwarf / and commaunded hym to wat-
che al nyghte / Now torne we to the lady of the fame castel /
that thoughte moche vpon Beaumayns / and thenne she called
35 vnto her fyr Gryngamore her broder / and praid hym in al man-
ner as he loued her hertely that he wold ryde after fyr Beau-
mayns / and euer haue ye wayte vpon hym tyl ye may fynde
hym slepyng / for I am sure in his heuynes he wil alyzt down

in some place / and leye hym doune to flepe / And therfor haue ye your wayte vpon hym / and in the preuyest manere ye can take his dwerf / and go ye your waye with hym as faste as euer ye maye or fyr Beaumayns awake / For my syfter Lynet telleth me that he can telle of what kynreed he is come / 5
and what is his ryghte name / And the meane whyle I and my syfter wille ryde vnto youre castel to awayte whanne ye brynge with you the dwerf / And thenne whan ye haue broughte hym vnto youre Castel / I wylle haue hym in examy-
nacion my self / vnto the tyme that I knowe what is his ry- 10
ghte name / and of what kynred he is come / shalle I neuer be mery at my herte

¶ Syfter said fyre Gryngamore alle thys shalle be done after your entente / And soo he rode alle the other daye and the nyghte tyll that he fond fyre Beaumayns lyenge by a water and his hede vpon his shelde 15
for to flepe /

¶ And thenne whanne he sawe fyre Beaumayns fast on flepe / he cam styllly stalkyng behynde the dwerf and plucked hym fast vnder his arme / and soo he rode awaye with hym as faste as euer he myght vnto his owne castel

And this fyre Gryngamors armes were alle black and that 20
to hym longeth / But euer as he rode with the dwerf toward his castel / he cryed vnto his lord / and prayd hym for helpe / And there with awoke fyre Beaumayns / and vp he lepte lyghtly / & sawe where the Gryngamor rode his waye with the dwerf / and soo fyr Gryngamor rode oute of his fyghte / 25

¶ Capitulum xi

THenne fyre Beaumayns putte on his helme anone / and buckeled his shelde / and tooke his hors / and rode after hym alle that euer he myghte ryde thorou marys and feldes and grete dales / that many tymes his hors and he plinged ouer the hede in depe myres / for he knewe not 30
the wey / but took the gaynest waye in that woodenes that many tymes he was lyke to perysse / And at the laste hym happend to come to a fayre grene waye And there he mette with a poure man of the countreye whom he sawewed & asked hym /

whether he mette not with a knyghte vpon a black hors & all
 black harneis a lytel dwerf fyttynge behynde hym with heuy
 chere / Syre faide this poure man here by me came fyre Gryn-
 gamor the knyght with fuche a dwerf mornyng as ye faye / &
 5 therefore I rede you not folowe hym / For he is one of the pe-
 ryllouft knyghtes of the world / and his castel is here nyhe
 hand but two myle / therfor we aduyse you ryde not after fyr
 Gryngamor but yf ye owe hym good wille / Soo leue we fyre
 Beaumayns rydyng toward the castel and speke we of fir
 10 Gryngamor and the dwerf / Anone as the dwerf was come
 to the castel / dame Lyones and dame Lynet her fyfter asked
 the dwerf where was his maister borne / and of what lygnage
 he was come / And but yf thou telle me faid dame Lyones
 thou shalt neuer escape this castel / but euer here to be pryfoner
 15 As for that faid the dwerf I fere not gretely to telle his na-
 me and of what kynne he is come / Wete ye wel he is a kyn-
 ges fone / and his moder is fyfter to kyng Arthur / and he is
 broder to the good knyghte of fyre Gawayne / and his name
 is fyre Gareth of Orkeney / and now I haue told you his ry-
 20 ght name / I praye you fayre lady lete me goo to my lord a-
 geayne / for he wille neuer oute of this cuntry vntyl that he
 haue me ageyne / And yf he be angry / he wil doo moche harme
 or that he be stynte / and worche you wrake in this cuntry
 As for that thretyng sayd fyr Gryngamore be it as it be may
 25 We wille goo to dyner / and soo they waffhed and wente to
 mete / and made hem mery and wel at ease / by cause the lady
 Lyones of the castel was there / they made grete Ioye
 ¶ Truly Madame sayd Lynet vnto her fyfter wel maye he be
 a kynges fone / for he hath many good tatches on hym / for he
 30 is curteis and mylde and the moost sufferynge man that euer
 I mette with al / For I dar faye ther was neuer gentytwo-
 man reulyd man in soo foule a manere / as I haue rebuked
 hym / And at all tymes he gafe me goodely and meke anfuers
 ageyne
 ¶ And as they fate thus talky-
 35 nge / ther came fire Gareth in at the gate with an angry coun-
 tenaunce and his fwerd drawn in his hand / and cryed a-
 loude that alle the castel myzt here hit fayeng thou traitour fyre

Gryngamor delyuer me my dwerf ageyn / or by the feith that
 I owe to the ordre of knyghthode I fhall doo the al the harme
 that I can / Thenne fyr Gryngamor loked oute at a wyndow
 and faid fyr gareth of Orkeney leue thy bofying wordes / for
 thou geteft not thy dwerf ageyne / Thou coward knyghte fayd 5
 fyr Gareth brynge hym with the / and come and doo bataylle
 with me / and wynne hym and take hym / So wille I do fa-
 id fyr Gryngamor and me lyft / but for al thy grete wordes
 thou geteft hym not / A fayr broder faid dame Lyones I wold
 he had his dwerf ageyne / for I wold he were not wroth / for 10
 now he hath told me al my defyre I kepe nomore of the dwerf
 And alfo broder he hath done moche for me / and delyuerd me
 from the reed knyghte of the reed laundes / and therfor bro-
 der I owe hym my feruyfe afore al knyghtes lyuyng / And
 wete ye wel that I loue hym before al other / and ful fayne 15
 wold fpeke with hym / But in no wyfe I wold that he wift
 what I were / but that I were another ftraunge lady / Wel fa-
 id fyr Gryngamor fythen I knowe now your wille / I wylle
 obeye now vnto hym / And ryght ther with al he wente doun
 vnto fyr Gareth / and faid fyr I crye you mercy / and al that 20
 I haue myfdone I wille amend hit at your wille / And ther-
 fore I pray you that ye wold alyghte / and take fuche chere
 as I can make you in this castel / Shal I haue my dwerfe
 faide fyre Gareth / ye fyr / and alle the pleafaunce that I can
 make you / for as foone as your dwerf told me what ye we- 25
 re and of what blood ye ar come / and what noble dedes ye ha-
 ue done in thefe marches / thenne I repentyd of my dedes /
 And thenne fyre Gareth alyghte / and ther came his dwerf &
 took his hors / O my felawe faid fyr gareth / I haue had ma-
 ny aduentures for thy fake / And soo fyre Gryngamor tooke 30
 hym by the hand / and ledde hym in to the halle where his own
 wyf was

¶ Capitulum xxij

And thenne came forth Dame Lyones arayed lyke a
 prynceffe / and there she made hym passyng good chere
 and he her ageyne / and they had goodely langage &
 louely countenance to gyder / And fyre Gareth thought ma-
 5 ny tymes Ihesu wold that the lady of the castel perillous we-
 re so fayre as she was / there were al maner of games & pla-
 yes of dauncyng and fyngyng / And euer the more fyre Ga-
 reth bihelde that lady / the more he loued her / and so he brenned
 in loue that he was past hym self in his reason / and forth to-
 10 ward nyghte they yede vnto souper / and fyre Gareth myghte
 not ete for his loue was soo hote / that he wist not where he was
 Alle these lokes aspyed fyr Gryngamor / and thenne at after
 souper he callid his fyfter Dame Lyones vnto a chamber / and
 fayd / fair fyfter I haue wel aspyed your couētaūce betwixe
 15 you and this knyght / And I wil fyfter that ye wete he is a
 ful noble knyzt / & yf ye can make hym to abyde here I wil
 do hym all the pleasyr þ^t I can / for & ye were better than ye ar
 ye were wel bywaryd vpon hym / Fayre broder said Dame
 lyones I vnderstande wel that the knyghte is good & come he
 20 is of a noble hous / Notwithstandyng I wille assaye hym bet-
 ter how be it I am moost beholdyng to hym of ony erthely mā
 for he hath had grete labour for my loue / and passid many a
 daungerous passage / Ryght soo fyr Gryngamor wente vnto
 fyr Gareth and said fyre make ye good chere / for ye shal haue
 25 none other cause / for this lady my fyfter is yours at al tymes
 her worship faued / for wete ye wel she loueth you as wel as
 ye doo her and better / yf better may be / And I wist that fa-
 id fyr Gareth / ther lyued not a gladder man than I wold be
 Vpon my worship said fyr Gryngamor trust vnto my promyse
 30 And as long as it lyketh you ye shal sojourne with me and
 this lady shal be with vs dayly and nyghtly to make yow
 alle the chere that she can / I wille wel said fyre Gareth / For
 I haue promysed to be nyghe this countrey this twelue mo-
 neth / And wel I am sure kyng Arthur and other noble
 35 knyghtes wille fynde me where that I am within this twelue
 moneth / For I shal be foughte and founden yf that I be on
 lyue **¶** And thenne the noble knyghte fyre Gareth wente
 vnto the dame Lyones whiche he thēne moche loued / & kyft her

many tymes / and eyther made grete Ioye of other / And there she promysed hym her loue certaynly to loue hym and none other the dayes of hyr lyf / Thenne this lady dame Lyones by the assente of her broder told fyr Gareth alle the trouthe what she was / And how she was the same lady that he dyd batail 5 for / and how she was lady of the castel peryllous / and there she told hym how she caufed her broder to take away his dwerf

¶ Capitulum xxii

FOr this caufe to knowe the certaynte what was your name / and of what kynne ye were come / And thenne she lete fetche tofore hym Lynet the damoyfel that had 10 ryden with hym many wylsome wayes / Thenne was fyre Gareth more gladder than he was to fore / And thēne they trouthplyte eche other to loue / and neuer to faylle whyles their lyfe lasteth / And soo they brente bothe in loue that they were accorded to abate their lustes secreately / And there Dame Lyones 15 counceyllled fyr Gareth to slepe in none other place but in the halle / And there she promysed hym to come to his bedde a lytel afore mydnyght / This counceil was not soo pryuely kepte but it was vnderstande / for they were but yonge bothe and tender of age / and had not vsed none suche craftes to forne / 20 Wherfor the damoyfel Lynet was a lytel displeafyd / and she thoughte her fyfter Dame Lyones was a lytel ouer hafty / that she myghte not abyde the tyme of her maryage / And for fauyng their worship / she thoughte to abate their hote lustes /

¶ And so she lete ordeyne by her subtyl craftes that they had 25 not their ententes neyther with other as in her delytes / vntyl they were maryed / And soo it pafte on / At after souper was made clene auoydaunce / that euery lord and lady shold goo vnto his rest / But fyr Gareth said playnly he wold goo noo ferther than the halle / for in suche places he said was conuenient 30 for an arraunt knyght to take his rest in / and so there were ordeyned grete couches / & theron fether beddes / & there leyde hym doune to slepe / & within a while cam dame Lyones wrapped in a mantel furred with Ermyne & leid her down befydes fyr Gareth / And there with alle he beganne to kyffe her / And thenne 35 he loked afore hym and there he apperceuyued and sawe come an armed knyght with many lyghtes aboute hym / and

fawe come an armed knyzt with many lyghtes about hym / &
this knyghte had a longe Gyfarme in his hand / and maade
grym countenance to smyte hym / Whanne fyre Gareth fawe
hym come in that wyfe / he lepte oute of his bedde and gate in
5 his hand his fwerd and lepte strayte toward that knyght /
And whanne the knyght fawe fyr Gareth come so fyerfly vp-
on hym / he smote hym with a foyne thorou the thycke of the
thy3 that the wound was a shaftmon brode and had cutte a-
two many vaynes and fenewes / And there with al fyr Ga-
10 reth smote hym vpon the helme fuche a buffet that he felle gro-
uelyng / and thenne he lepte ouer hym and vnaced his hel-
me and smote of his hede fro the body / And thenne he bledde fo
fast that he myghte not stande / but soo he leid hym doun vpon
his bedde / and there he fwouned and laye as he had ben dede
15 Thenne dame Lyones cryed alowde / that her broder fyr Gryn-
gamor herd / and came doune / And whan he fawe fyr Gareth
soo shamefully wounded / he was fore displeasyd and sayd I
am shamed that this noble knyghte is thus honoured / Syr fa-
yd fyr Gryngamore hou may this be / that ye be here / and thys
20 noble knyghte wounded / Broder she faid I can not telle yow
For it was not done by me nor by myn assente / For he is my
lord and I am his / and he must be myn husband / therefore my
broder I wille that ye wete I shame me not to be with hym /
nor to doo hym alle the pleasyr that I can / Syfter faid fyre
25 Gryngamore / and I will that ye wete it and fyr Gareth both
that it was neuer done by me nor by my assente that this vn-
happy dede was done / And there they staunched his bledynge
as wel as they myght / and grete forou made fir Gryngamor
and Dame Lyones / And forthe with al came Dame Lynet
30 and toke vp the hede in the syghte of hem alle / and enoynted
it with an oyntement there as it was smyten of / and in the fa-
me wyfe she dyd to the other parte there as the hede stak / And
thenne she sette it to gyders / and it stak as fast as euer it did
And the knyghte arose lyghtely vp / and the damoyfel Lynet
35 put hym in her chambre / Alle this fawe fir Gryngamor and
dame Lyones / and soo dyd fir Gareth / and wel he espyed that
it was the damoyfel Lynet that rode with hym thorou the pe-
ryllous passages / A wel damoyfel faid fyre Gareth I wende

wold not haue done as ye haue done / My lord Gareth said
 Lynet / alle that I haue done I will auowe / and alle that I
 haue done shal be for youre honoure and worship / and to vs
 alle / And soo within a whyle fyr Gareth was nyghe hole / &
 waxid lyghte and Iocounde / and fange / daunced and ga- 5
 med / and he and dame Lyones were soo hote in brennyng
 loue that they made their couenaunte at the tenth nyghte after
 that she shold come to his bedde / And by cause he was wouided
 afore / he laid his armour / and his sward nyghe his beddes
 fyde

10

¶ Capitulum xxiiij

RYght as she promysed she came / and she was not soo
 foone in his bedde / but she aspyed an armed knyghte
 comyng toward the bedde / there with alle she warned fyr Ga-
 reth / and lyghtly thorou the good helpe of Dame Lyones he
 was armed / and they hurtled to gyders with grete Ire & ma- 15
 lyce al aboute the halle / and there was grete lyght as it had
 ben the nombre of xx torches bothe before and behynd / soo that
 fyr Gareth frayned hym / soo that his old wounde brafte a-
 geyne on bledyng / but he was hote and couragious and to-
 ke no kepe / but with his grete force he stroke doune that kny- 20
 ghte / and voyded his helme / and strake of his hede / Thenne he
 hewe the hede in an honderd pyeces / And whan he had done so
 he took vp alle tho pyeces and threwe hem oute at a wyndow
 in to the dyches of the castel / and by this done / he was soo faynt
 that vnnethe he myght stande for bledyng / And by thenne he 25
 was al most vnarmed / he felle in a dedely swoune in the flo-
 re / And thenne dame Lyones cryed soo that fyr Gryngamor
 herd / And whan he cam and fond fyr Gareth in that plyte he
 made grete sorou / & there he awaked fyr Gareth / and gaf hym
 a drynke that releued hym wonderly wel / but the sorou that 30
 Dame Lyones made there maye no tonge telle / for she soo fa-
 ryd with her self as she wold haue dyed / ¶ Ryghte soo cam
 this damoyfel Lynet before hem al / and she had sette alle the
 goblets of the hede that fyr Gareth had throwen out at a wyn-
 dowe / and there she enoynted hem as she had done to fore / & set 35
 them to gyder ageyn / wel damoysel Lynet said fyre Gareth /

I haue not deserued alle this despyte that ye doo vnto me / fir
 knyghte she said / I haue no thyng do / but I will auowe /
 And al that I haue done shalle be to your worship and to
 vs al / And thenne was fyre Gareth staunched of his bledyng
 5 But the leches said / that ther was no man that bare the lyf /
 fholde hele hym thorou oute of his wounde / but yf they heled
 hym that caufed that stroke by enchauntement / So leue we fyr
 Gareth there with fyr Gryngamore and his systers / and tor-
 ne we vnto kynge Arthur that at the nexte feest of Pentecost
 10 helde his feest / and there cam the grene knyzt with fyfty kny-
 ghtes / and yelded hem all vnto kynge Arthur / And so there
 came the reed knyghte his broder / and yelded hym to kyng Ar-
 thur and thre score knyghtes with hym / Also there came the
 blewe knyghte broder to them with an honderd knyghtes / &
 15 yelded hem vnto kynge Arthur / and the grene knyghtes na-
 me was Partolype / and the reed knyghtes name was Pe-
 rymones / and the blewe knyghtes name was fyr Perfant of
 Inde / these thre bretheren told kynge Arthur how they were
 ouercome by a knyghte that a damoyfel had with her / and
 20 called hym Beaumayns / Ihesu sayd the kynge I mer-
 ueylle what knyghte he is / and of what lygnage he is come /
 He was with me a twelue monethe / and pourely and sha-
 mefully he was fostred / and fyre kay in fcorne named hym
 Beaumayns / Soo ryghte as the kyng stode soo talkyng with
 25 these thre bretheren / there came fyr Launcelot du lake and told
 the kynge that there was come a goodly lord with vj C kn-
 ghtes with hym / thenne the kynge wente oute of Carlyon /
 for there was the feest / and there came to hym this lord / and
 falewed the kynge in a goodly manere / What wylle ye sayd
 30 kyng Arthur / and what is youre erand / Syr he said my na-
 name is the reed knyghte of the reed laundes / but my name is
 fyr Ironfyde / and fyre wete ye wel / here I am sente to yow /
 of a knyght that is called Beaumayns / for he wanne me in
 playne bataille hande for hand / and soo dyd neuer no kny-
 35 ght but he that euer had the better of me this xxx wynter /
 the whiche commaunded to yelde me to yow at youre wylle /
 ye are welcom said the kyng / for ye haue ben long a grete soo
 to me and my Courte / and now I truste to god I shalle

soo entreate you that ye shal be my frend / Syre / bothe I and
 these fyue honderd knyghtes shal alweyes be at your somons
 to doo you seruyse as maye lye in oure powers / Ihesu mercy
 said kyng Arthur I am moche beholdynge vnto that knyght /
 that hath put soo his body in deuoyre to worshippe me & my 5
 Courte / And as to the Ironfyde that art called the reed knyghte
 of the reed laundes thou arte called a peryllous knyzt
 And yf thou wylt holde of me I shal worshippe the and ma-
 ke the knyghte of the table round / but thenne thou must be no
 more a murtherer / Syre as to that I haue promysed vnto 10
 fyre Beaumayns neuer more to vse fuche custommes / for all
 the shameful customes that I vsed I dyd at the request of a
 lady that I loued / and therfor I must goo vnto fyr Laun-
 celot and vnto fyre Gawayne / and aske them foryeuenes of
 the euyll wyll I had vnto them / for alle that I put to deth 15
 was al only for the loue of fyr Launcelot and of fyr Gawa-
 yne / They ben here now said the kyng afore the / now maye ye
 faye to them what ye wyll / And thenne he kneled doune vn-
 to fyre Launcelot and to fyre Gawayne and prayd them of
 foryeuenes of his enemytee that euer he had ageynste them / 20

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

THenne goodely they said al at ones / god foryeue you
 and we do / and praye you that ye will telle vs where
 we may fynde fyr Beaumayns / Fayre lordes said fyr Iron-
 fyde I can not telle you / for it is ful hard to fynde hym / for
 fuche yong knyghtes as he is one / whanne they be in their ad- 25
 uentures ben neuer abydyng in no place / ¶ But to faye the
 worship that the reed knyghte of the reed laundes and fyr per-
 faunt and his broder said of Beaumayns / it was merueil to
 here / Wel my fayre lordes said kyng Arthur / wete yow wel /
 I shalle do you honour for the loue of fyr Beaumayns / and 30
 as soone as euer I mete with hym I shalle make you al vp-
 on one day knyghtes of the table round / And as to the fyre
 Perfaunt of Inde thou hast ben euer called a ful noble kny-
 ghte / and soo haue euer ben thy thre bretheren called / But I
 merueil said the kyng that I here not of the black knyzt your 35

broder / he was a ful noble knyghte / Syr fayd Pertolype the grene knyzt fyr Beaumayns flewe hym in a recoûtre with his spere / his name was fyr Perard / that was grete pyte fayd the kyng and foo faid many knyghtes / For these four brethe-
 5 ren were ful wel knowen in the courte of kyng Arthur for noble knyghtes / for long tyme they had holden werre ageynst the knyghtes of the round table / Thenne fayd Pertolepe the grene knyghte to the kyng atte a passage of the water of mortayse there encountred fyr Beaumayns with two brethe-
 10 ren that euer for the moost party kepte that passage / and they were two dedely knyghtes / and there he flewe the eldest broder in the water / and smote hym vpon the heede suche a buffet that he felle doune in the water / and there he was drowned / & his name was sir Garard le brewse / and after he flewe the other
 15 broder vpon the lond / his name was fyr Arnold le brewse /

¶ Capitulum xxvi

SOo thenne the kyng and they wente to mete / and were ferued in the best manere / And as they fatte at the mete / ther came in the quene of Orkeney with ladyes & knyghtes a grete nombre / And thenne fyr Gawayn / fyr Agraau-
 20 yn and Gaherys arose / and wente to her / and falewed her vpon their knees / and asked her blyffing / For in xv yere they had not sene her / Thenne she spak on hyghe to her broder kyng Arthur / where haue ye done my yong sone fyr Gareth / he was here amongst you a twelue moneth / & ye made a kechyn kna-
 25 ue of hym / the whiche is shame to you all / Allas where haue ye done my dere sone that was my Ioye and blyffe / O dere moder faid fyr Gawayn I knewe hym not / Nor I faid the kyng that now me repenteth / but thanked be god he is preued a worshipful knyghte as ony is now lyuyng of his yeres / &
 30 I shal neuer be glad tyl I may fynde hym / A broder fayd the quene vnto kyng Arthur and vnto fyr Gawayne and to alle her sones / ye dyd your self grete shame whan ye amongst you kepte my sone in the kechyn and fedde hym lyke a poure hog / Fayr sifter faid kyng Arthur ye shall ryghte wel wete /
 35 I knewe hym not / nor nomore dyd fyre Gawayn / nor his

bretheren / but fythen it is soo faid the kyng that he is thus gone from vs alle / we must shape a remedy to fynde hym / Also fyfter me semeth ye myght haue done me to wete of his comyng / And thenne and I had not done wel to hym / ye myzt haue blamed me / For whan he cam to this courte he came le- 5
nyng vpon two mens sholders as though he myght not haue gone / And thenne he asked me thre yestes / and one he asked the same day / that was that I wold gyue hym mete ynough that twelue moneth / and the other two yestes he asked that day a twelue moneth / and that was that he myghte haue thad- 10
uerture of the damoyfel Lynet / and the thyrd was that fyre Launcelot shold make hym knyght whan he defyred hym / And soo I graunted hym alle his defyre / and many in this Courte merueilled that he defyred his sustenance for a twelf monethe / And there by we demed many of vs that he was 15
not come of a noble hous / Syre faid the Quene of Orkeney vnto kyng Arthur her broder / wete ye wel that I fente hym vnto you ryghte wel armed and horsed and worshipfully byfene his body / and gold and syluer plente to spend / it may be faid the kyng / but therof fawe we none / fauf that fa- 20
me daye as he departed from vs / knyghtes told me that ther came a dwerf hyder fodenly and broughte hym armour and a good hors ful wel and rychely byfene / and there at we al had merueille / fro whens that rycheffe came / that we demed al that he was come of men of worship / Broder faid the Quene 25
alle that ye faye I byleue / for euer fythen he was growen / he was merueilleously wytted / and euer he was feythful & true of his promesse / But I merueille faid she that fyre kay dyd mocke hym and scorne hym / and gaf hym that name Beau-
mayns / yet fyr kay faid the quene named hym more ryghte- 30
uously than he wende / For I dare faye and he be on lyue / he is as fair an handed man and wel disposed as ony is lyu-
ynge / Syre faid Arthurle te this langage be styll / and by the grace of god he shal be founde / and he be within these seuen ro-
yames / and lete alle this passe and be mery / for he is proued 35
to be a man of worship / and that is my Ioye

¶ Capitulum xviij

THenne said fyr Gawayne and his bretheren vnto arthur / fyre and ye wyl gyue vs leue we wille go and feke oure brother / Nay said fyr Launcelot that shalle ye not nede / and so said fyr Bawdewyn of Bretayne / for as
 5 by oure aduys the kyng shal fende vnto dame Lyones a meffager / and praye her that she wille come to the courte in alle the haft that she may / and doubte ye not she wille come / And thēne she may gyue you best couceille where ye shal fynde hym This is wel said of you said the kyng / Soo thenne goodely
 10 letters were made / and the meffager sente forth that nyghte & day he wente tyl he cam vnto the castel perillous / And thenne the lady dame Lyones was sente fore there as she was wyth fyr Gryngamor her broder and fyre Gareth / and whan she vnderstode this message / she badde hym ryde on his way vnto kyng
 15 nge Arthur / and she wold come after in al goodely haft

¶ Thenne whan she came to fyr Gryngamor and to sir Gareth she told hem al how kyng Arthur had sente for her / that is by cause of me said fyr Gareth / Now auyse me said dame Lyones what shalle I saye and in what manere I shal rule
 20 me / My lady and my loue said sir Gareth I pray you in no wyfe be ye aknowen where I am / but wel I wote my moder is there and alle my bretheren / and they wille take vpon hem to feke me / I wote wel that they doo / But this madame I wold ye sayd and aduysed the kyng whan he questyoned
 25 with you of me / Thenne maye ye fay / this is your aduys that and hit lyke his good grace / ye wille doo make a crye ayenst the feest of thassumpcion of our lady that what knyghte there preueth hym best he shal welde you and all your land / And yf soo be that he be a wedded man that his wyf shal the degre
 30 and a coronal of gold besette with stones of vertue to the valewe of a thousand pound and a whyte Iarfaucon /

Soo dame Lyones departed / and came to kyng Arthur where she was nobly receyued / and there she was fore questyoned of the kyng and of the quene of Orkeney / And she ansuerde
 35 where fyr Gareth was she coude not telle / But thus moche she said vnto Arthur / fyre I wille lete crye a turnement that shal be done before my castel at the Assumpcion of oure lady / and the crye shal be this that you my lorde Arthur shalt be there / &

your knyghtes / and I will puruey that my knyghtes shalle
 be ageynst yours / And thenne I am fure ye shal here of fyr
 Gareth / this is wel aduysed said kyng Arthur / and soo she
 departed / And the kyng and she maade grete prouysyon to
 that turnement / Whan dame Lyones was come to the yle of A- 5
 uilyon that was the same yle ther as her broder fyr Grynga-
 mor dwelte / thenne she told hem al how she had done / and
 what promyse she had made to kyng Arthur / Allas said fyr
 Gareth / I haue been soo wounded with vnhappynes fythen I
 cam in to this castel that I shal not be abyll to doo at that tur- 10
 nement lyke a knyghte / for I was neuer thorouly hole fyn I
 was hurte / Be ye of good chere said the damoyfel Lynet / for
 I vndertake within these xv dayes to make you hole and as
 lusty as euer ye were / And thenne she leid an oynement & a
 falue to hym as it pleasyd to her that he was neuer so fresch 15
 nor soo lusty / Thenne said the damoyfel Lynet / fend you vnto
 fyr Perfaunt of ynde / and affomone hym and his knyghtes
 to be here with you as they haue promysed / Also that ye fend
 vnto fyr Ironfyde that is the reed knyghte of the reed laun-
 des / and charge hym that he be redy with you with his hole 20
 somme of knyghtes / and thenne shalle ye be abyll to matche
 with kyng Arthur and his knyghtes / Soo this was done &
 alle knyghtes were sente for vnto the castel peryllous / & then-
 ne the reed knyght anfuerd and said vnto dame Lyones and
 to fyre Gareth / Madame & my lord fyr Gareth ye shal vnder- 25
 stande that I haue ben at the court of kyng Arthur and fir
 Perfaunt of Inde and his bretheren / and there we haue done
 oure homage as ye commaunded vs / Also fyr Ironfyde sayd
 I haue taken vpon me with fyre Perfaunt of Inde and his
 bretheren to hold party ageynst my lord fir Launcelot and the 30
 knyghtes of that courte / And this haue I done for the loue of
 my lady Dame Lyones and you my lord fir Gareth / ye haue
 wel done said fyr Gareth / But wete you wel ye shal be ful
 fore matched with the moost noble knyghtes of the world / ther-
 for we must purueye vs of goode knyghtes where we may ge- 35
 te them / That is wel said / said fir Perfaunt and worshipfully
 And soo the crye was made in England / walis and scotland
 Ireland / Cornewaille / & in alle the oute Iles and in bretayn

and in many countreyes that at the feest of our lady the af-
 fumpcion next comyng men shold come to the castel peryllous
 befyde the yle of Auylyon / And there al the knyghtes that
 ther came shold haue the choyse whether them lyst to be on the
 5 one party with the knyghtes of the castel or on the other par-
 ty with kyng Arthur / And two monethes was to the daye
 that the turnement shold be / & so ther cam many good kny-
 tes that were at her large and helde hem for the moost party a-
 geynst kyng Arthur and his knyghtes of the round table /
 10 cam in the fyde of them of the castel / For fyr Epyngrus was
 the fyrst / and he was the kynges sone of Northumberland / &
 fyr Palamydes the farafyn was another / and fyr Safere his
 broder / and fyre Segwarydes his broder / but they were cryst-
 ned / and fyre Malegryne another / and fyr Bryan des les
 15 llelys a noble knyghte / and fyr Grummore gummurfum a
 good knyghte of Scotland / and fyr Carados of the dolorous
 toure a noble knyghte and fyr Turquyn his broder / and fyr
 Arnold and fyre Gauter two bretheren good knyghtes of
 Cornewaile / there cam fyr Trystram de lyones / and with hym
 20 fyr Dynadas the seneschal / and sir Saduk / but this fyr Trif-
 tram was not at that tyme knyght of the table round / but he
 was one of the best knyghtes of the world / And foo all these
 noble knyghtes accompanied hem with the lady of the castel
 and with the reed knyghte of the reed laundes / but as for sir
 25 Gareth he wold not take vpon hym more but as other meane
 knyghtes

¶ Capitulum xxviii

ANd thenne ther cam with kyng Arthur sir Gawayn
 Agrauayne / Gaherys his bretheren / And thenne his
 newwes fyr Vwayn le blanche maynys / and fyr Aglouale
 30 fyr Tor / sir Percyuale de galys / and fyre Lamorrak de galis
 Thenne came sir Launcelot du lake with his bretheren newwes
 and cofyns as sir Lyonel / sir Ector de marys / fyr bors de ga-
 nys and sir Galyhodyn / fyre Galihud and many moo of fyre
 Launcelots blood and fyre Dynadan / sir la coote male taylor /
 35 his broder a good knyghte / and sir Sagramore a good knyzt

And al the most party of the round table / Also ther cam with
 kynge Arthur these knyghtes the kynge of Ireland / kynge
 Agwyfaunce / and the kyng of Scotland kyng Carados and
 kynge Vryens of the londe of gore and kyng Bagdemagus
 and his sone fyr Melyaganus and fyr Galahault the noble 5
 prynce / Alle these kynges prynces and Erles Barons and
 other noble knyghtes / as fyre Braundyles / fyre Vwayne les
 auowtres / and fyre kay / fyr Bedeuere / fyr Melyot de logrys
 fyr Petypafe of wynkelfee / fyr Godelake / alle these came with
 kynge Arthur and moo that can not ben reherced / 10

¶ Now leue we of these kynges and knyghtes / and lete vs
 speke of the grete araye that was made within the castel and
 aboute the castel for bothe partyes / the lady Dame Lyones
 ordeyned grete aray vpon her party for her noble knyghtes for
 al maner of lodgyng and vytaille that cam by land & by wa- 15
 ter that ther lacked no thyng for her party nor for the other
 but there was plente to be had for gold and fyluer for ky-
 nge Arthur and his knyghtes / And thenne ther cam the her-
 begeours from kynge Arthur for to herberowe hym & his ky-
 nges / dukes Erles Barons and knyghtes / And thenne fyr 20
 Gareth prayd dame Lyones and the reed knyghte of the reed
 laundes / and fyr Perfant and his broder / and fyre Grynga-
 mor that in no wyse ther shold none of them telle not his na-
 me and make no more of hym than of the leest knyghte that
 there was / for he faid I wille not be knowen of neyther more 25
 ne leffe / neyther at the begynnyng neyther at the endyng

¶ Thenne Dame Lyones faid vnto fyr Gareth / fyre I wylle
 lene you a rynge / but I wold pray you as ye loue me hertely
 lete me haue it ageyne whanne the turnement is done / ¶ For
 that rynge encreaceth my beaute moche more than it is of hym 30
 self / And the vertu of my rynge is that / that is grene it will
 torne to reed / and that is reed it wil torne in lykenes to gre-
 ne / And that is blewe it wil torne in lykenes of whyte / and
 that is whyte it wil torne in lykenes to blewe / and so it wil
 doo of al manere of colours / Also who that bereth my rynge / 35
 shalle lese no blood / and for grete loue I wil gyue you thys
 rynge / Gramercy faid fyr Gareth myn own lady / for this ry-
 nge is passyng mete for me / for it wille torne al manere of

lykenes that I am in / and that shalle cause me that I shall
 not be knowen / Thenne fyr Gryngamor gaf fyr Gareth a bay
 courfer that was a passyng good hors / Also he gafe hym go-
 od armoure and fure and a noble sward that somtyme fyre
 5 Gryngamors fader wanne vpon an hethen Tyraunt / And soo
 thus euery knyghte made hym redy to that turnement & kyng
 Arthur was comen two dayes to fore thassumpcion of our la-
 dy / And there was al maner of Royalte of al mynstralsye /
 that myghte be founde / Also there cam quene Gweneuer and
 10 the quene of Orkeney fyr Gareths moder / And vpon the as-
 sumpcion day whanne masse and matyns were done there we-
 re herowdes with trompettes commaunded to blowe to the feld
 And soo there came oute fyr Epynogrus the kynges sone of
 Northumberland from the castel / and there encountred with
 15 hym fyre Sagramor le desyrus / and eyther of hem brake their
 speres to their handes / And thenne came in fyre Palamydes
 oute of the Castel / and there encountred with hym Gawayne
 and eyther of hem smote other so hard that bothe the good kn-
 yghtes and their horses felle to the erthe / And thenne knygh-
 20 tes of eyther party rescowed their knyghtes / And thenne cam
 in fyr Safere and fyre Segwarydes bretheren to fyre Pala-
 mydes / and there encountred fyr Agrauayne with fyr Safere
 and fyr Gaherys encountred with fyre Segwarydes / So fyr
 Safere smote doune Agrauayne fyr Gawayns broder / and fir
 25 Segwarydes fyr Saferys broder And fyr Malgryne a knyzt
 of the Castel encountred with fyr Vwayne le blaunche may-
 nys / And there fyre Vwayne gaf fyr Malgryn a falle / that
 he had almost broke his neck

¶ Capitulum xxix

30 **T**Henne fyr Bryan de les yles and Grummore grum-
 morffum knyghtes of the Castel with fyre Aglouale
 and fyre Tor smote down fyr Gromere Gromorson to the erth
 Thenne cam in fyr Carados of the dolorous toure / & fyr Tur-
 quyne knyghtes of the Castel / and there encoütred with hem
 fyr Percyuale de galys & fyr Launce/ot de galys / that were
 35 two bretheren / And there encountred fyr Percyuale with fyre

[leaf 129 verso]

Caradus / and eyther brake their speres vnto their handes / &
 thenne fyr Turquyn with fyre Lamerak / and eyther of hem
 smote doune others hors and alle to the erthe / and eyther par-
 tyes refcowed other / and horsed them ageyn / And fyr Arnold
 and fyr Gautere knyghtes of the castel encountred with fyre 5
 Braundyles and fyr kay / and these four knyghtes encoun-
 tred myghtely / and brake their speres to their handes / Then-
 ne came in fyr Trystram / fyre Saduk / and fyre Dynas kny-
 ghtes of the castel / and there encountred fyr Trystram wyth
 fyre Bedyuere / and there fyr Bedyuere was smyten to the er- 10
 the bothe hors and man / And fyr Saduk encountred with fir
 Petypafe / and there fyr Saduk was ouerthrowen / And there
 Vwayne les auoutres smote doune fyr Dynas the fenefchal /
 Thenne came in fyr Perfaunt of Inde a knyght of the castel
 And there encountred with hym fyr Launcelot du lake / and 15
 there he smote fyr Perfaunts hors and man to the erthe / then-
 ne came fyr Pertylope from the castel / and there encountred
 with hym fyr Lyonel / and there fyr Pertylope the grene kn-
 yght smote doune fyr Lyonel broder to fyr Laūcelot / All this
 was marked by noble heroudes / who bare hym best / and there 20
 names / And thenne came in to the feld fyre Perymones the
 grene knyght fyr Perfaunts broder that was a knyght of the
 Castel / and he encountred with fyr Ector de marys / and ey-
 ther smote other so hard / that bothe their horses and they felle
 to the erthe / And thenne came in the reed knyght of the reed 25
 laundes and fyr Gareth from the castel / and there encountred
 with hem fyr Bors de ganys and fyr Bleoberys / and there
 the reed knyghte and fyr Bors smote other so hard that her
 speres braft and their horses felle grouelynge to the erthe
 Thenne fyr Blamor brake his spere vpon fyr Gareth / but of 30
 that stroke fyr Blamor felle to the erthe / whan fyr Galyhou-
 dyn fawe that / he bad fir gareth kepe hym / & fire gareth smote
 hym to the erthe / thenne fire Galyhud gate a spere to auenge
 his broder / & in the same wyse fir gareth ferued hym / & fir Dy-
 nadan & his broder la cote male tayle / & fir Sagramor defirus 35
 & fir Dodynas le faueage / All these he bare doun with one spe-
 re / Whan kyng Aguyfaūce of Irland fawe fyr Gareth fare so
 he merueiled what he myzt be þ^t one tyme femed grene & another

tyme at his ageyne comyng he femed blewe / And thus at e-
 uery cours that he rode to and fro he chaunged his colour so
 that ther myghte neyther kyng nor knyghte haue redy cong-
 nyssaunce of hym / Thenne fyr Anguyssaunce the kyng of Ir-
 5 land encountred with fyr Gareth / and there fyr Gareth smote
 hym from his hors fadyl and all / And thenne came kyng
 Caradus of Scotland and fyr Gareth smote hym down hors
 and man / And in the same wyse he ferued kyng Vryens of
 the land of Gore / And thenne came in fyr Bawdemagus /
 10 and fyr Gareth smote hym doune hors and man to the erthe
 And Bawdemagus sone Melyganus brake a spere vpon fir
 Gareth myghtely and knyghtely / And thenne fyr Galahaut
 the noble prynce cryed on hyghe knyghte with the many colou-
 urs wel haft thou Iusted / Now make the redy that I maye
 15 Iuste with the / Syre Gareth herd hym / and he gat a grete spe-
 re / and soo they encountred to gyder / and there the prynce bra-
 ke his spere / But fyr Gareth smote hym vpon the lyfte fyde
 of the helme / that he relyd here and there / and he had falle do-
 une had not his men recouerd hym / Soo god me help fayd
 20 kyng Arthur that same knyght with the many colours is a
 good knyghte / wherfor the kyng called vnto hym fyr Laun-
 celot and praid hym to encountre with that knyghte / Syr fa-
 id Launcelot I may wel fynde in my herte for to forbere hym
 as at this tyme / for he hath hadde trauail ynough this day / &
 25 whan a good knyghte doth soo wel vpon somme day / it is no
 good knyghtes parte to lette hym of his worship / And na-
 mely whan he seeth a Knyght hath done soo grete labour / for
 peradventure said fyr Launcelot his quarel is here this day / &
 perauentur he is best byloued with this lady of al that ben he-
 30 re / for I fee wel / he payneth hym & enforceth hym to do grete de-
 des / & therfor said fyr launcelot as for me this day he shall ha-
 ue the honour / though it lay in my power to put hym fro it / I
 wold not

¶ Capitulum rrr

35 **T**Henne whanne this was done / there was drawynge
 of swerdes / And thenne there began a fore turnement

[leaf 130 verso]

And there dyd fyr Lamerak merueyllous dedes of armes / &
 betwixe fyr Lamerak and fyre Ironfyde that was the reed
 knyghte of the reed laudes there was strong batail / & betwix
 fyre Palamides & Bleoberys there was a strong batail / & fir
 Gawayne and fyr Trystram mette / and there fyr Gawayne 5
 had the werse / for he pulled fyre Gawayne from his hors /
 And there he was long vpon foote and defouled / Thenne cam
 in fyr Launcelot and he smote fyr Turquyne / and he hym / &
 thenne came fyr Caradus his broder / and bothe at ones they
 assayed hym / & he as the moost noblest knyght of the world 10
 worshipfully foughte with hem bothe / that al men wondred of
 the nobleffe of fyr launcelot / And thenne came in fyr Gareth
 and knewe that it was fir launcelot that fought with tho two
 peryllous knyghtes / And thenne fyr Gareth came with his
 good hors and hurtled hem in sonder / & no stroke wold he sm- 15
 yte to fyr Launcelot / that aspyed fir launcelot & demed it shold
 be the good knyghte fyre Gareth / & thenne fyr Gareth rode he-
 re and there / & smote on the ryght hand & on the lyfte hand
 that alle the folke myghte wel aspye where that he rode / and
 by fortune he mette with his broder fyr Gawayn / and there he 20
 put fyr Gawayne to the werse / for he put of his helme / and so
 he ferued fyue or fyxe knyghtes of the rounde table that alle
 men said / he put hym in the most payne / and best he dyd his de-
 uoyr / For whan fyr Trystram beheld hym how he fyrst Iuf-
 ted and after foughte so wel with a sward / Thenne he rode 25
 vnto fyr Ironfyde and to fyre Perfaunt of ynde and asked
 hem by their feythe / what maner a knyghte is yonder knyght
 that semeth in soo many dyuerse colours / Truly me semeth fayd
 Trystram that he putteth hym self in grete payne for he ne-
 uer ceafeth / Wote ye not what he is fayd fyr Ironfyde / No fa- 30
 id fyr Trystram / thenne shal ye knowe that this is he that lo-
 ueth the lady of the castel and she hym ageyne / and this is he
 that wanne me whan I byfeged the lady of this castel / and
 this he that wanne fyr Perfaunt of ynde / and his thre brethe-
 ren / what is his name sayd fyr Trystram and of what blood 35
 is he come / he was called in the courte of kyng Arthur Be-
 aumayns / but his ryzt name is fir Gareth of Orkeney broder
 to fir Gawayn / by my hede said fir Tristram he is a good kniȝt

knyght and a bygge man of armes / & yf he be yong he fhalle
 preue a ful noble knyghte / he is but a childe they all faide & of
 fyr Launcelot he was made knyzt / therfor is he mykel the bet-
 ter faid Tryfram / And thenne fyr Tryfram / fyr Ironfyde /
 5 fyr Perfaunt and his broder rode to gyders for to helpe fir ga-
 reth / & thenne there were gyuen many strong strokes / And then-
 ne fyr Gareth rode oute on the one fyde to amende his helme /
 & thenne faid his dwerf take me your ryng that ye lese it not
 whyle that ye drynke / And fo whan he had dronken he gat on
 10 his helme / & egerly took his hors & rode in to the felde & lefte
 his ryng with his dwerf / and the dwerf was gladde the ry-
 ng was from hym / for thenne he wift wel he shold be knowen
 And thenne whan fyr Gareth was in the felde all folkes fa-
 we hym wel / & playnly that he was in yelowe colours / & the-
 15 re he raffyd of helmes & pulled doun knyztes that kyng Ar-
 thur had merueylle what knyzt he was / for the kyng fawe by
 his here that it was the fame knyght

¶ Capitulum xxxi

BVt by fore he was in so many colours and now he is
 but in one colour that is yelowe / Now goo faid kyng
 20 Arthur vnto dyuerse heroudes and ryde aboute hym &
 aspye what maner knyghte he is / for I haue speryd of many
 knyghtes this day that ben vpon his party / and all faye they
 knowe hym not / And fo an heroude rode nyhe Gareth as he cou-
 de / and there he fawe wryten aboute his helme in golde / This
 25 helme is fyr gareth of Orkeney / Thenne the heroude cryed as he
 were wood / & many heroudes with hym / This is fyre gareth
 of Orkeney in the yelowe armes that by all kynges and kny-
 ghtes of Arthurs beheld hym & awayted / & thenne they pre-
 ffyd al to beholde hym / & euer the heroudes cryed this is fyre
 30 gareth of Orkeney kyng Lots sone / and whan fyr gareth af-
 pyed that he was discoueryd / thenne he doubled his strokes / &
 smote doune fyr Sagamore & his broder fir gawayn / O bro-
 der faide fir gawayn I wende ye wolde not haue fryken me /
 fo whan he herd hym say fo he thrang here & there / & fo with gre-
 35 te payne he gat out of the prees / and there he mette with his
 dwerf / O boye faid fyr gareth thou haft begyled me foule this
 day that thou kepte my ryng / Gyue it me anone ageyn that

I may hyde my body with al / and foo he tooke it hym / And
 thenne they all wift not where he was become / and fyr Gawa-
 yn had in maner aspyed where fyr Gareth rode / and thenne he
 rode after with alle his myghte / that aspyed fyr Gareth and
 rode lyghtely in to the forest that fyr Gawayn wift not where 5
 he was become / And whan fyr Gareth wyft that fyr Gawa-
 yn was past / he asked the dwerf of best counceil / Syr said the
 dwerf / me semeth it were best now that ye are efcaped fro spy-
 eng that ye fend my lady dame lyones her ryngge / It is wel
 aduyfed said fyr Gareth / now haue it here and bere it to her / 10
 And faye that I recommaunde me vnto her good grace / and
 faye her I will come whan I maye / and I pray her to be true
 and feythful to me as I wil be to her / Syr said the dwerf it
 shal be done as ye commaunde / and foo he rode his waye and
 dyd his eraund vnto the lady / Thenne she said where is my 15
 knyghte fyr Gareth / Madame said the dwerf he bad me faye /
 that he wold not be long from you / ¶ And foo lyghtely the
 dwerf cam ageyne vnto fyr Gareth that wold ful fayne ha-
 ue had a lodgyng / for he had nede to be reposed / And thenne
 felle there a thonder and a rayne as heuen and erthe shold 20
 goo to gyder / And fyr Gareth was not a lytyl wery / for of al
 that day he had but lytel rest neyther his hors nor he / So this
 fyr Gareth rode foo longe in that forest vntyl the nyghte came
 And euer it lyghtned and thondred as it had ben woode
 At the last by fortune he came to a Castel / and there he herd 25
 the waytes vpon the wallys ¶ **Capitulum xxxij /**

Thenne fyr Gareth rode vnto the barbycan of the castel /
 and praid the porter fayr to lete hym in to the castel /
 The porter anfuerd vngoodely ageyne / and saide thow
 getest no lodgyng here / Fayr fyr fay not foo for I am a knyghte 30
 of kyng Arthurs / & pray the lord or the lady of this castel to
 gyue me herberow for the loue of kyng Arthur / Thenne the
 porter wente vnto the duchesse / and told her how ther was a
 knyghte of kyng Arthurs wold haue herberowe / lete hym in
 said the duchesse / for I wille see that knyghte / And for kyng 35
 Arthurs sake he shalle not be herberoules /

¶ Thenne she yode vp in to a toure ouer the gate with greeete
 torche lyght / whan sir Gareth sawe that torche lyghte he cryed

on hyhe whether thou be lord or lady gyaunt or champyon I
 take no force fo that I may haue herberowe this nyghte / & yf
 hit fo be that I muft nedes fyghte / spare me not to morne when
 I haue reftyd me for bothe I and myn hors ben wery / Syr
 5 knyghte faid the lady thou spekest knyghtly and boldly / but
 wete thou wel the lord of this castel loueth not kyng Arthur /
 nor none of his court / for my lord hath euer ben ageynst hym
 and therfor thou were better not to come within this castel /
 For and thou come in this nyghte / thou muft come in vnder
 10 fuche fourme that where someuer thou mete my lord by sty₃ or
 by strete / thou muft yelde the to hym as prysoner / Madame fa-
 id fyre Gareth what is your lord and what is his name / fyr
 my lordes name is the duke de la rouse / wel madame faid fyr
 Gareth I shal promyse yow in what place I mete your lord
 15 I shalle yelde me vnto hym and to his good grace with that
 I vnderstande he wille do me no harme / And yf I vnderstand
 that he wille I wil releace my self and I can with my spe-
 re and my fwerd / ye fay wel faid the ducheffe / and thenne she
 lete the drawe brydge doune / and soo he rode in to the halle /
 20 and there he alyghte / and his hors was ledde in to a stable / &
 in the halle he vnarmed hym / & faide madame I will not oute
 of this holle this nyghte / And whan it is daye lyght / lete fee /
 who wil haue adoo with me / he shal fynde me redy / Thenne
 was he fette vnto fouper / and had many good dyffhes / then-
 25 ne fyr Gareth lyft wel to ete / and knyghtely he ete his mete /
 and egerly / there was many a fair lady by hym / & some faid
 they neuer sawe a goodlyer man nor so wel of etyng / then-
 ne they made hym passyng good chere / & shortly whan he had
 souped his bedde was made there fo he rested hym al nyghte /
 30 And on the morne he herd masse & brake his fast & toke his le-
 ue at the ducheffe / & at them al / & thanked her goodely of her
 lodgyng & of his good chere / & thenne she asked gym his na-
 me / Madame he faide truly my name is Gareth of Orkeney / &
 some men calle me Beaumayns / thēne knewe she wel it was
 35 the same knyzt that fouzt for dame lyones / fo fir gareth depar-
 ted & rode vp in to a montayne / & ther mette hym a knyghte /
 his name was fyr Bendelayne and fayd to fyr Gareth thou
 shalt not passe this way / for outhur thou shalt Iuste with me or

els be my prysoner / Thenne wille I Iuste said fyr Gareth /
 And soo they lete their horses renne / and there fyr Gareth smote
 hym thorou oute the body / and fyr Bendalyne rode forth to
 his castel there befyde and there dyed / So fyr gareth wold ha-
 ue rested hym / and he cam rydyng to Bendalaynis castel / 5
 Thenne his knyghtes and feruauntes aspyed that it was he
 that had slayne their lord / Thenne they armed xx good men
 and cam out and affailed fyr gareth / and soo he had no spe-
 re but his swerd / and put his shelde afore hym / and there they
 brake their speres vpon hym / and they affailed hem passyng- 10
 ly fore / But euer fyr gareth deffended hym as a knyght

¶ Capitulum xxxiii

SOo whan they sawe that they myghte not ouercome
 hym / they rode from hym / and took their counceylle to
 flee his hors / and soo they cam in vpon fyr gareth / and with
 speres they flewe his hors / and thenne they affailed hym hard 15
 But whan he was on foote / there was none that he raughte
 but he gaf him suche a buffet that he dyd neuer recouer / So he
 flewe hem by one and one tyl they were but foure / and there
 they fledde / and fire gareth took a good hors that was one of
 theirs and rode his waye / Thenne he rode a grete paas til that 20
 he came to a castel and there he herd moche mornynge of lady-
 es and gentylwymmen / so ther cam by hym a page / what noyse
 is this said fyr gareth that I here within this castel / Syre
 knyghte said the page here ben within this castel thyrtty lady-
 es and alle they be wydowes / For here is a knyght that way- 25
 teth dayly vpon this castel / and his name is the broun kn-
 yght withoute pyte / and he is the peryllouft knyght that now
 lyueth / And therfor fir said the page I rede you flee / Nay fa-
 id fir gareth I wille not flee though thou be aferd of hym /
 And thenne the page sawe where came the broune knyghte / loo 30
 said the page yonder he cometh / lete me dele with hym said fyre
 gareth / And whan eyther of other had a fyghte they lete the-
 yr horses renne / and the broune knyghte brake his spere and
 fir gareth smote hym thorou oute the body that he ouerthrewe
 hym to the ground stark dede / So fir gareth rode in to the castel 35
 & praid the ladyes þ^t he myzt repose hym / allas said the ladyes
 ye may not be lodged here / make hym good chere said the page

for this knyghte hath slayne your enemy / thenne they al made hym good chere as laye in their power / But wete ye wel they maade hym good chere for they myghte none otherwyfe doo for they were but poure / And fo on the morne he wente to
5 maffe / and there he sawe the thyrtty ladyes knele / and laye grouelyng vpon dyuerse tombes makynge grete dole and forowe / Thenne fyr Gareth wyft wel that in the tombes laye their lordes / Fayre ladyes said fyr Gareth ye must at the next feest of Pentecost be at the court of kynge Arthur / and saye that I
10 fyr Gareth sente you thyder / we shal doo this said the ladyes Soo he departed / and by fortune he came to a mountayne / & there he found a goodely knyght that badde hym abyde fyr knyghte and Iuste with me / what are ye said fyr Gareth / My name is said he the duke de la rowse / A fyr ye ar the same knyghte that I lodged ones in your Castel / And there I made promyse vnto your lady that I shold yelde me vnto yow
15 A said the duke arte thou that proud knyghte that profereft to fyghte with my knyghtes / therfore make the redy for I wil haue adoo with you / Soo they lete their horses renne / and ther
20 fyr Gareth fmote the duke doune from his hors / But the duke lyghtly auoyded his hors / and dresseid his shelde and drew his swerd / and bad fyr Gareth alyghte and fyghte with hym / Soo he dyd alyghte / and they dyd grete batail to gyders more than an houre / and eyther hurte other ful fore / Att
25 the last fyr Gareth gat the duke to the erthe / and wold haue slayn hym / and thenne he yelded hym to hym / Thenne must ye goo said fyr Gareth vnto fyr Arthur my lord at the next feest and saye that I fyr Gareth of Orkeney sente you vnto hym / hit shal be done said the duke / and I wil doo to yow homage and
30 feaute with an C knyghtes with me / and alle the dayes of my lyf to doo you feruyse where ye wille commaunde me /

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

Soo the duke departed / and fyr Gareth stode there alone and there he sawe an armed knyght comyng toward hym / Thenne fyre Gareth toke the dukes shelde / and

mounted vpon horsbak / and soo withoute bydyng they ranne
 to gyder as it had ben the thonder / And there that knyzt hurt
 fyr Gareth vnder the fyde with his spere / And thenne they a-
 lyghte / and drewe their swardes / and gafe grete strokes that
 the blood trayled to the ground / And soo they foughte two 5
 houres / At the last there came the damoyfel Lynet that somme
 men calle the damoyfel faueage / and she came rydyng vpon
 an ambelynge meule / and there she cryed al on hyghe / fyr Ga-
 wayne fyr Gawayne leue thy fyghtyng with thy broder fyre
 Gareth / And whan he herd her sayer soo he threwe aweye hys 10
 shelde and his sward / and ranne to fyre Gareth / and tooke
 hym in his armes / and fythen kneled doune and asked hym
 mercy / What are ye said fyr Gareth that ryght now were soo
 stronge and soo myghty / and now so sodenly yelde you to me
 O Gareth I am your broder fyr Gawayn that for youre sake 15
 haue had grete forou and labour / Thenne fyr Gareth vnaced
 his helme / and knelyd doune to hym / and asked hym mercy /
 thenne they rose both and embraced eyther other in their armes
 and wepte a grete whyle or they myghte speke / and eyther of
 hem gaf other the pryce of the bataille / And there were many 20
 kynde wordes bitwene hem / Allas my faire broder said fir ga-
 wayn perde I owe of ryghte to worshippe you / and ye were
 not my broder / for ye haue worshipped kyng Arthur and all
 his courte / for ye haue sente me mo worshipful knyghtes this
 twelue moneth than fyxe the best of the round table haue do- 25
 ne excepte fir Launcelot / Thenne cam the damoyfel faueage that
 was the lady Lynet that rode with fir gareth soo longe / and
 there she dyd staunche fir gareths woundes / and fir gawayns
 Now what wille ye doo said the damoyfel faueage / me semeth
 that it were wel do þ^t Arthur had wetyng of you both for yo- 30
 ur horses are soo bryfed that they may not bere / Now faire da-
 moyfel said fyr Gawayne / I praye you ryde vnto my lord myn
 vnkel kyng Arthur / and telle hym what aduenture is to me
 betyd here / and I suppose he wille not tary long / Thenne she
 tooke her meule and lightly she came to kyng Arthur / that 35
 was but two myle thens / And whan she had told hym tydyn-
 ges the kyng bad gete hym a palfroy / ¶ And whan he was
 vpon his bak he badde the lordes and ladyes come after who

that wold / and there was fadelyng and brydelyng of quenes
horfes and prynces horfes / & wel was hym that fooneft myght
be redy / Soo whan the kynge came there as they were he sawe
fyr Gawayn and fyr Gareth fyte vpon a lytel hylle fyde / &
5 thenne the kynge auoyded his hors / And whanne he cam ny-
ghe fyre Gareth / he wold haue spoken but he myghte not / and
therwith he fanke doune in a fwoune for gladneffe / and soo
they starte vnto theyr vnkyl / and requyred hym of his good
grace to be of good comforte / Wete ye wel the kyng made gre-
10 te ioye and many a pyteous complaynte he made to fyr Ga-
reth / And euer he wepte as he had ben a chyld / With that cam
his moder the quene of Orkeney dame Morgause / And whan
she sawe fyr Gareth redely in the vyfage she myghte not wepe
but fodenly felle doun in a fwoune / and lay there a grete why-
15 le lyke as she had ben dede / And thenne fyr Gareth recomfor-
ted his moder in fuche wyfe that she recouerd and made good
chere / Thenne the kynge commaunded that al maner of knygh-
tes that were vnder his obeiffaunce shold make their lodgyng
ryght there for the loue of his neuwes / And soo it was do-
20 ne and al manere of purueaunce purueyd that ther lacked
nothyng that myghte be gotten of tame nor wyld for gold or
fyluer / And thenne by the meanes of the damoyfel Sauage
fyr Gawayne and fyr Gareth were heled of their woundes /
and there they foiourned eyght dayes / Thenne said kyng Ar-
25 thur vnto the damoyfel faueage I merueylle that your fyf-
ter Dame Lyones cometh not here to me / and in especyal that she
cometh not to vyfyte her knyghte my neuwe fyre Gareth that
hath had soo moche trauille for her loue / My lord said the da-
moyfel Lynet ye must of your good grace hold her excused /
30 For she knoweth not that my lord fyr Gareth is here / Go the-
ne for her said kynge Arthur that we may be apoynted what
is best to done accordyng to the plesyr of my neuwe / Syr fa-
id the damoyfel that shal be done / and soo she rode vnto her fyf-
ter / And as lyghtely as she myght made her redy & she cam
35 on the morne with her broder fyr Gryngamor / and with her
xl knyghtes / And so whan she was come she had alle the che-
re that myghte be done bothe of the kynge and of many other
kynges and quenes

¶ Capitulum xxxv

ANd amonge alle these ladyes she was named the fay-
 rest and pyreles / Thenne whanne fyr Gawayn sawe
 her / there was many a goodely loke and goodely wordes that
 alle men of worship had ioye to beholde them / Thenne cam ky-
 nge Arthur and many other kynges and dame Gweneuer & 5
 the quene of Orkeney / And there the kyng asked his neuwe
 fyre Gareth whether he wold haue that lady as peramour or
 to haue her to his wyf / My lord wete yow wel that I loue
 her aboue al ladyes lyuyng / Now fayre lady said kyng Ar-
 thur what say ye / Moost noble kyng said dame Lyones wete 10
 yow wel that my lord fyr Gareth is to me more leuer to haue
 and welde as my husband than ony kyng or prynce that is
 crystened / and yf I maye not haue hym I promyse yow I
 wylle neuer haue none / For my lord Arthur sayd dame Ly-
 ones wete ye wel he is my fyrst loue and he shal be the laste / 15
 And yf ye wil suffre hym to haue his wyl and free choyse I
 dare saye he wylle haue me / That is trouthe said fyr Gareth /
 And I haue not you and weld not you as my wyf / there
 shal neuer lady ne gentylwoman reioyce me / What neuwe
 said the kyng is the wynde in that dore / for wete ye wel I 20
 wold not for the stynte of my croune to be caufar to withdra-
 we your hertes / And wete ye wel ye con not loue so wel but
 I shal rather encrease hit than dystresse hit / And also ye shal
 haue my loue and my lordship in the vttermest wyse that may
 lye in my power / And in the same wyse said fir Gareths mo- 25
 der / thenne there was made a prouysyon for the day of mary-
 ge / and by the kynges aduyse it was prouyded that it shold
 be at Mychelmas folowyng at kynkenadon by the see fyde / for
 ther is plentyful cuntry / And soo it was cryed in al the
 places thurgh the royamme / And thenne fyr Gareth sent his 30
 somones to alle these knyghtes and ladyes that he had won-
 nen in batail to fore that they shold be at his day of maryage
 at kynkenadon by the sandys / And thenne dame Lyones and
 the damoyfel Lynet with fyr Gryngamor rode to there castel /
 and a goodely and a ryche ryng she gaf to fyr Gareth / and 35
 he gaf her another / And kyng Arthur gaf her a ryche bee of

gold / and soo she departed / and kyng Arthur and his felau-
 ship rode toward Kynkenadon / and fyr Gareth broughte his
 lady on the way / & so cam to the kyng ageyne and rode with
 hym / Lord the grete chere that fyr launcelot made of fir Gareth
 5 and he of hym / for there was neuer no knyght that fyr gareth
 loued so wel as he dyd fyr Launcelot / and euer for the most
 party he wold be in fyr launcelots company / for after fyr Ga-
 reth had aspyed fir Gawayns condycions he withdrewe hym
 self fro his broder fyr Gawayns felaufhip / for he was venge-
 10 able / and where he hated he wold be auengyd with murther
 and that hated fyr gareth

¶ Capitulum xxxvi

Soo hit drewe faste to Mychelmas / and thyder came
 dame Lyones the lady of the castel peryllous and her
 fyfter dame Lynet with fyre gryngamor her broder with hem /
 15 For he had the conduyte of these ladyes / And there they were
 lodged at the deuyse of kyng Arthur / And vpon mychelmas
 day the Biffhop of Caunterbury made the weddyng betwixe
 fyr gareth and the lady Lyones with grete solempnyte / and
 kyng Arthur made gaherys to wedde the damoyfel saueage /
 20 that was dame Lynet / and kyng Arthur made fyr Agraau-
 ayne to wedde dame Lyones nees a fayr lady / her name was
 dame Laurel / And so whan this solemnacion was done / then-
 ne came in the grene knyghte fyr Pertylope with thyrtty kn-
 yghtes / and there he dyd homage and feaute to fyr gareth and
 25 these knyghtes to hold of hym for euermore / Also fir Pertilo-
 pe said I pray you that at this feest I maye be your cham-
 berlayne / with a good wil said fyr gareth / fyth it lyketh you
 to take soo symple on offyce / Thenne come in the reed knyghte
 with thre score knyghtes with hym / and dyde to fyr Gareth
 30 homage and feaute / and alle tho knyghtes to hold of hym
 for euermore / And thenne this fyr Perymonyys praide fir ga-
 reth to graunte hym to be his chyef botteler at that hyghe feest
 I wil wel faide fir gareth that ye haue this offyce and it we-
 re better / Thenne came in fyr Perfant of Inde with an C kn-
 35 yghtes with hym / and there he dyd homage and feaute / and

al his knyghtes shold doo hym feruyfe / and hold their londes of hym for euer / and there he prayd fyr Gareth to make hym his Sewar chyef at the feest / I wil wel said fyr Gareth that ye haue it & it were better / Thenne cam the dukde la rowse with an C knyghtes with hym / and there he dyd ho- 5
 mage and feaute to fyr Gareth / and soo to hold their londes of hym for euer / And he requyred fyr Gareth that he myght ferue hym of the wyn that day at that feest / I wil wel sayd fyr Gareth and it were better / Thenne came in the reed knyghte of the reed laundes that was fyr Ironfyde / and he broughte 10
 with hym thre honderd knyghtes / and there he dyd homage & feaute / and al these knyghtes to hold their landes of hym for euer / And thenne he asked fyr Gareth to be his keruer / I will wel said fyr Gareth and it please you / Thenne came in to the courte thyrtty ladyes / and alle they femed wydowes / and 15
 tho thyrtty ladyes broughte with hem many fayre gentylwy-
 mmen / And alle they kneled doune at ones vnto kyng arthur and vnto fyr Gareth / and there al tho ladyes told the kyng how fyr Gareth delyuerd hem from the dolorous toure / and flewe the broune knyght withoute pyte / And therefore we and 20
 oure heyres for euermore wille doo homage vnto fyr Gareth of Orkeney / So thenne the kynges and quenes / prynces & erlys Barons and many bold knyghtes wente vnto mete / & well maye ye wete there were al manere of mete plentyuoufly / alle manere rules and games with al manere of mynstralfy that 25
 was vsed in tho dayes / ¶ Also ther was grete Iustes thre dayes / But the kyng wold not suffre fyre Gareth to Iuste by cause of his newe bryde / for as the frensshe book fayth that dame Lyones defyred of the kyng that none that were wedded shold Iuste at that feest / Soo the fyrst day there Iusted fir la- 30
 merak de galys / for he ouerthrewe thyrtty knyghtes / & did paf-
 syng merueillously dedes of armes / and thenne kyng Arthur made fyr Perfaunt and his two bretheren knyghtes of the round table to their lyues ende / and gaf hem grete londes / Also the fecond daye there Iusted Trystram best / and he ouerthrew 35
 fourty knyghtes / and dyd there merueillous dedes of armes
 And there kyng Arthur made Ironfyde that was the reed knyghte of the reed laundes a knyghte of the table round to

his lyues ende / and gaf hym grete landes / The thyrd day there
 Iusted fyr launcelot du lake / and he ouerthrewe fyfty knygh-
 tes and dyd many merueyllous dedes of armes that all men
 wondred on hym / And there kynge Arthur made the duke de
 5 la rouse a knyghte of the round table to his lyues ende / and
 gaf hym grete landes to spende / But whan this Iustes were
 done / fyr Lamerak and fyr Trystram departed fodenly / & wold
 not be knowm / for the whiche kyng Arthur and all the court
 were fore displeasyd / And soo they helde the courte fourty da-
 10 yes with grete folempnyte / And this fyr Gareth was a no-
 ble knyghte and a wel rulyd and fayr langaged

¶ Thus endeth this tale of fyr Gareth of Orkeney that wed-
 ded dame Lyones of the castel peryllous / And also fyr Gabe-
 rys wedded her systre dame Lynet / that was called the damo-
 ysel saueage / And fyr Agrauayne wedded dame Laurel a fa-
 yr lady and grete and myghty landes with grete rycheffe
 gaf with them kyng Arthur that ryally they myght lyue tyl
 their lyues ende

Here foloweth the viij book the which is the first book of sir
 Tristram de Lyones / & who was his fader & his moder / & hou
 he was borne and fosteryd / And how he was made knyghte

¶ Capitulum primum



It was a kyng that hyghte Melyodas / and he
 was lord and kyng of the countre of Lyonas
 And this Melyodas was a lykely knyght as
 ony was that tyme lyuyng / And by fortune
 he wedded kyng Markys fyfter of Cornewaille / And she 5
 was called Elyzabeth that was callyd bothe good and fair
 And at that tyme kyng Arthur regned / and he was hole
 kyng of Englund / walys and Scotland & of many other
 royammes how be it there were many kynges that were lordes
 of many countreyes / but alle they held their landes of kyng 10
 Arthur / for in walys were two kynges / and in the north we-
 re many kynges / And in Cornewail and in the west were
 two kynges / ¶ Also in Irland were two or thre kynges
 and al were vnder the obeiffaunce of kyng Arthur / So was
 the kyng of Fraunce and the kyng of Bretayn and all the 15
 lordshippes vnto Rome / So whan this kyng Melyodas hadde
 ben with his wyf / within a whyle she waxid grete with child
 and she was a ful meke lady / and wel she loued her lord / &
 he her ageyne / foo there was grete ioye betwixe them / Thenne
 ther was a lady in that countrey that had loued kyng Me- 20
 lyodas longe / And by no meane she neuer coude gete his loue
 therfore she lete ordeyne vpon a day as kyng Melyodas rode
 on huntynge / for he was a grete chacer / and there by an en-
 chaument she made hym chace an herte by hym self alone / til
 that he came to an old Castel / and there anone he was taken 25
 pryfoner by the lady that hym loued / Whanne Elyzabeth kyng
 Melyodas myft her lord / and she was nyghe oute of her wytte
 and also as grete with child as she was she took a gentylwo-
 man with her / and ranne in to the forest to feke her lord /
 And whanne she was ferre in the forest she myghte no ferther 30
 for she byganne to trauaille fast of her child / And she had ma-
 ny grymly throwes / her gentylwoman halp her alle that she
 myghte / And foo by myracle of oure lady of heuen she was
 delyuerd with grete paynes / But she had taken suche cold for
 the defaute of helpe that depe draughtes of deth toke her / that 35
 nedes she must dye and departe oute of this world / ther was

none other boote / And whanne this quene Elyzabeth sawe
 that ther was none other bote / thenne she made grete dole / and
 said vnto her gentywoman / whan ye see my lord kyng Me-
 lyodas recommaunde me vnto hym / and telle hym what pay-
 5 nes I endure here for gis loue / and how I must dye here for
 his sake for defaute of good helpe / and lete hym wete that I
 am ful fory to departe out of this world fro hym / therfor pray
 hym to be frende to my soule / Now lete me see my lytel child /
 for whome I haue had alle this forowe / And whanne she sa-
 10 we hym she said thus / A my lytel sone thou hast murdered
 thy moder / and therefore I suppose thou that arte a murtherer
 soo yong / thou arte ful lykely to be a manly man in thyn age /
 And by cause I shal dye of the byrthe of the / I charge the
 gentywoman / that thou pray my lord kyng Melyodas that
 15 whan he is crystned lete calle hym Trystram that is as moch
 to faye / as a forouful byrthe / And ther with this quene gaf
 vp the ghooft and dyed / Thenne the gentywoman leyd her
 vnder an vmbre of a grete tree / and thenne she lapped the ch-
 yld as wel as she myght for cold / Ryghte soo ther came the
 20 Barons folowyng after the quene / ¶ And whan they sawe
 that she was dede / and vnderstood none other but the kyng
 was destroyed /

¶ Capitulum secundum

Thenne certayne of them wold haue slayne the child /
 by cause they wold haue ben lordes of the countrey of
 25 Lyonas / But thenne thorou the faire speche of the gentywo-
 man / and by the meanes that she made / the moost party of the
 Barons wold not assente ther to / And thenne they lete cary
 home the dede quene / and moche dole was made for her / Thenne
 this meane whyle Merlyn delyuerd kyng Melyodas out of
 30 pryson on the morne after his quene was dede / And so when
 the kyng was come home / the moost party of the barons ma-
 de grete ioye / But the sorow that the kyng made for his quene
 that myghte no tong telle

Soo thenne the kyng lete entere her rychely and after he le-
 35 te crystene his child as his wyf had commaunded afore her

deth / And thenne he lete calle hym Trystram the sorouful borne child / ¶ Thenne the kyng Melyodas endured feuen yeres withoute a wyf / And alle this tyme Trystram was nourysshed wel / ¶ Thenne hit befelle that kyng Melyodas wedded kyng Howles daughter of Bretayne / and anone 5 she hadde children of kyng Melyodas / thenne was she heuy and wrothe / that her children shold not reioyce the Countrey of Lyones / wherfor this quene ordeyned for to poyfone yong Trifram / So she lete poyfon be put in a pyece of syluer in the chamber where as Trystram and her children were to gyders / 10 Vnto that entente that whanne Trystram were thursty he shold drynke that drynke / And so hit felle vpon a daye the quenes sone as he was in that chamber / aspyed the pyece with poyfon / and he wende hit hadde ben good drynke / and by cause the child was thursty he tooke the pyece with poyfon and 15 dranke frely / and there with al sodenly the child braft & was dede / whanne the quene Melyodas wyft of the dethe of her sone wete ye wel that she was heuy / But yet the kyng vnderstode no thyng of her treason / ¶ Not withstandynge the quene wold not leue this / but este she lete ordeyne more poyfon / and 20 putte hit in a pyece / And by fortune kyng Melyodas her husband fond the pyece with wyn where was the poyfon / and he that was moche thursty took the pyece for to drynke ther oute And as he wold haue dronken therof / the Quene aspyed hym / and thenne she ranne vnto hym / and pulled the pyece 25 from hym sodenly ¶ The kyng merueilled why she dyd soo / and remembryd hym how her sone was sodenly slayne with poyfon / And thenne he took her by the hand and sayd / thou fals traitresse thou shalte telle me what manere of drynke this is / or els I shalle flee the / And ther with he pul- 30 led oute his swerd / and sware a grete othe that he shold flee her / but yf she told hym trouthe / A mercy my lord sayd she / and I shalle telle you alle / And thenne she told hym why she wold haue slayne Trystram / by cause her chyldren shold reioyce his land / wel said the kyng Melyodas / and therfor shal 35 ye haue the lawe / And soo she was dampned by the assente of the Barons to be brent / and thenne was ther made a grete fyre / & ryght as she was at the fyre to take her execucion / yong

Tryfram knelyd afore kynge Melyodas / and befought hym
to gyue hym a bone / I wylle wel faid the kynge ageyne /
¶ Thenne faide yonge Tryfram gyue me the lyf of thy que-
ne my stepmoder / That is vnryghtfully asked faid kyng Me-
5 lyodas / for thou oughte of ryght to hate her / for she wold ha-
ue slayne the with that poyson and she myghte haue hadde her
wille / And for thy sake moost is my cause that she sholde dye
Syr faide Tryfram as for that I byfeche you of your mercy
that ye wille forgyue hit her / And as for my parte god forgy-
10 ue it her and I doo / and soo moche it lyked your hyhenes to
graunte me my bone / for goddes loue I requyre you hold yo-
ur promyse / Sythen hit is soo faid the kynge I wille that ye
haue her lyf / thenne faid the kynge I gyue her to you / and go
ye to the fyre and take her / and doo with her what ye wylle /
15 Soo fyre Tryfram wente to the fyre / and by the commaunde-
ment of the kyng delyuerd her from the dethe / But after that
kynge Melyodas wold neuer haue adoo with her as at bedde
and borde / But by the good meanes of yong Tryfram he ma-
de the kynge and her accorded / But thenne the kynge wold
20 not suffre yonge Tryfram to abyde no lenger in his courte

¶ Capitulum iij

And thenne he lete ordeyne a gentylman that was wel
lerned and taughte / his name was gouernayle / and
thenne he sente yonge Tryfram with Gouernayle in
to Fraunce to lerne the langage / and nurture / and dedes of
25 armes / And there was Tryfram more than feuen yeres /

¶ And thenne whanne he wel couthe speke the langage and
hadde lerned alle that he myght lerne in that countreyes / then-
ne he came home to his fader kynge Melyodas ageyne / and so
Tryfram lerned to be an harper passyng alle other that there
30 was none fuche called in no countrey / and soo in harpyng &
on Instrumentys of musyke he applyed hym in his yongthe
for to lerne / And after as he growed in myght and strengthe
he laboured euer in huntynge and in haukyng soo that neuer

gentyman more that euer we herd rede of / ¶ And as the
 book fayth / he beganne good mefures of blowyng of beeftes of
 venery and beeftes of chace / and alle manere of vermayns /
 and alle thefe termes we haue yet of haukyng and huntyng
 And therefore the book of venery / of haukyng and hunty- 5
 nge is called the book of fyr Tryfram / Wherfor as me femeth
 alle gentylnen that beren old armes oughte of ryght to ho-
 noure fyre Tryfram for the goodly termes that gentylmen ha-
 ue and vse / and shalle to the daye of dome / that there by in a
 maner alle men of worship maye diffeuer a gentylman fro a 10
 yoman / and from a yoman a vylayne / For he that gentyl is
 wyll drawe hym vnto gentil tatches / and to folowe the cus-
 tommes of noble gentylnen ¶ Thus fyr Tryfram
 endured in Cornewaile vntyl he was bygge / and stronge / of
 the age of xvij yeres / And thenne the kynge Melyodas had 15
 grete ioye of fyr Tryfram / and soo had the quene his wyfe /
 For euer after in her lyf by cause fyre Tryfram faued her
 from the fyre she dyd neuer hate hym more after / but loued
 hym euer after / and gaf Tryfram many grete yestes for eue-
 ry estate loued hym / where that he wente 20

¶ Capítulum quartum

THenne it befelle that kynge Anguyffhe of Irland /
 fente vnto kynge Marke of Cornewaile for his tru-
 age that Cornewaile had payed many wynters / And
 alle that tyme kynge Marke was behynde of the truage for fe-
 uen yeres / And kyng Marke and his Barons gaf vnto the 25
 meffager of Irland thefe wordes and anfuere that they wo-
 ld none paye / and bad the meffager goo vnto his Kynge
 Anguyffhe / and telle hym we wille paye hym no truage / but
 telle youre lord / and he wille alweyes haue truage of vs of
 Cornewaile / bydde hym fende a trusty knyghte of his land / 30
 that wille fyghte for his ryght / and we shalle fynde another
 for to defende oure ryght / With this anfuere the meffagers de-
 parted in to Irland / ¶ And whanne kynge Anguyffh vn-
 derstood the anfuere of the meffagers / he was wonderly wroth

And thenne he callyd vnto hym fyr Marhaus the good knyght that was nobly preued / and a knyghte of the table round / And this Marhaus was broder vnto the quene of Irland / ¶ Thenne the kynge sayd thus / Fayre broder fir Marhaus I praye yow goo in to Cornewaile for my sake and do bataille for our truage that of ryght we oughte to haue / and what fomeuer ye spende ye shalle haue suffyciently more than ye shal nede / Syre saide Marhaus wete ye wel that I shalle not be lothe to doo bataille in the ryght of you and your land
 10 with the best knyght of the table rounde / for I knowe them for the moost party what ben there dedes / and for to auance my dedes and to encrease my worship I wylle ryght gladly goo vnto this iourneye for our ryghte

¶ Soo in alle haste there was made purueance for fyr marhaus / and he hadde al thyng that to hym neded / and soo he departed out of Irland / and arryued vp in Cornewaile euen fast by the castel of Tyntagil / And whan kynge Marke vnderstood that he was there arryued to fyghte for Irland /

¶ Thenne made kynge marke grete sorou whan he vnderstood
 20 that the good and noble knyghte fyre Marhaus was come / For they knewe no knyght that durste haue adoo with hym / For at that tyme fyre Marhaus was called one of the famofest and renoumed knyghtes of the world

¶ And thus fyre Marhaus abode in the fee / and euery daye
 25 he sente vnto kynge Marke for to paye the truage that was behynde of feuen yere / outhere els to fynde a knyght to fyghte with hym for the truage / This maner of message fyre Marhaus sente dayly vnto kynge Marke / ¶ Thenne they of Cornewaile lete make cryes in euery place that what knyght
 30 wold fyghte for to faue the truage of Cornewaile he sholde be rewarded soo that he sholde fare the better terme of hys lyf /

¶ Thenne some of the Barons sayde to kynge Marke / and counceiled hym to sende to the courte of Kynge Arthur for to feke fyre Launcelot du lake that was that tyme
 35 named for the merueillouft Knyght of alle the worlde /

¶ Thenne there were somme other Barons that counceyllled the Kynge not to doo soo & said that it was laboure in vayn /

by caufe fyr Marhaus was a knyght of the round table / ther-
 for any of hem will be loth to haue adoo with other / but yf hit
 were any knyght at his owne request wold fyghte dyfgyufed
 and vnknownen / Soo the kyng and alle his barons affented
 that it was no bote to feke any knyght of the round table / 5
 ¶ This meane whyle came the langage and the noyse vnto
 kyng Meliodas hou that fyre Marhaus abode bataille fafte by
 Tyntagil / And how kyng Marke couthe fynde no maner kn-
 yghte to fyghte for hym / Whan yong Tryfram herd of thys /
 he was wrothe and fore afhamed that ther durst no knyghte 10
 in Cornewaile haue adoo with fyr Marhaus of Irland /

¶ Capitulum quintum

THere with al Tryfram wente vnto his fader Kyng
 Meliodas and asked hym counceil what was best to
 doo for to recouer Cornewaile from truage / For as
 me femeth faid fir Triftram it were shame that fyr Marhaus 15
 the quenes broder of Irland shold goo awaye onles that he
 were foughten with alle ¶ As for that faid kyng
 Meliodas wete you wel sone Triftram that fyre Marhaus is
 called one of the best knyghtes of the world and knyghte of
 the table round / And therefore I knowe no knyghte in this 20
 countre that is able to matche with hym / ¶ Allas faide fyre
 Triftram that I am not made knyght / And yf fir Marhaus
 shold thus departe in to Irland / god lete me neuer haue wor-
 ship and I were made knyght I shold matche hym /
 And fyr faid Tryfram I pray you gyue me leue to ryde to 25
 kyng Mark / and soo ye be not displeafyd / of kyng Marke
 wille I be made Knyght / I wille wel faide kyng Meliodas
 that ye be ruled as your courage wille rule you

¶ Thenne fir Tryfram thanked his fader moche / And thenne
 he made hym redy to ryde in to Cornewaile / ¶ In the meane 30
 whyle there came a messager with letters of loue fro kyng
 Faramon of Fraunces doughter vnto fyre Tryfram that we-
 re ful pyteous letters & in them were wryten many compla-
 yntes of loue / but fyre Triftram had no Ioye of her letters nor

regard vnto her / Also she fente hym a lytel brachet that was
 passynge fayre / But whan the kynge's daughter vnderstood
 that fyre Tryftram wold not loue her / as the book fayth / she
 dyed for forou / ¶ And thenne the same squyer that broughte
 5 the letter and the brachet came ageyne vnto fyr Tryftram / as
 after ye shalle here in the tale

¶ Soo this yonge
 fyre Tryftram rode vnto his eme kynge Marke of Cornewa-
 yle / ¶ And whanne he came there / he herd say that ther wold
 no knyghte fyghte with fyre Marhaus / Thenne yede sir Trif-
 10 tram vnto his eme and fayd / fyre yf ye wylle gyue me thordre
 of knyghthode / I wille doo bataille with fyr Marhaus /
 What are ye said the kynge and from whens be ye comen / Sir
 said Tryftram I come fro kynge Melyodas that wedded yo-
 ur fyfter and a gentylman wete ye wel I am

15 ¶ Kynge Marke behelde sir Tryftram and fawe that he was
 but a yonge man of age / but he was passyngly wel maade
 and bygge / ¶ Faire fyre said the kynge what is youre name
 and where were ye borne / Syre sayd he ageyne / my name is
 Tryftram / and in the countreye of Lyones was I borne /
 20 Ye faye wel said the kynge / and yf ye wille doo this batayll
 I shalle make yow knyghte / Therefore I come to you fayd
 fyre Tryftram and for none other cause

¶ But thenne kynge Marke made hym knyghte / And there
 with al anone as he had made hym knyght he fente a meffa-
 25 ger vnto fyre Marhaus with letters that said / that he hadde
 fonde a yonge knyghte redy for to take the bataile to the vtter-
 most / hit may wel be said fyre Marhaus / ¶ But telle kynge
 Marke I wille not fyghte with no knyghte but he be of bl-
 ood royal / that is to faye outhur kynge's sone outhur quenes
 30 sone borne of a prynce or prynceffe /

¶ Whanne Kynge Marke vnderstood that / he fente for fyre
 Tryftram de lyones and tolde hym what was the anfuer of
 fyr Marhaus / ¶ Thenne sayd fyre Tryftram fythen that he fe-
 yth foo / lete hym wete that I am comen of fader fyde and mo-
 35 der fyde of as noble blood as he is / ¶ For fyre now shalle ye
 knowe that I am kynge Melyodas sone borne of youre own
 fyfter dame Elyzabeth that dyed in the forest in the byrthe of
 me / O Ihesu said kynge Mark ye are welcome faire neuewe

to me / ¶ Thenne in alle the hafte the kynge lete horfe fyr Trif-
 tram and arme hym in the beft maner that myghte be had or
 gotten for gold or fyluer / ¶ And thenne kynge Marke fente
 vnto fir Marhaus / and dyd hym to wete that a better born mā
 than he was hym felf fhould fyghte with hym / and his name 5
 is fir Tryfram de lyonas gotten of kynge Melyodas / and bo-
 rne of kynge Markes fyfter / Thenne was fir Marhaus glad
 and blythe that he fhould fyghte with fuche a gentyلمان / and
 foo by the affente of kynge Mark and of fyr Marhaus they
 lete ordeyne that they fhould fyghte within an Iland nyghe 10
 fyr Marhaus shyppes / and foo was fyr Tryfram putte in to
 a veffel both his hors and he and all that to hym longed bo-
 the for his body and for his hors / Syre Tryfram lacked no
 thyng / And whan kynge Marke and his Barons of Cor-
 newaile beheld how yonge fyr Tryfram departed with fuche 15
 a caryage to fyghte for the ryghte of Cornewaile / there was
 neyther man ne woman of worfhip but they wepte to fee and
 vnderftande foo yonge a knyght to Ieoparde hym felf for their
 ryghte /

¶ Capitulum tertium

Soo to fhorten this tale whan fyr Tryfram was arry- 20
 ued within the Iland / he loked to the ferther fyde / &
 there he fawe at an anker fyxe shippes nyghe to the land / and
 vnder the fhadowe of the shippes vpon the land / there houed
 the noble knyghte fyr Marhaus of Irland / Thenne fyr Tryf-
 fram commaunded his feruaunt gouernail to brynge his hors 25
 to the land and drefse his harneis at al manere of ryghtes /
 And thenne whan he had foo done / he mounted vpon his hors
 And whan he was in his fadel wel apparailled / & his fhelde
 drefsid vpon his fhoulder / Tryfram asked Gouernayle where
 is this knyghte that I fhall haue adoo with alle / Syre fayd 30
 Gouernaile / fee ye hym not / I wende ye had fene hym yonder
 he houeth vnder the vmbre of his shippes on horfbak with his
 fpere in his hand and his fheld vpon his fhoulder / That is
 trouthe fayd the noble knyghte fyre Tryfram now I fee hym
 wel ynou3 Thenne he commaunded his feruaunt Gouernayle 35

to goo to his veffaile ageyne / and commaunde me vnto myne
 eme kynge Marke / and praye hym / yf that I be flayn in this
 bataille for to entere my body as hym femed beft / & as for me
 lete hym wete I will neuer yelde me for cowardyfe / and yf I
 5 be flayne and flee not / thenne they haue loft no truage for me
 And yf foo be that I flee or yelde me as recreaūt / bydde myn
 eme neuer berye me in Cryften beryels / And vpon thy lyf fa-
 id fyr Tryfram to Gouvernayle / come thou not nyghe this I-
 land tyl that thou fee me ouercomen or flayne / or els that I
 10 wyne yonder knyght / foo eyther departed from other fore we-
 pyng

¶ Capitulum feptimum

ANd thenne fyr Marhaus auyfed fyr Tryfram and fa-
 id thus / yonge knyght fyr Tryfram what doft thou he-
 re / me fore repenteth of thy courage / for wete thou wel I haue
 15 ben affayed / and the beft knyghtes of this land haue ben af-
 fayed of my hand / And alfo I haue matched with the beft kn-
 yghtes of the world / and therfor by my counceille retorne a-
 geyne vnto thy veffaile / And faire knyght and wel preued
 knyght faid fyre Tryfram thou fhalt wel wete I maye not
 20 forfake the in this quarel / for I am for thy fake made knyght
 And thou fhalt wel wete that I am a kynges sone born and
 goten vpon a quene / and fuche promyfe I haue made att my
 neuews request and myn owne fekyng that I fhalle fyghte
 with the vnto the vttermest / and delyuer Cornewaile from
 25 the old truage / And alfo wete thou wel fyr Marhaus / that
 this is the gretteft caufe that thou courageft me to haue adoo
 with the / For thou art called one of the mooft renoumed kn-
 yghtes of the world / and by caufe of that noyfe and fame /
 that thou haft / thou gyueft me courage to haue adoo with the /
 30 for neuer yet was I preued with good knyghte / And fy-
 then I toke the ordre of knyghthode this day / I am wel plea-
 fyed that I maye haue adoo with fo good a knyght as thou
 arte / And now wete thou wel fyr Marhaus that I cafte me
 to gete worship on thy body / And yf that I be not preued / I
 35 trust to god that I fhall be worshipfully preued vpon thy bo-
 dy / and to delyuer the countrey of Cornewaile for euer fro al

maner of truage from Irland for euer / Whanne fyr Marhaus
 had herde hym faye what he wold / he faide thenne thus ageyn
 Fair Knyght fythen it is soo that thou castest to wynne wor-
 ship of me / I lete the wete / worship may thou none lese by me
 yf thou mayst stande me thre strokes / for I lete the wete / for 5
 my noble dedes preued and fene / Kyng Arthur made me kny-
 ghte of the table round / Thenne they beganne to feutre theyre
 speres / and they mette soo fyerfly to gyders / that they smote
 eyther other doune / bothe hors and all / But sir Marhaus smote
 fyr Trystram a grete wounde in the fyde with his spere / & 10
 thenne they auoyded their horses / and pulled oute their swardes
 / and threwe their sheldes afore them / And thenne they lashed
 to gyders as men that were wyld and couragious / And
 whan they hadde stryken soo to gyder longe / thenne they lefte
 her strokes / and foyned at their brethes and vyfours / & when 15
 they sawe that that myght not preuaile them / thēne they hurtled
 to gyders lyke rammes to bere eyther other down / thus they
 fought styll more than half a day / and eyder were wounded
 passyng fore / that the blood ranne doune freffhly fro them vp-
 on the ground / By thenne fyr Trystram waxed more freffher / 20
 than fyr Marhaus and better wynded and bygger / and with a
 myghty stroke he smote fyr Marhaus vpon the helme suche a
 buffet that hit went thorou his helme / and thorou the coyfe of
 stele and thorou the brayn pan / and the sward stak soo fast in
 the helme and in his brayn pan that sir Trystram pulled thry- 25
 es at his sward or euer he myght pulle it out from his hede / &
 there Marhaus felle doun on his knees the edge of Tristrams
 sward left in his brayne pan / And sodenly fyr Marhaus rose
 grouelynge / and threwe his sward and his shelde from hym /
 and soo ranne to his shippes and fledde his waye / and sir trif- 30
 tram hadde euer his shelde and his sward / And whan sir Trif-
 tram sawe sir Marhaus withdrawe hym / he said A sir knyght
 of the roūd table why withdrawest thou the / thou dost thy selfe
 and thy kyn grete fshame / for I am but a yong Knyghte / or
 now I was neuer preued / and rather than I shold withdra- 35
 we me from the / I had rather be hewen in C pyeces / Syr mar-
 haus anuerd no worde but yede his way fore gronynge / Well
 sir knyght said sir Triftram I promyse the thy sward and thy

sheld shal be myn / and thy sheld shalle I were in al places
 where I ryde on myn aduentures and in the fyghte of kyng
 Arthur and alle the round table

¶ Capitulum viii

5 **A** Non sir Marhaus and his felawship departed in to Ir-
 land / And as soone as he came to the kynge his bro-
 der / he lete ferche his woundes / ¶ And whan his hede
 was ferched / a pyece of fyre Trystrams swerd was founden
 therin / and myghte neuer be had oute of his hede for no surges-
 ons / and soo he dyed of syr Trystrams swerd / and that py-
 10 ece of the swerd the quene his syster kepte hit for euer wyth
 her / for she thoughte to be reuengyd and she myghte / ¶ Now
 torne we ageyne vnto syr Trystram that was fore wounded /
 and ful fore bled that he myzt not within a lytel whyle when
 he had take cold vnnethe stere hym of his lymmes / and thē-
 15 ne he sette hym doune softely vpon a lytel hylle / and bledde
 fast / Thenne anone came Gouvernaile his man with his vessel
 And the kynge and his barons came with proceffion ageynst
 hym / And whan he was come vnto the land / Kynge Marke
 toke hym in his armes / and the kynge and sir Dynas the fe-
 20 nescal ladde syr Triftram in to the castel of Tyntygail / And
 thenne was he ferched in the best maner / and leid in his bedde /
 And whan kynge Marke sawe his woundes / he wepte hertely
 and soo dyd alle his lordes / So god me help said kyng Mark
 I wolde not for alle my landes that my neuewe dyed / Soo
 25 syr Trystram laye there a moneth and more / and euer he was
 lyke to deye of that stroke that sir Marhaus smote hym fyrst
 with the spere / For as the Frensshe book faith / the speres hede
 was enuenymed that syr Trystram myghte not be hole / Then-
 ne was kynge Mark and alle his barons passyng heuy / For
 30 they demed none other / but that syr Trystram shold not reco-
 uer / Thenne the kynge lete sende after alle manere of leches &
 furgens bothe vnto men and wymmen / and there was none /
 that wold behote hym the lyf / Thenne came there a lady that
 was a ryght wyse lady / & she said playnly vnto kyng mark
 35 and to sir Trystram and to alle his barons that he shold neuer

be hole / but yf sire Trystram wente in the same countrey that
 the venym came fro / and in that countrey shold he be holpen
 or els neuer / Thus said the lady vnto the Kyng / whan ky-
 nge Marke vnderstood that / he lete purueye for fyr Trystram
 a faire vessel / wel vytailled / and therin was put fyr Try- 5
 tram and gouernail with hym / and sir Triftram toke his harp
 with hym / and soo he was putte in to the see to fayle in to Ir-
 land / and soo by good fortune he arryued vp in Irland e-
 uen fast by a castel where the Kyng and the quene was / and
 at his arryuayl he sat and harped in his bedde a mery lay fu- 10
 che one herd they neuer none in Irland afore that tyme /

¶ And whan it was told the Kyng and the quene of fuche
 a Knyght that was fuche an harper / anone the Kyng sente for
 hym / and lete ferche his woundes / and thenne asked hym his
 name / then he anfuerd I am of the countrey of Lyonas / & 15
 my name is Tramtryft that thus was wounded in a bataille
 as I fought for a ladyes ryght / So god me help said kyng
 Anguysshe ye shal haue al the helpe in this land that ye may
 haue here / But I lete you wete in Cornewaile I had a gre-
 te loffe / as euer hadde kyng / for there I lost the best knyghte 20
 of the world / his name was Marhaus a ful noble knyghte
 and Knyght of the table round / and there he told fyr Trystrā
 wherefore fyr Marhaus was slayne / Syr Trystram made sem-
 blaunt as he had ben fory / and better knewe he how hit was
 than the kyng 25

¶ Capitulum ix

THenne the kyng for grete faouore maade Tramtryft
 to be put in his daughters ward and kepyng by cau-
 se she was a noble surgeon / And whan she had ferched hym /
 she fond in the bottome of his wound that therin was poyson /
 And soo she heled hym within a whyle / and therefore Tramtrift 30
 cast grete loue to la beale Ifoud / for she was at that tyme the
 fairest mayde and lady of the worlde / And there Tramtryft
 lerned her to harpe / and she beganne to haue grete fantasye
 vnto hym / And at that tyme sir Palamydes the farafyn was
 in that countrey and wel cheryssed with the kyng and the 35

quene / And euery day fyr Palamydes drewe vnto la beale
 Ifoud / and profered her many yestes / for he loued her passy-
 ngly wel / Al that Aspyed Tramtryft / and ful wel knewe
 he fyr Palamydes for a noble knyght and a myghty man /
 5 And wete ye wel fyr Tramtryft had grete despyte at fyr pa-
 lomydes / for la beale Ifoud told Tramtryft that Palamydes
 was in wylle to be crystened for her sake / Thus was ther gre-
 te enuy betwixe Tramtryft and fyr Palamydes / Thenne hit
 befelle that kynge Anguyfthe lete crye a grete Iustes and a
 10 grete turnement for a lady that was called the lady of the la-
 undes / and she was nyghe cofyn vnto the kynge / And what
 man wanne her / thre dayes after he shold wedde her and ha-
 ue alle her landes / This crye was made in England / walys
 Scotland and also in Fraunce and in Bretayne / It befelle
 15 vpon a day la beale Ifoud came vnto fyr Tramtryft and told
 hym of this turnement / he anfuerd and sayd fayr lady I am
 but a feble knyghte / and but late I had ben dede / had not
 your good ladyship ben / Now fayre lady what wold ye I
 shold doo in this matere / wel ye wote my lady that I maye
 20 not Iuste / A Tramtryft said la beale Ifoud why wille ye
 not haue ado at that turnement / wel I wote fyr Palamydes
 shall be there / and to doo what he maye / And therefore Tram-
 tryft I pray you for to be there / for els fyr Palamydes is ly-
 ke to wynne the degree / Madame said Tramtrift as for that /
 25 it may be foo / for he is a proued knyght / and I am but a
 yong knyght and late made / and the fyrst batail that I dyd
 it myshapped me to be foore wounded as ye see / But and I
 wyft ye wold be my better lady / at that turnement I will be
 fo that ye wille kepe my counceille and lete no creature haue
 30 knoueleche that I shalle Iuste but your self / and suche as ye
 wil to kepe your counceil / my poure perfone shall I Ieoparde
 there for your sake that parauentur fir Palamydes shal kno-
 we whan that I come / Therto said la beale Ifoud do your best
 & as I can said la beale Ifoud I shal purueye hors and ar-
 35 mour for you at my deuyse / as ye will foo be hit said fyr Trā-
 trift I wille be at your cōmaundement / So at the day of Ius-
 tes / ther cam fir Palamydes with a black sheld / & he ouerthrew
 many knyghtes that alle the peple had merueylle of hym /

For he putte to the werse fyr Gawayne / Gaherys / Agrauayn
 Bagdemagus / kay / Dodyus le faueage / Sagramor le defy-
 rus / Gumret le petyte / and Gryflet le fyfe de dieu / Alle these
 the fyrfte daye fyr Palamydes strake doune to the erthe / And
 thenne alle maner of knyghtes were adred of fir Palamydes 5
 and many called hym the knyght with the black shelde / Soo
 that day fyre Palamydes had grete worshyp / ¶ Thenne cam
 kynge Anguyfthe vnto Tramtryft / and asked hym why he
 wold not Iuste / Syr he said I was but late hurte / and as
 yet I dare not auenture me / ¶ Thenne came there the same 10
 squyer that was sente from the kynges doughter of Fraunce /
 vnto fyr Tryfram / And whanne he had aspyed fyre Triftrā
 he felle flat to his feete / Alle that aspyed la Bele Ifoud /
 what curtosye the squyer made vnto fyr Tryfram / And ther-
 with al sodenly fyr Tryfram ranne vnto his squyer whos na- 15
 me was Heles le renoumes / and praid hym hertely in noo
 wyse to telle his name / Syr said Heles I wille not discouer
 your name / but yf ye commaunde me

¶ Capitulum x

THenne fyr Tryfram asked hym what he dyd in those
 countreyes / fyr he sayd / I came hyder with fyr Gawa- 20
 yn for to be made knyght / And yf it please you of your han-
 des that I may be made knyghte / Awaite vpon me as to morn
 secretly / and in the feld I shal make you a knyght / Thenne
 had la beale Ifoud grete suspecyon vnto Tramtryft that he
 was somme man of worship proued / and ther with she com- 25
 forced her self / and cast more loue vnto hym than she had do-
 ne tofore ¶ And soo on the morne fyr Palamydes maade
 hym redy to come in to the feld as he dyd the fyrft day / And
 there he smote doune the kynge with the C knyghtes and the
 kynge of Scottes / ¶ Thenne had la beale Ifoud ordeyned 30
 and wel arayed fyr Tryfram in whyte hors and harnais /
 And ryght soo she lete putte hym oute at a preuy posterne / &
 soo he came in to the feld as it had ben a bryght angel / And
 anone fyr Palamydes aspyed hym / and ther with he feutrid
 a spere vnto fyr Tramtrift / and he ageyne vnto hym / And 35

there fyr Tryfram smote doune fyr Palamydes vnto the erth
 And thenne there was a grete noyfe of people / some fayd / fyre
 Palamydes hadde a falle / some said the knyght with the blak
 fhelde had a falle / And wete you wel la beale Ifoud was
 5 passynge gladde / And thenne sire Gawayne and his felawes
 ix had merueille what knyghte it myght be that had smyten
 doune fyr Palamydes / Thenne wold there none Iuste with
 Tramtryft / but alle that there were forfoke hym / mooft & left /
 Thenne fyr Tryfram made Heles a knyght / and caused hym
 10 to put hym self forthe / and dyd ryght wel that day / So af-
 ter fyr Heles held hym with fyr Tryfram / And whan fyre
 Palamydes had receyued this falle / wete ye wel that he was
 fore ashamed / And as pryuely as he myght / he withdrewe
 hym oute of the feld / Alle that aspyed fyre Tryfram / and
 15 lyghtly he rode after fyre Palamydes and ouertoke hym /
 and badde hym torne / for better he wold assaye hym / or euer
 he departed / Thenne fyr Palamydes torned hym and eyther
 lashed at other with their swerdes / But at the fyrste stroke
 fyre Tryfram smote doune Palamydes / and gaf hym fuche a
 20 stroke vpon the hede that he felle to the erthe / Soo thenne Trif-
 tram badde yelde hym / and doo his commaundement or els he
 wold flee hym / whan fyre Palamydes beheld his countena-
 unce / he dredde his buffets foo / that he graunted al his askyn-
 ges / Wel said / said sir Triftram / this shalle be your charge /
 25 Fyrst vpon payne of your lyf that ye forsake my lady la be-
 ale Ifoud / and in no maner wyfe that ye drawe not to her /
 Also this twelue moneth and a day / that ye bere none armo-
 ur nor none harnais of werre / ¶ Now promyse me this or here
 fhalt thou dye / Allas faide Palamydes for euer I am asma-
 30 med / ¶ Thenne he sware as fyr Tryfram hadde commaunded
 hym / Thenne for despyte and anger / fyre Palamydes cutte of
 his harnais / and threwe them awaye / And soo fyr Tryfram
 torned ageyne to the Castel where was la beale Ifoud / and
 by the weye he mette with a damoyfel that asked after fyre
 35 launcelot that wanne the dolorous gard worshipfully / & this
 damoyfel asked sire Triftram what he was / For it was tolde
 her that it was he that smote doune fyr Palamydes / by whom
 the x knyghtes of kynge Arthurs were smyten doune /

Thenne the damoyfel prayd fyr Trystram to telle her what he was / And whether that he were fyr Launcelot du lake / for she demyd that there was no knyght in the world myghte do fuche dedes of armes / but yf it were Launcelot / Fayre damoyfel fayd fyr Trystram wete ye wel that I am not fyr launcelot 5 for I was neuer of fuche prowesse / but in god is al that he maye make me as good a knyght as the good knyght sir launcelot / Now gentyl knyght said she / put vp thy vyfure / & whan she beheld his vyfage / she thouzt she sawe neuer a better mās vyfage / nor a better farynge knyght / And thenne whan the 10 damoyfel knewe certaynly that he was not fyre launcelot / thenne she took her leue and departed from hym / And thenne fyre Trystram rode pryuely vnto the posterne where kepte hym la beale Ifoud / and there she made hym good chere and thanked god of his good spede / Soo anone within a whyle 15 the kyng and the quene vnderstood that hit was Tramtryft that smote doune fyre Palamydes / thenne was he moche made of more than he was before.

¶ Capitulum xi

THus was sir Tramtryft longe there wel cheryffhed / with the kyng and the quene / and namely with la 20 beale Ifoud / So vpon a daye / the quene and la beale Ifoud made a bayne for fyre Tramtryft / And whan he was in his bayne / the quene and Ifoud her doughter romed vp & doune in the chamber / and there whyles Gouvernail and Helles attendyd vpon Tramtryft / & the quene beheld his fwerd 25 there as it laye vpon his bedde / And thēne by vnhap the quene drewe oute his fwerd / and beheld it a longe whyle / and bothe they thoughte it a passyng fayre fwerd / but within a foote and an half of the poynte there was a grete pyece there of oute broken of the edge / And whan the quene aspyed that 30 gap in the fwerd / she remembryd her of a pyece of a fwerd / that was foude in the brayne pan of fyre Marhaus the good knyght that was her broder / Allas thenne said she vnto her doughter la beale Ifoud / this is the same traytour knyghte that slewe my broder thyn eme / Whanne Ifoud herd her faye 35

foo / she was passyng fore abasshed / for passyng wel she loued
 Tramtryft / and ful wel she knewe the cruelnes of her moder
 the quene / Anon there with alle the quene went vnto her owne
 chamber / and foughte her cofre / and there she toke oute the
 5 pyece of the swerd that was pulled out of fyr Marhaus hede
 after that he was dede / And thenne she ranne with that pyece
 of yron to the swerd that laye vpon the bedde / And whanne
 she putte that pyece of stele and yron vnto the swerd / hit was
 as mete as it myghte be / whan it was newe broken / And thē
 10 ne the quene gryped that swerd in her hand fyerfly / & with
 alle her myghte she ranne streyghte vpon Tramtryft where he
 sat in his bayne / And there she hadde ryued hym thorou hadde
 not fyr Heles gotten her in his armes / and pulled the fuerd
 from her / and els she hadde threst him thorou / Thenne whanne
 15 she was lettyd of her euyl wylle / she ranne to the kyng Anguysfh
 her husband and fayde on her knees / O my lord here
 haue ye in your hous that traitour knyght that flewe my broder
 and your seruauant that noble knyght fyr Marhaus / Who
 is that said kyng Anguysfhe and where is he / Syr she said
 20 hit is fyr Tramtryft the same knyght that my daughter helyd
 Allas said the kyng therefore am I ryght heuy / for he is a
 ful noble knyght as euer I sawe in felde / ¶ But I charge
 you said the kyng to the quene that ye haue not ado with that
 knyght / but lete me dele with hym / Thenne the kyng went in
 25 to the chambre vnto fyr Tramtryft / and thenne was he gone
 vnto his chambre / and the kyng fond hym al redy armed to
 mounte vpon his hors / Whanne the kyng sawe hym al redy
 armed to goo vnto horfbak / the kyng said nay Tramtryft hit
 wille not auaille to compare the ageynst me / But thus moche
 30 I shalle doo for my worship and for thy loue in soo moch as
 thou arte within my courte / hit were no worship for me to flee
 the / Therefore vpon this condycyon I wille gyue the leue for
 to departe from this courte in saufte / so thou wilt telle me who
 was thy fader / and what is thy name / and yf thou flewe fyr
 35 Marhaus my broder

¶ Capitulum xij

SYr said Trystram now I shalle telle you alle the tro-
 uthe / my faders name is sir Melyodas kynge of Lyo-
 nas / & my moder hyzt Elyzabeth that was sifter vnto
 kynge Marke of Cornewaile / & my moder dyed of me in the
 foreste / And by cause therof she commaunded or she dyed that 5
 whan I were crystened / they shold crystene me Tcystram / &
 by cause I wold not be knowen in this countrey I turned my
 name and lete me calle Tramtryft / & for the truage of Corne-
 wayle I fought for myn emes sake / & for the ryght of Corne-
 newaile that ye had posseded many yeres / And wete ye well 10
 said Trystram vnto the kynge I dyd the bataille for the loue
 of myn vnkel kynge Marke / and for the loue of the countreye
 of Cornewaile / and for to encrease myn honoure / For that fa-
 me day that I fought with sir Marhaus I was made knyzt
 And neuer or than dyd I no bataile with no knyght / & fro 15
 me he went alyue & lefte his sheld & his fuerd behynde / so god
 me helpe said the kyng I may not fay but ye dyd as a kny-
 ght shold / & it was your part to doo for your quarel / & to en-
 creace your worship as a knyght shold / how be it I may not
 mayntene you in this countrey with my worship onles that I 20
 shold displeafe my barons & my wyf / & her kyn / Syr said Tr-
 ystram I thanke you of your good lordship that I haue had
 with you here / and the grete goodenes my lady your daughter
 hath shewed me / & therfor said sir Triftram it may so happen
 that ye shalle wynne more by my lyf than by my dethe / for in 25
 the partyes of Englund it may happen I may doo you seruyse
 at some feason that ye shal be glad that euer ye shewed me yo-
 ur good lordship / ¶ With more I promyse you as I am true
 knyzt that in all places I shal be my lady your douzters fer-
 uaunt / & knyzt in ryght & in wrong / & I shal neuer fayle her 30
 to doo as moche as a knyght maye doo

¶ Also I byseche your good grace that I may take my leue
 at my lady your daughter and at alle the Barons and kny-
 ghtes / I wille wel said the kynge / ¶ Thenne sire Triftram
 wente vnto la beale Ifoud / and tooke his leue of her / And 35
 thenne he tolde her all what he was and how he had chaunged
 his name by cause he wold not be knowen / & hou a lady told
 hym he þ^t shold neuer be hole tyl he cam in to this cōtrey where

the poyson was made / where thorou I was nere my dethe had
 not your ladyship ben / O gentyl knyght said la beale Ifoud
 ful wo am I of thy departynge / for I fawe neuer man that
 I oughte foo good wille to / and there with all she wepte her-
 5 tely / Madame said fire Trystram ye shalle vnderstande that
 my name is fir Trystram de lyones gotten of kyng Melyodas
 and borne of his quene / And I promyse you feythfully that
 I shal be alle the dayes of my lyf your knyghte / Gramercy fa-
 id La beale Ifoud / and I promyse you there ageynste that I
 10 shalle not be maryed this feuen yeres but by your assent / and
 to whome that ye wille I shalle be maryed to / hym wylle I
 haue / and he wille haue me yf ye wil consente / And thenne
 fyre Trystram gaf her a ryng and she gaf hym another / and
 ther with he departed fro her / leuyng her / makynge grete dole
 15 and lamentacion / and he streyghte wente vnto the Courte a-
 monge alle the Barons / and there he took his leue at moost
 and leest / and openly he said amonge them all / Faire lordes
 now it is foo that I muste departe / Yf there be ony man here
 that I haue offended vnto / or that ony man be with me gre-
 20 ued / lete complayne hym here afore me or that euer I depart
 and I shal amende it vnto my power / And yf there be ony
 that wil profer me wronge or say of me wrong / or shame be-
 hynde my bak / faye hit now or neuer / and here is my body to
 make it good body ageynst body / And alle they stood styll /
 25 ther was not one that wold faye one word / yet were there
 some knyghtes that were of the quenes blood and of fire Mar-
 haus blood / but they wold not medle with hym /

¶ Capitulum xiii

SOo fir Triftram departed and toke the see / & with good
 wynde he aryued vp at Tyntagyl in Cornewaile / &
 30 whan kyng Mark was hole in his prosperite ther cam
 tydynges that fir Triftram was arryued and hole of his wo-
 undes / therof was kynge marke passyng glad / & foo were alle
 the barons / & whan he fawe his tyme he rode vnto his fader ky-
 ng melyodas / & there he had al the chere that the kyng & the
 35 quene coude make hym / And thenne largely Kyng Melyo-
 das and his quene departed of their landes and goodes to fire
 Trystram /

¶ Thenne by the lycence of Kyng

Melyodas his fader he returned ageyne vnto the court of kyng Mark / and there he lyued in grete ioye long tyme / vntyl at the lafte there befelle a Ialoufyne and an vnkyndenes betwyxe kyng Marke and fir Triftram / for they loued bothe one lady / And she was an erles wyf that hyght fyre Segwarydes / And this lady loued fyre Tryfram paffyngly wel / And he loued her ageyne for she was a paffyng fayr lady / And that afpyed fir Triftram wel / ¶ Thenne kyng Mark vnderstood that and was Ialous / for kyng Marke loued her paffyngly wel / Soo it felle vpon a day / this lady fent a dw-¹⁰ erf vnto fir Triftram and badde hym as he loued her / that he wold be with her the nyzt nexte folowyng / Also she charged you that ye come not to her but yf ye be wel armed / for her lord was called a good knyghte ¶ Syre Tryfram answerd to the dwerf / recommaunde me vnto my lady / and telle¹⁵ her I wille not fayle but I wille be with her the terme that she hath sette me / and with this anfuer the dwerf departed / And kyng Marke afpyed that the dwerfe was with fyre Tryfram vpon meffage from Segwarydes wyf / thenne kyng Marke fent for the dwerfe / And whanne he was comen / he²⁰ maade the dwerf by force to telle hym alle why and wherfore that he came on meffage from fyre Triftram

¶ Now faid kyng Marke goo where thou wolt / and vpon payne of dethe that thou faye no word that thou fpakeft with me / foo the dwerf departed from the kyng / ¶ And that fame²⁵ nyghte that the steuen was sette betwixt Segwarydes wyfe & fyr Tryfram kyng Marke armed hym / and made hym redy and took two knyghtes of his counceylle with hym / and foo he rode afore for to abyde by the waye / for to awayte vpon fir Tryfram / ¶ And as fyre Tryfram came rydyng vpon hys³⁰ waye with his spere in his hand / kyng Marke came hurtlyng vpon hym with his two knyghtes fodenly / And alle thre smote hym with theyre speres / and kyng Marke hurte fyre Tryfram on the brest ryght fore / And thenne fyre Triftram feutryd his spere / and smote his vnkel kyng Marke³⁵ soo fore that he raffhyd hym to the erthe / and bryfed hym that he laye styll in a fwoune / and longe hit was or euer

he myghte welde hym self / And thenne he ranne to the one knyght / and este to the other / and smote hem to the cold erthe / that they laye styll / And ther with alle fir Triftram rode forthe fore wounded to the lady / and fonde her abydyng hym
5 at a pofterne

¶ Capitulum xiiii

ANd there she welcomed hym fayre / and eyther halfed other in armes / and soo she lete putte vp his hors in the best wyfe / and thenne she vnarmed hym / And soo they fouped lyghtly and wente to bedde with grete ioye and
10 plesaunce / and soo in his ragyng he took no kepe of his grene wound that kynge Marke had gyuen hym / And soo fyr Triftram bebled both the ouer shete and the nether & pelowes / and hede shete / and within a whyle ther came one afore that warned her that her lord was nere hand within a bowe draughte
15 Soo she made fir Tryfram to aryse / and soo he armed hym / and tooke his hors and so departed / By thenne was come segwarydes her lord / and whan he fonde her bedde troubled & broken and wente nere and beheld it by candel lyghte / thenne he sawe that there had layne a wounded knyght / A fals traitresse thenne he said / why hast thou bitrayed me / and there
20 with alle he swange oute a swerd and said / but yf thou telle me who hath ben here / here thou shalt dye / A my lord mercy fayd the lady / and helde vp her handes / fayeng / flee me not / and I shall telle you alle who hath ben here / Telle anone said segwarydes to me alle the trouthe / Anone for drede she saide here
25 was fir Tryfram with me / and by the way as he came to me ward / he was fore wounded / A fals traitresse said segwarides where is he become / fir she said he is armed and departed on hors bak not yet hens half a myle / ye saye wel said segwarydes
30 thenne he armed hym lyghtly / and gate his hors and rode after fyre Triftram that rode streyght waye vnto Tyntagyl / And within a whyle he ouertoke fyre Triftram / And thenne he badde hym torne fals traitour knyghte / and fyr Triftram anon torned hym ageynst hym / And there with al segwarides smote
35 fyr Tryfram with a spere that it alle to brafte / ¶ And

thenne he swange oute his swerd / and smote fast at fyr Trif-
 tram / Syre knyght said fyre Trystram I counceyle you that
 ye smyte no more how be it for the wronges that I haue do-
 ne you / I wille forbere you as longe as I maye / ¶ Nay fa-
 yd Segwarides that shalle not be / for outhur thou shalt dye 5
 or I / Thenne fyre Triftram drewe oute his swerd and hurt-
 led his hors vnto hym fyerfly / and thorou the waste of the
 body he smote fyre Segwarides that he felle to the erthe in a
 fwoune / And soo fyre Triftram departed and lefte hym there
 And soo he rode vnto Tyntagil and tooke his lodgyng secrete- 10
 tely for he wold not be knowen that he was hurte

¶ Also fir Segwarides men rode after theyr maister / whome
 they fond lyenge in the feld fore wounded / and brouzt hym
 home on his shelde / and there he lay longe or that he were ho-
 le / but at the laste he recouerd ¶ Also kynge Marke 15
 wold not be aknowen of that fir Triftram and he hadde mette
 that nyght / And as for fyre Trystram he knewe not that ky-
 nge Marke had mette with hym / And soo the kynges astaū-
 ce came to fir Triftram to comferte hym as he laye seke in his
 bedde / But as longe as kynge Marke lyued / he loued neuer 20
 fyre Trystram after that / though there was fayre speche / loue
 was there none / And thus it past many wekes and dayes / &
 alle was forgyuen and forgotten / For fyre Segwarydes durste
 not haue ado with fir Triftram by cause of his noble prowesse
 And also by cause he was neuewe vnto kynge Marke / ther- 25
 fore he lete it ouer slyp / for he that hath a pryuy hurte is loth
 to haue a shame outward

¶ Capitulum xv /

THenne hit befelle vpon a daye that the good knyghte
 Bleoberys de ganys broder to Blamore de ganys / &
 nyghe cofyn vnto the good knyght fir launcelot du la- 30
 ke / This Bleoberys came vnto the courte of kynge Marke / &
 there he asked of kynge Marke a bone to gyue hym what yest
 that he wold aske in his courte

¶ Whanne the kyng herd hym aske soo / he merueilled of hys

askynge / but by cause he was a knyghte of the round table / &
of a grete renomme / kynge Marke graunted hym his hole af-
kynge / thenne faide sire Bleoberys I wille haue the fayrest
lady in your Courte that me lyst to chese / I maye not fay nay
5 sayd kynge marke / Now chese at youre aduventure

And soo sire Bleoberys dyd chese sire segwarydes wyf / and to-
ke her by the hand and soo wente his waye with her / and soo
he tooke his hors and gart sette her behynde his squyer and
rode vpon his way / When sire segwarydes herd telle that his la-
10 dy was gone with a knyght of kynge Arthurs courte /

¶ Thenne he armed hym and rode after that knyght for to re-
scowe his lady / soo whan Bleoberys was gone with this la-
dy / kyng Mark and all the courte was wroth that she was a-
wey / thenne were there certayne ladyes that knewe that there
15 was grete loue bitwene sire Triftram and her / and also that la-
dy loued sire Triftram aboue alle other knyghtes / Thenne there
was one lady that rebuked sire Triftram in the horryblest wy-
fe / and called hym coward knyghte / that he wold for shame
of his knyghthode see a lady soo shamefully be taken awaye /
20 fro his vnkels courte / But she ment that eyther of hem hadde
loued other with entiere hert / But sire Triftram anfuerd her
thus / Faire lady it is not my parte to haue adoo in suche ma-
ters whyle her lord and husband is present here / And yf hit
hadde ben that her lord hadde not ben here in this courte / thenne
25 for the worship of this courte perauentur / I wold haue ben her
champion / And yf so be / sire segwarides spede not wel / it may
happen that I wille speke with that good knyght / or euer he
passe from this countrey / Thenne within a whyle came one of
sire segwarydes squyers / and told in the court that sire segwari-
30 des was beten fore and wounded to the poynte of dethe / as he
wold haue rescowed his lady / sire Bleoberis ouerthrewe hym
and fore hath wounded hym / Thenne was kynge marke heuy
therof / and alle the courte / When sire Triftram herd of this / he
was ashamed and fore greued / And thenne was he soone ar-
35 med and on horsbak / & gouernaile his seruauant bare his shelde
and spere / And soo as sire Triftram rode fast / he mette with sire
Andret his cofyn that by the commaundement of kynge Ma-
rke was sente to brynge forth & euer it laye in his power / ij /

knyghtes of Arthurs Courte that rode by the countrey to feke their aduentures / Whan fyr Tryfram sawe fir Andret / he asked hym what tydynges / Soo god me helpe said fyre Andret / ther was neuer worfe with me / for here by the commaundement of kynge Mark I was sente to fetche two knyghtes of 5 kynge Arthurs courte / and that one bete me / and wounded me / and sette nought by my meffage / Faire cofyn said fir triftram ryde on your way / and yf I may mete them / it may happen I shal reunge you / So fyr Andret rode in to Cornewaile And fyr Triftram rode after the two knyghtes the whiche one 10 hyght Sagramor le defyrus / & the other hyght Dodynas le faueage /

¶ Capitulum xvj /

THenne within a whyle fyr Tryfram sawe hem afore hym two lykely knyghtes / Sir said Gouvernaile vnto his maister / fir I wold counceile you nought to haue 15 ado with hem / for they ben two preued knyghtes of Arthurs Courte / As for that said fyr Tryfram haue ye no doute / but I wille haue adoo with hem to encrease my worship / for it is many daye fythen I dyd ony dedes of armes / doo as ye lyste said Gouvernaile / and there with alle anone fyr Tryfram asked them / from whens they came / and wheder they wold / and what they dyd in tho marches / Syre Sagramore loked vpon fyre Triftram / and hadde scorn of his wordes / & asked hym ageyne / Fair knyghte be ye a knyght of Cornewaile / where by 20 aske ye hit said fir Triftram / For it is feldom sene said fir Sagramore that ye Cornysfhe knyghtes ben valyaunte men of armes / For within these two houres there mette vs one of you cornysfhe knyghtes / and grete wordes he spak / and anon with lytel myght he was leyd to the erthe / And as I trowe sayd fir Sagramore ye shal haue the same handfel that he hadde 30 Faire lordes said fire Triftram it may soo happen that I maye better withstande than he dyd / and whether ye will or nyl / I wil haue ado with you / by cause he was my cofyn that ye bete And therefore here do your best / & wete ye wel but yf ye quyte you the better here vpon this ground / one knyzt of cornewaile 35 shal bete you both / Whan fire Dodynas le faueage herd hym faye soo he gatte a spere in his hand and said / fire knyghte

thy self / And thenne they departed and came to gyders as it
had ben thonder / And fyr Dodynas spere braft in fonder / but
fyr Tryfram smote hym with a more myght / that he smote
hym clene ouer the hors croupe that nyghe he hadde broken his
5 neck / Whanne fyre Sagramour fawe his felawe haue fuche a
falle / he merueylled what knyzt he myght be / And he dresseth
his spere with alle his myght / and fyr Tryfram ageynst hym
and they came to gyders as the thonder / and ther fir Trifram
smote fyr Sagramore a stronge buffet that he bare his hors &
10 hym to the erthe / and in the fallyng he brake his thygh / whan
this was done / fyr Tryfram asked hem / Fayre knyghtes will
ye ony more / Be there no bygger knyzttes in the courte of ky-
nge Arthur / it is to you shame to say of vs knyzttes of Corne-
wayle dishonoure / for it may happen a Cornyffhe knyght may
15 matche you / that is trouthe said fyr Sagramore / that haue we
wel preued / but I requyre the sayd fyre Sagramore telle
vs youre ryght name by the feythe and trouthe that ye owe to
the hyghe ordre of knyghthode / ye charge me with a grete thy-
nge said fyr Tryfram / and sythen ye lyst to wete hit / ye shal
20 knowe and vnderstande that my name is fyr Tryfram de ly-
onas kynge Melyodas fone / and neuewe vnto kynge Marke
Thenne were they two knyghtes fayne / that they had mette
with Tryfram / and foo they praid hym to abyde in their fela-
uship / Nay said fire Trifram / for I must haue ado with one of
25 your felawes / his name is fyr Bleoberys de ganys / god spe-
de you wel said fyr Sagramore and Dodynas / Syre Tryf-
tram departed and rode on ward on his waye / And thenne
was he ware before hym in a valeye where rode fyr Bleoberys
with fir Segwarydes lady that rode behynde his squyer vpon
30 a palfroy

¶ Capitulum xvij

THēne fyr Tryfram rode more than a paas vntyl that
he had ouertake hym / Thenne spak fyr Tryfram aby-
de he said knyght of Arthurs courte / brynge ageyne
that lady or delyuer her to me / I wille doo neyther said Ble-
35 oberys / for I drede no Cornyffhe knyght foo fore that me lyfte

[leaf 149 verso]

to delyuer her / why said fyr Triftram may not a Cornyffhe knyght doo as wel as another knyght / this same daye two knyghtes of your Courte within this thre myle mette with me / And or euer we departed / they fonde a Cornyffh knyght good ynough for them bothe / what were their names said Bleoberis / they told me said fyr Tryfram that the one of them hyghte fyr Sagramore le defyrus / and the other hyghte Dodynas le faueage / A said fyr Bleoberys haue ye met with them Soo god me helpe they were two good knyghtes and men of grete worship / And yf ye haue bete them bothe / ye must nedes be a good knyght / but yf it soo be / ye haue bete them bothe / yet shalle ye not fere me / but ye shalle bete me / or euer ye haue thys lady / Thenne defende you said fyr Triftram / soo they departed and came to gyder lyke thonder / and eyder bare other doune hors and alle to the erthe / Thenne they auoyded their horses and lassed to gyder egerly with fwerdes and myghtely / now tracyng and trauerfyng on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand more than two houres / And somtyme they rassed to gyder with fuche a myght that they laye bothe grouelynge on the ground / Thenne fir Bleoberis de ganys starte abak / and said thus / Now gentyl good knyght a whyle hold your handes / & lete vs speke to gyders / Saye what ye wille said Tryfram / & I wille anfuere you / Sire faide Bleoberys I wold wete of whens ye be / and of whom ye be come / and what is your name / Soo god me help said fyr Tryfram I fere not to telle you my name / Wete ye wel I am kynge Melyodas sone / and my moder is kyng Markes sifter / and my name is fir Triftram de Lyonas and kynge Marke is myn vnkel / Truly said Bleoberys I am ryght gladde of you / for ye are he that flewe marhaus the knyght hand for hand in an Iland for the truage of Cornewaile / Also ye ouercame fir Palamydes the good knyght at a turnement in an Iland / where ye bete fir Gawayne & his nyne felawes / Soo god me helpe said fir Tryfram wete ye wel that I am the same knyght / Now I haue told you my name / telle me yours with good will / Wete ye wel that my name is fir Bleoberys de ganys / and my broder hyghte fire Blamore de ganys / that is called a good knyght and we be fyfter children vnto my lord fir Laücelot du lake that we calle

one of the best knyghtes of the world / That is trouthe said sir
 Triftram / sir Launcelot is called pierles of curtosy and of knyghthode / and for his sake said sir Tryfram I will not with
 my good wille fyghte no more with you for the grete loue I
 5 haue to sir Launcelot du lake / In good feith said Bleoberys / as for me / I wille be lothe to fyghte with you / But fy-
 then ye folowe me here to haue this lady / I shal profer you kyndenys curtosy and gentilnes right here vpon this ground /
 This lady shalle be betwixe vs bothe / and to whome that she
 10 wille go / lete hym haue her in pees / I wille wel said Triftra
 For as I deme she wille leue you / and come to me / ye shalle
 preue hit anone said Bleoberys

¶ Capitulum xviii

SOo whan she was sette betwixe them bothe / she sayd
 these wordes vnto sir Triftram / wete ye wel fyr Trif-
 15 tram de lyones that but late thou was the man in the
 world that I moost loued and trusted / And I wende thou
 haddeft loued me ageyne aboue alle ladyes / But whan thou
 sawest this knyght lede me away thou madeft no chere to rescow-
 we me / but suffred my lord Segwarydes ryde after me / but
 20 vn tyl that tyme I wend thou haddeft loued me / And ther-
 fore now I wille leue the / and neuer loue the more / & there
 with alle she went vnto sir Bleoberys / Whan fyr Triftram sa-
 we her doo soo / he was wonderly wrothe with that lady & afhamed
 to come to the courte / sir Triftram said sir Bleoberys ye
 25 are in the defaute / for I here by these ladyes wordes / she before
 this day trusted you aboue alle erthly knyghtes / and as she
 faith ye haue deceyued her / therefore wete ye wel / ther may noo
 man hold that wille aweye / and rather than ye shold be her-
 tely displeafyd with me / I wold ye had her / and she wold
 30 abyde with you / Nay said the lady / so god me help I wil ne-
 uer goo with hym / For he that I loued most / I wende he had
 loued me / And therefore sire Tryfram she said ryde as thou
 cam / for though thou haddeft ouercome this knygt as ye was
 lykely / with the neuer wold I haue gone / And I shall pray
 35 this knyghte soo faire of his knyghthode that or euer he passe

this countrey / that he wille lede me to the Abbeye / there my lord
 fyr Segwarydes lyeth Soo god me helpe said Bleoberis
 I lete yow wete good knyght sire Trystram by cause kynge
 Marke gaf me the choyse of a yeste in this courte / and so this
 lady lyked me best / Not withstandynge she is wedded and 5
 hath a lord / and I haue fulfilled my quest / she shall be sent
 vnto her husband ageyne / And in especyal moost for youre
 sake sir Trystram / And yf she wold goo with you / I wold
 ye had her / I thanke you said fyr Trystram / but for her loue
 I shal beware what manere a lady I shalle loue or truste / 10
 For had her lord fyr Segwarydes ben away from the courte
 I shold haue ben the fyrst that shold haue folowed yow / but
 sythen ye haue refused me / as I am true knyght I shalle her
 knowe passyngly wel that I shal loue or trust / and soo they
 took theyr leue one fro thother and departed / And soo sir trif- 15
 tram rode vnto Tyntagyl / and fyr Bleoberys rode vnto the ab-
 bay where fyr segwarydes lay fore wounded / and there he de-
 lyuerd his lady / and departed as a noble knyght / & whan
 sir segwarydes sawe his lady / he was gretely comforted / and
 thenne she told hym that sir Trystram had done grete bataill 20
 with fyre Bleoberys / and caused hym to brynge her ageyne /
 These wordes pleasyd sir segwarydes ryght wel that sir trif-
 tram wold doo soo moche / and soo that lady told alle the bata-
 ill vnto kynge Marke betwixe fyr Trystram and sir Bleobe-
 rys

25

¶ Capitulum xix

THenne whanne this was done / kynge Mark cast al-
 weyes in his hert how he myght destroye fyr Triftram
 And thenne he ymagyned in hym self to sende sir trif-
 tram in to Irland for la beale Ifoud / For sir Trystram had
 soo preyfed her beaute and her goodnes that kynge Mark fa- 30
 id he wold wedde her / where vpon he praid fyr Triftram to ta-
 ke his wey in to Irland for hym on message / And all this
 was done to the entente to flee fyr Triftram / Not withstandyn-
 ge fyr Trystram wold not reffuse the message for no daüger
 nor peryl that myght falle for the pleasyr of his vnkel / but 35

[leaf 151]

to goo he made hym redy in the moft goodlyeft wyfe that myght be deuysed / For fir Triftram tooke with hym the moofte goodlyeft knyghtes that he myght fynde in the courte / & they were arayed after the gyfe that was thenne vfed in the goodlyeft maner / So fir Triftram departed and toke the see with alle his felaufhip / And anone as he was in the brode see / a tempeft toke hym and his felaufhip and drofe them bak in to the cofte of Englund / And there they arruyed faft by Camelot / and ful fayne they were to take the land / ¶ And whan they were landed fir Triftram fette vp his paelione vpon the land of Camelot / and there he lete hange his fhelde vpon the paelione / And that fame day came two knyghtes of kyng Arthurs / that one was fir Ector de marys and fir Morganor And they touched the fhelde / and badde hym come oute of the paelione for to Iuft and he wold Iuft / ye fhalle be anfuerd faid fir Triftram and ye wille tarye a lytel whyle / Soo he made hym redy / and fyrfte he smote doune fir Ector de marys / and after he smote doune fir Morganor alle with one fperre / and fore bryfed them / And whan they laye vpon the erthe / they asked fir Triftram what he was / and of what countrey he was knyghte / Faire lordes faid fir Triftram wete ye wel that I am of Cornewaile / Allas faid fire Ector now am I afhamed / that euer ony Cornyffhe knyghte fhould ouercome me / And thenne for despyte fyre Ector put of his armour fro hym / and wente on foot and wold not ryde

¶ Capitulum xx

THenne it felle that fire Bleoberys and fire Blamore de ganys that were bretheren they hadde affomoned the kyng Anguyffhe of Irland for to come to Arthurs Court vpon payne of forfeiture of kyng Arthurs good grace And yf the kyng of Irland came not in at the day assigned and fette / the kyng fhould lefe his landes / So by hit happend that at the day assigned kyng Arthur neither fire Launcelot myght not be there for to gyue the Iugement / for kyng Arthur was with fir launcelot at the caftel ioyous gard / And fo

kyng Arthur assigned kyng Carados and the kyng of scot-
 tes to be there that day as Iuges / So whan the kynges were
 at Camelot / kyng Anguyfthe of Irland was come to kno-
 we his accusars / Thenne was there Blamore de ganys and
 appeled the kyng of Irland of treason / that he hadde slayne 5
 a cofyn of his in his courte in Irland by treason / The kyng
 was fore abaffhed of his accusacion / for why / he was come att
 the fomons of kyng Arthur / And or that he came at Came-
 lot / he wift not wherfore he was sente after / And whanne the
 kyng herd fir Blamor faye his wille / he vnderstood wel there 10
 was none other remedy but to anfuere hym knyghtly / for the
 custome was fuche in tho dayes / that and ony man were appe-
 aled of ony treason or murther / he shold fyghte body for body /
 or els to fynde another knyght for hym / And alle maner of
 Murtherers in tho dayes were callid treason / So whan kyng 15
 Anguyfthe vnderstood his accusyng / he was passyng heuy /
 for he knewe fir Blamor de ganys that he was a noble kny-
 ght / and of noble knyghtes comen / Thenne the kyng of Ir-
 land was sypmly purueyed of his anfuere / therfore the Iu-
 ges gaf hym respyte by the thyrdd daye to gyue his anfuere / 20
 Soo the kyng departed vnto his lodgyng / the mean whyle
 ther came a lady by fir Trystrams paelione makyng grete do-
 le / what eyleth you said fir Triftram that ye make fuche dole /
 A fayre knyght said the lady I am afhamed onles that som
 good knyght helpe me / for a grete lady of worship sente by 25
 me a fayre child and a ryche vnto fir launcelot du lake / and
 here by there mette with me a knyghte and threwe me doune
 fro my palfray and took aweye the child from me / wel my
 lady said fyr Triftram / and for my lord fyr Launcelots fake
 I shalle gete you that child ageyne / or els I shalle be beten 30
 for hit / And foo fire Triftram tooke his hors / and asked the
 lady whiche wey the knyght rode / And thenne she tolde hym
 And he rode after hym / and within a whyle he ouertoke that
 knyght / And thenne fyr Triftram badde hym corne and gyue
 ageyne the child

35

¶ Capitulum xxj

THe knyghte torned his hors / and he made hym redy to
 fyghte / And thenne fir Trystram smote hym with a
 sward fuche a buffet / that he tumbled to the erthe / And
 thenne he yelded hym vnto fir Triftram / thenne come thy waye
 5 fayd fire Trystram and brynge the child to the lady ageyne /
 Soo he took his hors wekely and rode with fir Trystram / and
 thenne by the way fyr Trystram asked hym his name / Then-
 ne he said my name is Breunis faunte pyte / Soo whanne he
 hadde delyuerd that child to the lady / he said / fir as in this the
 10 child is wel remedyed / Thenne fir Trystram lete hym goo a-
 geyne that fore reyentyd hym after / for he was a grete foo vn-
 to many good knyghtes of kyng arthurs courte / ¶ Thenne
 whan fir Triftram was in his paelione / Gouvernaile his man
 cam / and told hym how that kyng anguysshe of Irland was
 15 come thyder / and he was putte in grete distresse / and there go-
 uernaile told fir Trystram / how kyng anguysshe was fomo-
 ned and appealed of murther / Soo god me help said fir Trif-
 tram these ben the best tydynges that euer came to me this vii ye-
 re / for now shalle the kyng of Irland haue nede of my helpe
 20 for I dare faye there is no knyght in this countrey that is not
 of arthurs courte dare doo bataille with fyre Blamore de ga-
 nys / and for to wynne the loue of the kyng of Irland I wil
 take the batail vpon me / and therfor gouernaile brynge me I
 charge the to the kyng / Thenne Gouvernaile wente vnto kyng
 25 anguysshe of Irland and salwed hym fayre / the kyng wel-
 comed hym / and asked hym what he wolde / Syr faide Gouer-
 naile / here is a knyghte nere hande that desyreth to speke with
 you / he badde me faye he wolde doo you seruyse / what Knyght
 is he faide the Kyng / fyr he said hit is fir Triftram du fyonas
 30 that for your good grace ye shewed hym in your landes wyll
 rewarde you in these countreyes / Come on felawe said the ky-
 nge with me anone / and shewe me vnto fir Trystram / soo the
 Kyng took a lytel hackney and but fewe selaufhip with him
 vntyl he came vnto fir Triftrams paelione / and whanne fyre
 35 Trystram sawe the Kyng / he ranne vnto hym and wold haue
 holden his styrope / But the kyng lepte from his hors lyght-
 ly / and eyther halfed other in armes / my gracious Lord sayde
 fire Trystram gramercy of your grete goodnesse shewed vn-

to me in your marches and landes / And at that tyme I promyfed you to doo my feruyfe / and euer it laye in my power / & gentyll knyght faid the kynge vnto fir Triftram / now haue I grete nede of you / neuer had I foo grete nede of no knyghtes helpe / How foo my good lord faid fire Tryftram / I fhalle telle 5
 you faid the kynge I am affomoned and appeled fro my cuntry for the deth of a knyght that was kyn vnto the good knyght fir Launcelot / wherfor fir Blamor de ganys broder to fir Bleoberys hath appeled me to fyghte with hym / outhere to fynde a knyght in my ftede / And wel I wote faid the kyng 10
 thefe that are come of kynge Bans blood as fir Launcelot & thefe other are paffyng good knyghtes and hard men for to wynne in bataille as ony that I knowe now lyuyng / Syre faid fir Tryftram / for the good lordfhip ye fhewed me in Ireland and for my lady youre daughters fake / La Beale I 15
 foud I wille take the bataille for you vpon this condycyon / that ye fhalle graūte me two thynges / that one is that ye fhall fwere to me that ye are in the ryght that ye were neuer confentyng to the knyghtes dethe / Syr thenne faid fir Triftram when that I haue done this bataille yf god yeue me grace that I 20
 fpede that ye fhalle gyue me a reward what thyng refoable that I wille afke of you / Soo god me help faid the kyng ye fhall haue what fomeuer ye will afke / It is wel faid / faid fir Tryftram

¶ Capitulum xxij

Now make your anfuer that youre Champyon is redy 25
 For I fhalle dye in your quarel rather than to be rareaunt / I haue no doubte of you faid the kynge / that and ye fhould haue adoo with fir Launcelot du lake / Syr faid fir Triftram as for fire Launcelot he is called the nobleft knyghte of the worlde / And wete ye wel that the knyghtes of his blood 30
 are noble men and drede fhame / And as for Bleoberys broder to fyr Blamor I haue done bataille with hym / therfore vpon my hede / it is no fhame to call hym a good knyght / It is noyfed faid the kynge / that Blamor is the hardyer knyghte / fire as for that lete hym be / he fhall neuer be refused / & as he were 35

the best knyght that now bereth shelde or spere / Soo kyng An-
 guysshe departed vnto kynge Carados / and the kynges that
 were that tyme as Iuges / and told hem that he hadde fonde
 his champyon redy / Thenne by the commaundementes of the
 5 kynges sir Blamor de ganys and sire Triftram were sente for
 to here the charge / And whan they were come before the Iu-
 ges / there were many kynges and knyghtes biheld sire Trif-
 tram / and moche speche they had of hym by cause he slewe sir
 Marhaus the good knyght / and by cause he foriusted sir Pa-
 10 lamydes the good knyght / ¶ So when they had taken theire
 charge / they withdrewe hem to make hem redy to doo bataille /
 Thenne said sir Bleoberys to his broder sir Blamore / fayr de-
 re broder remembre of what kyn we be come of / and what a
 man is sir launcelot du lake / neyther ferther nor nere but bro-
 15 ther children / and ther was neuer none of oure kyn that euer
 was shamed in bataille / and rather suffre deth broder than to
 be shamed / Broder said Blamore haue you no doute of me / for
 I shal neuer shame none of my blood / hou be it I am sure
 that yonder knyghte is called a passyng good knyght as of
 20 his tyme one of the world / yet shal I neuer yelde me nor say
 the lothe word / wel may he happen to smyte me down with his
 grete myzt of chyualry / but rather shalle he flee me than I shal
 yelde me as recreaunt / God spede you wel said Bleoberys for
 ye shal fynde hym the myghtyest knyght that euer ye hadde a-
 25 do with all / for I knowe hym for I haue had ado with hym
 God me spede said Blamor de ganys / and therewith he tooke
 his hors at the one ende of the lyftes / and sire Tryfram atte
 other ende of the lyftes / and soo they feutryd theyre speres / &
 came to gyders as it had ben thonder / and there sir Triftram
 30 thorou grete myght smote doune sir Blamore and his hors to
 the erthe / Thenne anone sir Blamor auoyded his hors and
 pulled oute his sward / and threwe his shelde afore hym / and
 badde sir Tryfram alyghte / for though an hors hath failed me
 I truste to god the erthe wil not faile me / And thenne fyre
 35 Tryfram alyght and dresseid hym vnto batail / and there they
 lashed to gyder strongly as racyng and tracyng / foynynge
 and daffhyng many sad stokes that the kynges and knygh-
 tes had grete wonder that they myghte stande / for euer they

fought lyke wood men so that there were neuer knyghtes fe-
ne fyghte more fyerfly than they dyd / for fire Blamore was
so hafty he wold haue no rest that alle men wondred that they
had brethe to stande on their feet / and alle the place was blo-
dy that they fought in / And at the laste fyre Triftram smote 5
fir Blamor fuche a buffet vpon the helme that he there felle do-
une vpon his fyde / and fir Tryfram stode and beheld hym /

¶ Capitulum xxiii

T Henne whan fir Blamor myghte speke / he said thus
Syre Triftram de Lyones I requyre the as thou art
a noble knyghte and the best knyghte that euer I fond that 10
thou wilt flee me oute / for I wold not lyue to be made lord
of alle the erth / for I haue leuer dye with worship than lyue
with shame / and nedes fir Triftram thou must flee me / or els
thou shalt neuer wyne the feld / for I wille neuer saye the
lothe word / And therefore yf thou dare flee me / flee me / I re- 15
quyre the / Whanne fir Triftram herd hym saye soo knyghtely /
he wyfte not what to doo with hym / he remembryng hym of bo-
the partyes of what blood he was comen / and for fir Launce-
lots sake he wold be lothe to flee hym / and in the other party
in no wyse he myghte not chese / but that he must make hym to 20
saye the lothe word or els to flee hym / Thenne fyre Triftram
starte abak and went to the kynges that were Iuges / and ther
he kneled down to fore hem and befoughte hem for their wor-
shippes and for kyng Arthurs and fir Laūcelots sake that
they wold take this mater in theyr handes / For my fayre lor- 25
des said fir triftram hit were shame and pyte / that this noble
knyght that yonder lyeth shold be flayne / for ye here wel / sha-
med wille he not be / and I pray to god that he neuer be flayne
nor shamed for me / And as for the kyng for whome I fyghte
fore I shalle requyre hym as I am his true champyon and 30
true knyght in this felde that he wille haue mercy vpon this
knyghte / So god me helpe said kyng Anguyfthe I wil for
your sake fyre triftram be ruled as ye wylle haue me / For I
knowe you for my true knyghte /

¶ And therefore I

wylle hertely pray the kynges that ben here as Iuges to take
hit in theire handes / And the kynges that were Iuges called
fyr Bleoberys to them / and asked hym his aduyse ¶ My lor-
des said Bleoberys / though my broder be beten and hath the
5 wers thorou myghte of armes I dare saye though fyre Tryf-
tram hath beten his body / he hath not beten his herte / and I
thanke god he is not shamed this daye / And rather than he
shold be shamed / I requyre you sayd Bleoberys lete fir Trif-
tram flee hym oute / It shalle not be soo said the kynges / for
10 his parte aduerfary bothe the kyng and the champyon haue
pyte of fyre Blamors knyghthode / My lordes said Bleoberys
I wille ryght wel as ye wille /

¶ Thenne the kynges called the kyng of Irland and fond
hym goodely and tretabyll / And thenne by alle their aduyfes
15 fyre Triftram and fyre Bleoberys toke vp fire Blamore / and
the two bretheren were accorded with kyng Anguysshe / and
kyffed and made frendys for euer / And thenne fire Blamor
and fire Tryfram kyffed to gyders / and there they made the-
ir othes that they wold neuer none of them two bretheren fy-
20 ghte with fyre Tryfram / and fyre Tryfram made the same oth
And for that gentyl bataille alle the blood of fyre Launcelot
loued fire Tryfram for euer /

¶ Thenne kyng Anguysshe and fyre Triftram toke theire le-
ue ande failed in to Irland with grete nobleffe and ioye /
25 ¶ Soo whanne they were in Irland / the kyng lete make it
known thoroute alle the land how and in what manere fyre
Tryfram had done for hym ¶ Thenne the Quene
and alle that there were made the moost of hym that they my-
ghte / But the Ioye that la beale Ifoud made of fyr Triftram
30 there myghte no tonge telle / for of alle men erthely she loued
hym moost

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

Thenne vpon a daye kyng Anguysshe asked fyr Trif-
tram why he asked not his bone / For what someuer he
had promysed hym / he shold haue hit withoute fayle

[leaf 154 verso]

Syre fayd sire Trystram now is hit tyme this is alle that I wylle defyre that ye wylle gyue me la beale Ifoud youre doughter not for my self but for myn vnkel kynge Marke that fhalle haue her to wyf / for soo haue I promysed hym / Allas faid the kynge I had leuer than alle the land that I haue / 5
 ye wold wedde her youre self / Syre and I dyd than I were fhamed for euer in this world / and fals of my promyse /
 Therefore faid sire Trystram I praye you hold your promyse that ye promysed me / for this is my defyre that ye wylle gyue me la Beale Ifoud to goo with me in to Cornewaile for to 10
 be wedded to kynge Marke myn vnkel / ¶ As for that fayd kynge Anguyfthe ye fhalle haue her with you to doo with her what it please you / that is for to faye yf that ye lyst to wedde her your self that is me leuest / And yf ye wille gyue her vnto kynge Marke youre vnkel that is in youre choyse / 15
 ¶ Soo to make short concludion la beale Ifoud was made redy to goo with fyre Trystram and dame Bragwayne wente with her for her chyf gentylwoman with many other / thenne the quene Ifouds moder gaf to her and dame Bragwayne her doughters gentylwoman and vnto Gouvernaile a drynke and 20
 charged them that what day kynge Marke shold wedde that fame daye they shold gyue hym that drynke / soo that kynge Marke shold drynke to la beale Ifoud / and thenne faid the Quene I vndertake eyther fhalle loue other the dayes of their lyf / Soo this drynke was yeuen vnto dame Bragwayne and 25
 vnto Gouvernaile / And thenne anone fyre Trystram tooke the fee / and la Beale Ifoud / and whan they were in their caban hit happed soo that they were thursty / and they sawe a lytyl flacked of gold stande by them / and hit semed by the coloure and the taste that it was noble wyn / 30
 Thenne sire Trystram toke the flacket in his hand / and fayd Madame Ifoud here is the best drynke that euer ye drank that dame Bragwayne youre mayden and Gouvernaile my feruaunt haue kepte for them self / Thenne they lough and made good chere and eyther dranke to other frely / and they tho- 35
 ughte neuer drynke that euer they dranke to other was soo fwete nor soo good / But by that theyr drynke was in their

bodyes / they loued eyther other fo wel that neuer they loue de-
 parted for wele neyther for wo / And thus it happed the loue
 fyrste betwixe sire Triftram and la beale Ifoud / the whiche
 loue neuer departed the dayes of their lyf / soo thenne they fay-
 5 led tyl by fortune they came nyghe a castel that hyght Pluere
 And there by arryued for to repofe them wenyng to them to ha-
 ue hadde good herborou3 / but anon as fir Tryfram was with-
 in the castel / they were taken pryfoners / for the customme of the
 castel was fuche who that rode by that castel and brought ony
 10 lady he must nedes fyghte with the lord that hyghte Breunor
 And yf it were soo that Breunor wanne the feld / thenne sh-
 old the knyght straunger and his lady be putte to dethe what
 that euer they were / and yf hit were so that the straunge kny-
 ghte wanne the feld of fir Breunor / thenne shold he dye and
 15 his lady bothe / this custome was vfed many wynters / for hit
 was called the castel pluere that is to faye the wepyng castel

¶ Capitulum xxv

THus as sire Tryfram and la beale Ifoud were in pry-
 fon / hit happed a knyght and a lady came vnto them /
 where they were to chere them / I haue merueille said Triftram
 20 vnto the kny3t and the lady what is the cause the lord of this
 Castel holdeth vs in pryfon / hit was neuer the custome of no
 place of worship that euer I came in / whan a knyghte and a
 lady asked herborough / and they to receyue hem / & after to def-
 troye them that ben his gестes / Syr said the kny3t this is the
 25 old custome of this castel that whan a knyght cometh here / he
 must nedes fyghte with our lord / and he that is weyker muste
 lese his hede / And whan that is done yf his lady that he bryn-
 geth / be fouler than our lordes wyf / she must lese her heede / And
 yf she be fayrer preued than is oure lady / thenne shal the la-
 30 dy of this castel lese her heede / Soo god me help said sire Trif-
 tram this is a fowle custome and a shameful / But one auau-
 tage haue I said fir Tryfram I haue a lady is fayre ynou3
 fayrer sawe I neuer in alle my lyfe dayes / And I doubtte

not for lack of beaute she shalle not lese her heed / and rather than I shold lese my heede I wille fyghte for hit on a fayre felde /

¶ Wherefore Syre knyght I pray you telle your lord that I wille be redy as to morne with my lady and my selfe to doo batail yf hit be so I maye haue my hors and myne armour / Syre said that knyght I vndertake that youre defyre shalle be spedde ryght wel /

And thenne he sayd take youre rest and loke that ye be vp by tymes and make you redy and your lady / for ye shall wante no thyng that you behoueth / and ther with he departed and on the morne by tymes that same knyghte came to fire Tryfram and fetched hym oute and his lady & brouzte hym hors and armour that was his owne / and badde hym make hym redy to the feld / for alle the estates and comyns of that lordship were there redy to behold that bataille and Iugement /

¶ Thenne came fyre Breunor the lord of that Castel wyth his lady in his hand muffeld / and asked fyre Tryfram where was his lady / for and thy lady be fayrer than myn wyth thy swerd smyte of my ladyes hede / and yf my lady be fayrer than myn / with my swerd I muste stryke of her heed / And yf I maye wyne the / yet shalle thy lady be myne / and thou shalt lese thy hede /

¶ Syre said Tryfram this is a fowle custome and horryble / and rather than my lady shold lese her heed / yet had I leuer lese my hede /

¶ Nay nay said fire Breunor the ladyes shalle be fyrst shewed to gyder / and the one shalle haue her Iugement / Nay I wille not soo said fire Triftram / For here is none that wille gyue ryghteous Iugement / But I doubte not said fir Triftram my lady is fayrer than thyne / And that wille I preue and make good with my hand / And who someuer he be that wille faye the contrary I wille preue hit on his hede

And there with fire Triftram shewed la beale Ifoud / and torned her thryes aboute with his naked swerd in his hand And whanne fyre Breunor sawe that he dyd the same wyse torne his lady / But whanne fyre Breunor beheld la beale Ifoud / hym thoughte he sawe neuer a fayrer lady / and thenne he dradde his ladyes hede shold be of / and soo al the peple

that were there present gaf Iugement that la beale Ifoud was
 the fayrer lady and the better made / how now said fir Triftra
 me femeth it were pyte that my lady shold lofe her heed / but
 by caufe thou and she of long tyme haue vfed this wycked cus-
 5 tome / and by you bothe haue many good knyghtes and la-
 dyes ben destroyed / for that caufe it were no loffe to destroye
 you bothe / Soo god me help said fir Breunor for to faye the
 forthe / thy lady is fayrer than myn / and that me fore repenteth
 And soo I here the peple pryuely faye / for alle wymmen I
 10 sawe none soo fayre / and therfor and thou wilt flee my lady
 I doute not but I shal flee the and haue thy lady / ¶ Thou
 shalt wyne her said fir Tryfram as dere as euer knyzt wan
 lady / And by caufe of thyn owne Iugement as thou woldest
 haue done to my lady yf that she had ben fouler / and by caufe
 15 of the evyl custome gyue me thy lady said Tryfram / & there
 with alle fir Triftram strode vnto hym and toke his lady from
 hym / and with an auke stroke he smote of her hede clene / wel
 knyght said fir Breunor now hast thou done me a despyte /

¶ Capitulum xxvj

Now take thyn hors sythen I am lady les I wil wyn
 20 thy lady and I may / thenne they took their horses / &
 came to gyders as hit had ben the thonder / and fire Tryfram
 smote fir Breunor clene from his hors / and lyztely he rose vp
 And as fir Tryfram came ageyne by hym / he threst his hors
 thorou oute both the sholders that his hors hurled here and the-
 25 re / and felle dede to the ground / And euer fir Breunor ranne
 after to haue slayne fire Triftram / but fire Triftram was ly-
 ght and nymel and voyded his hors lightely / And or euer
 fir Tryfram myght dresse his sheld and his sward / the other
 gaf hym thre or foure sadde strokes ¶ Thenne they
 30 raffhed to gyders like two bores tracyng and trauercyng myz-
 tely and wyfely as two noble knyghtes / For this fire Breu-
 nor was a proued knyghte and hadde ben or than the dethe of
 many good knyghtes / that it was pyte that he had so long en-
 dured / Thus they fouzt hurlyng here & there nyz two houres &

eyder were wounded fore / thenne at the laft fir Breunor raff-
 hed vpon fir Tryftram and tooke hym in his armes / for he tru-
 fted moche to his ftrengethe / Thenne was fir Tryftram called
 the ftrengeft and the hieft knyght of the world / For he was
 called bygger than fir laūcelot / but fir Launcelot was better 5
 brethed / Soo anone fire Tryftram thruft fyr Breunor doune
 grouelynge / and thenne he vnaced his helme / and frake of
 his hede / And thenne al they that longed to the caftel cam to
 hym and dyd hym homage and feaute prayenge hym / that he
 wold abyde there ftylle a litel whyle to fordo that foule cuftom 10
 Syr Tryftram graunted ther to / the meane whyle one of the
 knyghtes of the caftel rode vnto fire Galahad the haut prynce
 the whiche was fir Breunors fone / whiche was a noble knyzt
 and told hym what myfauenture his fader hadde and his mo-
 der 15

¶ Capitulum xxvij

THenne came fir Galahad and the kyng with the hon-
 derd knyghtes with hym / and this fyr Galahad pro-
 fered to fyghte with fir Tryftram hand for hand / and
 foo they made them redy to go vnto bataile on horsbak with gre-
 te courage / Thenne fir Galahad and fir Tryftram mette to gy- 20
 ders foo hard that eyder bare other doune hors and alle to the
 erthe / And theñe they auoyded their horfes as noble knyghtes
 and drefsid their sheldes and drewe their fwerdes with Ire &
 rancour / and they laffhed to gyder many fadde ftrokes / and one
 whyle ftrykyng another whyle foynyng / tracyng and tra- 25
 uerfyng as noble knyghtes / thus they fought long nere half
 a day and eyder were fore wounded / At the laft fire Tryftram
 waxed lyghte and bygge / and doubled his ftrokes and drofe
 fyr Galahad abak on the one fyde and on the other / fo that he
 was lyke to haue ben flayne / With that came the kyng with 30
 the honderd knyghtes and all that felaufhip went fyerfly vp-
 on fir Triftram / whan fir Tryftram fawe them comyng vpon
 hym / thenne he wift wel he myghte not endure / ¶ Thēne as a
 wyfe knyght of werre he faid to fir Galahad the haut prynce
 fyre ye shewe to me no knyghthode for to fuffre alle youre men 35
 to haue adoo with me al at ones / ¶ And as me femeth ye be a

noble knyghte of your handes / hit is grete shame to you / So
 god me helpe said sire Galahad there is none other waye but
 thou must yelde the to me / outhere els to dye said sire Galahad
 to sire Trystram I wille rather yelde me to you than dye / for
 5 that is more for the myght of your men than of your handes /
 And therewith alle sire Trystram tooke his owne fuerd by the
 poynte / and put the pomel in the hand of sire Galahad / there
 with alle came the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / and
 hard beganne to assaylle sire Trystram / lete be said sire Galahad
 10 be ye not so hardy to touche hym / for I haue gyuen this kny-
 ght his lyf / that is youre shame said the kynge with the C
 knyghtes / hath he not slayne your fader and your moder / As
 for that said sire Galahad I may not wyte hym gretely for
 my fader had hym in pryson / and enforced hym to doo bataill
 15 with hym / and my fader had fuche a customme that was a sha-
 meful custome that what knyght came there to aske herborouh
 his lady must nedes deye but yf she were fayrer than my mo-
 der / And yf my fader ouercame that knyght he must nedes de-
 ye / This was a shameful customme and vsage / a knyghte
 20 for his herberowe askynge to haue fuche herborage / ¶ And for
 this customme I wold neuer drawe aboute hym / So god me
 helpe said the kynge this was a shameful customme / Truly
 said sire Galahad so femed me / and me femed it had ben
 grete pyte that this knyght shold haue ben slayne / for I dare
 25 faye he is the noblest man that bereth lyf / but yf it were sire lau-
 celot du lake / Now sire knyght said sire Galahad I requyre
 the telle me thy name / and of whens thou arte / and whyder
 thou wolt / Sire he said my name is sire Trystram du lyones &
 from kynge Marke of Cornewaile I was sente on message
 30 vnto kynge Anguysshe of Irland for to fetch his daughter
 to be his wyf / & here she is redy to go with me into Cornewaile
 / and her name is la beale Ifoud / and / sire Trystram said sire
 Galahad the haut prynce / wel be ye fonde in these marches / &
 so ye wille promyse me to goo vnto sire Launcelot du lake /
 35 and accompanye with hym / ye shalle goo where ye wylle / and
 your sire lady with you / And I shalle promyse you neuer
 in al my dayes shal fuche custommes be vsed in this castel as
 haue ben vsed / Sire said sire Trystram now I lete you wete

foo god me helpe I wende ye had ben fyr launcelot du lake /
 whan I fawe you fyrfte / and therefore I dredde you the more
 And fire I promyse you said fir Triftram as foone as I may
 I wille see fir launcelot / and enfelaushippe me with hym / for
 of alle the knyghtes of the world I moost defyre his felau- 5
 ship

¶ Capítulum xxviii

ANd thēne fir Triftram took his leue whan he fawe his
 tyme and tooke the fee / And the meane whyle word
 came vnto fir Launcelot and to fir Tryftram that fire
 Carados the myghty kynge that was made lyke a gyaunt / 10
 that fought with fir Gawayn and gaf hym fuche strokes that
 he fwouned in his fadel / and after that he took hym by the col-
 ler / and pulled hym oute of his fadel / and fast bounde hym to
 the fadel bowe / and so rode his wey with hym toward his caf-
 tell / And as he rode by fortune fir Launcelot mette with fire 15
 Carados and anone he knewe fire Gawayne / that lay bounde
 after hym / A said fir Launcelot vnto fire Gawayne how stande
 it with you / Neuer so hard said fir gawayn onles that ye helpe
 me / for so god me help without ye rescowe me I knowe no kn-
 yght that may but outhere you or fyr Tryftram / where for fir 20
 Launcelot was heuy of fir Gawayns wordes / And thenne fir
 Launcelot bad fir Carados leye doune that knyghte / & fyghte
 with me / thou arte but a foole faide fire Carados / for I wylle
 ferue you in the fame wyfe / as for that said fir Launcelot spare
 me not / for I warne the I wille not spare the / And then- 25
 ne he bond fir Gawayne hand and foot / and so threwe hym to
 the ground / And thenne he gate his spere of his squyer / and
 departed from fyr launcelot to fetche his cours / and foo eyther
 met with other / and brake their speres to their handes / & then-
 ne they pulled out fwerdes / and hurtled to gyders on horsbak 30
 more than an houre / And at the laste fire launcelot smote fir
 Carados fuche a buffet vpon the helme that it perched his bra-
 yne pan / So thenne fir Launcelot toke fir Carados by the col-
 ler and pulled hym vnder his hors feet / And thenne he alyzte
 and pulled of his helme / and strake of his hede / And thenne 35

fir Launcelot vnbounde fir Gawayne / soo this fame tale was
 told to fir Galahad and to fir Trystram / here maye ye here the
 noblenes that foloweth fir launcelot / Allas said fyr Trystram
 and I had not this meffage in hand with this fayre lady /
 5 truly I wold neuer stynte or I had fonde fyre Launcelot /
 Thenne fire. Trystram and la beale Ifoud wente to the see &
 came in to Cornewaile / and there alle the barons mette hem /

¶ Capitulum xix

ANd anone they were rychely wedded with grete nob-
 ley / But euer as the frenshe book sayth fir Trystram
 10 and la beale Ifoud loued euer to gyders / ¶ Thenne
 was there grete Iustes and grete torneyenge / and many lor-
 des and ladyes were at that feest / and fir Trystram was most
 preysed of alle other / thus dured the feest longe / and after
 the feest was done / within a lytel whyle after by the assent of
 15 two ladyes that were with quene Ifoud / they ordeyned for
 hate and enuy for to destroye dame Bragwayne / that was
 mayden and lady vnto la beale Ifoud / and she was sente in
 to the forest for to fetche herbes / & there she was mette & bo-
 unde feete and hand to a tree / and soo she was bounden thre
 20 dayes / And by fortune fir Palamydes fond dame Bragwa-
 yne / and there he delyuerd her from the dethe / and brought her
 to a nonnery there besyde for to be recouerd / whanne Ifoud the
 quene myst her mayden / wete ye wel she was ryght heuy as e-
 uer was ony quene / for of alle erthely wymmen she loued her
 25 best / the cause was for she came with her oute of her countreye /
 And soo vpon a day quene Ifoud walked in to the forest to
 putte awaye her thoughtes / and ther she wente her self vnto a
 welle / and made grete mone / and sodenly there came Palamy-
 des to her / and had herd alle her complaynte / and sayd Mada-
 30 me Ifoud and ye wille graunte me my bone / I shalle bryn-
 ge to you dame Bragwayne sauf and found / And the que-
 ne was so glad of his profer / that sodenly vnauyfed she graū-
 ted alle his askynge / wel madame said Palamydes I trust
 to your promyse / And yf ye wille abyde here half an houre / I
 35 shal brynge her to you / I shall abyde you said la beale Ifoud

And fir Palamydes rode forth his way to that nonnery / and lyghtly he came ageyne with dame Bragwayne / but by her good wille she wold not haue comen ageyne / by caufe for loue of the quene she stood in auēture of her lyf / Notwithstandyng half ageynst her wille she wente with fir Palamydes vnto the quene / And whan the quene sawe her / she was pafyng glad Now madame said Palamydes remembre vpon your promyfe / for I haue fulfilled my promyfe / Sir Palamydes said the quene I wote not what is your defyre / But I wille that ye wete how be it I promyfed you largely I thought none euyl nor I warne you none ylle wille I doo / Madame said fir palamydes / as at this tyme ye fhalle not knowe my defyre / but bifore my lord your husband there fhalle ye knowe that I wil haue my defyre that ye haue promyfed me / And therwith the quene departed and rode home to the kynge / and fir palamydes rode after her / And whan fyr Palamydes came before the kynge / he said fir kyng I requyre you as ye be a ryghteous kyng that ye wille Iuge me the ryght / Telle me your caufe faid the kyng and ye fhalle haue ryght /

¶ Capitulum xxx

Syre said Palamydes I promyfed your Quene Ifoud to brynge ageyne dame Bragwayne that she had loft vpon this couenaunt that she shold graunte me a bone that I wold aske / and without grutchyng outhur auysēmēt she graunted me / what faye ye my lady said the kyng / hit is as he faith soo god me help said the quene / to faye the sothe / I promyfed hym his askyng for loue and ioye that I had to see her / Wel madame said the kyng / and yf ye were hasty to graunte hym what bone he wold aske / I wylle wel that ye performe your promyfe / Thenne said Palamydes I will that ye wete that I wille haue your quene to lede her and gouerne her where as me lyst / There with the kyng stood styll and be-thought hym of fir Trystram / and demed that he wold rescowe her / And thenne hastely the kyng anfuerd take her with the aduētures that shal falle of hit / for as I suppose thou wylt

not enioye her noo whyle / As for that faid Palamydes I dare
 ryght wel abyde the aduenture / and soo to make short tale / fir
 Palamydes toke her by the hand / and faid Madame grutche
 not to goo with me / for I defyre no thyng but your own pro-
 5 myse / As for that faid the quene I fere not gretely to go with
 the / hou be it thou haft me at auauntage vpon my promyse /
 For I doute not I fhalle be worshipfully rescowed from the /
 As for that faid fir Palamydes be it as it be maye / So quene
 Ifoud was fette behynde Palamydes / and rode his way / anon
 10 the kynge fente after fyr Tryfram / but in no wyse he coude be
 foude / for he was in the forest an huntyng / for that was alwe-
 yes his custome / but yf he vsed armes / to chafe and to hunte
 in the forestes / Allas faid the kynge now I am shamed for
 euer that by myn owne affente my lady and my quene fhalle
 15 be deuoured / Thenne came forth a knyght his name was lam-
 begus / and he was a knyght of fyr Tryfram / My lord fayd
 this knyght fythe ye haue truste in my lord sire Triftram / we-
 te ye wel for his sake I wille ryde after your quene and re-
 scowe her / or els I shal be beten / Gramercy faide the kynge / &
 20 I lyue fir Lambegus I shal deferue hit / And thenne fir Lam-
 begus armed hym / and rode after as fast as he myghte / And
 thenne within a whyle he ouertoke fir Palamydes / And then-
 ne fir Palamydes lefte the quene / what arte thou faide Pala-
 mydes / arte thou Tryfram / nay he faide I am his seruante /
 25 and my name is Lambegus / that me repenteth faide Pala-
 mydes / I hadde leuer thou haddest ben sire Tryfram / I bileue
 you wel faid Lambegus / but when thou metest with fir Tryf-
 fram thou shalt haue thy handes ful / And thenne they hurtled
 to gyders and alle to braste their speres / and thenne they pul-
 30 led oute their swardes / and hewed on helmes and hauberkes /
 At the laste sire Palamydes gaf fir Lambegus suche a wound
 that he felle down lyke a dede knyghte to the erthe / Thenne he lo-
 ked after la beale Ifoud / and thēne she was gone he nyft whe-
 re / wete ye wel fir Palamydes was neuer soo heuy / So the qu-
 35 ene ranne in to the forest / and there she fond a wel / and theryn
 she hadde thoughte to haue drowned her self / And as good for-
 tune wold ther came a knyght to her that hadde a Castel ther-
 by his name was sire Adtherp / And when he fonde the quene

in that meschyef / he rescowed her / and broughte her to his castel / And whanne he wyft what she was he armed hym / and took his hors and said / he wold be auengyd vpon palamydes and soo he rode on tyll he mette with hym / and there fir Palamydes wounded hym fore / and by force he made hym to telle 5 hym the cause why he dyd bataille with hym / and how he had ladde the quene vnto his castel / Now brynge me there said palamydes or thou shalt dye of my handes / Sir said fir Adtherp I am soo wounded I may not folowe / but ryde you this way and hit shalle brynge you in to my castel / and there within is 10 the quene / Thenne sire Palamydes rode styll tyl he came to the Castel / And at a wyndowe La Beale Ifoud sawe fir Palamydes / thenne she made the yates to be shette strongly / And whan he sawe he myght not come within the castel / he putte of his brydel and his fadel / and putte his hors to pasture / and 15 sette hym self doune atte gate lyke a man that was oute of his wytte that retchyd not of hym self /

¶ Capitulum xxxi

Now torne we vnto fir Triftram that whanne he was come home / and wyfte la Beale Ifoud was gone with fyr Palamydes wete ye wel he was wrothe oute of me- 20 sure / Allas said fir Tryfram I am this day shamed / Thenne he cryed to Gouvernaile his man / haste the that I were armed and on horsbak / for wel I wote Lambegus hath no myghte nor strengthe to withstande fir Palamydes / Allas that I haue not ben in his stede / Soo anone as he was armed and horfed 25 fir Triftram and Gouvernaile rode after in to the forest / and within a whyle he fond his knyght Lambegus al moost wounded to the dethe / and fyre Tryfram bare hym to a foster / and charged hym to kepe hym wel / And thenne he rode forth and there he fond fyr Adtherp fore wounded / and he told hym hou 30 the quene wold haue drowned her self had not he ben / And how for her sake & loue he had taken vpon hym to doo bataille with fir Palamydes / where is my lady said sire Tryfram / Syr said the knyght she is sure ynough within my Castel / &

she can hold her within hit / Gramercy said fyre Trystram of
 thy grete goodenes / and soo he rode tyl he came nyghe to that
 Castel / and thenne fyr Trystram sawe where fyr Palamydes
 sat at the gate slepyng / and his hors pastured fast afore hym
 5 Now goo thou Gouvernaile said fire Triftram / and byd hym
 awake / and make hym redy / So Gouvernayle rode vnto hym /
 and said fir Palamydes aryse and take to the thyn harneis
 but he was in fuche a study he herd not what Gouvernayle said
 So Gouvernaile came ageyne and told fyre Trystram he sle-
 10 pte or els he was madde / Goo thou ageyne said fire Triftram /
 and bydde hym aryse / and telle hym that I am here his mortal
 foo / So Gouvernaile rode ageyne and putte vpon hym the
 but of his spere / and said fir Palamydes make the redy / for
 wete ye wel fyr Triftram houeth yonder and fendeth the word
 15 he is thy mortal foo / And there with all fire Palamydes arofe
 styllly withoute wordes and gate his hors / and faddeled hym /
 and brydeled hym / and lyghtely he lepte vpon / and gat his
 spere in his hand / and eyder feutryd their speres and hurt-
 led faste to gyders / and there Triftram smote doune fire Pa-
 20 lamydes ouer his hors tayle / Thenne lightely fire Palamydes
 putte his sheld afore hym and drewe his sward / And there
 beganne stronge bataill on bothe partyes / for both they fought
 for thr loue of one lady / and euer she laye on the walles and
 behelde them / hou they foughte oute of mesure / and eyther we-
 25 re woūded possyng fore / but Palamydes was moche forer woū-
 ded / thus they fought tracynge and trauercyng more than two
 houres that wel nygh for dole and forowe la beale Ifoud swo-
 uned / ¶ Allas she said that one I loued and yet doo / and the
 other I loue not / yet it were grete pyte that I shold see fir pa-
 30 lamydes flayne / for wel I knowe by that tyme the ende be
 done fir Palamydes is but a dede knyzt / by cause he is not cry-
 stened I wold be lothe that he shold dye a sarasyn / And there
 with alle she came doune and bifought fire Trystram to fyghte
 no more / A madame saide he what meane you / wille ye haue
 35 me shamed / wel ye knowe I wille be ruled by you / I wille
 not your dishonour saide la beale Ifoud but I wold that ye
 wold for my sake spare this vnhappy sarasyn Palamydes /
 Madame said fyre Trystram I wille leue fyghtynge at this

tyme for your sake / ¶ Thenne she said to sire Palamydes this
 fhalle be your charge that thou fhalt goo oute of this coun-
 trey whyle I am therin / I wille obeye your commaundement
 said sire Palamydes / the whiche is fore ageynst my wylle

¶ Thenne take thy waye said la beale Ifoud vnto the Courte 5
 of kynge Arthur / and there recommaūde me vnto quene Gue-
 neuer / and telle her that I fend her word / that ther be withyn
 this land but four louers / that is sire Launcelot du lake and
 Quene Gueneuer and sire Trystram de lyonas and quene I-
 foud 10

¶ Capitulum xxxij

ANd soo fyre Palamydes departed with grete heuynes
 And sire Triftram took the quene and brouzte her agey-
 ne to kynge Marke / And thenne was there made grete
 Ioye of her home comyng / who was cherysshed but sire Trystram
 / Thenne sire Trystram lete fetche fyre Lambegus his knyghte 15
 fro the fosters hous and hit was longe or he was hole / but at
 the last he was wel recouerd / thus they lyued with Ioye and
 play a long whyle / But euer sire Andred that was nygh cofyn
 to fyre Trystram lay in a watche to wayte betwix sire Trystram
 and la beale Ifoud for to take hem and sklaundre hem / Soo 20
 vpon a day fyre Triftram talked with la beale Ifoud in a wyn-
 dowe / and that aspyed sire Andred and told it to the kynge /
 Thenne kynge Marke took a sward in his hand and came to
 sire Triftram and called hym fals traitour / and wold haue stry-
 ken hym / But sire Trystram was nyghe hym and ranne vnder 25
 his sward and tooke hit oute of his hande / And thenne the
 kynge cryed where are my knyghtes and my men / I charge
 you flee this traitour / But at that tyme there was not one
 wold meue for his wordes / Whanne fyre Trystram sawe that
 there was not one wold be ageynst hym / he shoke the sward to 30
 the kynge and made countenance as though he wold haue stry-
 ryken hym / And thenne kynge Marke fledde / and sire triftram
 folowed hym and smote vpon hym fyue or fixe strokes fla-
 tlyng on the neck that he made hym to falle vpon the nose / &
 thenne sire Triftram yede his waye and armed hym and tooke 35

his hors and his men / and foo he rode in to that forest / And there vpon a daye fyr Tryfram mette with two bretheren that were knyghtes with kynge Marke / and there he strake of the hede of the one / & wounded the other to the dethe / and he maade
 5 hym to bere his broders hede in his helme vnto the kynge / and thyrtty moo there he wounded / And whan that knyght came before the kynge to faye his meffage / he there dyed afore the kynge and the quene / Thenne kynge Marke called his counceill vnto hym / and asked aduyse of his barons what was
 10 best to doo with fyre Tryfram / Syr said the barons in especyal Syre Dynas the Senefchal / fyr / we wille yeue you counceyll for to fende for fir Triftram / for we wille that ye wete / many men wille holde with fyre Tryfram / and he were hard bestad And fyr said fyre Dynas ye shalle vnderstande that fir Trif-
 15 ram is called pyerles and makeles of ony Cryften knyghte / and of his myghte and hardynes we knewe none foo good a knyght / but yf hit be fyre Launcelot du lake / And yf ye departe from your Courte and goo to kynge Arthurs courte / wete ye wel he wille gete hym fuche frendes there that he wille
 20 not sette by your malyce / And therefore fyre I counceyle yow to take hym to youre grace / I wylle wel said the kynge that he be fente for / that we maye be frendes / Thenne the Barons fente for fyr Triftram vnder a sauf conduyte / And foo whan fyre Triftram came to the kynge / he was welcome / and no re-
 25 herfail was made / and there was game and playe / and thenne the kynge and the quene wente on huntynge and fir Triftram

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

THe kynge and the quene made their paelions & theire tentes in that forest besyde a Ryuer / and ther was
 30 dayly huntynge and Iustyng / for there were euer xxx knyghtes redy to Iuste vnto alle them that came in at that tyme / And there by fortune came fyre Lamerak de galys and fir Dryaunt / and there fyre Dryaunt Iusted ryght wel / but at the laste he had a falle / Thenne fyre Lamerak profered to
 35 Iuste / And whan he began he ferd fo with the thyrtty knyghtes

that there was not one of hem but that he gaf hym a falle / and
 fomme of them were fore hurte / I merueyle faid kyng Mark
 what knyght he is that doth fuche dedes of armes / Sir faid fire
 Triftram / I knowe hym wel for a noble knyght / as fewe now
 ben lyuyng / and his name is fir Lamorak de Galys / it were 5
 grete shame faide the kyng that he shold goo thus aweye on-
 les that fomme of you mette with hym better / Syre faid fyre
 Triftram me femeth it were no worship for a noble man to ha-
 ue adoo with hym / And for by caufe at this tyme he hath done
 ouer moche for ony meane knyght lyuyng / therfore as me fe- 10
 meth hit were grete shame and vylony to tempte hym ony mo-
 re at this tyme / in foo moche as he and his hors are wery bothe
 For the dedes of armes that he hath done this daye and they be
 wel confydered / it were ynough for fir Launcelot du lake /

¶ As for that faid kyng Marke I requyre you as ye loue 15
 me and my lady the Quene La beale Ifoud take youre ar-
 mes and Iuste with fire Lamorak de Galys / ¶ Syre faid fir
 Triftram ye byd me doo a thyng that is ageynst knyghthode /
 And wel I can deme that I shal gyue hym a falle / For hit
 is no maystry / for my hors and I ben fresshe bothe / and so is 20
 not his hors and he / and wete ye wel / that he wil take hit for
 grete vnkyndenes / For euer one good is lothe to take another
 at difauantage / But by caufe I wil not displeafe yow / as
 ye requyre me / foo wille I doo and obeye your commaudemēt
 And foo fire Triftram armed hym and took his hors / & putt 25
 hym forth / and there fire Lamerak mette hym myghtely / and
 what with the myght of his owne spere / and of fire Triftram
 spere fyr Lamoraks hors felle to the erthe / and he fyttynge in
 the fadel / Thenne anone as lyghtly as he myghte he auoyded
 the fadel and his hors / and put his shelde afore hym and dre- 30
 we his fwerd / And thenne he badde fir Triftram alyghte thou
 knyght and thou darst / Nay faid fire Triftram I wil no more
 haue adoo with the / for I haue done to the ouer moche vnto
 my dishonour and to thy worship / ¶ As for that faid fir
 Lamorak I can the no thanke / fyn thou hast foriusted me on 35
 horfbak I requyre the and I bifeche the / and thou be fir Trif-
 tram / fyghte with me on foote / ¶ I wylle not foo

said ore Triftram / And wete ye wel my name is fire Triftrā
 de lyones / and wel I knowe ye be fire Lamorak de Galys /
 And this that I haue done to you was ageynft my wylle /
 but I was requyred therto / but to faye that I wille doo atte
 5 youre request / as at thys tyme I will haue no more ado with
 you / for me shameth of that I haue done / ¶ As for the flame
 said fire Lamorak on thy party or on myne / beare thou hit &
 thou wilt / For though a marys fone hath fayled me / now a
 Quenes fone fhalle not fayle the / And therefore and thou be
 10 fuche a knyghte as men calle the / I requyre the / alyghte / and
 fyghte with me / Syre Lamorak said fire Triftram I vnder-
 stande youre herte is grete / and caufe why ye haue / to faye the
 fothe / for hit wold greue me and ony knyght shold kepe hym
 freffhe / and thenne to ftryke doune a wery knyghte / for that
 15 knyghte nor hors was neuer fourmed that alwey myght ftā-
 de or endure / And therefore said fire Triftram I wille not ha-
 ue adoo with you / for me forthynketh of that I haue done / as
 for that said fire Lamorak I fhall quyte you and euer I fee
 my tyme /

¶ Capitulum xxxiiii

20 **H**Oo he departed from hym with fire Dryaun / and by
 the weye they mette with a knyzt that was fente from
 Morgan le fay vnto kynge Arthur / and this knyght hadde
 a fayre horne harnest with gold / and the horne had fuche a ver-
 tue that there myght no lady ne gentilwoman drynke of that
 25 horne / but yf she were true to her husband / And yf she were
 fals she shold fpylle alle the drynke / And yf she were true
 to her lord she myght drynke peasfyble / and by caufe of the que-
 ne Gueneuer and in despyte of fire Launcelot this horne
 was fente vnto kynge Arthur / and by force fire Lamorak ma-
 30 de that knyghte to telle alle the caufe why he bare that horne /
 ¶ Now fhalte thou bere this horn sayd Lamorak vnto kyng
 Marke or els chese thou to dye for it / For I telle the playnly
 in despyte and reproof of fire Triftrams thou fhalte bere that
 horne vnto kynge Marke his vnkel / and fay thou to hym that

I fent hit hym for to affay his lady / ¶ And yf she be true to
 hym he fhall preue her / Soo the knyghte wente his waye vnto
 kynge Marke and broughte hym that ryche horne / and fayd
 that fir Lamorak fente hit hym / and there to he told hym the
 vertue of that horne

¶ Thenne the kynge maade 5
 Quene Ifoud to drynke therof / and an honderd ladyes / and
 there were but four ladyes of alle tho that dranke clene /

¶ Allas faide kynge Marke this is a grete despyte / and fwa-
 re a grete othe / that she fhould be brente and the other ladyes /

¶ Thenne the Barons gadred them to gyder and said playn- 10
 ly they wold not haue tho ladyes brente for an horne maade
 by forcery that came from as fals a forcereffe and wytche as tho
 was luyng / For that horne dyd neuer good but caused stryf
 and debate / and alweyes in her dayes she had ben an enemy to
 alle true louers / Soo there were many knyghtes made their a- 15
 uowe / and euer they met with Morgan le fay that they wold
 fhewe her fhort curtosye /

¶ Also fir Triftram was paffyng
 wrothe that fir Lamorak fente that horne vnto kynge Marke
 for wel he knewe that hit was done in the despyte of hym /
 And therfor he thoughte to quyte fir Lamorak / ¶ Thenne 20
 fyre Triftram vfed dayly and nyghtely to go to quene Ifoud
 whanne he myght / and euer fyre Andred his cofyn watched
 hym nyght and daye for to take hym with la Beale Ifoud /
 And soo vpon a nyght fyre Andred afpyed the houre and the
 tyme whan fir Triftram wente to his lady /

¶ Thenne fyre 25
 Andred gate vnto hym twelue knyghtes / and at mydnyghte
 he fette vpon fir Triftram secretly and fodenly / and there fir
 Triftram was take naked a bedde with la beale Ifoud / and
 thenne was he boūd hande and foot / and soo was he kepte vn-
 tyl daye / ¶ And thenne by the affent of kynge Marke and of 30
 fyr Andred and of fomme of the Barons fyre Triftram was
 ledde vnto a chappel that stode vpon the fee rockes there for to
 take his Iugement / and soo he was ledde bounden with fourty
 knyghtes / And whan fir Triftram fawe that there was none
 other boote / but nedes that he must dye / thenne said he fayr lor-
 des remembre what I haue done for the Countreye of Corne-
 waile / and in what Ieopardy I haue ben in for the wele of
 you alle / For whan I fouzt for the truage of cornewaile with

fir Marhaus the good knyght / I was promysed for to be bet-
 ter rewarded / whanne ye alle reffused to take the bataille / ther-
 fore as ye be good gentyl knyghtes / see me not thus shame-
 fully to dye / for it is shame to alle knyghthode thus to see me
 5 dye / For I dare faye faid fire Triftram that I neuer met with
 no knyght but I was as good as he / or better / Fy vpon the
 faid fir Andred fals traitour that thou arte with thyn auau-
 cyngre / for alle thy boost thou shalt dye this daye / O Andred
 Andred faid fir Triftram thou sholdest be my kynnesman / and
 10 now thou art to me ful vnfrendely / but and there were no mo
 but thou and I / thou woldest not putte me to deth / No faid fir
 Andred / and ther with he drewe his swerd / and wold haue
 flayne hym / Whanne fir Triftram sawe hym make suche coun-
 tenaunce / he loked vpon bothe his handes that were fast boun-
 15 den vnto two knyghtes / and sodenly he pulled them bothe to
 hym / and vnwraft his handes / and thenne he lepte vnto his co-
 fyn fyr Andred and wrothe his swerd oute of his handes /
 thenne he smote fir Andred that he fylle to the erthe / and soo
 fir Triftram foughte tyl that he hadde kyled x knyghtes / So
 20 thenne fir Triftram gate the chappell and kepte hit myghtely /
 thenne the crye was grete / and the peple drewe faste vnto fire
 Andred moo than an honderd / whanne fir Triftram sawe the
 peple drawe vnto hym he remembryd he was naked / & spered
 fast the chappel dore and brake the barrys of a wyndowe / and
 25 soo he lepte oute and fylle vpon the crackys in the see / And so
 at that tyme fir Andred nor none of his felawes myghte ge-
 te to hym at that tyme /

¶ Capitulum xxxv

30 **S**oo whanne they were departed / Gouvernaile and fire
 Lambegus and fire Sentraile de lufhon that were fir
 Triftrams men foughte their maister / whanne they herd
 he was escaped / thenne they were passyng gladde / and on the
 rockes they fond hym / and with tuels they pulled hym vp /
 And thenne fire Triftram asked hem where was la beale Ifo-
 ud / for he wende she had ben had aweye of Andreds peple /
 35 Syr faid Gouvernaile she is put in a lazar cote ¶ Allas

faid fyre Trystram this is a ful vngoodely place for suche a
 fayre lady / And yf I maye she shalle not be longe there /
 And soo he took his men and wente there as was la Beale
 Ifoud / and fette her aweye and broughte her in to a forest to
 a fayre manoyre / and sire Triftram there abode with her / 5
 Soo the good knyghte badde his men goo from hym / For att
 this tyme I maye not helpe you / soo they departed alle fauf
 Gouvernaile / And soo vpon a daye sire Triftram yede in to the
 forest for to disporte hym / and thenne hit happend / that there
 he felle on slepe / And there came a man that sire Triftram a- 10
 fore hand had slayne his broder / And whan this man hadde
 foud hym he shotte hym thorou the sholder with an arow / and
 sire Triftram lepte vp and kylled that man / And in the me-
 ane tyme it was told kynge Marke / how sire Triftram and la
 beale Ifoud were in that fame manoir / and as soone as euer he 15
 myght thyder he came with many knyghtes to flee sire Triftram
 And whanne he came there / he fond hym gone / and there he
 took la beale Ifoud home with hym / and kepte her strayte that
 by no meane neuer she myght wete nor sende vnto Trystram
 nor he vnto her / And thenne whanne fyre Triftram came to- 20
 ward the old manoir / he fond the trak of many horses / and
 ther by he wiste his lady was gone / And thenne sire Triftram
 took grete forou / and endured with grete payne long tyme /
 for the arowe that he was hurte with al was enuened /
 Thenne by the meane of la Beale Ifoud she told a lady that 25
 was cofyn vnto dame Bragwayne / and she came to sire Trif-
 tram and told hym that he myght not be hole by no meanes /
 For thy lady la beale Ifoud maye not helpe the / therfor she byd-
 deth you haste in to Bretayne to kynge Howel / and there ye
 shal fynde his douzter Ifoud le blanché maynys / and she shal 30
 helpe the / Thenne sire triftram and gouvernaile gat them shypp-
 yng / and soo failed in to Bretayne / And whan kynge Howel
 wist that it was sire triftram / he was ful gladde of hym / Syre
 he faid I am comen in to this countrey to haue help of your do-
 ughter / For hit is tolde me / that there is none other may hele 35
 me but she / and soo within a whyle she heled hym /

¶ Capitulum xxxvi]

THere was an Erle that hyghte Gryp / And this Erle
maade grete werre vpon the kynge / and putte the ky-
nge to the werfe / and byfeged hym / And on a tyme
fyre kehydyus that was sone to kynge Howel / as he yffued
5 oute / he was fore wounded nyghe to the dethe /

¶ Thenne Gouvernaile wente to the kynge and said / fyre I
counceyle you to defyre my lord fyre Triftram as in your nede
to helpe you / I wille doo by your counceylle said the kynge /
and soo he yede vnto fyr Tryftram and praid hym in his war-
10 rris to helpe hym / for my sone kehydyus may not goo in to the
felde

¶ Sire said fir Triftram I wille goo to the feld
and doo what I maye / Thenne fir Triftram yffued out of the
towne with fuche felaufhip as he myght make / and dyd fuche
dedes that alle Bretayne spake of hym / And thēne at the last
15 by grete myghte and force he flewe the Erle Gryp with his
owne handes / and moo than an honderd knyghtes he flewe
that daye / And thenne fire Triftram was receyued worship-
fully with proceffion

¶ Thenne kynge Howel enbra-
ced hym in his armes / and said fire Triftram alle my kyng-
20 dome I wille refygne to the / God defende said fir Triftram /
For I am beholden vnto you for youre doughters sake to doo
for you /

¶ Thenne by the grete meanes of kynge
Howel & kehydyus his sone by grete profers there grewe gre-
te loue betwixe Ifoud and fire Tryftram / for that lady was
25 bothe good and fayre / and a woman of noble blood & fame

¶ And for by cause fir Triftram had fuche chere and Rycheffe
and alle other plesaunce that he hadde / all moost he hadde for-
faken la beale Ifoud / And soo vpon a tyme fir Tryftram a-
greed to wedde Ifoud la blaunche maynys / And at the laste
30 they were wedded / and solempnly held theyr maryage / And
foe whanne they were abedde bothe / fire Triftram remembryd
hym of his old lady la beale Ifoud / And thenne he toke fu-
che a thought sodenly that he was alle defmayed / and other che-
re maade he none but with clyppyng and kyffynge as for
35 other fleffhly lustes fire Tryftram neuer thoughte nor hadde
adoo with her / fuche mencyon maketh the frensche booke

Also it maketh mencyon that the lady wende there had ben no
 pleafyr but kyffynge and clyppynge / ¶ And in the meane
 tyme there was a knyght in Bretayne his name was Suppy-
 nabyles / and he came ouer the fee in to Englonde / And thenne
 he came in to the court of kynge Arthur / and he met with 5
 fir Launcelot du lake / and told hym of the maryage of fyre
 Triftram / Thenne faid fire Launcelot / Fy vpon hym vntrue
 knyghte to his lady that foo noble a knyghte as fir Tryfram
 is shold be foude to his fyrst lady fals / la beale Ifoud / quene
 of Cornewaile / But faye ye hym this / faid fire Launcelot that 10
 of alle knyghtes in the world I loued hym mooft / and had
 mooft ioye of hym / and alle was for his noble dedes / and le-
 te hym wete the loue bitwene hym and me is done for euer /
 And that I gyue hym warnyng from this daye forth as his
 mortal enemy

15

¶ Capitulum xxxviij

THenne departed fyr Suppynabyles vnto Bretayne a-
 geyne / and there he fond fir Triftram / and told hym /
 that he had ben in kynge Arthurs courte / Thenne faid fir Trif-
 tram herd ye ony thyng of me / Soo god me help faide fyre
 Suppynabyles / there I herd fire Launcelot speke of you gre- 20
 te shame / and that ye be a fals knyght to your lady / and he bad
 me doo you to wete that he wille be your mortal enemy in eue-
 ry place where he may mete you / That me repenteth faid Trif-
 tram / for of alle knyghtes I loued to be in his felaufship / Soo
 fyre Triftram made grete mone and was ashamed that noble 25
 knyghtes shold deffame hym for the sake of his lady / And in
 this meane whyle la beale Ifoud maade a letter vnto Quene
 Gueneuer complaynyng her of the vntrouthe of fir Triftram
 and how he hadde wedded the kynges doughter of Bretayne /
 Quene Gueneuer fente her another letter / and badde her be of 30
 good chere / for she shold haue Ioye after forou / for fire triftram
 was so noble a knyzt called / that by craftes of forcery ladyes
 wolde make fuche noble men to wedde them / but in the ende
 Quene Gueneuer faid hit shal be thus / that he shalle hate her /
 and loue you better than euer he dyd to fore

¶ So leue 35

we fire Trystram in Bretayne and speke we of fire Lamerak
 de galys / that as he sayled his shyp felle on a rok and peryf-
 fhed all / faue fire Lamerak and his squyer / and there he swam
 myghtely / and fysshers of the yle of seruage toke hym vp and
 5 his squyer was drouned / and the ship men had grete laboure
 to faue fire Lamoraks lyf / for alle the comfort that coude
 doo / and the lord of that yle hyght fyre Nabon le noyre a gre-
 te myghty gyaunt / And this fir Nabon hated alle the knygh-
 tes of kynge Arthurs / and in no wyfe he wold doo hem fa-
 10 uoure / And these fysshers told fir Lamorak alle the gyfe of
 fyre Nabon / how there came neuer knyghte of kynge Arthurs
 but he destroyed hym / And atte last bataille that he dyd was
 slayne fyr Nanowne le petyte / the which he put to a shameful
 dethe in despyte of kynge Arthur / for he was drawen lymme
 15 meale / That forthynketh me said fir Lamerak for that knygh-
 tes dethe / for he was my cofyn / And yf I were at myn ease
 as wel as euer I was I wold reuenge his dethe / Pees fa-
 yd the fysshers and make here no wordes / for or euer ye departe
 from hens fyre Nabon must knowe that ye haue ben here / or
 20 els we shold dye for your sake / So that I be hole said Lamo-
 rak of my diseafe / that I haue taken in the see / I wille that ye
 telle hym that I am a knyzt of kynge Arthurs / for I was ne-
 uer aferd to reneye my lord /

¶ Capitulum xxxviii

Now tourne we vnto fire Trystram that vpon a daye he
 25 took a lytel Barget and his wyf Ifoud la blaüche
 maynys with fire kay hedyus her broder to playe hem in the cof-
 stes / And whan they were from the land / there was a wyn-
 de drofe hem in to the coste of walys vpon this yle of seruage /
 where as was fyre Lamorak and there the Barget all to rofe
 30 and there dame Ifoud was hurte / and as wel as they myzte
 they gate in to the forest / and there by a welle he sawe Segwa-
 rydes and a damoyfel / And thenne eyther falewed other / fyre
 fayde Segwarydes I knowe you for fire Triftram de Lyones
 the man in the world that I haue moost cause to hate by cause

ye departed the loue bitwene me and my wyf / but as for that
 fayd Segwarydes I wil neuer hate a noble knyzt for a lyzt
 lady / And therefore I pray you be my frende and I wille be
 yours vnto my power / for wete ye wel / ye are hard bestad in
 this valey / and we shalle haue ynough to doo eyther of vs to 5
 focoure other / And thenne fir Segwarydes brought fir Tryf-
 tram to a lady there by that was borne in Cornewaile / and
 she told hym alle the peryls of that valey / and how ther cam
 neuer knyght there but he were taken pryfoner or flayne / wete
 you wel fair lady said fir Tryfram that I flewe fire Marhaus 10
 and delyuerd Cornewaile from the truage of Irland / And
 I am he that delyuerd the kynge of Irlande from fire Bla-
 mor de ganys / and I am he that bete fire Palamydes / and we-
 te ye wel I am fire Tryfram de lyones that by the grace of
 god shalle delyuer this woful yle of feruage / So fir Triftram 15
 was wel eafed / thenne one told hym there was a knyghte of
 kyng Arthur þ^t had wrackyd on the rockes / what is his name
 said fir Triftram / we wote not said the fyffhers but he kepeth it
 no counceil but that he is a knyghte of Kynge Arthurs / and
 by the myghty lord of this yle he fetteth nought by / I praye 20
 you said fir Tdeftram and ye maye brynge hym hyder that I
 maye see hym / And yf he be ony of the Knyghtes of Arthurs
 I shalle knowe hym / Thenne the lady prayed the fyffhers to
 brynge hym to her place / Soo on the morowe they brouzt hym
 thyder in a fyffhers rayment / And as soone as fire Triftram 25
 sawe hym he smyled vpon hym and knewe hym wel / but he
 knewe not fir Triftram / Fair fir faide fire Triftram me semeth
 by your chere ye haue ben diseafed but late / and also me thyn-
 keth I shold knowe you here to fore / I wille wel said fir La-
 morak that ye haue sene me and mette with me / Fair fir faide 30
 fir triftram telle me your name / vpon a couenaunt I wil telle
 you said fir Lamorak / that is / that ye wil telle me whether ye
 be lord of this Iland or noo that is called Nabon le noyre /
 For sothe said fir triftram I am not he nor I hold not of hym
 I am his foo as wel as ye be / and foo shal I be foude or I de- 35
 parte out of this yle / Wel said fir Lamorak fyn ye haue faide
 foo largely vnto me / My name is fire Lamorak de galis sone
 vnto kynge Pellinore / forsothe I trowe wel said fir triftram /

for and ye said other / I knowe the contrary / What are ye faid
 fyre Lamorak that knoweth me / I am fir Trystram de ly-
 ones / A fyre remembre ye not of the falle ye dyd yeue me o-
 nes / and after ye refused me to fyghte on foot / that was not
 5 for fere I had of you said fire Triftram / but me shamed att
 that tyme to haue more a doo with you / for me semed ye hadde
 ynough / but fire Lamorack for my kyndenes many ladyes ye
 putte to a reproof / whan ye sente the horne from Morgan le fay
 to kyng Marke where as ye dyd this in despyte of me / Well
 10 said he / and it were to doo ageyne / soo wold I doo / for I had
 leuer stryf and debate felle in kyng Marks courte rather than
 Arthurs courte / for the honour of bothe courtes be not y lyke
 As to that said fir Triftram I knowe wel / ¶ But that that
 was done it was for despyte of me / but alle youre malyce I
 15 thanke god hurte not gretely / Therfor said fir Triftram ye shal
 leue alle your malyce / and soo wille I and lete vs affay hou
 we may wynne worship bitwene you and me vpon this gy-
 aunt fir Nabon le noyre / that is lord of this Iland to destroye
 hym / Sir said fir Lamorak now I vnderstande your knyght-
 20 hode / it maye not be fals that alle men faye / for of your bounte
 nobles and worship of alle knyghtes ye are pyerles / And for
 your curtosy and gentilnes I shewed you vngentilnesse / &
 that now me repenteth

¶ Capitulum xxxix

IN the meane tyme there cam word that fir Nabon had
 25 made a crye that alle the peple of that yle shold be at
 his castel the fyfthe day after / ¶ And the same daye the sone
 of Nabon shold be made knyghte / and alle the knyghtes of
 that valey and there about shold be there to Iuste and all tho
 of the Royamme of Logrys shold be there to Iuste with them
 30 of Northwalys / and thyder came fyue honderd knyghtes / and
 they of the countrey brought thyder fyre Lamorak and fir Trif-
 tram and fyre kehedyus and fire Segwarides / for they durst
 none other wyse doo / and thenne fir Nabon lent fire Lamorak
 hors and armour at fire Lamoraks desyre / and fire Lamorak
 35 Iusted and dyd fuche dedes of armes that Nabon and all the

peple faid there was neuer knyzt that euer they fawe do fuche
 dedes of armes / for as the Frenshe book faith he foriusted alle
 that were there for the moost party of fyue honderd knyghtes
 that none abode hym in his fadel Thenne fir Nabon profered to
 playe with hym his playe / for I fawe neuer no knyghte doo 5
 soo muche vpon a daye / I wille wel faid sire Lamorak playe
 as I may but I am wery and fore bryfed / and there eyther
 gate a spere / but Nabon wold not encountre with sire Lamo-
 rak / but smote his hors in the forhede and soo flewe hym / and
 thenne sire Lamorak yede on foote and torted his shelde and 10
 drewe his sward / and there beganne fronge bataill on foote /
 But fir Lamorak was so fore bryfed and shorte brethed that
 he tracyd and trauercyd fomwhat abak / Fair felawe faid fyre
 Nabon hold thy hand and I shalle shewe the more curtosye /
 than euer I shewed knyght by cause I haue fene this daye thy 15
 noble knyghthode / And therefore stand thou by and I wil wete
 whether ony of thy felawes wille haue adoo with me / Thenne
 whan fir Triftram herd that / he stepte forth and and faid Nabon le-
 nde me hors and sure armour and I wille haue adoo with the
 Wel felawe faid fir Nabon goo thou to yonder paelione and 20
 arme the of the best thou fyndest there / and I shalle playe a
 merueillous playe with the / Thenne faid sire Triftram loke ye
 playe wel or els peraduentur I shalle lerne you a newe play
 that is wel faid felawe faid fir Nabon / So whan fir Triftram
 was armed as hym lyked best and wel shelded and swarded / 25
 he dresfid to hym on foote / For wel he knewe fyr Nabon wold
 not abyde a stroke with a spere / therefore he wold flee alle kny-
 ghtes horses / Now fair felawe faid fir Nabon lete vs playe /
 Soo thenne they foughte longe on foote tracynge and trauer-
 cynge smytynge and foynyngge longe withoute ony rest / Atte 30
 laft fir Nabon praid hym to telle hym his name / Syre Nabon
 I telle the my name is fir Triftram de lyones a knyzt of Cor-
 newail vnder kyngge Marke / thou art welcome faid fir nabon /
 for of alle knyghtes I haue moost defyred to fyghte with the
 or with fir Launcelot / Soo thenne they wente egerly to gyders 35
 and sire triftram slewe sire nabon / and soo forth with he lepte
 to his sone / and strake of his hede / and thenne al the country
 sayde / they wold holde of sire Triftram / nay saide sire Triftram

I wille not foo / here is a worshipfull knyght fir Lamorak de galys that for me he shalle be lord of this countrey / for he hath done here grete dedes of armes / nay said fir Lamorak I wil not be lord of this countrey / for I haue not deserued it as wel
 5 as ye / therfore gyue ye hit where ye wille for I will none haue / Wel saide fire Triftram fyn ye nor I wille not haue hit / lete vs yeue hit to hym that hath not so wel deserued hit / Doo as ye lyft said Segwarydes / for the yefte is yours for I wil none haue and I had deserued hit / Soo was it yeuen to seg-
 10 warydes wherof he thanked hem / and foo was he lord / & worshipfully he dyd gouerne hit / And thenne fir Segwarydes delyuerd alle prysoners and sette good gouernaunce in that valey / and foo he torned in to Cornewaile / and told kynge Mark and la beale Ifoud how fir Triftram had auanced
 15 hym to the yle of seruage / and there he proclamed in al Cornewaile of alle the aduentures of these two knyghtes / so was hit openly knowen / But ful wo was la Beale Ifoud when she herde telle that fire Triftram was wedded to Ifoud la blanche maynys

¶ Capítulum xi

20 **S**oo torne we vnto fir Lamorak that rode toward Arthurs courte / and fire Triftrams wyf and Kehydyus took a vessel and failed in to Bretayne vnto kynge Howel where he was welcome / And whan he herd of these aduētures they merueilled of his noble dedes / Now torne we vnto fir La-
 25 morak that whan he was departed from fire Triftram / he rode oute of the forest tyll he came to an hermytage / whan the hermyte sawe hym / he asked hym from whens he came / fir said fir Lamorak I come fro this valey / fir said the hermyte therof I merueille / For this xx wynter I sawe neuer no knyght passe
 30 this countrey / but he was other slayne or vylaynously wounded or passe as a poure prysoner / Tho ylle customs said fir lamorak are fordone / for fir Triftram slewe your lord fir Nabon and his sone / thenne was the hermyte gladde and all his bretheren / for he said ther was neuer sūche a tyraunt among cry-
 35 sten men / And therfor said the hermyte this valey and fraūceis

[leaf 167 verso]

we wille holde of fire Trifram / Soo on the morowe fir Lamorak departed / And as he rode he fawe four knyghtes fyghte ageynst one / and that one knyght defended hym wel but atte laft the four knyghtes had hym doune / And thenne fir Lamorak wente betwixe them / and asked them why they wold flee 5
 that one knyght / and faid hit was fhame four ageynst one / Thou fhalt wel wete faid the four knyghtes that he is fals / that is youre tale faid fir Lamorak / And whanne I here hym also speke / I wille fay as ye faye / ¶ Thenne faid Lamorak / a knyght can ye not excufe you / but that ye are a fals knyghte / 10
 Syr faid he yet can I excufe me both with my word & with my handes / that I wille make good vpon one of the best of them my body to his body / ¶ Thenne spake they al attones / we wil not Ieopardy our bodyes as for the / But wete thou wel they faide and kynge Arthur were here hym felf it shold not lye in 15
 his power to faue his lyf / That is to moche faid / faid fire Lamorak / but many speke behynde a man more than they wylle faye to his face / And by caufe of your wordes ye shalle vnderftande that I am one of the fympleft of kynge Arthurs courte / in the worfhip of my lord now doo your best / and in despyte of you I shalle rescowe hym / And thenne they laffhed alle at ones to fir Lamorak / but anone at two ftrokes fyre Lamorak had flayne two of them / and thenne the other two fledde ¶ 20
 Soo thenne fire Lamorak torned ageyne to that knyghte / & asked hym his name / fyre he fayde my name is fire Frolle of 25
 the oute Iles / thenne he rode with fire Lamorak and bare hym company / And as they rode by the waye / they fawe a femely knyght rydyng ageynst them / and all in whyte / A faid Frol yonder knyght Iufted late with me and smote me doune / therfore I wil Iufte with hym / ye shal not doo foo faid fire Lamorak by my counceil / and ye wille telle me your quarel whether ye Iufted at his request / or he at yours / Nay faid fir Frol / I Iufted with hym at my request / Syr faid Lamorak / thēne wil I couceile you dele no more with hym / for me femeth by his countenance he shold be a noble knyght / and no Iaper / for me 35
 thynketh / he shold be of the table round / therfor I wil not spare faid fir Frol / and thenne he cryed and faid / fir knyzt make

the redy to Iust / That nedeth not faid the whyte knyghte / For
 I haue no luste to Iuste with the / but yet they feutryd their
 speres / and the whyte knyghte ouerthrewe fire Frol / and thē-
 ne he rode his waye a softe paas / Thenne fir Lamorak rode af-
 5 ter hym / and praid hym to telle hym his name / for me semeth
 ye shold be of the felaufhip of the round table / Vpon a coue-
 naut faid he I wille telle you my name / soo that ye wylle
 not discouer my name / and also that ye wille telle me yours /
 Thenne faid he my name is fir Lamorak de galys / And my
 10 name is fir Launcelot du lake / thenne they putte vp their fuer-
 des / and kyffed hertely to gyders / and eyder made grete Ioye
 of other / Syr faid fir Lamorak and hit please you I wyll do
 you feruyse / God defende faid Launcelot that ony of soo noble
 a blood as ye be shold doo me feruyse / Thenne he faide more I
 15 am in a quest that I must doo my self alone / Now god spede
 you faid fir Lamorak / and so they departed / Thenne fir Lamorak
 came to fir Frol and horfed hym ageyne / what knyght is
 that faid fir Frol / fir he faid it is not for you to knowe nor it
 is no poynte of my charge / ye are the more vncurteis faide fire
 20 Frol / and therefore I wille departe fro yow / ye may doo as ye
 lyft faid fir Lamorak / and yet by my company ye haue faued
 the fayrest floure of your garland / soo they departed

¶ Capitulum xli

THenne within two or thre dayes fyr Lamorak fond a
 knyghte at a welle slepyng / and his lady fate with
 25 hym and waked / Ryght so came fir Gawayne and toke the
 knyghtes lady / and fette her vp behynde his squyer / Soo fyre
 Lamorak rode after fyre Gawayne / and faid fire Gawayne /
 torne ageyne / And thenne faid fir Gawayne what wylle ye do
 with me / for I am neuewe vnto kyng Arthur / fyre faid he for
 30 that cause I wil spare you / els that lady shold abyde wyth
 me / or els ye shold Iuste with me / Thenne fire Gawayne tor-
 ned hym and ranne to hym that ought the lady with his spe-
 re / but the knyght with pure myght smote doune fyre Gawa-
 yne / and took his lady with hym / Alle this fir Lamorak saw
 35 and faid to hym self / but I reuenge my felawe / he will fay of

me dishonour in kynge Arthurs courte / Thenne sire Lamorak
 returned and profered that knyght to Iuste / Syr said he I am
 redy / and there they came to gyders with alle their myght / and
 there sir Lamorak smote the knyght thorou both fydes / that he
 fylle to the erthe dede / thenne that lady rode to that knyghtes 5
 broder that hyght Belliaūce le orgulus / that duelled fast ther
 by / and thenne she told hym how his broder was slayne /
 Allas said he I wille be reuengyd / and soo he horfed hym / &
 armed hym / and within a whyle he ouertook fyre Lamorak /
 and badde hym torne and leue that lady / for thou and I must 10
 playe a newe playe / for thou hast slayne my broder fyre Froll
 that was a better knyghte than euer were thou / It myghte
 wel be said sir Lamorak / but this day in the felde I was fōud
 the better / Soo they rode to gyder / and vnhorfed other / & torned
 their sheldes / and drewe their swerdes / and foughte myghtely 15
 as noble knyghtes preued by the space of two houres / So thē-
 ne sir Bellyaunce prayed hym to telle hym his name / Syr fa-
 id he my name is sire Lamorak de galys / A said fyr Belly-
 aunce / thou arte the man in the world that I moost hate / for
 I flewe my fones for thy sake / where I faued thy lyf / and 20
 now thou hast slayne my broder fyr Frol / Allas how shold I
 be accorded with the / therefore defende the / for thou shalt dye ther
 is none other remedy / ¶ Allas said sir Lamorak ful wel me
 ought to knowe you / for ye are the man that moost haue done
 for me / And there with alle sire Lamorak knelyd doune / and 25
 bifought hym of grace / Aryse said sir Bellyaunce / or els there
 as thou knelest I shalle flee the / That shal not nede faide sire
 Lamorak / for I wyl yelde me vnto you / not for fere of yow /
 nor for your strengthe / but your goodenes maketh me ful loth
 to haue adoo with you / wherfore I requyre you for goddes fa- 30
 ke / and for the honour of knyghthode forgyue me al that I ha-
 ue offended vnto you / Allas said Belleaunce leue thy knely-
 nge or els I shal flee the withoute mercy / Thenne they yede
 ageyne vnto batail / and either wounded other that al the gro-
 und was bloody there as they foughte / And at the laste Bel- 35
 leaunce withdrewre hym abak and sette hym doune softely vp-
 on a lytil hylle / for he was so faynte for bledyng that he my-
 ght not stande / Thenne sir lamorak threwe his shelde vpon his

bak / and asked hym what chere / wel said fyr Belliaunce / A
 fyr yet shalle I shewe you faueour in your male ease / A knyght
 fyr Belliaunce said fyr Lamorak thou arte a foole / for
 and I had had the at fuche auantage as thou hast done me
 5 I shold flee the / but thy gentylnes is so good and so large /
 that I must nedes forgyue the myn euylle wille / And then-
 ne fire Lamorak knelyd adoune / and vnlaced fyrst his vm-
 berere / and thenne his owne / and thenne eyther kyssed other
 with wepyngte teres / Thenne fire Lamerak ledde fir Belliaunce
 10 to an Abbay fast by / and there fire Lamorak wold not departe
 from Bellyaunce tyl he was hole / And thenne they sware to
 gyders that none of hem shold neuer fyghte ageynst other / So
 fyre Lamorak departed and wente to the courte of kynge Ar-
 thur /

¶ Here leue we of fire Lamorak and of sir Tristram

¶ And here begynneth the hystorye of La cote male taylor

¶ Capitulum primum

15 **A**T the Courte of kynge Arthur there cam a yo-
 unge man and bygly made / and he was ryche-
 ly bysene / and he desyred to be made knyghte of
 the kyng but his ouer garmēt sat ouerthwart-
 ly / how be hit / hit was ryche clothe of gold /

20 ¶ What is your name said kynge Arthur / Syre faide he / my
 name is Breunor le noyre / and within shorte space ye shalle
 knowe that I am of good kyn / It maye wel be said fir kay
 the Seneschal / but in mockage ye shalle be called la cote male
 25 grete thyngte that thou askest said the kyng / And for what ca-
 use werest thou that ryche cote / telle me / for I can wel thynke
 for somme cause hit is / Syre he anfuerd I had a fader a noble
 knyght / And as he rode on huntynge vpon a daye hit happed
 hym to leye hym doune slepe / And there came a knyght that
 30 had ben longe his enemy / And whan he sawe he was fast on
 slepe / he alle to hewe hym / And this same cote had my fader

on the same tyme / and that maketh this cote to fyttē foo evyll
 vpon me / for the strokes ben on hit as I fond hit / and neuer
 shalle be amendyd for me / Thus to haue my faders dethe in re-
 membraunce I were this cote tyl I be reuengyd / and by cau-
 se ye are callyd the moost noblest kynge of the world I come to 5
 you that ye shold make me knyght / Sir said fir Lamorak and
 fir Gaherys / hit were wel done to make hym knyght / for hym
 besemeth wel of persone / and of countenaunce / that he shal pre-
 ue a good man and a good knyght / and a myghty for fire and
 ye be remembryd euen fuche one was fire launcelot du lake / 10
 whanne he came fyrste in to this Courte / and full fewe of vs
 knewe from whens he came / and now is he preued the man of
 moost worship in the world / and all your courte and alle yo-
 ur Round table is by fire launcelot worhipped and amended
 more than by ony knyghte now lyuyngē / that is trouthe faide 15
 the kynge / and to morou att your request I shalle make hym
 knyght

¶ So on the morou there was an herte
 founden / and thyder rode kynge Arthur with a company of his
 knyghtes to flee the herte / And this yonge man that fire kay
 named la cote male tayle was there lefte behynd with Quene 20
 Gueneuer / and by fodeyne aduerture ther was an horryble ly-
 on kepte in a stronge Toure of stone and it happend that he at
 that tyme brake loos / and came hurlyngē afore the Quene &
 her knyghtes

¶ And whanne the Quene sawe the
 lyon / she cryed and fledde / and praide her knyghtes to rescowe 25
 her / And there was none of hem alle but twelue that abode /
 and alle the other fledde / ¶ Thenne faide La cote male tayle
 Now I see wel that alle coward knyghtes ben not dede / and
 there with alle he drewe his sward / and dressid hym afore the
 lyon / and that lyon gaped wyde and came vpon hym raump- 30
 pyngē to haue slayne hym / And he thenne smote hym in the
 mydde of the hede fuche a myghty stroke / that it clafe his hede
 in sonder / and daffhed to the erthe / ¶ Thenne was hit tolde
 the Quene how the yonge man that fire kay named by sorne
 La cote male tayle hadde slayne the lyon / With that the kyng 35
 came home /

¶ And whanne the Quene tolde hym of that
 aduerture / he was wel pleased / and said / vpon payne of myn
 hede he shalle preue a noble man and a feythful Knyghte

and true of his promyfe / thenne the kynge forth with al made hym knyght / Now sire said this yonge knyght I requyre you and alle the knyghtes of youre courte / that ye calle me by none other name but la cote male tayle / in foo moche that
 5 fyr kay hath foo named me / foo wille I be called / I affente me wel therto said the kynge

¶ Capitulum secundum

THenne that fame daye there came a damoyfel in to the courte / and she brought with her a grete black shelde / with a whyte hand in the myddes holdyng a fwerd
 10 Other pyctour was there none in that shelde / whan kyng Arthur fawe her / he asked her from whens she came / and what she wold / Syr she said I haue ryden longe and many a day with this sheld many wayes / and for this cause I am come to your courte / There was a good knyght that ought this sheld / &
 15 this knyght had vndertake a grete dede of armes to enchieue hit / and foo it myffortuned hym / another stronge knyght met with hym by fodeyne aduerture / and there they fought longe / & eyther wounded other passyng fore / and they were foo wery / that they lefte that bataille euen hand / Soo this knyghte that
 20 ought this shelde fawe none other way but he must dye / & thēne he commaunded me to bere this shelde to the Courte of kynge Arthur / he requyryng and prayenge somme good knyzt to take this shelde / and that he wold fulfyll the quest that he was in / Now what faye ye to this quest said kynge Arthur /
 25 Is there any of you here that wille take vpon hym to welde this shelde / ¶ Thenne was there not one that wold speke one word / thenne sir kay took the shelde in his handes / Sire knyzt said the damoyfel what is your name / Wete ye wel said he my name is sir kay the seneschal that wyde where is knowen /
 30 Syre said that damoyfel laye doune that shelde / for wete ye wel it falleth not for you / for he must be a better knyzt than ye / that shalle welde this shelde / damoyfel sayd fyr kay wete ye wel I toke this sheld in my handes by youre leue / for to behold it

not to that entent / but goo where someuer thou wilt / for I will
 not go with you / Thenne the damoyfel stode styllle a grete why-
 le / and byheld many of tho knyghtes / Thenne spak the kny-
 ght La cote male tayle / fayre damoyfel I wille take the shel-
 de and that aduenture vpon me / soo I wyft I shold knowe / 5
 wheder ward my iourney myght be / for by caufe I was thys
 daye made knyght I wold take this aduenture vpon me /
 What is your name fayre yonge man said the damoyfel / My
 name is said he la cote male tayle / wel mayft thou be called fo
 said the damoyfel / the knyzt with the euylle shapen cote / but & 10
 thou be soo hardy to take vpon the to bere that shelde and to fo-
 lowe me / wete thou wel / thy skyn shalle be as wel hewen as
 thy cote / As for that said la cote male tayle whan I am soo
 hewen I wille afke you no salue to hele me with alle / And
 forth with all ther came in to the Court two squyers & brouzt 15
 hym grete horses and his armour and his speres / and anone
 he was armed and tooke his leue / ¶ I wold not by my will
 said the kynge that ye took vpon you that hard aduenture / fir
 said he / this aduenture is myn / and the fyrst that euer I took
 vpon me / and that wille I folowe what someuer come of me 20
 ¶ Thenne that damoyfel departed / and la cote male tayle fast
 folowed after / And within a whyle he ouertook the damoyfell
 and anone she myffsaid hym in the fowlest maner

¶ Capitulum Tercium /

THenne fire kay ordeyned fir dagonet / kynge Arthurs
 foole to folowe after la cote male taile / and there fir 25
 kay ordeyned that fir Dagonet was horfed and armed
 and bad hym folowe la cote male taile / and profer hym to Iufte
 and soo he dyd / and whan he sawe la cote male tayle he cry-
 ed and badde hym make hym redy to Iufte / Soo fir la cote ma-
 le tayle smote fir Dagonet ouer his hors croupe / Thenne the 30
 damoyfel mocked la cote male tayle / and said fy for shame /
 now art thou shamed in Arthurs courte / whan they fende a
 foole to haue adoo with the / and specially at thy fyrst Iuftes /
 thus she rode longe and chyde / ¶ And within a whyle there

came fir Bleoberys the good knyght / and there he Iufted with
 la cote male tayle / and there fyre Bleoberys fmote hym fo fore
 that hors and alle felle to the erth / Thenne la cote male tayle
 arofe vp lyghtely and drefsid his fheld / and drewe his fuerd
 5 and wold haue done bataill to the vtteraūce / for he was wode
 wrothe / Not foo faid Bleoberys de ganys / as at this tyme I
 wille not fyghte vpon foote / Thenne the damoyfel Maledyfaūt
 rebuked hym in the fouleſt maner / and badde hym torne ayene
 coward / A damoyfel he faid I pray you of mercy to myſſay
 10 me no more / my gryef is ynough though ye gyue me no more /
 I calle my ſelf neuer the wers knyght / whan a marys ſone fa-
 yleth me / and alfo I compte me neuer the wers knyght for a
 falle of fir Bleoberys / Soo thus he rode with her two dayes /
 and by fortune there came fir Palomydes and encountred with
 15 hym / and he in the ſame wyſe ferued hym as dyd Bleoberys
 to fore hand / ¶ What doſt thou here in my ſelauſhip faide the
 damoyfel maledyfaunt / thou canſt not fyttē no knyghte / nor
 withſtande hym one buffet / but yf hit were fir dagonet / A fair
 damoyfel I am not the wers to take a falle of ſire Palamy-
 20 des / and yet grete diſworſhip haue I none / for neyder Bleo-
 berys nor yet palamydes wold not fyghte with me on foote /
 As for that faid the damoyfel wete thou wel they haue deſda-
 yne and ſcorne to lyghte of their horſes to fyghte with ſuche a
 lewde knyght as thou arte / Soo in the meane whyle ther cam
 25 fir Mordred / fir Gawayns broder / and foo he felle in the ſelau-
 ſhip with the damoyfel maledyfaunt / And thenne they came a-
 fore the caſtel Orgulous / and there was ſuche a cuſtomme that
 there myght no knyght come by that caſtel / but outhere he muſt
 luſte or be pryſoner / or at the leſt to leſe his hors and his har-
 30 neis / and there came oute two knyghtes ageynſt them / and fir
 Mordred Iuſted with the formeſt / and that knyght of the caſ-
 tel fmote ſire Mordred doune of his hors / and thenne la cote
 male tayle Iuſted with that other / and eyther of hem fmote o-
 ther doune hors and alle to the erthe / And whanne they auoy-
 35 ded their horſes / thenne eyther of hem took others horſes /
 ¶ And thenne la cote male tayle rode vnto that knyght that
 fmote doune ſire Mordred and Iuſted with hym / And there
 fyre La cote male tayle hurte & wounded hym paſſynge fore

and putte hym from his hors as he had ben dede / So he torned vnto hym that mette hym afore / and he took the flyght toward the castel / and sire la cote male tayle rode after hym in to the Castel Orgulous / and there la cote male tayle flewe hym

¶ Capitulum iiij

ANd anone there came an honderd knyghtes about hym 5
and affaylled hym / and whan he sawe his hors shold
be flayne / he alyghte and voyded his hors / & putte the brydel vnder his feete / and so put hym out of the gate / And whan he had foo done / he hurled in amonge hem / and dresseid his bak vnto a ladyes chamber walle / thynkyng hym self that he had leuer 10
dye there with worship / than to abyde the rebukes of the damoyfel Maledyfaunt / And in the meane tyme as he stood & fouzt that lady whos was the chamber wente out flyly at her posterne / and without the gates she fond la cote male tayles hors and lyghtly she gate hym by the brydel / and teyed hym to the 15
posterne / And thenne she wente vnto her chambre flyly ageyn for to behold hou that one knyght fought ageynst an honderd knyghtes / And whan she had behold hym longe / she wente to a wyndowe behynde his bak / and said thou knyght thou fyghtest wonderly wel / but for alle that at the last thou must nedes dye / But and thou canst thorou thy myzty prowesse wyne vnto yonder posterne / for there I haue fastned thy hors to abyde the / but wete thou wel thou must thynke on thy worship / & thynke not to dye / for thou maiste not wyne vnto that posterne without thou doo nobly and myghtly / Whan la cote 25
male tayle herd her faye so / he gryped his fwerd in his handes and put his sheld fayre afore hym / & thorou the thyckest prees he thrulled thorou them / And whan he came to the posterne he fond there redy four knyghtes / and at two the fyrst strokes he flewe two of the knyghtes / & the other fledde / & foo he wanne 30
his hors and rode from them / and alle as it was it was reherced in kyng Arthurs courte / hou he flewe twelue knyghtes within the castel Orgulous / and so he rode on his waye / And in the meane whyle the damoyfel said to sire Mordred I wene my foolyshe knyght be outhere flayn or takē prysoner / thēne were they ware where he came rydyng / And whan he was come 35

to them / he told alle how he hadde spedde / and escaped in despyte
of them alle / and fomme of the best of hem wille telle no tales /
Thou lyeft falsly faide the damoyfel / that dare I make good /
but as a foole and a daftard to alle knyghthode / they haue
lete the paffe / that may ye preue said La cote male taylor /
5 With that she fente a currouer of hers that rode alweye with her
for to knowe the trouthe of this dede / and soo he rode thydder
lyghtly / and asked how and in what maner that la cote male
taylor was escaped oute of the castel / ¶ Thenne alle the
10 knyghtes cursyd hym and said that he was a fende and noo
man / For he hath slayne here twelue of oure best knyghtes / &
we wende vnto this daye that hit ben to moche for sir laūcelot
du lake or for sire Triftram de lyones / And in despyte of
vs alle he is departed from vs and maulgre oure hedes /
15 ¶ With this answere the currouer departed and came to Male-
dyfaunt his lady / and told her alle how fyr la cote male
taylor had spedde at the castel Orgulous / Thenne she smote doun
her heed / and sayd lytel / By my hede said sir Mordred to the
damoyfel ye are gretely to blame so to rebuke hym / for I warne
20 ne you playnly he is a good knyghte / and I doubte not / but
he shalle preue a noble knyghte / but as yet he may not yet fytt
fure on horsbak / for he that shalle be a good horsman / hit must
come of vsage and excercyse / But whan he cometh to the strokes
of his sward / he is thenne noble and myghty / and that sawe
25 we sire Bleoberys and sir Palamydes / for wete ye wel they
are wyly men of armes / and anon they knowe when they see
a yonge knyghte by his rydyng / how they are fure to yeue hym
a falle from his hors or a grete buffet / But for the moost party
they wille not lyghte on foote with yonge knyghtes / For
30 they are wyght and strongly armed / For in lyke wyse sir laūcelot
du lake whan he was fyrste made knyghte / he was often
putte to the werse vpon horsbak / but euer vpon foote he recouerd
his renomme / and flewe and defoyled many knyghtes of the
round table / And therfor the rebukes that sir Laūcelot
dyd vnto many knyghtes causeth them that be men of proweesse
35 to beware / for often I haue sene the old preued knyghtes
rebuked and slayne by them that were but yonge begynners /
Thus they rode fure talkynge by the way to gyders /

¶ Here leue we of a whyle of this tale and speke we of sire
Launcelot du lake /

¶ Capitulum Quintum

THat whan he was come to the courte of kynge Arthur
thenne herd he telle of the yonge knyghte la cote male
taylor how he slewe the lyon / & how he tooke vpon hym
the aduerture of the black shelde / the whiche was named atte
that tyme the hardyest aduerture of the world / Soo god me
fauere faid sire Launcelot vnto many of his felawes / it was sha- 5
me to alle the noble knyghtes to suffre suche a yonge knyghte
to take suche aduerture vpon hym for his destructyon / for I
wille that ye wete faid sire launcelot / that that damoyfel ma-
ledyfaunt hath born that shelde many a day for to feche the most 10
proued knyghtes / and that was she that Breunys faunce py-
te took that sheld from her / and after Tristram de lyones reco-
wed that shelde from hym / and gaf it to the damoyfell ageyne
A lytil afore that tyme that sire Tristram fought with my ne-
uwe sire Blamore de Ganys for a quarel that was betwixe 15
the kynge of Irland and hym / Thenne many knyghtes were
fory that sire Launcelot was gone forth to that aduen-
ture / Truly faid sire launcelot I cast me to ryde after hym / and
within seven dayes sire launcelot ouertook la cote male taylor /
And thenne he salewed hym / and the damoyfel maledyfaunt / 20
And whan sire Mordred sawe sire launcelot / thenne he lefte their
felauship / and so sire launcelot rode with hem al a day / and e-
uer that damoyfel rebuked la cote male taylor / and thenne sire
launcelot answered for hym / thenne she lefte of / and rebuked sire
launcelot / Soo this meane tyme fyre Tristram sente by a da- 25
moyfel a letter vnto sire launcelot excusynge hym of the wed-
dyng of Ifoud le blanche maynys / and faid in the letter as
he was a true knyght / he hadde neuer adoo flesshly with Ifoud
la blanche maynys / and passynge curtoisly & gentyly sire trif-
tram wrote vnto sire launcelot / euer bysechyng hym to be his 30
good frende / & vnto la beale Ifoud of Cornewaile / and that sire

Launcelot wold excuse hym yf that euer he sawe her / ¶ And
 within shorte tyme by the grace of god said sir Triftram that
 he wold speke with la Beale Ifoud and with hym ryghte
 haftely / Thenne sire Launcelot departed from the damoyfel / &
 5 from fyr la cote male taile for to ouersee that letter / and to
 wryte another letter vnto fyre Triftram de lyones / and in the
 meane whyle la cote male taile roode with the damoyfel vntyl
 they came to a castel that hyght Pendragon / and there were
 fyxe knyghtes stode afore hym / and one of hem profered to Iuf-
 10 te with la cote male taile / And there la cote male taile smote
 hym ouer his hors croupe / ¶ And thenne the fyue knyghtes
 fette vpon hym all at ones with their speres / & there they smote
 la cote male taile doune hors and man / And thenne they a-
 lyght sodenly / and fette their handes vpon hym all attones /
 15 and toke hym pryfoner / and soo ledde hym vnto the castel / &
 kepte hym as pryfoner / And on the morne sir Launcelot arofe
 and delyuerd the damoyfel with letters vnto sir Triftram / &
 thenne he took his way after la cote male taile / & by the waye
 vpon a brydge there was a knyghte profered sire Launcelot to
 20 Iufte / and sire Launcelot smote hym doune / and thenne they
 foughte vpon foote a noble batail to gyders and a myghty / &
 at the lasfe sire Launcelot smote hym doune grouelynge vpon
 his handes and his knees / And thenne that knyghte yelded
 hym / and sire launcelot receyued hym fayre / Syr said the kn-
 25 yght I requyre the telle me your name / for moche my herte ye-
 ueth vnto you / Nay said sire Launcelot as at this tyme I wil
 not telle you my name / onles thenne that ye telle me your na-
 me / Certaynly said the knyght my name is sir Nerouens that
 was made knyght of my lord sir Launcelot du lake / A Nero-
 30 uens de lyle said sire Launcelot I am ryght gladde that ye ar
 proued a good knyghte / for now wete ye wel my name is sir
 Launcelot du lake / Allas said sire Nerouens de lyle what ha-
 ue I done / and there with al flatlyng he felle to his feet / and
 would haue kyft them / but sir Launcelot wold not lete hym / &
 35 thenne eyther made grete ioye of other / And thenne sire Nero-
 uens told sir Launcelot that he shold not goo by the castel of
 Pendragon / for there is a lord a myghty knyght / and many
 knyghtes with hym / and this nyght I herd say that they toke

a knyght pryfoner yesterday that rode with a damoyfel / & they faye he is a knyghte of the round table

¶ Capítulum vj

ASaid fir Launcelot that knyght is my felawe / & hym
 fhalle I rescowe or els I fhalle lese my lyf therefore
 And there with alle he rode fast tyl he came before the 5
 Castel of Pendragon / and anone there with alle there cam vj
 knyghtes / and alle made hem redy to fette vpon fire Launcelot
 at ones / thenne fire Laücelot feutryd his spere / and fmote the
 formeft that he brake his bak in fonder / and thre of them hytte
 and thre fayled / And thenne fire launcelot past thorou them / 10
 and lyghtly he torned in ageyne / and fmote another knyghte /
 thorugh the brest and thorou oute the bak more than an ell / &
 ther with alle his spere brak / Soo thenne alle the remenaunt
 of the four knyghtes drewe their swerdes and laffhed at fyre
 Launcelot / And at euery stroke fire launcelot bestowed so his 15
 strokes that at four strokes sondry they auoyded theyr fadels
 passynge fore wounded / and forthe with alle rode hurlynge
 in to that castel / And anon the lord of the castel that was that
 tyme cleped fir Bryan de les yles the which was a noble mā
 and grete enemy vnto kyng arthur / within a whyle he was 20
 armed and vpon horfbak / And thenne they feutryd their spe-
 res and hurled to gyders soo strongly that bothe theire horsfes
 raffhed to the erthe / And thenne they auoyded their fadels / &
 dresseid their sheldes and drewe their swerdes and flange to
 gyders as wood men / and there were many strokes yeuen in a 25
 whyle / at the last fir launcelot gaf to fir Bryan fuche a buffet
 that he kneled vpon his knees / and thenne fir launcelot raf-
 fhed vpon hym / and with grete force he pulled of his helme /
 and whanne fire Bryan sawe that he shold be slayne he yelded
 hym and put hym in his mercy and in his grace / Thenne fire 30
 launcelot made hym to delyuer alle his pryfoners that he had
 within his castel / and therin fir laücelot fonde of arthurs kn-
 yghtes thyrtty / and / xl / ladyes / and soo he delyuerd hem / and
 thenne he rode his waye / and anon as la cote male tayle was
 delyuerd he gat his hors and his harnais / and his damoyfel 35

Maledyfaunt / the meane whyle fyre Neroueus that fir Launcelot had foughten with alle afore at the brydge / he fente a damoyfel after fir Launcelot to wete hou he spedde at the Castell of Pendragon / And thenne they within the castel merueyelled
 5 what knyght he was whan fir Bryan and his knyghtes delyuerd alle tho pryfoners / haue ye no merueille said the damoyfel / for the best knyghte in this world was here / and dyd this iourney / and wete ye wel she said it was fire launcelott
 Thenne was fir Bryan ful gladde and soo was his lady / &
 10 alle his knyghtes / that fuche a man shold wynne them / And whan the damoyfel and la cote male tayle vnderstood that it was fyr Launcelot du lake that had ryden with them in felau-
 ship / ¶ And that she remembryd her hou she had rebuked hym and callyd hym coward / thenne was she passyng heuy

¶ Capitulum septimum

15 **S**oo thenne they took their horfes and rode forth a pas after fire Launcelot / And within two myle they ouertook hym / and salwed hym / and thanked hym / and the damoyfel cryed fir Launcelot mercy of her euyll dede / and fayenge / for now I knowe the floure of alle knyghthode is
 20 departed euen bitwene fire Triftram and you / For god knoweth said the damoyfel that I haue foughte you my lord fir Launcelot and fir Triftram longe / and now I thanke god I haue mette with you / and ones at Camelot I mette with fir Triftram / and there he rescowed this blak shelde with the why-
 25 te hand holdyng a naked fwerd / that fir Bruyns faunce pyte had taken from me / Now fayre damoyfel said fir Launcelot who told you my name / Syre said she / there came a damoyfell from a knyghte that ye fought with all at the brydge / and she told me your name was fir Launcelot du lake / blame haue
 30 she thenne said fire Launcelot / but her lord fire Neroueus hath told her / But damoyfel said fire Launcelot vpon this couenaunt I wille ryde with you / so that ye wille not rebuke this knyght fir La cote male tayle nomore / for he is a good knyght and I doubte not he shalle preue a noble knyght / and for his

fake and pyte that he sholde not be destroyed / I folowed hym
 to focoure hym in this grete nede / A / Ihesu thanke you said the
 damoyfel / for now I wil fay vnto you and to hym both / I re-
 buked hym neuer for no hate that I hated hym / but for grete
 loue that I had to hym / For euer I supoofed that he had ben 5
 to yonge and to tendyr to take vpon hym these aduentures /
 And therefore by my wille I wold haue dryuen hym awaye
 for Ialoufy that I had of his lyf / for it maye be no yong kny-
 ghtes dede that shal enchyuee this aduenture to the ende / Per-
 dieu said sire Launucelot hit is wel said / and where ye are cal- 10
 led the damoyfel Maledyfaunt I wille calle you the damoy-
 fel Bien penfaunt / and soo they rode forthe a grete whyle vn-
 to they came to the Bordoure of the countrey of Surluse / and
 there they fond a fayr vyllage with a stronge brydye lyke a
 fortresse / And whanne sire launcelot and they were at the brid- 15
 ge / there starte forth afore them of gentilmen and yomen ma-
 ny that saide / Faire lordes ye maye not passe this brydye and
 this fortresse by cause of that black shelde that I see one of
 you bere / And therefore there shalle not passe but one of you at
 ones / therfore chese you whiche of you shalle entre withynne 20
 this brydye fyrste / Thenne sire Launcelot profered hym self fyrst
 to entre within this brydye / Syr said La cote male tayle I bi-
 feche you lete me entre within this fortresse / and yf I may spe-
 de wel / I wille fende for you / and yf it happend that I be slayn
 there it goth / And yf soo be that I am a prysoner taken / then- 25
 ne maye ye rescowe me / I am lothe said sire launcelot to lete
 you passe this passage / Syre said la cote male tayle I praye
 you lete me putte my body in this aduenture / Now goo youre
 waye said sire Laūcelot / and Ihesu be your spede / So he entrid
 and anone there mette with hym two bretheren / the one hyzte 30
 fyr Playne de force and the other hyght sire Playne de amours
 And anone they mette with sire la cote male tayle / and fyrste
 la cote male tayle smote doune Playne de force / and after he
 smote doune playne de amours / and thenne they dresseid them
 to their sheldes and swardes / and badde la cote male tayle a- 35
 lyghte / and soo he dyd / and there was daffhyng and foynnyng
 with swardes / and soo they began to affaile ful hard la cote
 male tayle / and many grete woundes they gaf hym vpon his

heed and vpon his breft and vpon his fhoulders / And as he
 myght euer amonge he gaf fadde ftrokes ageyne /
 And thenne the two bretheren traced and trauercyd for to be
 of bothe handes of fire la cote male tayle / but he by fyne force &
 5 knyghtly prowefse gate hem afore hym / And thenne whan he
 felte hym felf foo wounded / thenne he doubled his ftrokes / &
 gaf them foo many woundes that he felde them to the erthe / &
 wold haue flayne them had they not yelded them / And ryzt
 foo fire la cote male tayle tooke the beft hors that there was of
 10 them thre / and foo rode forth his waye to the other fortrefse &
 brydge and there he mette with the thyrd broder whoos name
 was fire Plenorius / a ful noble knyghte / and there they luf-
 ted to gyder / and eyther fmote other doune hors and man to
 the erthe / And thenne they auoyded their horfes / and drefsid
 15 their fheldes / and drewe their fwerdes / and gaf many fad ftro-
 kes / and one whyle the one knyght was afore on the brydge /
 and an other whyle the other / And thus they foughte two
 houres and more / and neuer refted / And euer fire Launcelot
 and the damoyfel beheld them / ¶ Allas faid the damoyfel my
 20 knyghte fyghteth paffynge fore and ouer longe / ¶ Now may
 ye fee faid fir Launcelot that he is a noble knyghte for to con-
 fydre his fyrfte bataile / and his greuous woundes / And euen
 forth with all fo wounded as he is / it is merueile that he may
 endure this longe batail with that good knyghte /

¶ Capitulum Octauum

25 **T**His meane whyle fyre la cote male tayle fanke ryghte
 doun vpon the erthe / what forwounded and what for-
 bled he myghte not ftande / Thenne the other knyghte
 hadde pyte of hym / and fayd fayr yonge knyghte defmaye you
 not / for had ye ben frefshe whan ye mette with me / as I was /
 30 I wote wel that I fhould not haue endured fo longe as ye ha-
 ue done / and therefore / for youre noble dedes of armes / I fhall
 fhewe to you kyndenes and gentylnesse in alle that I maye /
 And forth with al this noble knyght fir Plenorius took hym
 vp in his armes / and ledde hym in to his toure / And thenne

he commaunded hym the wyn / and made to farche hym and to
 stoppe his bledynge woundes / ¶ Syre faid la cote male tayle
 withdrawe you from me / and hyhe you to yonder brydge age-
 yne / for there wille mete with you another maner knyght than
 euer was I / why faid Plenorius / is there another maner kn- 5
 yght behynde of your felaufhip / ye faid la cote male tayle / ther
 is a moche better knyght than I am / what is his name fayd
 Plenorius / ye fhalle not knowe for me / faid la cote male tayle
 Wel faid the knyght / he fhalle be encountred with alle / what
 someuer he be / Thenne fir Plenorius herd a knyght calle / that 10
 fayd fyr Plenorius where art thou / outhere thou muft delyuer
 me the pryfoner that thou haft led vnto thy toure / or els come
 and doo bataile with me / Thenne Plenorius gat his hors / and
 came with a spere in his hand walloppyng toward fyr laun-
 celot / and thenne they beganne to feutre their speres / and came 15
 to gyders as thonder / and fmote eyther other fo myghtely that
 their horfes felle doune vnder them / And thenne they auoyded
 their horfes / and pulled out their fwerdes / & lyke two bulles
 they laffhed to gyders with grete strokes and foynes / but euer
 fyr launcelot recouerd ground vpon hym / and fire Plenorius 20
 traced to haue gone aboute hym / But fire launcelot wold not
 fuffer that / but bare hym backer and backer / tyll he came nyyhe
 his toure gate / And thenne faid fire launcelot I knowe the
 wel for a good knyght / but wete thou wel / thy lyf and dethe
 is in my hand / and therefore yelde the to me / and thy pryfoner 25
 The other anfuerd no word / but strake myztely vpon fir laū-
 celots helme that the fyre sprange out of his eyen / thenne fyre
 Launcelot doubled his strokes foo thyck / and fmote at hym fo
 myghtely that he made hym knele vpon his knees / And there
 with fir launcelot lepte vpon hym / and pulled hym grouelyng 30
 doune / Thenne fir Plenorius yelded hym / and his toure / and
 alle his pryfoners at his wille / thenne fir launcelot receyued
 hym and took his trouthe / and thēne he rode to the other bryd-
 ge / and there fir launcelot Iufted with other thre of his brethe-
 ren / the one hyght Pillounes / and the other hyght Pellogris 35
 and the thyrdde fir Pellandris / and fyrft vpon horfbak fir la-
 uncelot fmote hem doune / and afterward he bete them on foote /
 and made them to yelde them vnto hym / and thenne he returned

vnto fir Plenorius / and there he fond in his pryson kyng Carados of scotland and many other knyghtes / and alle they were delyuerd / And thenne fire la cote male tayle came to fire launcelot / and thenne fir launcelot wold haue yeuen hym alle these fortresses and these brydges / Nay said la cote male tayle I wille not haue fire Plenorius lyuelode / with that he wylle graunte you my lord fire launcelot to come vnto kyng Arthurs courte and to be his knyght and alle his bretheren I will pray you my lord to lete hym haue his lyuelode / I wille wel
 10 said fire launcelot / with this that he wille come to the Courte of kyng Arthur and bicom his man / and his bretheren fyue / And as for you fir Plenorius I wille vndertake said fir Launcelot at the next feest soo there be a place voyded that ye shalle be knyght of the round table / Syr said Plenorius atte
 15 next feest of Pentecost I wille be at Arthurs courte / and at that tyme I wille be guded and ruled as kyng Arthur & ye wille haue me / Thenne fir Launcelot and fire la cote male tayle reposed hem there vnto the tyme fire la cote male tayle was hole of his woundes / and there they hadde mery chere
 20 and good rest and many good gamys / and there were many fayre ladyes /

¶ Capitulum Nonum /

And in the meane whyle came fir kay the fenefchal and fire Brandyles / and anone they felauhypped wyth them / And thenne within ten dayes thēne departed tho knygh-
 25 tes of Arthurs Courte from these fortresses / And as fir laūcelot came by the castel of Pendragon / there he putte fir Bryan de les yles from his landes / for cause he wold neuer be withhold with kyng Arthur / and alle that castel of Pendragon / and alle the landes therof he gaf to fire la cote male tayle / &
 30 thēne fir launcelot sente for Neroueus that he made ones knyghte / and he made hym to haue alle the rule of that castel / & of that countrey vnder la cote mayle tayle / and soo they rode to Arthurs courte al holy to gyders / And at Pentecost next followynge there was fire Plenorius and fir la cote male tayle
 35 called otherwyse by ryght fyr Breunes le noyre bothe maade

knyghtes of the table round / and grete londes kynge Arthur
 gaf them / and there Breune le noyre wedded that damoyfell
 Maledyfaunt / And after she was called Beau viuante / but
 euer after for the more party he was called la cote male tayle
 and he preued a passyng noble knyghte and myghty / & many 5
 worshipful dedes he dyd after in his lyf / and sire Plenorius
 proued a noble knyght and ful of prowesse / and alle the da-
 yes of their lyf for the moost party they awayted vpon sire laū-
 celot / and sire Plenorius bretheren were euer knyghtes of ky-
 nge Arthur / and also as the frenshe book maketh mencyon / 10
 fyr la cote male tayle auengyd his faders dethe /

¶ Capitulum x

Now leue we here sire la cote male tayle / and torne we
 vnto sire Triftram de lyones that was in Bretayne /
 whanne la beale Ifoud vnderstode that he was wedded / she sent
 to hym by her mayden Bragwayne as pyteous letters as co- 15
 ude be thoughte and made / and her conclusion was / that / and
 hit pleasyd fyr Triftram / that he wold come to her courte / and
 bryng with hym Ifoud la blaunche maynys / and they shold
 be kepte as wel as she her self / Thenne sire Triftram called vn-
 to hym sire kehydius / and asked hym whether he wold go with 20
 hym in to Cornewaile secretly / He answered hym that he was
 redy at al tymes / And thenne he lete ordeyne pryuely / a lytel
 vessel / and therin they wente fyr Triftram / kehydius / Dame
 Bragwayne and Gouvernaile sire Triftrams squyer / So when
 they were in the see / a contraryous wynde blewe hem on the co- 25
 stes of Northwalys nygh the castel peryllous / Thenne sayd sire
 Triftram here shalle ye abyde me these ten dayes / and Gouver-
 naile my squyer with you / And yf so be I come not ageyne /
 by that daye / take the next way in to Cornewaile / for in this
 forest are many straunge aduentures / as I haue herd faye / & 30
 somme of hem I caste me to preue or I departe / And whanne
 I maye / I shalle hye me after you / Thenne sire Triftram and
 kehydius took their horses and departed from their felauship /
 And soo they rode within that forest a myle and more / And

at the last sir Triftram sawe afore hym a lykely knyzt armed
 fyttynge by a welle / and a stronge myghty hors passyng ny-
 ghe hym teyed to an Oke and a man houynge and rydyng
 by hym ledyng an hors lade with speres / And this knyghte
 5 that fatte atte welle / femed by his countenance to be passyng
 heuy / Thenne sire Triftram rode nere hym / and said fayr knyzt
 why fytte ye soo droupyng / ye seme to be a knyght erraunt by
 your armes and harneis / and therfor dresse you to Iuste with
 one of vs or with bothe / There with all that knyght made noo
 10 wordes / but took his shelde and bokeled hit aboute his neck /
 and lyghtely he took his hors and lepte vpon hym / And thē-
 ne he took a grete spere of his squyer / and departed his waye
 a furlonge / Sire kehydius asked leue of sir Triftram to Iuste
 fyrst / doo your best said sire Triftram / soo they mette to gyders
 15 and there sir kehydius had a falle / and was fore wounded /
 on hyghe aboue the pappys / ¶ Thenne sir Triftram said / knyzt
 that is wel Iusted / Now make you redy vnto me / I am redy
 said the knyght / And thenne that knyght took a gretter spere
 in his hand / and encountred with sir Triftram / and there by
 20 grete force that knyght smote doune sir Triftram from his ho-
 rs and had a grete falle / Thenne sir Triftram was fore asha-
 med / and lyghtly he auoyded his hors / and put his sheld a-
 fore his sholder and drewe his sward / And thenne sire Tryf-
 tram requyred that knyghte of his knyghthode to alyghte vp-
 25 on foote and fyghte with hym / I wille wel said the knyght
 and soo he alyghte vpon foote / and auoyded his hors / and cast
 his shelde vpon his sholder / and drewe his sward / and there
 they fought a longe bataile to gyder ful nyghe two houres /
 ¶ Thenne sir Triftram said fayr knyght hold thyn hand / &
 30 telle me of whens thou arte / and what is thy name / ¶ As for
 that said the knyght / I wille be auyfed / but and thou wolt
 telle me thy name / peradventure I wille telle the myn /

¶ Capitulum xj

Now fayr knyght he said / my name is sire Triftram de
 lyones / Syre faide the other knyght / and my name is
 35 sir lamorak de galys / A sir lamorak said sir Triftram / well

be we mette / and bethynke the now of the despyte thou dydest
 me of the fendyng of the horne vnto kynges Markes courte to
 the entente to haue flayne or dishonoured my lady the Quene
 la Beale Ifoud / and therefore wete thou wel said sir Triftram
 the one of vs shalle dye or we departe / Sire said sir Lamorak 5
 remembre that we were to gyders in the yle of seruage / and at
 that tyme ye promysed me grete frendship / thenne sire Triftram
 wold make no lenger delays but lassed at sir Lamorak / &
 thus they foughte longe / tyl eyder were wery of other / Thenne
 sir Triftram seid to sir Lamorak in alle my lyf mette I neuer 10
 with fuche a knyght that was soo bygge and well brethed as
 ye be / therefore said fyre Triftram hit were pyte / that ony of vs
 both shold here be meschyeued Syr said sire Lamorak for youre
 renomme and name I wille that ye haue the worship of this
 bataille / and therfor I will yelde me vnto you / And ther with 15
 he took the poynte of his sward to yelde hym / Nay said sir trif-
 tram ye shalle not doo soo / for wel I knowe your profers and
 more of your gentylnesse than for my fere or drede ye haue of
 me / And there with alle sir Triftram profered hym his swerde
 and said sire Lamorak as an ouercomen knyghte I yelde me 20
 vnto you / as to a mā of the most noble prowesse / that euer I
 mette with alle / Nay said sir Lamorak I wille doo you gen-
 tylnesse / I requyre yow lete vs be sworne to gyders that ne-
 uer none of vs shalle after this day haue adoo with other / and
 there with alle fyre Triftram and sire Lamorak sware that ne- 25
 uer none of hem shold fyghte ageynst other nor for wele / nor
 for woo

¶ Capitulum xij

ANd this meane whyle there came sire Palomydes the
 good knyght folowyng the questyng beest that hadde
 in shap a hede lyke a serpes hede / and a body lyke a 30
 lybard / buttocks lyke a lyon / and foted lyke an herte / and in
 his body there was fuche a noyse as hit had ben the noyse of
 thyrtyt couple of houdes questyng / and fuche a noyse that beest
 made where someuer he wente / & this beest euermore fyr palo-
 mydes folowed / for hit was called his quest / & ryzt so as he fo- 35
 lowed this beest / it came by fyr Triftram / and soone after cam

Palamydes / and to breue this matere / he smote doune fir trif-
 tram and fir Lamorak bothe with one spere / and foo he depart-
 ed after the beste Glatyfaunt / that was called the questyng
 beeft / wherfore these two knyghtes were passyng wrothe / that
 5 fir Palomydes wold not fyghte on foote with hem /

¶ Here men may vnderstande / that ben of worship that he was
 neuer fourmed that alle tymes myght stande / but fomtyme he
 was putte to the werse by male fortune / And at somme tyme
 the wers knyghte putte the better knyghte to a rebuke / Then-
 10 ne fire Triftram and fire Lamorak gate fire kehydius vpon a
 sheld betwixe them bothe / and ledde hym to a fosters lodge / &
 there they gaf hym in charge to kepe hym well / and with hym
 they abode thre dayes / Thenne the two knyghtes toke their hor-
 ses / and at the croffe they departed / And thenne said fir Trif-
 15 tram to fire Lamorak I requyre you yf ye happe to mete wyth
 fir Palamydes / say hym that he shal fynde me atte fame welle
 there I mette hym / and there I fire Triftram shalle preue whe-
 ther he be better knyght than I / and soo eyther departed from
 other a fondry way / and fire triftram rode nyghe there as was
 20 fire kehydius / and fire Lamorak rode vn tyl he came to a chap-
 pel / and there he putte his hors vnto pasture / and anone there
 came fir Melyagaunce that was kyng Bagdemagus sone / &
 he there putte his hors to pasture / and was not ware of fir la-
 morak / and thenne this knyght fire Melliagaunce maade his
 25 mone of the loue that he hadde to quene Gueneuer / and there
 he made a woful complaynte / All this herd fire Lamorak / and
 on the morne fir lamorak took his hors and rode vnto the fo-
 rest / and there he mette with two knyghtes houynge vnder the
 wood shawe / Faire knyghtes said fire Lamorak what doo ye
 30 houynge here and watchynge / And yf ye be knyghtes arraunt
 that wille Iuste / loo I am redy / Nay fir knyght they said / not
 soo / we abyde not here for to Iuste with you / but we lye here in
 a wayte of a Knyghte that flewe our broder /

¶ What knyght was that said fir Lamorak that ye wold fa-
 35 yne mete with all / Syre they said / hit is fire launcelot that fle-
 we oure broder / And yf euer we maye mete with hym / he shal
 not escape but we shalle flee hym / ¶ Ye take vpon you a

grete charge faide fir Lamorak / for fire launcelot is a noble
 proued knyzt / As for that we doute not / for there nys none of
 vs but we are good ynough for hym I will not bileue that
 faid fir Lamorak / For I herd neuer yet of no knyght the da-
 yes of my lyf but fir launcelot was to bygge for hym

5

¶ Capítulum xliij /

RYght soo as they stode talkynge thus / fyre Lamorak
 was ware hou fyr launcelot came rydyng freyghte
 toward them / thenne fire Lamorak fawed hym / and he hym
 ageyne / And thenne fire lamorak asked fir launcelot / yf there
 were any thyng that he myght doo for hym in these marches / 10
 Nay faid fire launcelot not at this tyme / I thanke you / thenne
 eyther departed from other / and fir Lamorak rode ageyn ther
 as he lefte the two knyghtes / and thenne he fond them hydde
 in the leued woode / Fy on you faid fir Lamorak fals cowar-
 des / pyte and shame it is / that ony of you shold take the hye 15
 ordre of knyghthode / Soo fir Lamorak departed fro them / and
 within a whyle he mette with fire Melyagaunce / And thenne
 fyre Lamorak asked hym / why he loued Quene Gueneuer
 as he dyd / for I was not fer from you whanne ye made yo-
 ur complaynte by the chappel / Dyd ye soo faid fir Melyagaun-
 ce / thenne wille I abyde by hit / I loue quene gueneuer what
 wille ye with hit / I wille preue and make good / that she is
 the fayrest lady and moost of beaute in the world / ¶ As to
 that faid fire Lamorak I fay nay therto / for quene Morgause
 of Orkeney moder to fire Gawayne and his moder is the fay- 25
 rest quene and lady that bereth the lyf / That is not so fayd
 fyre Melyagaunce / and that wille I preue with my handes
 vpon thy body / Wille ye soo faid fire Lamorak / and in a better
 quarel kepe I not to fyghte / Thenne they departed eyther from
 other in grete wrathe / And thenne they came rydyng to gyder 30
 as hit had ben thonder / and eyther smote other so fore that the-
 ir horses felle bakward to the erthe / And thenne they auoyded
 their horses and drestid their sheldes / and drewe their fwerdes
 And thenne they hurtled to gyders as wylde bores / and thus

they fought a grete whyle / For Melyagaunce was a good
 man and of grete myght / but sire Lamorak was hard bygge
 for hym / and putte hym alweyes a bak / but eyther had wo-
 5 unded other fore / ¶ And as they stode thus fyghtynge / by for-
 tune came sire Launcelot and sire Bleoberys rydyng / And
 thenne sire launcelot rode betwixe them / and asked them / For
 what caufe they fought foo to gyders / and ye are bothe knygh-
 tes of kynge Arthur /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

10 **S**Yr said Melyagaunce I shalle telle you for what ca-
 use we doo this bataille / I prayfed my lady Quene
 Gueneuer / and said she was the fayrest lady of the
 world / and sire Lamorak said nay therto / For he said quene
 Morgaufe of Orkeney was fayrer than she and more of beau-
 te / A fyre Lamorak why saist thou foo / hit is not thy parte to
 15 dispraysfe thy prynceffe that thou arte vnder their obeyffaunce
 dn we alle / and there with he alyghte on foote / and sayd
 for this quarel make the redy / For I wille preue vpon the /
 that Quene Gueneuer is the fayrest lady and moost of boun-
 te in the world ¶ Syre said sire Lamorak I am loth
 20 to haue adoo with you in this quarell / For euery man thyn-
 keth his owne lady fayrest / and though I prayse the lady /
 that I loue moost / ye shold not be wrothe / For though my la-
 dy quene Gueneuer be fayrest in your eye / wete ye wel Quene
 Morgaufe of Orkeney is fayrest in myn eye / and foo euery
 25 knyght thynketh his owne lady fayrest / and wete ye wel fyr
 ye are the man in the world excepte sire Triftram / that I am
 moost lothest to haue adoo with alle / But and ye wille nedes
 fyghte with me I shal endure you as long as I may /
 ¶ Thenne spake sire Bleoberys / and said / my lord sire Laū-
 30 celot / I wyfte you neuer foo myfauyfed as ye are now / For
 fyre Lamorak faith you but reason and knyghtely / ¶ For I
 warne you I haue a lady / and me thynketh that she is the
 fayrest lady of the world / were this a grete reason that ye sh-
 old be wrothe with me for fuche langage / And wel ye wote /
 35 that fyr Lamorak is as noble a knyght as I knowe / and he

hath oughte you and vs euer good wille / and therefore I praye you be good frendes / ¶ Thenne sire Launcelot sayd vnto sire lamerak / I pray you foryeue me myn euylle wylle / And yf I was myfauyfed I wille amende hit / Syre sayde sire Lamorak the amendys is soone made betwixe you and me 5 And soo sire Launcelot and sire Bleoberys departed / and fyr Melyagaunce and sire Lamorak took their horses / and eyther departed from other / And within a whyle came kynge Arthur and mette with sire Lamorak and Iufted with hym / and there he smote doune sire Lamorack / and wounded hym fore 10 with a spere / and soo he rode from hym / wherfore sire Lamorak was wrothe that he wold not fyghte with hym on foote / hou be it that sire Lamorak knewe not kynge Arthur

¶ Capitulum xv

Now leue we of this tale / and speke we of sire Tristram / that as he rode he mette with sire kay the seneschal 15 and there sire kay asked sire Tristram of what couñtre he was / he anfuerd that he was of the countrey of Cornewail Hit maye wel be faid sire kay / for yet herd I neuer that euer good knyghte came oute of Cornewaile / that is euyl spoken faid sire Tristram / but and it please you to telle me your name 20 I requyre you / Syre wete ye wel faid sire kay that my name is sire kay the seneschal / Is that your name faid sire Tristram / now wete ye well that ye are named the shamefullest knyghte of youre tonge that now is lyuyng / how be it ye are called a good knyght / but ye are called vnfortunate / and passyng ouer- 25 thwarte of your tonge / And thus they rode to gyders tyl they came to a brydge / And there was a knyghte wold not lete hem passe / tyl one of hem Iufted with hym / and so that knyzt Iufted with sire kay / and there that knyght gaf sire kay a falle / his name was sire Tor fyre Lamoraks half broder / and then- 30 ne they two rode to theyre lodgyng / And there they fonde sire Brandyles / and sire Tor came thyder anone after /

¶ And as they fatte atte souper these foure knyghtes / thre of

them spak alle fham by Cornyffhe knyghtes / ¶ Syr
 Triftram herd alle that they faide / and he fayd but lytell /
 but he thoughte the more / but at that tyme he discouerd not his
 name / Vpon the morne fir Triftram took his hors / and abode
 5 them vpon their way / And there fyre Brandyles proferd to
 Iuste with fir Triftram / and fir Triftram smote hym doune ho-
 rs and alle to the erthe / Thenne fire Tor le fyfe de vayfhoure
 encountred with fyre Triftram / and there fire Triftram smote
 hym doune / and thenne he rode his waye / and fir kay folowed
 10 hym / but he wold not of his felaufhip / Thenne fire Brandy-
 les came to fir kay / and faid I wold wete fayne what is that
 knyghtes name / Come on with me faid fir kay / and we fhall
 praye hym to telle vs his name / Soo they rode to gyders / tylle
 they came nyghe hym / and thenne they were ware where he fat
 15 by a welle / and had putte of his helme to drynke at the welle
 And whanne he sawe them come / he laced on his helme lyght-
 ly / and took his hors / and proferd hem to Iuste / Nay faid fyre
 Brandyles we Iusted late ynough with you / we come not in
 that entent / But for this we come to requyre you of knyght-
 20 hode to telle vs your name / My fayre knyghtes fythen that is
 your defyre / and to please you ye fhall wete that my name is
 fir Triftram de lyones neuewe vnto kynge Mark of Corne-
 wayle / In good tyme faide fire Brandyles / and wel be ye
 fonden / and wete ye wel that we be ryght gladde that we ha-
 25 ue fonde you / and we be of a felaufhip that wold be ryzt glad
 of your company / For ye are the knyghte in the world that
 the noble felaufhip of the round table mooste defyareth to haue
 the company of / God thanke them faid fir Triftram of theyre
 grete goodenes / but as yet I feale wel that I am vnabyl to
 30 be of their felaufhip / For I was neuer yet of fuche dedes of
 worthynes to be in the company of fuche a felaufhip / A fayde
 fire kay and ye be fyre Tryftram de lyones ye are the man cal-
 led now moost of prowesse excepte fir launcelot du lake / For
 he bereth not the lyf cryften ne hethen that can fynde fuche ano-
 35 ther knyght to speke of his prowesse and of his handes and
 his trouthe with alle / For yet coude there neuer creature saye
 of hym difhonour and make hit good / ¶ Thus they
 talked a grete whyle / and thenne they departed eyther from

other fuche weyes as hem femed best /

¶ Capitulum xvj /

Now shall ye here what was the cause that kynge Arthur cam in to the forest perillous / that was in North-walys by the meanes of a lady / her name was An-
 nowre / and this lady came to kynge Arthur at Cardyf / and she by fayre promyse and fayre bihestes maade kynge Arthur
 to ryde with her in to that forest perillous / and she was a grete forcereffe / and many dayes she hadde loued kynge arthur / and
 by cause she wold haue hym to lye by her / she came in to that Countrey / Soo whanne the kynge was gone with her / many
 of his knyghtes folowed after kynge arthur / whan they myst hym / as sir launcelot Braundyles and many other / and when
 she had brought hym to her toure / she defyred hym to lye by her and thenne the kynge remembryd hym of his lady / and wold
 not lye by her for no crafte that she coude doo / Thenne euery
 daye she wolde make hym ryde in to that forest with his owne knyghtes to the entent to haue had kynge arthur flayne / For
 whan this lady annoure sawe that she myzt not haue hym at her wille / thenne she laboured by fals meanes to haue destroyed
 kynge arthur and flayne / Thenne the lady of the lake
 that was alwey frendely to kynge arthur / she vnderstoode by her subtyl craftes that kynge arthur was lyke to be destroyed
 And therefore this lady of the lake that hyght Nyneue cam in to that forest to feke after sire Launcelot du lake / or sire Trif-
 tram for to helpe kynge arthur / for as that same day this lady
 of the lake knewe wel that kynge arthur shold be flayne / on-les that he hadde helpe of one of these two knyghtes / and thus
 she rode vp and doune tyl she mette with sire Triftram / and anon as she sawe hym / she knewe hym / O my lord sir Triftram
 she said well be ye mette / and bleffid be the tyme that I haue
 mette with you / for this same day / and within these two houres shalle be done the foulest dede that euer was done in this land
 O fair damoyfel said sir Triftram maye I amende hit / Come on with me she said and that in alle the haste ye maye / for ye
 shal see the most worshipfullest knyght of the world hard bestad

¶ Thenne said sire Triftram I am redy to helpe suche a noble
 man / he is neither better ne wers said the lady of the lake but
 the noble kynge Arthur hym self / God defende said sire Tryst-
 ram that euer he shold be in suche distresse / Thenne they rode to
 5 gyders a grete pas vntyl they came to a lytel turret a castel / &
 vndernethe that castel they sawe a knyghte standynge vpon
 foote fyghtynge with two knyghtes / And soo sire Triftram bi-
 held them / and at the laste the two knyghtes smote doune the
 one knyghte / and that one of hem vnaced his helme to haue
 10 slayne hym / And the lady Annoure gat kyng Arthurs fuerd
 in her hand to haue stryken of his hede / And there with alle
 came sire Triftram with alle his myghte / cryenge / Traytreffe /
 Traitresse leue that / And anone there sire Triftram smote the
 one of the knyghtes thorou the body that he felle dede / and thē-
 15 ne he raffhed to the other / and smote his bak in sonder / and in
 the meane whyle the lady of the lake cryed to kyng Arthur
 lete not that fals lady escape / Thenne kynge Arthur ouerto-
 ke her / and with the same swerd he smote of her heed / and the
 lady of the lake took vp her heed and henge it vp by the hey-
 20 re of her fadel bowe / And thenne sire Triftram horfed kyng Ar-
 thur / and rode forth with hym / but he charged the lady of the
 lake not to discouer his name as at that tyme / Whan the ky-
 nge was horfed / he thanked hertely sire Triftram / and desyred
 to wete his name / but he wold not telle hym / but that he was
 25 a poure knyght auenturous / and soo he bare kynge Arthur fe-
 lauship tyl he met with somme of his knyghtes / And within
 a whyle he mette with sire Ector de marys / and he knewe not
 kynge Arthur nor sire Triftram / and he desyred to luste with
 one of hem / Thenne sire Triftram rode vnto sire Ector / and smo-
 30 te hym from his hors / And whanne he hadde done soo / he cam
 ageyne to the kynge / and said my lord yonder is one of your
 knyghtes / he may bere you felauship / and another day that de-
 de that I haue done for you I truste to god ye shalle vnder-
 stande that I wold do you seruyse / Allas said kyng Arthur
 35 lete me wete what ye are / Not at this tyme said sire Triftram /
 Soo he departed and lefte kynge Arthur and sire Ector to gy-
 ders

¶ Capitulum xvij

ANd thenne at a day fette fire Triftram and fire Lamorak mette at the welle / and thenne they took kehydius at the fosters hous / and soo they rode with hym to the ship / where they lefte dame Brangwayne and Gouvernayle and soo they fayled in to Cornewaile all holy to gyders / and by assent and enformacyon of dame Brangwayn whan they were landed they rode vnto fire Dynas the seneschal / a trusty frende of fir Triftrams / and so dame Brangwayne and fyre Dynas rode to the courte of kynge Marke / and told the que-
ne la Beale Ifoud that fir triftram was nyghe her in that co-
untrey / thenne for very pure Ioye la beale Ifoud swouned / & whan she myghte speke / she said gentyl knyzt Seneschall help that I myght speke with hym / outhur my herte wille braft /

¶ Thenne fir Dynas and dame Brangwayne broughte fyre triftram and kehydius pryuely vnto the courte vnto a cham-
bre where as la beale Ifoud hadde assygned hit / and to telle the ioyes that were betwixe la beale Ifoud and fire triftram / there is no tonge can telle it / nor herte thynke hit / nor pen wryte hit / And as the Frensshe book maketh mencyon at the fyrst tyme that euer fir kehydius sawe la beale Ifoud / he was soo
enamoured vpon her / that for very pure loue he myghte neuer withdrawe hit / And at the last as ye shall here or the book be ended / fire Kehydius dyed for loue of la beale Ifoud / and thenne pryuely he wrote vnto her lettres and ballades of the moost goodlyest that were vsed in tho dayes / ¶ And whanne
La beale Ifoud vnderstood his letters she hadde pyte of his cō-
playnt / and vnauyfed she wrote another letter to comforte hym with alle / And fire triftram was alle this whyle in a turret at the commaundement of la beale Ifoud / and whan she myght / she came vnto fire triftram / So on a day kynge Mark
played at the cheffe vnder a chamber wyndowe / and at that tyme fire triftram and fire Kehydius were within the chamber ouer Kyng Marke / and as it myshapped fir triftram fonde the letter that Kehydius sent vnō la beale Ifoud / also he had fōud the letter that she wrote vnto Kehydius / & at that same tyme
la Beale Ifoud was in the same chamber / Thenne fir triftram

came vnto la Beale Ifoud and faid / Madame here is a letter that was fente vnto you / and here is the letter that ye fent vnto hym that fente you that letter / Allas madame the good loue that I haue loued you / and many landes and rycheffe
 5 haue I forfaken for your loue / and now ye are a traytresse to me the whiche dothe me grete payne / but as for the fir kehydius I broughte the oute of Bretayne in to this Coūtreȳ / and thy fader kynge Howel I wanne his landes / how be it I wedded thy fyfter Ifoud le blaunche maynys for the goodenes she
 10 dyd vnto me / And yet as I am true knyghte she is a clene mayden for me / but wete thou wel fyr Kehydius for this falfhede and treason thou haft done me / I wille reuenge hit vpon the / And there with alle fir Triftram drewe oute his fwerd / and faid fire kehydius kepe the / and thenne la Beale Ifoud
 15 fwounded to the erthe / And whanne fir kehydius fawe fir triftram come vpon hym / he fawe none other bote / but lepte oute at a bay wyndowe euen ouer the hede where fat kynge Marke playenge at the chesses / And whanne the kynge fawe one come hurlynge ouer his hede / he sayd / Felawe what arte thou / and
 20 what is the caufe thou lepest oute at that wyndowe / ¶ My lord the kynge faid Kehydius / hit fortunēd me that I was a flepe in the wyndowe aboue your hede / and as I flepte I flommeryd / and foo I felle doune / And thus fir kehydius excufed hym

¶ Capitulum xliij

25 **T**Henne fir Triftram dredde fore lest he were discouerd vnto the kynge that he was there / wherfore he drewe hym to the strengthe of the Toure / and armed hym in fuche armour as he had to fyghte with hem that wold withstande hym / And soo whanne fire Triftram fawe / there was no
 30 refyftence ageynst hym / he fente Gouvernaile for his hors and his spere / and knyghtely he rode forth oute of the castel openly that was called the castel of Tyntagil / And euen atte gate he mette with Gyngalyn fyr Gawayns sone / And anone fir Gyngalyn putte his spere in his reyfte / and ranne vpon
 35 fire Tryftram and brake his spere / and fire Triftram at that

[leaf 182 verso]

tyme had but a fwerd / and gaf hym fuche a buffet vpon the
 helme that he fylle doune from his fadel / and his fwerd flode
 adoune / and carf a fonder his hors neck / And foo fire triftram
 rode his waye in to the foreft / and alle this doynge fawe kyng
 Mark / And thenne he fente a fquyer vnto the hurte knyghte 5
 and commaunded hym to come to hym / and foo he dyd / And
 whanne kynge Marke wyft that it was fir Gyngalyn / he wel-
 comed hym / and gaf hym an hors / and asked hym what kn-
 yght hit was that had encoütred with hym / Syr faid fir gyn-
 galyn / I wote not what knyzt he was / but wel I wote that he 10
 fygheth and maketh grete dole / Thenne fir Triftram within a
 whyle mette with a knyght of his owne that hyghte fir Fer-
 gus / And whan he had mette with hym he made grete forowe
 in fo moche that he felle doune of his hors in a fwoune / and
 in fuche forowe he was in thre dayes and thre nyghtes / Thenne 15
 at the lafte fir Triftram sent vnto the courte by fir Fergus for
 to fpere what tydynges / And fo as he rode by the way he met
 with a damoyfel that came from fir Palamydes to knowe and
 feke how fir Triftram dyd / Thenne fir Fergus told her / how
 he was al moft out of his mynde / ¶ Allas faid the damoyfel 20
 where fhalle I fynde hym / In fuche a place faid fire Fergus
 ¶ Thenne fir Fergus fond Quene Ifoud feke in her bedde /
 makynge the gretteft dole that euer ony erthely woman made
 And whan the damoyfel fonde fire Triftram / ſhe made grete do-
 le by caufe ſhe myzt not amende hym / for the more ſhe made of 25
 hym / the more was his payne / And at the laft fir Triftram to-
 ke his hors and rode awaye from her / And thenne was it thre
 dayes or that ſhe coude fynde hym / And thenne ſhe broughte
 hym mete and drynke / but he wold none / and thenne another
 tyme fir Triftram eſcaped away from the damoyfel / and it hap- 30
 ped hym to ryde by the ſame caſtel where fire Palamydes and
 fir Triftram dyd bataille whan la beale Ifoud departed them /
 And there by fortune the damoyfel mette with fire Triftram a-
 geyne makynge the gretteft dole that euer erthely creature ma-
 de / and ſhe yede to the lady of that caſtel / and tolde her of the 35
 myſfaunture of fire Triftram / allas faid the lady of that caſtel
 where is my lord fir triftram / Ryght here by your caſtel faid the
 damoyfel / In good tyme faide the lady / is he foo nyghe me / he

fhalle haue mete and drynke of the best / and an harp I haue
 of his / where vpon he taught me / For of goodely harpyng he
 bereth the pryce in the world / So this lady and damoifel bro-
 ught hym mete and drynke / but he ete lytel therof / Thenne
 5 vpon a nyght he putte his hors from hym / And thenne he vn-
 laced his armour / and thenne fir Triftram wold go in to the
 wilderneffe and braft doune the trees and bowes / and other-
 whyle whan he fond the harp that the lady fente hym / thenne
 wold he harpe and playe therupon / and wepe to gyders / and
 10 fomtyme whan fir Triftram was in the woode that the la-
 dy wyft not where he was / thenne wold she fyttte her doune and
 playe vpon that harp / Thenne wold she Triftram come to that
 harp / and herken ther to / and fomtyme he wold harpe hym self
 Thus he there endured a quarter of a yere / thēne at the last he
 15 ranne his way / and she wifte not where he was become / And
 thenne was he naked and waxed lene / and poure of flesshe /
 and soo he felle in the felaufhip of herd men and sheepherdes /
 and dayly they wold gyue hym fomme of their mete / & dryn-
 nke / And whan he dyd ony shrewd dede / they wold bete hym
 20 with rodde / and soo they clypped hym with sheres and ma-
 de hym lyke a foole

¶ Capitulum xij

ANd vpon a day Dagonet kynge Arthurs foole came
 in to Cornewaile with two squyers with hym / and as
 they rode thorough that forest / they came to a fayre welle / where
 25 fir Triftram was wonte to be / and the whether was hote / and
 they alyghte to drynke of that welle / and in the meane whyle
 their horses brake lous / ¶ Ryght soo fir Triftram came vnto
 them / and fyrst he soufyd fir Dagonet in that welle / & af-
 ter his squyers / and there at lough the sheepherdes / and forth
 30 with al he ranne after their horses and broughte hem ageyne /
 one by one / and ryghte soo wete as they were / he made hem le-
 pe vp / and ryde their wayes / ¶ Thus fir Triftram endured
 there an halfe yere naked / and wold neuer come in town / ne
 vyllage / The meane whyle the damoyfel that fyre Palomydes
 35 fente to feke fir Triftram she yede vnto fir Palomydes / and told

hym alle the meschyef that sir Triftram endured / Allas fayd
 sir Palomydes hit is grete pyte that euer soo noble a Knyght
 shold be soo mescheued for the loue af a lady / But neuerthe-
 les I wille goo and feke hym / and comforte hym and I may
 ¶ Thenne a lytel before that tyme la Beale Ifoud had com- 5
 maunded sir Kehydus oute of the Countrey of Cornewaile /
 Soo sir Kehydus departed with a dolorous herte / and by ad-
 uenture he mette with sir Palomydes / and they enfelaushypped
 to gyder / and eyther complayned to other of theire hote loue
 that they loued la beale Ifoud / Now lete vs faid sir Palomy- 10
 des feke sire triftram that loued her as wel as we / and lete
 vs preue whether we maye recouer hym / Soo they rode in to
 that forest / and thre dayes and thre nyghtes they wold neuer
 take their lodgyng but euer foughte sir triftram / And vpon
 a tyme by aduenture they mette with Kyng Mark that was 15
 ryden from hys men al alone / whanne they sawe hym / fyre pa-
 lomydes knewe hym / but sir Kehydus knewe hym not / A fa-
 ls kyng faid sir Palomydes / it is pyte thou hast thy lyf / For
 thou arte a destroyer of alle worshipful Knyghtes / and by thy
 meschyef and thy vengeaunce thou hast destroyed the mooste 20
 noble Knyght sire triftram de lyones / And therfor defende the
 faid sir Palomydes / for thou shalt dye this day / that were sha-
 me faid Kyng Mark / for ye two are armed and I am vnarm-
 ed / As for that faid sir Palomydes I shalle fynde a remedy
 therfore / here is a Knyzt with me / and thou shalt haue his har- 25
 neis / Nay faid kyng Mark I wille not haue adoo with yow
 for cause haue ye none to me / For alle the myseafe that sir trif-
 tram hath / was for a letter that he fond / for as to me I dyd
 to hym no displeasyre / and god knoweth I am ful sory for
 his diseafe and malady / Soo when the kyng had thus excused 30
 hym / they were frendes / and kyng Mark wold haue had them
 vnto tyntagil / but syr Palomydes wolde not but torned vnto
 the Realme of Logrys / and sir kehydus faide that he wolde
 goo in to Bretayn / ¶ Now torne we vnto sir Dagonet ayene
 that whanne he and his squeryers were vpon horsbak / he demyd 35
 that the shepherdes had sente that soole to araye hem so / by ca-
 use that they laughed at hem / and soo they rode vnto the kepers
 of beestes and alle to bete them / Syr triftram sawe them bete

that were wonte to gyue hym mete and drynke / thenne he ran
 thyder / and gat fir Dagonet by the hede / and gaf hym fuche a
 falle to the erthe / that he bryfed hym fore so that he lay fyllle /
 And thenne he wraft his fwerd oute of his hand / And ther-
 5 with he ranne to one of his squyers / and smote of his hede / &
 the other fled / And soo fir Triftram took his waye with that
 fwerd in his hand rennyng as he hadde ben wylde woode /
 ¶ Thenne fir Dagonet rode to kyng Mark and told hym hou
 he had spedde in that forest / And therefore said fir Dagonet /
 10 Beware kyng Mark that thou come not aboute that welle /
 in the forest / For there is a foole naked / and that foole and
 I foole mette to gyders / and he hadde almost slayn me / ¶ A
 said kyng Mark / that is fir Matto le breune / that felle oute
 of his wytte by caufe he lost his lady / For whan fir Gaherys
 15 smote doune fir Matto and wanne his lady of hym / Neuer
 fyns was he in his mynde / and that was pyte / for he was a
 good knyght /

¶ Capitulum rr

THenne fir Andred that was cofyn vnto fir Triftram /
 made a lady that was his peramour to fay and to no-
 20 yfe hit that she was with fire Triftram or euer he dyed / And
 this tale she broughte vnto kyng markes courte that she bu-
 ried hym by a welle / and that or he dyed / he besoughte kyng
 Marke to make his cofyn fir Andred kyng of the countre of
 Lyonas / of the whiche fir Tryfram was lord of / Alle this
 25 dyd fir Andred by caufe he wold haue had fire triftrams lā-
 des / ¶ And whanne kyng Mark herd telle / that fir triftram
 was dede / he wepte / and made grete dole / But whanne quene
 Ifoud herd of these tydynges / she maade fuche forowe / that she
 was nyghe oute of her mynde / And soo vpon a daye she tho-
 30 ught to flee her self / and neuer to lyue after fir triftrams deth
 And soo vpon a day la beale Ifoud gat a fwerd pryuely /
 and bare hit in to her gardyn / and there she pyghte the fwerd
 thorough a plumme tree vp to the hyltes / soo that hit stak fast
 and hit stode breft hyhe / And as she wold haue ronne vpon the
 35 fwerd and to haue slayne her self / ¶ Alle this afpyed kyng

Marke / how she kneled doune and faide / fwete lord Ihesu ha-
 ue mercy vpon me / for I maye not lyue after the dethe of fyr
 Triftram de lyones / for he was my fyrst loue / and he shalle be
 the last / and with these wordes came Kyng mark and took her
 in his armes / and thenne he took vp the swerd / and bare her 5
 away with hym in to a Toure / and there he made her to be kept
 and watched her surely / and after that she lay longe seke nyz
 at the poynte of dethe / This meane whyle ranne sir Triftram
 naked in the forest with the swerd in his hand / and soo he cam
 to an hermytage / and there he leid hym doun and slepte / and 10
 in the meane whyle the heremyte stole awaye his swerd / and
 leid mete doune by hym / Thus was he kepte there a ten dayes
 And at the last he departed and came to the herd men ageyne /
 And there was a gyaunt in that countre that hyght Tawleas
 And for fere of sir Triftram more than seuen yere he durst ne- 15
 uer moche goo at large / but for the moost party he kepte hym
 in a sure castel of his owne / and soo this Tauleas herd telle /
 that sir Triftram was dede by the noyse of the courte of kynge
 Marke / Thenne this Tauleas wente dayly at large / And soo
 he happed vpon a daye he came to the herd men wandryng and 20
 langerynge / And there he fette hym doun to reffe among them
 The meane whyle ther cam a knyght of Cornewaile that ledde
 a lady with hym / and his name was sir Dynaunt / & whanne
 the gyaunt sawe hym / he wente from the herd men and hydde
 hym vnder a tree / and soo the knyght came to that welle / and 25
 there he alyghte to repose hym / And as soone as he was from
 his hors / this gyaunt Tauleas came betwixe this knyght and
 his hors / and toke the hors and lepte vpon hym / So forth with
 he rode vnto sir Dynaunt / and took hym by the coller / & pulled
 hym afore hym vpon his hors / and there wolde haue stryken 30
 of his hede / Thenne the herd men said vnto sire Triftram / helpe
 yonder knyght / helpe ye hym seid sir triftram / we dare not said
 the herd men / Thenne sir triftram was ware of the swerd of the
 knyght there as hit lay / and soo thyder he ranne / and took vp
 the swerd and stroke of sir tauleas hede and so he yede his way 35
 to the herd men

¶ Capitulum xxj

THenne the knyght took vp the gyaunts hede / and bare hit with hym vnto kynge Marke / and told hym / what aduenture betyd hym in the forest / and how a naked man rescowed hym / from the grymly gyaunt Tauleas
 5 where hadde ye this aduenture said kynge Marke / forsothe said fyr Dynaunt at the fayre fontayne in your foreste / where many aduenturous knyghtes mete / and there is the madde man wel said kyng Mark I wille see that wild man / So within a day or two kynge Marke commaunded his knyghtes / & his
 10 hunters that they shold be redy on the morne for to hunte / and soo vpon the morne he wente vnto that forest / And whanne the kynge came to that welle / he fonde there lyenge by that welle a fayr naked man / and a sward by hym / Thenne kyng Mark blewe and straked / and there with his knyghtes came to
 15 hym / and thenne the kynge commaunded his knyghtes to take that naked man with fayrenes / and brynge hym to my castel / Soo they did faully & fayre and cast mantels vpon sir Triftram and soo ledde hym vnto Tyntagyll / and there they bathed hym and wasshed hym and gaf hym hote suppynges til
 20 they had brought hym wel to his remembraunce / but alle this whyle there was no creature that knewe sir Triftram nor what man he was / Soo hit felle vpon a daye that the quene la beale Ifoud herd of fuche a man / that ranne naked in the foreste / and how the kynge had brought hym home to the Courte /
 25 Thenne la Beale Ifoud called vnto her dame Brangwayne and said come on with me / For we wille goo see this man / that my lord brought from the forest the last daye / So they passed forthe / and spered where was the seke man / And thenne a squyer told the quene that he was in the gardyn / takynge
 30 his rest / and repose hym ageynst the sonne / Soo whan the quene loked vpon sir Triftram she was not remembryd of hym / but euer she seid vnto dame Brangwayne / me semeth I shold haue fene hym here to fore in many places / but as soone as sir Triftram sawe her / he knewe her wel ynough / And thenne he
 35 torned away his vyfage / and wepte / Thenne the quene hadde alweyes a lytel brachet with her that sir Triftram gaf her the fyrst tyme that euer she came in to Cornewaile / & neuer wold that brachet departe from her / but yf fyre Triftram was nyghe

there as was la Beale Ifoud / and this brachet was fente
 from the kynges doughter of Fraunce vnto fyre Triftram for
 grete loue / and anone as this lytel brachet felte a faueour of
 fyr Triftram she lepte vpon hym and lycked his learys and
 his erys / and thēne he whyned and quested and she smelled 5
 at his feet and at his handes / and on all partyes of his body
 that she myghte come to / A my lady sayd dame Brangwayn
 vnto la beale Ifoud / Allas allas said she I see it is myn own
 lord fyr Triftram / And therupon Ifoud felle doune in a fw-
 oune and foo laye a grete whyle / And whan she myght spe- 10
 ke she said / my lord fir Triftram bleffid be god ye haue your
 lyf / and now I am fure ye shalle be discouerd by this lytel bra-
 chet / for she wille neuer leue you / And also I am fure as fo-
 one as my lord kyng Mark doo knowe you / he wil bannyssh
 you oute of the countrey of Cornewaile / or els he will destroye 15
 you / For goddes sake myn owne lord / graunte kyng Marke
 his wille / and thenne drawe you vnto the Courte of kyng ar-
 thur / for there are ye byloued / and euer whan I maye I shalle
 fende vnto you / And whan ye lyft ye may come to me / and at
 alle tymes erly and late I wille be at your commaundement / 20
 to lyue as poure a lyf as euer dyd quene or lady / O madame
 said fir Triftram goo from me / for mykel anger and daunger
 haue I escaped for your loue

¶ Capitulum xxij

THenne the quene departed / but the brachet wold not
 from hym / and there with alle came kyng Marke and 25
 the brachet fat vpon hym / and bayed at them all / There with al
 fyr Andred spak and said fyr this is fir Triftram I see by the
 brachet / Nay said the kyng I can not suppose that / Thenne the
 kyng asked hym vpon his feith what he was / and what was
 was his name / ¶ So god me help said he / my name 30
 is fir Triftram de lyones / now do by me what ye lyft / A faide
 kyng Mark me repenteth of your recouer / & thenne he lete calle
 his barons to Iuge fir Triftram to the dethe / thēne many of his
 barons wold not assente therto / and in especyal fyr Dynas
 the feneschal / & fir Fergus / And so by thadyuse of them al fir 35
 Triftram was banysshed out of the cōutrey for x yere / & therup-
 on he took his oth vpon a book before the kyng & his barons /

And foo he was made to departe oute of the Countrey of Cor-
 newaile / and there were many barons brought hym vnto hys
 fhyp / of the whiche fomme were his frendes / & fomme his foes /
 And in the meane whyle there came a knyghte of kyng Ar-
 5 thurs / his name was Dynadan / and his comyng was for to
 feke after fir Triftram / thenne they shewed hym where he was
 armed at alle poyntes goynge to the fhyp / Now fayre kny3te
 faid fir Dynadan or ye paffe this courte that ye will lufte with
 me / I requyre the / with a good wille faid fir Triftram / & the-
 10 fe lordes wille gyue me leue / Thenne the Barons graunted
 therto / and foo they ranne to gyders / and there fire Triftram
 gaf fire Dynadan a falle / And thenne he praid fir Triftram to
 gyue hym leue to goo in his felaufhip / ye shalle be ryght wel-
 come faid thenne fire Triftram / and foo they took theyr hofes
 15 and rode to their shyppes to gyders / and whanne fire Triftram
 was in the fee / he faid / Grete wel kyng Marke and all myn
 enemyes / and faye hem I wille come ageyne whan I maye /
 And wel am I rewarded for the fyghtynge with fire Mar-
 haus / and delyuerd all this countrey from feruage / and wel
 20 am I rewarded for the fetchyng and coftes of Quene Ifoud
 oute of Irland / and the daunger that I was in fyrft & laft
 and by the way comynge home what daunger I had to bryn-
 ge ageyne Quene Ifoud from the castel Pluere / and well I
 am rewarded whanne I foughte with fir Bleoberys for fyre
 25 Segwarydes wyf / and well am I rewarded whan I fou3t
 with fyre Blamore de ganys for kyng Anguyfhe / fader vn-
 to la Beale Ifoud / and well am I rewarded whan I fmo-
 te doune the good knyghte fyre Lamorak de galys at Kyng
 Markes request / And wel am I rewarded whan I fought
 30 with the kyng with the honderd knyghtes / and the kyng of
 Northgalys / and bothe thefe wold haue put his land in ferua-
 ge / and by me they were put to a rebuke / and wel I am re-
 warded for the fleyng of Tauleas the myghty gyaunte and
 many other dedes haue I done for hym / and now haue I my
 35 waryfon / And telle Kyng Mark that many noble knyghtes
 of the table roūd haue spared the barons of this countrey for
 my sake / Also am I not wel rewarded whan I fought with
 the good knyght fir Palomydes and rescowed quene Ifoud

from hym / And at that tyme kynge Marke said afore all his barons I shold haue ben better rewarded / nad forth with alle he took the see /

¶ Capitulum xliij

ANd at the next landynge faste by the see / there mette with fir Triftram & with fir Dynadan fir Ector de mays 5
 rys and fir Bors de ganys / and there fir Ector Iusted with fyr Dynadan / and he smote hym and his hors doun And thenne fir Triftram wold haue Iusted with fyre Bors and fir Bors said that he wolde not Iuste with no Cornysfhe knyghtes / for they are not called men of worship / and all this 10
 was done vpon a brydge / and with this came fire Bleoberys and fyr Dryaunt / and fir Bleoberys profered to Iuste with fyr Triftram / and there fir Triftram smote doune fyr Bleoberys / Thenne said fire Bors de ganys / I wist neuer Cornysfhe knyghte of foo grete valoure nor foo valyaunt as that knyght 15
 that bereth the trappours enbrouded with crounes / And thenne fir Triftram and fyr Dynadan departed fro them in to a forest / and there mette them a damoyfel that came for the loue of fire launcelot to feke after fomme noble knyghtes of kyng Arthurs courte for to rescowe fir launcelot / and foo fir launcelott 20
 was ordeyned / for by the treason of quene Morgan le fay to haue slayne fir launcelot / and for that cause she ordeyned thyrty knyghtes to lye in a wayte for fir launcelot / and this damoyfel knewe this treason / And for this cause the damoyfel came for to feke noble knyghtes to helpe fyr Launcelot / For that nyght 25
 or day after fyr launcelot shold come where these xxx knyghtes were / And foo this damoyfel mette with fyre Bors and fire Ector and with fir Dryaunt / and there she told hem alle four of the treason of Morgan le fay / and thenne they promysed her that they wold be nyghe where fire launcelot shold 30
 mete with the xxx knyghtes / & yf foo be they fet vpon hym / we wil do rescowes as we can / so the damoyfel departed / and by aduenture the damoifel met with fir triftram & with fir Dynadan / & there the damoyfel told hem al the treason that was ordeyned for fir launcelot / Fair damoyfel said fir triftram bryng 35
 me to that same place where they shold mete with fir launcelot Thenne said fir Dynadan what will ye do / hit is not for vs to fyghte with thyrty knyghtes / and wete you wel I wylle

not thereof / as to matche one knyght two or thre is ynough and
 they be men / But for to matche xv knyghtes that wille I ne-
 uer vndertake / fy for shame said sire Triftram / doo but youre
 parte / Nay said sir Dynadan I will not therof / but yf ye wil
 5 lene me your fheld / for ye bere a fheld of Cornewaile / and for
 the cowardyse that is named to the knyghtes of Cornewaile by
 your fheldes ye be euer forborne / Nay said fyr Triftram I will
 not departe from my fheld for her sake that gaf it me / But one
 thyng said sir Triftram I promyse the fyr Dynadan / but yf
 10 thou wilt promyse me to abyde with me / here I shalle flee the
 For I desyre no more of the / but anfuere one knyghte / And yf
 thy herte wille not serue the / stande by and loke vpon me and
 them / Syre said fyre Dynadan I promyse you to loke vpon &
 to doo what I may to faue my self / but I wold I had not
 15 mette with you / Soo thenne anone these thyrty knyghtes cam
 fast by these four knyghtes / and they were ware of them / and
 eyther of other / And soo these thyrty knyghtes lete for thys
 caufe that they wold not wrathe them yf caas be that they had
 adoo with fyr launcelot / and the four knyghtes lete them passe
 20 to this entent that they wold see and beholde what they wo-
 ld doo with fyr launcelot / and soo the thyrty knyghtes paste
 on / and came by sir Triftram and by sir Dynadan / and then-
 ne sir Triftram cryed on hyghe / loo here is a knyght ageynste
 you for the loue of sire launcelot / and there he slewe two with
 25 one sperd and ten with his fwerd / And thenne came in fyre
 Dynadan and he dyd passyng wel / and soo of the thyrty
 knyghtes there wente but ten away / and they fledde / Al this
 bataille sawe sir Bors de ganys and his thre felawes / and
 thenne they sawe wel hit was the same knyghte that Iusted
 30 with hem at the brydge / thenne they took their horses and rode
 vnto fyr Triftram and prayfed hym and thanked hym of his
 good dedes / and they alle desyred fyre Triftram to goo wyth
 hem to their lodgyng / and he said nay / he wold not go to no
 lodgyng / Thenne they alle four knyghtes praid hym to telle
 35 hem his name / Faire lordes said fyr Triftram / as at this tyme
 I wille not telle you my name /

¶ **Capitulum xxiiij /**

THene sir Triftram & sir Dynadan rode forth their weye
 tyl they came to the shepherdes & to the herde men / & the-

re they asked hem yf they knewe ony lodgyng or herberough
 there nyghe hand / ¶ Forfothe fyrs fayde the herde-
 men / here by is good lodgyng in a castel / But there is fuche a
 customme that there shalle no knyghte be herberowed but yf he
 Iuste with two knyghtes / and yf he be but one knyghte / he 5
 must Iuste with two / And as ye be therin soone shalle ye be
 matched / There is shrewde herberowe said fyre Dynadan / lodge
 where ye will / for I wille not lodge there / Fy for shame said
 fir Triftram are ye not a knyghte of the table round / wherfore
 ye may not with your worship refuse your lodgyng / Not foo 10
 said the herd men / for and ye be beten / and haue the wers ye
 shalle not be lodged there / and yf ye bete them ye shalle be wel
 herberowed A said fyr Dynadan they are two fure knyghtes /
 Thenne sire Dynadan wold not lodge there in no manere / but
 as sire Triftram requyred hym of his knyghthode / and so they 15
 rode thyder / and to make shorte tale fyr Triftram and fir Dy-
 nadan smote hem doune bothe / and foo they entred in to the cas-
 tel and had good chere / as they coude thynke or deuyse / And
 whanne they were vnarmed and thought to be mery and in
 good rest / there came in at the yates fyre Palomydes and fyre 20
 Gaherys requyryng to haue the customme of the castel / what
 aray is this said sire Dynadan / I wold haue my rest / that may
 not be said fir Triftram / Now must we nedes defende the cus-
 tomme of this castel / in soo moche as we haue the better of the
 lordes of this castel / and therefore saide sire Triftram / nedes 25
 muste ye make you redy / In the deuyls name said fir Dyna-
 dan came I in to your company / and so they made them redy
 And fir Gaherys encountred with sire Triftram / and fyr Ga-
 herys had a falle / and fir Palamydes encountred with fir Dy-
 nadan / and fir Dynadan had a falle / thenne was hit fall for 30
 falle / Soo thenne muste they fyghte on foote / that wold not
 fyr Dynadan / for he was so fore bryfed of the falle that fyre
 Palomydes gaf hym / Thenne fir Triftram vnaced fyre Dy-
 nadans helme / and praid hym to helpe hym / I wille not fayde
 fyr Dynadan for I am fore wounded of the thyrty knyghtes 35
 that we hadde but late agoo to doo with alle ¶ But ye fa-
 re said sire Dynadan vnto fyr Triftram as a madde man and
 as a man þ^t is oute of his mynde þ^t wold cast hym self away

and I may curfe the tyme that euer I fawe you / For in al the world are not two fuche knyghtes that ben fo wode as is fire launcelot and ye fyr Triftram / for ones I felle in the felaufhip of fyr launcelot as I haue done now with you and he fet me
 5 a werke that a quarter of a yere I kepte my bedde / Ihefu defende me faid fyr Dynadan from fuche two knyghtes / and fpecially from your felaufhip / Thenne faid fyre Triftram I will fyghte with hem both / Thenne fyr Triftram badde hem come forth both / for I wille fyghte with you / thenne fyr Palomydes
 10 and fyr Gaherys dreffid them / and fmote at hem bothe / thenne Dynadan fmote at fyr Gaherys a froke or two / and tordned from hym / nay faid fir Palomydes / it is to moche fhamme for vs two knyghtes to fyghte with one / And thenne he dyd byd fyr Gaherys ftande a fyde with that knyght that hath no lyfte to
 15 fyghte / Thenne they rode to gyders and fought longe / and atte laft fyr Triftram doubled his ftrokes / and drofe fyre Palomydes a bak / more than thre frydes / And thenne by one affente fyre Gaherys and fyr Dynadan wente betwixe them / and departed them in fonder / And thenne by affent of fyr Triftram
 20 they wold haue lodged to gyders / But fyre Dynadan wold not lodge in that caftel / And thenne he curfed the tyme that euer he came in their feaufhip / and foo he took his hors / and his harneis / and departed / thenne fir Triftram prayd the lordes of that caftel to lene hym a man to brynge hym to a lodg-
 25 ynge / and foo they dyd / and ouertoke fir Dynadan / and rode to their lodgyng two myle thens with a good man in a pryory / and there they were wel at eafe / And that fame nyght fir Bors and fire Bleoberys and fir Ector and fyre Dryaunt / abode ftylle in the fame place there as fire Triftram fouzt with
 30 the thyrty knyghtes / and there they mette with fyr Launcelot the fame knyght / and had made promyfe to lodge with fyr Colgreuance the fame nyght /

¶ Capitulum xrv

BVt anone as the noble Knyghte fyre launcelot herd of the shelde of Cornewayle thenne wyft he wel that hyt
 [leaf 188 verso]

was fire Triftram that fought with his enemyes / And thenne
 fyre Launcelot prayfed fyre Triftram / and called hym the man
 of mooft worfhip in the world / ¶ Soo there was a knyght in
 that pryory that hyght Pellinore / and he defyred to wete the
 name of fire Triftram / but in no wyfe he coude not / and fo fyr 5
 Triftram departed and lefte fir Dynadan in the pryory / for he
 was foo wery and foo fore bryfed that he myghte not ryde /
 Thenne this knyght fyre Pellinore faid to fire Dynadan / fy-
 then that ye wille not telle me that knyghtes name I will ry-
 de after hym / and make hym to telle me his name / or he fhall 10
 dye therefore / Beware fir knyght faid fir Dynadan / for and ye
 folowe hym / ye fhalle repente hit / Soo that knyghte fire Pelli-
 nore rode after fire Triftram and requyred hym of Iuftes / thē-
 ne fir Triftram fmote hym doune and wounded hym thoruz
 the fhoulder / and foo he pafte on his way / And on the next day 15
 folowyng fyr Triftram mette with purfyuaūts / and they told
 hym that there was made a grete crye of turnement bitwene
 kyng Carados of Scotland and the kyng of Northwalys / &
 eyther fhould Iufte ageyne other at the caftel of maydens / and
 thefe purfyuaūtes fought alle the cōutrey after the good kny3- 20
 tes / and in efpecial kyng Carados lete make fekyng for fir
 launcelot du lake / and the kyng of Northgalys lete feke af-
 ter fir Triftram de lyonas / ¶ And at that tyme fyr Triftram
 thought to be at that Iuftes / and foo by aduenture they mette
 with fire kay the fenefchal and fyr Sagramor le defyrus / and 25
 fyr kay requyred fir Triftram to Iufte / and fire Triftram in a
 maner refused hym / by caufe he wold not be hurte nor bryfed
 ageynfte the grete Iuftes that fhould be bifore the caftel of may-
 dens / and therefore he thought to repofe hym and to reft hym /
 And alway fir kay cryed fir kny3t of Cornewaile Iuft with 30
 me / or els yelde the to me as recreaunte / whan fir Triftram herd
 hym faye foo / he torned to hym / and thenne fire kay refused
 hym and torned his bak / Thenne fyr Triftram faid as I fyn-
 de the / I fhalle take the / Thenne fire Kay torned with euylle
 wylle / and fyre Triftram fmote fyr kay doune / and foo he ro- 35
 de forthe / ¶ Thenne fyre Sagramore le defyrus rode after fyre
 Triftram / and maade hym to Iufte with hym / and there fyre
 Triftram fmote doune fyre Sagramor le defyrus from his hors

and rode his way / and the fame day he mette with a damoyfel
that told hym that he shold wynne grete worship of a knyzt
aduenturous that dyd moche harme in alle that countrey /

¶ Whanne fir Triftram herd her fay foo / he was gladde to goo
5 with her to wynne worship / So fire Triftram rode with that da-
moyfel a vj myle / and thenne mette hym fyre Gawayne / and
there with alle fyre Gawayne knewe the damoyfel / that she
was a damoyfel of Quene Morgan le fay / Thenne fir Gawa-
yne vnderstode that she ladde that knyght to somme meschyef /
10 Faire knyght faid fire Gawayne whyder ryde you now wyth
that damoyfel / Syr faid fire Triftram I wote not whyder I
shalle ryde / but as the damoyfel wylle lede me / Syr faide fyre
Gawayne ye shalle not ryde with her / for she and her lady did
neuer good but ylle / And thenne fir Gawayne pulled oute
15 his fwerd / and faid / damoyfel / but yf thou telle me anon / for
what what cause thou ledest this knyzt with the thou shalt dye
for hit ryght anone / I knowe alle your ladyes treason / & yo-
urs / Mercy fyre Gawayne she faid / and yf ye wille faue my
lyf / I wille telle you / Saye on faid fir Gawayne / and thow
20 shalte haue thy lyf / Syre she faid Quene Morgan le fay my
lady hath ordeyned a xxx ladyes to seke & to aspye after fir la-
ūcelot or fir triftram / & by þ^e trainys of these ladyes who þ^t may
fyrst mete any of these two knyghtes they shold torne hem vn-
to Morgan le fays castel / fayenge that they shold doo dedes of
25 worship / & yf any of tho two knyzttes cam there / there be xxx
knyghtes lyenge and watchyng in a toure to wayte vpon fir
launcelot or vpon fyre triftram / Fy for shame faid fire Gawa-
yne that euer sūche fals treason shold be wrought or vsed in a
quene and a kynges syster / and a kyng and quenes dough-
30 ter

¶ Capitulum xxvj

SYr faid fire Gawayne wille ye stande with me / and
we wille see the malyce of these thyrtty knyghtes / fyr
faid fir triftram goo ye to hem / and hit please you / and ye shal
see I wille not fayle you / for hit is not long a go fyn I and
35 a felawe mette with thyrtty knyzttes of that quenes felauship

[leaf 189 verso]

And god spede vs foo that we may wynne worship / So thē-
 ne fir Gawayne and fire triftram rode toward the castel where
 Morgan le fay was / and euer fir Gawayne demed wel that
 he was fire triftram de lyones by caufe he herd that two kn-
 yghtes had slayne and beten thyrtty knyghtes / And whanne 5
 they came afore the castel fir Gawayn spak on hyghe / and fa-
 id Quene Morgan le fay fende oute youre knyghtes / that ye
 haue leyd in a watche for fir laūcelot & for fir triftram / Now
 said fir Gawayne I knowe your fals treason / and thorou all
 places where that I ryde men shall knowe of your fals trea- 10
 son / And now lete see fir Gawayn / whether ye dare come out of
 your castel ye thyrtty knyghtes / thenne the quene spak and al
 the thyrtty knyghtes attones / and said / fir Gawayne ful wel
 weteft thou what thou doft and faift / For by god we knowe
 the passynges wel / But alle that thou spekeft / and doft / thow 15
 faift hit vpon pryde of that good Knyghte that is there with
 the / For there be somme of vs that knowen full wel the han-
 des of that knyght ouer alle wel / And wete thou wel fir ga-
 wayne / hit is more for his sake than for thyn that we wyll
 not come oute of this castel / For wete ye wel fir Gawayne 20
 the Knyght that bereth the armes of Cornewaile / we knowe
 hym / and what he is / thenne fir Gawayne and fir triftram de-
 parted and rode on their wayes a day or two to gyders / and
 there by aduenture they met with fyr Kay and fyr Sagramor
 le defyrus / And thenne they were glad of fyr gawayne / and 25
 he of them / but they wifte not what he was with the shelde of
 Cornewaile / but by demynges / And thus they rode to gyders a
 daye or two / And thenne they were ware of fyr Breufe faū-
 ce pyte chacynges a lady for to haue slayne her / for he had slayn
 her peramour afore / Hold you all styll said fyr Gawayne & 30
 shewe none of you forthe / and ye shall see me reward yonder
 fals Knyght / for and he aspye you he is so wel horfed that he
 wille escape away / And thenne fyre Gawayne rode betwix fyr
 Breufe and the lady / and said fals knyghte leue her / and ha-
 ue adoo with me / whan fyr Breufe sawe no moo but fyre ga- 35
 yne he feutryd his spere / and fyr Gawayne ageynft hym / and
 there fyr Breufe ouerthrewe fyr Gawayne / and thenne he rode
 ouer hym / & ouerthwart hym twenty tymes to haue destroyed

hym / and whan fire Triftram sawe hym doo foo vylaynous a
 dede / he hurled oute ageynste hym / And whan fyr Breufe sa-
 we hym with the shelde of Cornewaile / he knewe hym well /
 that it was fyre Triftram / and thenne he fledde / and fir Trif-
 5 tram folowed after hym / and fyr Breufe saunce pyte was so
 horfed that he wente his waye quyte / and fir Triftram folowed
 hym longe / for he wold fayne haue ben auengyd vpon hym /
 And soo whanne he hadde longe chaced hym / he sawe a fayre
 welle / and thyder he rode to repose hym / and teyed his hors til
 10 a tree /

¶ Capitulum xxvij

ANd thenne he pulled of his helme and wasshed his
 vyfage / and his handes / and soo he felle on slepe /
 ¶ In the meane whyle came a damoyfel that had fought
 fir triftram many wayes and dayes within this land /
 15 And whanne she came to the welle she loked vpon hym / & had
 forgotten hym as in remembraunce of fire Triftram / but by hys
 hors she knewe hym / that hyghte paffe Brewel / that had ben
 fire Triftrams hors many yeres / For whanne he was mad in
 the forest / fyr Fergus kepte hym / Soo this lady dame Bran-
 20 gwayne abode styll tyl he was awake / Soo whanne she sawe
 hym wake / she sawed hym / and he her ageyn / for eyther knewe
 other of old acqueyntaunce / thenne she told hym how she
 had fought hym longe and brode / and there she told hym how
 she hadde letters from quene la beale Ifoud / Thenne anon fire
 25 Triftram redde them / and wete ye well / he was gladde / for the-
 ryn was many a pyteous complaynte / Thenne fir Triftram sa-
 id / lady Brangwayne ye shalle ryde with me tyl that turne-
 ment be done at the castel of maydens / And thenne shalle ye
 bere letters and tydynges with you / And thenne fire triftram
 30 took his hors and fought lodgyng / and there he mette wyth
 a good auncyent knyght and prayd hym to lodge with hym
 Ryzt so came Gouvernaile vnto fir Triftram / that was glad
 of that lady / Soo this old knyghtes name was fir Pellow-
 nus / and he told of the grete turnement that shold be att the
 35 Castel of maydens / And there fir launcelot and xxxij knyghtes

of his blood had ordeyned sheldes of Cornewaile / and ryzte
 foo there came one vnto fyr Pellounes / and told hym that fir
 Perfydes de bloyfe was come home / thenne that knyght helde
 vp his handes and thanked god of his comynge home / and
 there fir Pellounes told fyr Triftram that in two yeres he had 5
 not fene his fone fyr Perfydes / Syr faid fir Triftram I kno-
 we your fone wel ynough for a good knyght / foo on a tyme
 fyr Triftram and fyr Perfydes came to their lodgyng both at
 ones / and foo they vnarmed hem / and putte vpon hem their
 clothynge / And thenne these two knyghtes eche welcomed o- 10
 ther / And whanne fyr Perfydes vnderstode that fir Triftram
 was of Cornewaile / he faid he was ones in Cornewaile / and
 there I Iufted afore kynge Marke / And foo it happed me at
 that tyme / to ouerthrowe ten knyghtes / and thenne came to
 me fyre Triftram de lyones and ouerthrewe me / and took my 15
 lady away from me / and that shalle I neuer forgete / but I
 shalle remembre me and euer I see my tyme / A faid fir tryf-
 tram now I vnderstande that ye hate fyr Triftram / what deme
 ye / wene ye that fir Triftram is not able to withstande your ma-
 lyce / yes faid fir Perfydes I knowe wel that fir Triftram is 20
 a noble knyght and a moche better knyght than I / yet shalle
 I not owe hym my good wille / ¶ Ryght as they stode thus
 talkynge at a bay wyndowe of that castel / they sawe many
 knyghtes rydyng to and fro toward the turnement / And
 thenne was fyre Triftram ware of a lykely knyght rydyng vp- 25
 on a grete black hors / and a black couerd shelde / what knyzte
 is that faid fyre Triftram with the black hors & the blak sheld
 he femes a good knyzt / I knowe hym wel faid fir Perfydes
 he is one of the best knyghtes of the world / thenne is it fyre
 Launcelot faid fir Triftram / nay faid fyre Perfydes / hit is fyr 30
 Palomydes / that is yet vncrystened /

¶ Capitulum xxviii

THenne they sawe moche people of the countrey salewe
 fyre Palomydes / And within a whyle after / ther cam
 a squyer of the castel / that told fyre Pellounes that
 was lord of that castel / that a knyght with a blak sheld had 35

fmyten doune thyrtten knyȝtes / Fayr broder said fir Triftram
 vnto fyr Perfydes / lete vs caste vpon vs clokes / and lete vs
 goo see the play / Not foo said fir Perfydes / we wille not goo
 lyke knaues thyder / but we wille ryde lyke men and good
 5 knyghtes to withftande oure enemyes / Soo they armed them
 and took their horses and grete ſperes / and thyder they went
 there as many knyȝtes affayed hem ſelf before the turnement
 And anone fir Palomydes ſawe fir Perfydes / and thenne he
 ſente a ſquyer vnto hym and ſaid / goo thou to the yonder kn-
 10 yght with the grene ſheld and therin a lyon of gooldis / and
 ſay hym I requyre hym to luſte with me / and telle hym that
 my name is ſire Palomydes / whanne fir Perfydes vnderſtood
 that requeſt of fyre Palomydes / he made hym redy / and there
 anone they mette to gyders / but fyre Perfydes had a falle
 15 Thenne fyre Triftram dreſſid hym to be reuengyd vpon fir pa-
 lomydes / and that ſawe fyre Palomydes that was redy / and
 foo was not ſire Triftram and took hym at auantage / and
 ſmote hym ouer his hors taylor whanne he had no ſpere in his
 reyſte / Thenne ſtarte vp fyre Triftram and took his hors lyȝ-
 20 tely / and was wrothe oute of meſure / and fore aſhamed of
 that falle / Thenne ſire Triftram ſente vnto fyr Palomydes by
 Gouvernaile and prayd hym to luſte with hym at his requeſt
 Nay ſaid ſire Palomydes as att this tyme I wille not luſte
 with that knyght / for I knowe hym better than he weneth /
 25 And yf he be wrothe / he may ryghte it to morne att the caſtel
 of maydens / where he maye ſee me and many other knyghtes
 with that came fyr Dynadan / and whanne he ſawe ſire Triftra
 wrothe / he lyft not to Iape / lo ſayd fir Dynadan / here may a mā
 preue / Be a man neuer foo good yet maye he haue a falle / &
 30 he was neuer foo wyſe but he myght be ouerſene / and he rydeth
 wel that neuer fylle / Soo fyre Triftram was paſſyng wrothe
 and ſayd to fyre Perfydes and to fyre Dynadan I wille re-
 uenge me / Ryghte foo as they ſtood talkyng there / there came
 by fir Triftram a lykely knyght rydyng paſſyng ſoberly and
 35 heuyly with a blak ſhelde / what knyght is that ſaid fir Trif-
 tram vnto fyr Perfydes / I knowe hym well ſaid fir Perfy-
 des / for his name is ſire Bryaunt of Northwalys / foo he paſte
 on amonge other knyghtes of Northwalys / And there came

in fyre launcelot du lake with a sheld of the armes of Cornewaile / and he fente a squyer vnto fyr Bryaunt / and requyred hym to Iufte with hym / wel faid fyr Bryaunt / fythen I am requyred to Iufte / I wille doo what I may / and there fyre launcelot smote doune fyr Bryaunt from his hors a grete falle / And thenne fyr Triftram merueiled what knyght he was that bare the sheld of Cornewaile / what fo euer he be faid fyr Dynadan I warante you he is of Kynge Bannys blood / the whiche ben knyghtes of the moost noble prowesse / in the world for to accompte soo many for soo many / Thenne there came two knyghtes of Northgales / that one hyghte Hewe de la montayne / and the other fyr Madok de la montayne / & they chalengyd fyre launcelot foote hote / Syr Launcelot not refusyng hem but made hym redy / with one spere he smote hem doune bothe ouer their hors croupes / and soo fir launcelot rode his way / By the good lord faid fyre Triftram he is a good knyght that bereth the shelde of Cornewaile / and me semeth he rydeth in the best maner that euer I sawe knyghte ryde / Thenne the kynge of Northgalys rode vnto fyre Palomydes / and praid hym hertely for his sake to Iufte with that knyght that hath done vs of Northgalys despyte / Syr faid fir Palomydes I am ful lothe to haue adoo with that knyght / and cause why is / for as to morne the grete turnement shalle be / And therfor I wille kepe my self fresshe by my wille / Nay faid the kyng of Northgalys I pray you requyre hym of Iufstes / fyre sayd fyr palomydes I wille Iufte at your request / and requyre that knyght to Iufte with me / and often I haue sene a man haue a falle at his owne request

¶ Capitulum xix

THenne fir palomydes fente vnto fir launcelot a squyer and requyred hym of Iufstes / Fair felawe seid fir launcelot / telle me thy lordes name / Syre faid the squyer my lordes name is fyr Palomydes the good knyght / In good houre faid fir launcelot / for there is no knyght that I sawe thys feuen yeres that I had leuer adoo with all than with hym /

And so eyther knyghtes made hem redy with two grete speres
 Nay said fyr Dynadan ye shalle see that fir Palomydes will
 quyte hym ryght wel / hit may be foo said fir Triftram / but I
 vndertake that knyght with the sheld of Cornewayle shal gy-
 5 ue hym a falle / I bileue hit not said fir Dynadan / Ryght so
 they spored their horfes / and feutryd their speres / and eyther
 hytte other / and fyr palomydes brake a spere vpon fire launce-
 lot / and he fat and meued not / but fir Launcelot smote hym so
 lyghtly that he made his hors to auoyde the fadel / and the stro-
 10 ke brake his shelde and the hauberke / and had he not fallen / he
 had be slayne / how now said fir Triftram / I wifte wel by the
 maner of their rydyng bothe that fire Palomydes shold haue
 a falle / Ryght so fir launcelot rode his way and rode to a well
 to drynke and to repose hym / and they of Northgalys aspyed
 15 hym whyther he rode / and thenne there folowed hym twelue
 knyghtes for to haue meschyeued hym / for this cause that vp-
 on the morne at the turnement of the castel of maydens that he
 shold not wyne the vycory / Soo they came vpon fir launce-
 lot fodenly and vnnethe he myght putte vpon hym his helme /
 20 and take his hors but they were in handes with hym / & then-
 ne fir launcelot gat his spere and rode thorou them / and there
 he slewe a knyght and brake his spere in his body / Thenne he
 drewe his fwerd and smote vpon the ryght hand and vpon the
 lyfte hand soo that within a fewe strokes he had slayne o-
 25 ther thre knyghtes / and the remenaunt that abode he wounded
 hem fore alle that dyd abyde / Thus fyr launcelot escaped from
 his enemyes of Northwalys / and thenne fir launcelot rode his
 way tyl a frende & lodged hym tyl on the morne / for he wold
 not the fyrste daye haue adoo in the turnement by cause of his
 30 grete labour / And on the fyrst day he was with kyng Arthur
 there as he was fet on hyhe vpon a schaffold to discerne who
 was best worthy of his dedes / So fir launcelot was with kyng
 Arthur / and Iufted not the fyrst daye /

¶ Capitulum xxx

35 **N**ow torne we vnto fir Triftram de lyones that comma-
 unded Gouvernaile his seruaunt to ordeyne hym a blak
 sheld with none other remembraunce therin /

[leaf 192 verso]

And soo fyre Perfydes and fyr Triftram departed from the-
 ir hooftē fyr Pellounes / and they rode erly toward the tur-
 nement / and thenne they drewe hem to kyngē Carados fyde of
 Scotland / and anone knyȝtes beganne the felde what of ky-
 nge Northgalys party / and what of kyngē Carados party / & 5
 there began grete party / Thenne there was hurlyng and raffh-
 ynge / Ryght soo came in fyr Perfydes and fire Triftram / and
 soo they dyd fare that they put the kyng of Northgalys abak
 Thenne came in fyre Bleoberys de ganys and fyre Gaherys
 with them of Northaglys / and thenne was fir Perfydes smy- 10
 ten doune / and alle moost flayne / For moo than xl horsmen
 wente ouer hym / For fyr Bleoberys dyd grete dedes of armes
 and fyre Gaherys fayled hym not / whanne fire Triftram by-
 held them / and sawe hem doo fuche dedes of armes / he meruey-
 led what they were / Also fir Triftram thought shame that fir 15
 Perfydes was soo done to / and thenne he gat a grete spere in
 his hand / and thenne he rode to fire Gaherys and smote hym
 doune from his hors / And thenne was fire Bleoberys wroth
 and gate a spere and rode ageynst fir Triftram in grete yre / &
 there fyre Triftram mette with hym / and smote fir Bleoberys 20
 from his hors / Soo thenne the kyngē with the honderd knygh-
 tes was wrothe / and he horfed fire Bleoberys and fir gaherys
 ageyne / and there beganne a grete medle / and euer fir triftram
 held them passynge shorte / and euer fir Bleoberys was pas-
 synge besy vpon fyre Triftram / and there came fire Dynadan a- 25
 ageynst fyre Triftram / and fire Triftram gaf hym fuche a buffet
 that he swounded in his fadel / Thenne anone fir Dynadan cam
 to fire Triftram / and said fyr I knowe the better than thow
 wenest / But here I promyse the my trouthe I wille neuer co-
 me ayenst the more / for I promyse the that swerd of thyn shal 30
 neuer come on myn helme / with that came fir Bleoberys / and
 fyr Triftram gaf hym fuche a buffet that doune he leyd his he-
 de / and thenne he raught hym so fore by the helme / that he pul-
 led hym vnder his hors feet / And thenne kyng Arthur blewe
 to lodgyngē / Thenne fyre Triftram departed to his paelione / 35
 and fire Dynadan rode with hym / and fire Perfydes & kyng
 Arthur thenne and the kynges vpon bothe partyes merueylled
 what knyght that was with the blak shelde / Many said their

adyfe / and fome knewe hym for fyre Triftram / and helde their pees and wold nought fay / Soo that fyrfte day kyng Arthur and alle the kynges and lordes that were Iuges gaf fir Triftram the pryce / hou be hit they knewe hym not but named
5 hym the knyght with the black fheld

¶ Capitulum xxxi

THenne vpon the morne fyre Palomydes returned from the kyng of Northgalys / and rode to kyng Arthurs fyde where was kyng Carados and the kyng of Irland / & fyr launcelots kynne and fir Gawayns kynne / Soo fyre palomydes fente the damoyfel vnto fyre Triftram that he fente to feke
10 hym whanne he was oute of his mynde in the forest / and thys damoyfel asked fyre Triftram / what he was / and what was his name / As for that said fir Triftram telle fir Palomydes ye fhalle not wete as at this tyme vnto the tyme I haue broken
15 two speres vpon hym / But lete hym wete thus moche said fir Triftram / that I am the fame knyghte that he smote doune in ouer euenyng at the turnement & telle hym playnly / on what party that fyre Palomydes be / I wille be of the contrary parte Syre said the damoyfel ye fhalle vnderstande that fir Palomydes wille be on kyng Arthurs fyde / where the moost noble knyghtes of the world ben / In the name of god said fir Triftram / thenne wille I be with the kyng of Northgalys by caufe fyr Palomydes wille be on kyng Arthurs fyde / and els I wold not but for his sake / ¶ Soo whanne kyng Arthur
25 was come they blewe vnto the felde / and thenne there began a grete party / and soo kyng Carados Iufted with the kyng of the honderd knyghtes / and there kyng Carados hadde a falle / thenne was there hurlynge and raffhyng / and ryght fo cam in knyghtes of kyng Arthurs / and they bare on bak the
30 kyng of Northgalys knyghtes / Thenne fir Triftram came in and beganne fo roughly and soo bygly that there was none myght withftande hym / and thus fyre Triftram dured longe / ¶ And at the laft fyr Tryfram felle amonge the felaufhip of kyng Ban / and there felle vpon hym fyr Bors de ganys /
35 and fyr Ector de marys / and fyre Blamor de ganys / & many

other knyghtes / And thenne fir Triftram smote on the ryght
 hand and on the lyfte hand that alle lordes and ladyes spak
 of his noble dedes / But at the laft fyre Triftram shold haue
 had the werfe / had not the kyng with the honderd knyghtes
 ben / And thenne he came with his felaufhip and rescowed 5
 fir Triftram / and brought hym away from tho knyghtes that
 bare the sheldes of Cornewaile / and thenne fir Triftram sawe
 another felaufhip by them self / and there were a xl Knygh-
 tes to gyder / and fir Kay the Seneschal was there gouerno-
 ur / Thenne fyre Triftram rode in amongest them / and there he 10
 smote doune fyr Kay from his hors / and there he fared among
 tho Knyghtes lyke a grey hound among conyes / Thenne fyre
 launcelot fond a Knyght that was fore wounded vpon the he-
 de / Sir said fir launcelot who wounded you so fore / Sire he sa-
 id a Knyght that bereth a black shelde / and I maye curfe the 15
 tyme that euer I mette with hym for he is a deuyl and no man
 Soo fyre launcelot departed fro hym / & thought to mete with fir
 Triftram / and soo he rode with his swerd drawn in his hand
 to feke fir Triftram / and thenne he aspyed hym how he hurled
 here and there / and at euery stroke fyr Triftram wel nygh smo- 20
 te doune a knyght / O mercy Ihesu said the kyng fyth the ty-
 me I bare armes sawe I neuer no knyght do so merueillous
 dedes of armes / And yf I shold sette vpon this knyght said fir
 Launcelot to hym self I dyd shame to my self / & there with al
 fir launcelot put vp his swerd / And theñe the Kyng with the 25
 C Knyztes / and an honderd more of Northwalys fet vpon the
 twenty of fir launcelots kyn / and they xx Knyztes held them
 euer to gyder / as wylde fwyne and none wold faile other / & fo
 whan fir Triftram beheld the nobleffe of these xx Knyghtes /
 he merueiled of their good dedes / for he sawe by their fare and 30
 by theil reule that they had leuer deye than auoyde the felde /
 ¶ Now Ihesu saide fyre Triftram wel maye he be valyaunte
 and ful of prowesse that hath suche a forte of noble Knygh-
 tes vnto his kynne / and ful lyke is he to be a noble man that
 is their leder and gouernour / he mente hit by fir Launcelot du 35
 Lake /
 ¶ Soo whanne fyre Triftram had be-
 holden them long / he thouzt shame to see / ij / C knyztes battering

vpon twenty knyghtes / ¶ Thenne sire Triftram rode vnto the
 kyng with the honderd knyghtes / and faid fyre leue youre
 fyghtyng with tho twenty knyghtes / for ye wyne no wor-
 ship of them / ye be foo many / and they foo fewe / And wete ye
 5 well they wille not oute of the felde I see by their chere and
 countenaunce / and worship gete ye none and ye flee them /
 therefore leue your fyghtyng with them / for I to encrease my
 worship / I wyll ryde to the twenty knyghtes and helpe them
 with all my myghte and power / ¶ Nay faid the
 10 kyng with the honderd knyghtes / ye shall not do so / Now I
 see youre courage and curtosy / I wille withdrawe my kny3-
 tes for your pleafyr / for euermore a good knyght wylle fa-
 uoure another / and lyke wille drawe to lyke /

¶ Capitulum xxxij

15 **T**henne the kyng with the honderd knyghtes withdre-
 we his knyghtes / And al this whyle and long tofore
 fyr launcelot had watched vpon fyr Triftram with a
 very purpos to haue felauhipped with hym / And thenne so-
 denly fyr Triftram / fyr Dynadan / and Gouvernaile his man ro-
 20 de their waye in to the forest that no man perceyued where they
 wente / Soo thenne kyng Arthur blewe vnto lodgyng / and
 gaf the kyng of Northgalys the pryce by cause fyr Triftram
 was vpon his fyde / Thenne fyr launcelot rod here and there fo
 wood as lyon that fauted his fylle by cause he had losfe fyre
 Triftram / and foo he retorned vnto kyng Arthur / and then-
 25 ne in alle the felde was a noyse that with the wynde hit my-
 ght be herd two myle thens / how the lordes and ladyes cryed
 the knyght with the blak shelde hath wonne the felde

¶ Allas faid kyng Arthur where is that knyght become / hit
 is shame to alle tho in the felde so to lete hym escape away from
 30 you / but with gentylnes and curtosy ye myght haue brought
 hym vnto me to the castel of maydens

¶ Thenne the noble kyng Arthur wente vnto his knyghtes
 and comforted them in the best wyfe that he coude / and fayd /
 my fayre felawes be not dysmayed / how be hit ye haue losfe

the felde this daye and many were hurte and fore wounded /
 and many were hole / ¶ My felawes said kynge Ar-
 thur loke that ye be of good chere / for to morne I wille be in
 the feld with you and reuenge you of youre enemyes

¶ Soo that nyght Kynge Arthur and his knyghtes repofed 5
 them self / ¶ The damoyfel that came from la Beale I-
 foud vnto fyr Triftram alle the whyle the turnement was a-
 doynge she was with Quene Gueneuer / and euer the Quene
 asked her for what cause she came in to that Countrey

¶ Madame she anfuerd I come for none other caufe but from 10
 my lady la Beale Ifoud to wete of your welfare / For in no
 wyfe she wold telle the Quene that she came for fyr Trif-
 trams sake / Soo this lady dame Brangwayne took her leue
 of Quene Gueneuer / and she rode after fyr Triftram / And
 as she rode thurgh the forest she herd a grete crye / thenne she 15
 commaunded her fquyer to goo in to that forest to wete what
 was that noyfe / and soo he came to a welle and there he fond
 a Knyght bounden tyl a tree cryeng as he had ben wode and
 his hors and his harneis standynge by hym / And whan he af-
 pyed the fquyer / ther with he abraide / and brake hym self lo- 20
 os and took his fwerd in his hand / and ranne to haue fla-
 yne that fquyer / Thenne he took his hors and fledde all that e-
 uer he myght vnto dame Brangwayne / and told her of his
 aduenture / Thenne she rode vnto fyr Triftrams paelione / and
 told hire Triftram what aduenture she had fonde in the forest / 25
 Allas said fyr Triftram vpon my heede there is somme good
 Knyghte at mefchyef / Thenne hire Triftram tooke his hors and
 his fwerd / and rode thyder / there he herd how the Knyght com-
 playned vnto hym self and sayd / I woful knyght fyre pa-
 lomydes what myfaenture befalleth me / that thus am defoiled 30
 with falshede and treason thorou fyre Bors and fyre Ector /
 Allas he fayde why lyue I soo longe / And thenne he gat his
 fwerd in his handes / and maade many fraunge fyngnes and
 tokens / and soo thorou his ragynge he threwe his fwerd in to
 that fontayne

¶ Thenne fir Palomydes way- 35
 led and wrange his handes / And at the lafte for pure forow
 he ranne in to that Fontayne ouer his bely / and foughte after

his swerd / Thenne fir Triftram fawe that and ranne vpon fyr
 Palomydes / and helde hym in his armes fast / what arte thou
 faid Palomydes that holdeth me foo / I am a man of this fo-
 rest that wold the none harme / Allas faid fire Palomydes I
 5 maye neuer wynne worship where fyr Triftram is / For euer
 where he is / and I be there thenne gete I no worship / And
 yf he be away / for the moost party I haue the gree / onles that
 fir Launcelot be there or fyr Lamorak / Thenne fire Palomydes
 faid ones in Irland fyr Triftram putte me to the werse / and
 10 another tyme in Cornewaile and in other places in this land
 What wold ye do faid fyre Triftram & ye had fir Triftram / I
 wold fyghte with hym faid fir Palomydes and ease my hert
 vpon hym / and yet to faye the sothe fyre Triftram is the gen-
 telyft knyght in this world lyuyng / what wil ye doo fayd fir
 15 Triftram wille ye goo with me to youre lodgyng / Nay fayde
 he I wille goo to the kyng with the honderd knyghtes / for
 he rescowed me from fire Bors de ganys / and fir Ector / & els
 had I ben slayne traitourly / Syre Triftram faid hym fuche
 kynde wordes that fyre Palomydes wente with hym to his lod-
 20 gyng / Thenne Gouvernaile wente to fore / and charged dame
 Brangwayn to goo oute of the way to her lodgyng / and byd
 ye fyre Perfydes that ye make hym no quarels / And so they
 rode to gyders tyl they came to fire Triftrams paelione / and
 there fyre Palomydes had alle the chere that myght be had all
 25 that nyghte / But in no wyse fire Palomydes myzt not knowe
 what was fyr Triftram / and foo after souper they yede to reste
 And fyr Triftram for grete trauaile slepte tylle it was daye /
 And fyr Palomydes myghte not flepe for anguysshe / and in
 the daunynge of the daye he tooke his hors pryuely / and rode
 30 his waye vnto fyr Gaherys and vnto fyr Sagramour le defy-
 rus / where they were in their paelions / for they thre were fe-
 lawes at the begynnyng of the turnement / And thenne vp-
 on the morne the kyng blewe vnto the turnement vpon the
 thyrdde daye /

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij /

WOo the kynge of Northgalys and the kynge with the
 honderd knyghtes they two encountred with kyng ca-
 rados and with the kynge of Irland / and there the
 kynge with the honderd knyghtes smote doune kyng Cara-
 dos / and the kynge of Northgalys smote doune the kynge of 5
 Irland / With that came in fyr Palomydes / and whan he cam
 he made grete werke / for by his endented shelde he was well
 knowen / Soo came in kyng Arthur / and dyd grete dedes of
 armes to gyders / and putte the kynge of Northgalys and the
 kynge with the honderd knyghtes to the werse / With this came 10
 in fyr Triftram with his black shelde / And anone he lusted
 with fyre palomydes / and there by fyne force fyr Triftram smote
 fyre palomydes ouer his hors croupe / Thenne kyng Arthur
 cryed Knyght with the black shelde make the redy to me / and
 in the fame wyfe fir Triftram smote kyng Arthur / And then- 15
 ne by force of kyng Arthurs knyghtes the kynge and fir pa-
 lomydes were horfed ageyne / Thenne kyng Arthur with a gre-
 te egre herte he gate a spere in his hand / and therupon the one
 fyde he smote fyr Triftram ouer his hors / Thenne foote hote fyr
 Palomydes cam vpon fir Triftram as he was vpon foot to ha- 20
 ue ouer ryden hym / Thenne fir Triftram was ware of hym / &
 there he stouped a fyde / and with grete yre he gate hym by the
 arme / and pulled hym doune from his hors / Thenne fyre pa-
 lomydes lyghtely arose / and thenne they daffhed to gyder my-
 ghtely with their swerdes / and many kynges / Quenes and 25
 lordes stode and beheld them / And at the laste fyre Triftram
 smote fyre palomydes vpon the helme thre myzty stokes / and
 at euery stoke that he gaf hym he said this for fyre Trif-
 trams sake / With that fyre Palomydes felle to the erthe groue-
 lunge / Thenne came the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / & 30
 broughte fyre Triftram an hors / and soo was he horfed ageyn
 By thenne was fyr Palomydes horfed / and with grete yre
 he lusted vpon fyr Triftram with his spere as hit was in the
 reyfte and gaf hym a grete daffhe with his swerd /

¶ Thenne fir Triftram auoyded his spere / and gate hym by 35
 the neck with his bothe handes / and pulled hym clene oute of
 his fadel / and soo he bare hym afore hym the lengthe of ten spe-
 res / & thenne in the prefence of hem al he lete hym falle at his

adventure / Thenne sire Triftram was ware of kynge Arthur /
 with a naked fuerd in his hand / and with his spere fir Trif-
 tram ranne vpon kynge Arthur / and thenne kynge Arthur
 boldely abode hym and with his fwerd he smote atwo his spe-
 5 re / and there with alle fyre Triftram stonyed / and soo kynge
 Arthur gaf hym thre or four grete strokes or he myzt gete out
 his fwerd / and at the last fir Triftram drewe his fwerd and
 assailed other passyng hard / with that the grete prees depart-
 ed / thenne fir Triftram rode here and there and dyd his gre-
 10 te payne that xj of the good knyghtes of the blood of kynge
 Ban that was of sire launcelots kyn / that daye fyre Triftram
 smote doune / that alle the estates merueilled of his grete dedes
 and alle cryed vpon the knyght with the black sheld

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

15 **T**Henne this crye was soo large / that fir launcelot herd
 it / And thenne he gate a grete spere in his hand / and
 came towardes the crye / Thenne fir launcelot cryed / the
 knyght with the blak shelde make the redy to Iuste with me /
 Whanne sire Triftram herd hym fay so he gate his spere in his
 hand / and eyther abeyshed down their hedes / and came to gy-
 20 der as thonder / and sire Triftrams spere brake in pyeces / and
 fyr launcelot by male fortune stroke fir Triftram on the fyde a
 depe wound nyghe to the dethe / But yet fyr Triftram auoyded
 not his fadel / and soo the spere brak / there with all fir triftram
 that was wounded gate oute his fwerd / and he raffhed to fir
 25 launcelot / and gaf hym thre grete strokes vpon the helme that
 the fyre sprange there oute / and fir launcelot abeyshed his he-
 de lowely toward his fadel bowe / And there with alle fir trif-
 tram departed from the felde / for he felte hym soo wouēd that
 he wende he shold haue dyed / and fir Dynadan aspyed hym
 30 and folowed hym in to the forest / Thenne fir launcelot abode &
 dyd many merueyllous dedes / Soo whan sire Triftram was
 departed by the forests fyde / he alyght & vnaced his harneis
 and fresshed his woūd / thēne wende fir Dynodan that he shold

haue dyed / Nay nay faide fire Triftram / Dynadan / neuer drede
 the / for I am herte hole / & of this wounde I fhall foone be hole
 by the mercy of god / ¶ By that fir Dynadan was ware
 where came palomydes rydyng freyghte vpon them / And
 thenne fyre Triftram was ware that fyre Palomydes came to 5
 haue destroyed hym / and fo fyre Dynadan gaf hym warnyng
 and faide fire Triftram my lord ye are soo fore wounded that
 ye may not haue adoo with hym / therefore I wille ryde agey-
 nft hym and doo to hym what I maye / And yf I be flayne
 ye maye praye for my foule and in the meane whyle ye maye 10
 withdrawe you and goo in to the castel / or in the foreste that
 he fhalle not mete with you / ¶ Syre Triftram
 fmyled and faid I thanke you fyre Dynadan of your good
 wyll / but ye fhalle wete that I am able to handle hym / And
 thenne anone haftely he armed hym and took his hors / and a 15
 grete spere in his hand and faid to fyre Dynadan Adieu / &
 rode toward fyre Palomydes a foete paas
 ¶ Thenne whanne fire Palomydes fawe that / he made counte-
 nance to amende his hors / but he dyd hit for this caufe / For
 he abode fire Gaherys that came after hym / ¶ And whanne he 20
 was come he rode toward fyre Triftram / ¶ Thenne fyre Trif-
 tram fente vnto fyr palomydes and requyred hym to Iuste with
 hym / And yf he smote doune fir Palomydes / he wold doo no
 more to hym / And yf it fo happend that fire Palomydes smo-
 te doune fyr Triftram he badde hym do his vtteraunce / So they 25
 were accorded / thenne they mette to gyders / and fyre Triftram
 smote doune fir palomydes / that he had a greuous falle / soo
 that he laye styll as he hadde ben dede / And thenne fire Tryf-
 tram ranne vpon fyr Gaherys / and he wold not haue Iufted
 But whether he wolde or not fyre Triftram smote hym ouer 30
 his hors croupe that he laye styll as though he had ben dede /
 And thenne fyr Triftram rode his waye and lefte fyre Perfy-
 des fquyer within the paelions / and fyre Triftram and fyre
 Dynadan rode to an old knyghtes place to lodge them / And
 that olde knyght had fyue fones at the turnement / for whome 35
 he prayed god hertely for their comyng home / ¶ And fo as the
 frenfhe book faith they cam home al / v / wel beten / And whan
 fyr Triftram departed in to the forest fyr laücelot held alwey

the stoure lyke hard as a man araged that took no heede to
 hym self / and wete ye wel there was many a noble knyghte
 ageynst hym / And whanne kyng Arthur fawe fir Launcelot
 doo foo merueyllous dedes of armes / he thenne armed hym / &
 5 took his hors and his armour / and rode in to the felde to helpe
 fyr launcelot / and so many knyghtes came in with kyng Ar-
 thur / and to make short tale in conclusion the kyng of North-
 galys / and the kyng of the honderd knyghtes were putte to
 the wers / and by cause fyre launcelot abode and was the last
 10 in the feld / the pryce was yeuen hym / But fir Laücelot wold
 neyther for kyng / Quene ne knyghte haue the pryce / but whe-
 re the crye was cryed thourgh the felde / fyr launcelot fir laun-
 celot hath wonne the felde this day / fyre Launcelot lete make
 an other crye contrary fyr Triftram hath wonne the feld / for
 15 he beganne fyrst and last he hath endured / and foo hath he do-
 ne the fyrst day / the second and the thyrday /

¶ Capitulum xxxv

THenne alle the estates and degrees hye and lowe fa-
 yd of fyr launcelot grete worship / for the honour that
 he dyd vnto fyr Triftram / and for that honour doying
 20 to fir Triftram he was at that tyme more preyfed and renou-
 med than and he had ouerthrowen v C knyghtes / and all the
 peple holy for this gentylnes / fyrst the estates bothe hye and
 lowe / and after the comynalte cryed at ones fyre Launcelot
 hath wonne the felde who foo euer saye nay / Thenne was fyre
 25 Launcelot wroth and ashamed / and foo there with alle he ro-
 de to kyng Arthur / Allas said the kyng we are alle dyf-
 mayed that fyr Triftram is thus departed from vs / By god
 said kyng Arthur he is one of the noblest knyghtes that euer
 I sawe hold spere or fwerd in hand / and the moost curteyst
 30 knyght in his fyghtyng / for ful hard I sawe hym sayd kyng
 Arthur whanne he smote fyr Palomydes vpon the helme thry-
 es / that he abasshed his helme with his strokes / and also he sa-
 id / here is a stroke for fyr Triftram / and thus thryes he sayd /
 Thenne kyng Arthur / fyr launcelot / and fire Dodynas le fa-
 35 ueage took their horses to seke fir Triftram / and by the menes

of fyr Perfydes / he had told kyng Arthur where fyr Triftram
 was in his paelione / but whanne they came there / fyr Trif-
 ram and fir Dynadan were gone / thenne kyng Arthur and
 fyr launcelot were heuy / and retorned ageyne to the castel of
 maydens makyng grete dole for the hurte of fyre Tryfram / & 5
 his sodeyne departynge / Soo god me helpe said kyng Arthur
 I am more heuy that I can not mete with hym / thenne for al
 the hurtes that alle my knyghtes haue had at the turnement
 Ryght soo came fir Gaherys and told kyng Arthur how fyr
 Triftram had smyten doune fyr Palomydes / and it was atte 10
 fyr Palomydes owne request / Allas said Kyng Arthur that
 was grete difhonoure to fyre Palomydes in as moche as fyre
 Triftram was fore wounded / and now may we alle kynges
 and knyghtes and men of worship faye that fyre Triftram may
 be called a noble knyght and one of the best Knyghtes that e- 15
 uer I fawe the dayes of my lyf / For I wille that ye al kyn-
 ges and Knyghtes knowe said Kyng Arthur that I neuer
 fawe Knyghte doo so merueylloufly as he hath done these thre
 dayes / for he was the first that began and that lengest held on
 fauf this last day / And though he was hurte it was a manly 20
 aduenture of two noble Knyghtes / and whan two noble men
 encountre nedes must the one haue the werse lyke as god wil
 suffre at that tyme / ¶ As for me said fir launcelot for alle the
 landes that euer my fader lefte me I wold not haue hurte fir
 Triftram and I had knowen hym at that tyme / that I hurt 25
 hym was for I fawe not his sheld / For and I had sene his
 black sheld / I wold not haue medled with hym for many
 caufes / for late he dyd as moche for me as euer dyd Knyght
 and that is wel knowen that he had adoo with thyrty Knyg-
 tes / and no helpe faue fyr Dynadan / And one thyng shalle 30
 I promyse said fyr launcelot / fyr Palomydes shalle repente it
 as in his vnkyndely delynge for to folowe that noble knyght
 that I by myshap hurted thus / Syr launcelot fayd alle the
 worship that myght be said by fir Triftram / Thenne kyng Ar-
 thur made a grete feest to alle that wold come / And thus we 35
 lete passe Kyng Arthur / and a lytyl we wille torne vnto fir
 Palomydes that after he had a falle of fire Triftram / he was
 nyghe hand araged oute of his wyt for despyte of fir Triftram

And foo he folowed hym by aduenture / And as he came by
 a ryuer in his woodenes / he wold haue made his hors to haue
 lepte ouer / and the hors fayled footyng / and felle in the Ry-
 uer / wherfore fyre palomydes was adrad left he shold haue ben
 5 drouned / and thenne he auoyded his hors / and swamme to
 the land / and lete his hors goo doune by aduenture /

¶ Capitulum xxxvi /

ANd whanne he came to the land he took of his harnes /
 is / and fatte rorynge and cryenge as a man oute of
 his mynde / Ryght so came a damoyfel euen by fyr Palomydes
 10 that was sente fro fyr Gawayne and his broder vnto fir mordred
 that lay seke in the same place with that old knyzt wher
 re fyr Triftram was / For as the Frensishe book faith fyr Perfydes
 hurte soo fyr Mordred a ten dayes afore / and had not
 ben for the loue of fir Gawayne and his broder / fyr Perfydes
 15 had slayne fir Mordred / and soo this damoyfel came by fir palomydes
 / and she and he had langage to gyder / the whiche pleasyd
 neyther of them / and soo the damoyfel rode her wayes tyl
 she came to the old knyghtes place / & there she told that old
 knyght how she mette with the woodeft knyght by aduenture
 20 that euer she mette with all / what bare he in his sheld said fir
 Triftram / hit was endented with whyte and black saide the
 damoyfel / A said fir Triftram that was fir palomydes / the good
 knyght / For wel I knowe hym said fir Triftram for one
 of the best knyghtes lyuyng in this realme / Thenne that old
 25 knyght took a lytel hackney and rode for fyre palomydes / and
 brought hym vnto his owne manoyr / and ful wel knewe fire
 Triftram fyr Palomydes / but he said but lytel / for at that tyme
 fyr Triftram was walkyng vpon his feet / and wel amended
 of his hurtes / and alweyes whan fire Palomydes sawe
 30 fyr Triftram / he wold behold hym ful merueilloufly / And
 euer hym femed that he hadde sene hym / Thenne wold he saye
 vnto fyre Dynadan and euer I may mete with fyre Triftram
 he shal not escape myn handes / I merueile said fir Dynadan þ^t

ye boofte behynde fyr Triftram / for it is but late that he was in
 youre handes / and ye in his handes / why wold ye not holde
 hym whanne ye hadde hym / for I fawe my self twyes or thry-
 es that ye gat but lytel worship of fir Triftram / thenne was
 fyr Palomydes afhamed / Soo leue we them a lytyl whyle in 5
 the old castel / with the old knyght fir Darras / ¶ Now shall
 we speke of Kynge Arthur / that said to fir Launcelot had not
 ye ben / we had not lost fyre Triftram / for he was here dayly vn-
 to the tyme ye mette with hym / and in an euylle tyme fayd
 Arthur ye encountred with hym / My lord Arthur said Laun- 10
 celot ye putte vpon me that I shold ben cause of his departy-
 cyon / god knoweth hit was ageynste my wille / But whan
 men ben hote in dedes of armes ofte they hurte their frendes as
 wel as their foes / And my lord said fir launcelot ye shal vn-
 derstande that fir Triftram is a man that I am loth to offende 15
 for he hath done for me more than euer I dyd for hym as yet /
 But thenne fir Launcelot made brynge forth a book and the-
 ne fir launcelot said / here we are ten Knyghtes that wil swe-
 re vpon a book neuer to reste one nyght where we rest another
 this twelue moneth vn tyl that we fynde fyr Triftram / And 20
 as for me said fyre Launcelot I promyse you vpon this book
 that and I may mete with hym / outhere with fayrenes or foul-
 nesse I shalle brynge hym to this courte / or els I shalle dye
 therefore / And the names of these ten knyghtes that hadde vn-
 dertake this quest were these folowyng / Fyrst was fir Laun- 25
 celot / fyr Ector de Marys / fyr Bors de ganys and Bleoberis
 and fyre Blamor de ganys / and Lucan the botteler / fyr Vwa-
 yne / fyr Galyhud / Lyonel and Galyodyn / Soo these x noble
 knyghtes departed from the courte of kynge Arthur / and soo
 they rode vpon their quest to gyders vntyl they came to a cro- 30
 sse where departed four wayes / and there departed the felau-
 ship in four to seke fyr Triftram / And as fyr launcelot rode
 by aduenture he mette with dame Brangwayn that was sent
 in to that countrey to seke fir Triftram / and she fled as faste
 as her palfrey myght goo / Soo fire Launcelot mette with her 35
 and asked her why she fledde / ¶ A fayre knyghte said dame
 Brangwayne I flee for drede of my lyf / for here foloweth me
 fyr Breufe faunce pyte to flee me / Hold you nyghe me fayd

fir launcelot / Thenne whanne fire Launcelot sawe fir Breufe
 faunce pyte / fyr launcelot cryed vnto hym / and said / fals knyght
 destroyer of ladyes and damoyfels / now thy last dayes
 be come / Whanne fire Breufe faunce pyte sawe fire launcelots
 5 shelde he knewe hit wel / for at that tyme he bare not the armes
 of Cornewaile / but he bare his owne shelde / And thenne fyre
 Breufe fled / and fyr Trifram folowed after hym / But fir
 Breufe was soo wel horfed that whan hym lyst to flee he myght
 wel flee / and also abyde whan hym lyst /
 10 And thenne fire launcelot returned vnto dame Brangwayne
 and she thanked hym of his grete labour /

¶ Capitulum xxxviij

Now wille we speke of fir Lucan the buttelere that by
 fortune he came rydyng to the same place there as was
 fyr Trifram / and in he came in none other entente /
 15 but to aske herberowe / thenne the porter asked what was his
 name / Telle your lord that my name is fyr Lucan the botteler
 a knyghte of the round table / Soo the porter wente vnto fyre
 Darras lord of the place / and told hym who was there to aske
 herborou3 / Nay nay feid fyr Daname that was neuewe to
 20 fyr Darras / faye hym that he shalle not be lodged here / But
 lete hym wete that I fyr Daname wyll mete with hym anon
 and bydde hym make hym redy / So fire Daname came forth
 on horsbak / and there they mette to gyders with speres / and fir
 Lucan fmote doune fyr Daname ouer his hors croupe / and thē-
 25 ne he fledde in to that place / and fir Lucan rode after hym / &
 asked after hym many tymes / Thenne fyr dynadan said to fire
 Trifram hit is shame to see the lordes cofyn of this place de-
 foiled / Abyde said fir Trifram and I shalle redresse it / and
 in the meane whyle fyr Dynadan was on horsbak and he Iuf-
 30 tid with Lucan þ^e botteler / & ther fir lucan fmote doune dynadā thur3
 the thyck of the thyghe / and soo he rode his way / and fire trif-
 tram was wrothe that fir Dynadan was hurte / & folowed af-
 ter and thought to auenge hym / and within a whyle he ouer-
 took fir lucan / and badde hym torne / and soo they mette to gy-
 35 ders soo that fire Trifram hurt fir Lucan passyng fore / and

gaf hym a falle / With that came fire Vwayne a gentyl knyzt
 And whanne he sawe fire Lucan soo hurte / he called fyre trif-
 tram to Iuste with hym / Faire knyght said fire Triftram telle
 me your name I requyre you / Syre knyghte wete ye wel my
 name is fyre Vwayne le fyfe de roy Vreyne / A faide fire Trif- 5
 tram by my wille I wold not haue adoo with you at no ty-
 me / ye shalle not soo faid fir Vwayne but ye shalle haue adoo
 with me / And thenne fire Triftram sawe none other boote but
 rode ageynst hym and ouerthrewe fyr Vwayn and hurte hym
 in the fyde / and soo he departed vnto his lodgyng ageyne / 10
 And whanne fire Dynadan vnderstood that fyr Triftram had
 hurte fir Lucan / he wold haue ryden after fyr Lucan for to
 haue slayne hym / but fir Triftram wold not suffre hym /

¶ Thenne fyr Vwayne lete ordeyne an hors lytter / and bro-
 ught fir Lucan to the abbey of Ganys / and the castel there by 15
 hyght the castel of Ganys / of the whiche fyr Bleoberys was
 lord / And at that Castel fire launcelot promysed alle his fe-
 lawes to mete in the quest of fyr Triftram / Soo whan fir trif-
 tram was come to his lodgyng / ther cam a damoifel þ^t told fir
 Darras that thre of his fones were slayne at that turnement 20
 and two greuouly wouDED that they were neuer lyke to helpe
 them self / And alle this was done by a noble knyghte that
 bare the black shelde / and that was he that bare the pryce /

¶ Thenne came there one and told fyr Darras that the same
 knyght was within hym that bare the black sheld / Thenne fir 25
 Darras yede vnto fir Triftrams chamber / and there he fond his
 sheld and shewed it to the damoyfel / A fyr said the damoyfel
 that same is he / that slewe your thre fones / Thenne withoute
 ony taryenge fir Darras putte fyre Triftram and fyre Palomydes
 and fyr Dynadan within a strong pryson / and there fir 30
 Triftram was lyke to haue dyed of grete sekeneffe / and eue-
 ry day fyr Palomydes wold repreue fir Triftram of old hate
 betwixe them / And euer fir Triftram spak fayre and said ly-
 tel / But whan fir Palomydes sawe the fallynge of sekeneffe
 of fir Triftram thenne was he heuy for hym / and comforted 35
 hym in alle the best wyse he coude / And as the Frenshe booke
 faith there came fourty knyghtes to fire Darras / that were of
 his owne kyn / and they wold haue slayne fire Triftram and

his two felawes / but sire Darras wold not suffre that but
 kepte them in pryson / and mete and drynke they had / So sire
 Triftram endured there grete payne / for sekeneffe had vnderta-
 ke hym / and that is the gretteft payne a pryfoner maye haue
 5 For alle the whyle a pryfoner may haue his helthe of body / he
 maye endure vnder the mercy of god and in hope of good de-
 lyueraunce / But whanne sekenes toucheth a pryfoners *body* /
 thenne may a pryfoner fay al welthe is hym berafte / and then-
 ne he hath cause to wayle and to wepe / Ryzt so dyd fyre Trift-
 10 ram whanne sekenes had vndertake hym / for thenne he tooke
 fuche sorou that he had almost flayne hym self

¶ Capitulum xxxviii

Now wille we speke and leue sir Triftram / fyre Palo-
 mydes / & fyr Dynadan in pryson / and speke we of o-
 ther knyghtes that foughte after fyre Triftram many dyuerse
 15 partyes of this land / and some yede in to Cornewaile / and by
 aduenture fyr Gaheryse neuwe vnto kyng Arthur came vnto
 Kyng Mark / and there he was wel receyued / and fatte atte
 kyng Marks owne table & ete of his owne messe / ¶ Thenne
 kyng Mark asked sir Gaheryse what tydynges there were in
 20 the royalme of Logrys / Syre said fyr Gaheryse the Kyng reg-
 neth as a noble knyght / and now but late there was a grete
 Iustes and turnement as euer I sawe ony in the realme of
 Logrys / and the moost noble knyghtes were at that Iustes /
 But there was one knyght that dyd merueyllously thre da-
 25 yes / and he bare a black shelde / and of alle knyghtes that e-
 uer I sawe he preued the best knyzt / thenne said Kyng mark
 that was fyre launcelot or fyre palomydes the paynym / Not foo
 said fyr Gaherys / for bothe fyre launcelot and sire Palomydes
 were on the contrary party ageynst the Knyght with the blak
 30 shelde / thenne was it sir Triftram said the kyng / ye said sir Ga-
 heryse And there with all the Kyng smote down his hede / & in
 his herte he feryd fore that fyre Triftram shold gete hym fuche
 worship in the Royame of Logrys / where thorou that he hym
 self shold not be able to withstande hym / Thus fyre Gaheryse

had grete chere with kynge Marke / and with quene la Beale
 Ifoud the whiche was gladde of fyr Gaheryse wordes / For
 wel she wift by his dedes and maners / that it was fyr Trif-
 ram / And thenne the kynge made a feest Royal / and to that
 feest came fir Vwayne le fyfe de roy Vreyne / and fomme callid 5
 hym Vwayne le blaunche maynys / And this fyr Vwayn cha-
 lengyd alle the knyghtes of Cornewaile / Thenne was the kyng
 woode wroth that he had no knyghtes to anfuer hym /
 Thenne fire Andred neuewe vnto kynge Mark lepte vp and
 said I wille encountre with fyr Vwayne / Thenne he yede and 10
 armed hym and horfed hym in the best maner / And there fyre
 Vwayne mette with fyre Andred and smote hym doune that
 he fwounded on the erthe / Thenne was kynge Marke fory and
 wrothe oute of mesure that he had no knyghte to reunge his
 neuewe fir Andred / Soo the kynge called vnto hym fyr Dy- 15
 nas the fenefchal / and praid hym for his fake to take vpon
 hym to Iufte with fir Vwayne / Syr said fyr Dynas I am ful
 lothe to haue adoo with ony knyght of the round table / yet said
 the kyng for my loue take vpon the to Iufte / Soo fyr Dynas
 made hym redy / and anone they encountred to gyders with gre- 20
 te speres / but fire Dynas was ouerthrowen hors and man a
 grete falle / who was wrothe but kynge Marke / Allas he said
 haue I no knyght that wille encountre with yonder knyghte
 Syr said fir Gaheryse for your fake I wille Iufte / So fir Ga-
 herys made hym redy / and whanne he was armed he rode in to 25
 the felde / And whanne fir Vwayne fawe fyr Gaheryses sheld
 he rode to hym and said / fir ye doo not youre parte / For fire the
 fyrft tyme ye were made Knyght of the round table ye fware
 that ye fhold not haue a do with your felaufhip wetyngly
 And par dy fir Gaheryse ye knewe me wel ynou3 by my shelde 30
 & fo do I knowe you by your sheld / and thou3 ye wold breke
 your othe / I wold not breke myn / for there is not one here
 nor ye that fshall thynke I am aferd of yow / but I durft ry-
 ght wel haue adoo with you / and yet we be fister fones / Then-
 ne was fir Gaheryse afhamed / and foo there with alle eury 35
 knyght wente their way / and fir Vwayne rode in to the coun-
 trey / Thenne kyng mark armed hym and tooke his hors and
 his fperer with a fquyer with hym / And thenne he rode afore fir

Vwayne / and fodenly at a gap he ranne vpon hym as he that
 was not ware of hym / and there he smote hym al most thurgh
 the body / and there lefte hym / So within a whyle there cam fir
 Kay / and fonde fir Vwayne / and asked hym how he was
 5 hurte / I wote not said fir Vwayne why nor wherfore / but by
 treason I am sure I gat this hurte / for here came a knyghte fo-
 denly vpon me or that I was ware / and fodenly hurte me /
 ¶ Thenne there was come fyre Andred to feke kynge Marke
 ¶ Thou traytour knyght said fir kay / and I wiste it were
 10 thou that thus traitourly haft hurte this noble knyghte / thow
 sholdest neuer passe my handes / Syre faide fir Andred I dyd
 neuer hurte hym / and that I wylle reporte me to hym self /
 Fy on you fals knyghtes said fyr kay / for ye of Cornewaile
 ar nought worthe / Soo fyr kay made cary fyr Vwayne to the
 15 abbay of the black Croffe / and there he was helyd / And then-
 ne fyr Gaherys took his leue of kynge Mark / But or he de-
 parted he sayd / fyre kynge ye dyd a foule shame vnto you &
 your Courte whan ye bannysshed fir Triftram out of this cou-
 ntre / for ye neded not to haue doubted no knyght and he had
 20 ben here / and soo he departed

¶ Capitulum xxxix

THenne there came fyre kay the Seneschal vnto kynge
 Marke / and there he hadde good chere shewyng oute-
 ward / Now fayre lordes said he wille ye preue ony
 aduerture in the forest of Morris in the whiche I knowe wel
 25 is as hard an aduerture as I knowe ony / Syr said fir kay/
 I wille preue hit / And fir Gaheryse said he wold be auyfed
 For kynge Mark was euer ful of treason / and there with al
 fyr Gaheryse departed and rode his waye / And by the same
 waye that fyre Kay shold ryde / he leyd hym doune to reste
 30 chargyng his squyer to wayte vpon fir kay / and warne me
 whanne he cometh / Soo within a whyle fir kay came rydyng
 that way / and thenne fir Gaheryse tooke his hors and met hym
 and sayd fire kay ye are not wyse to ryde at the request of ky-
 nge Mark for he deleth alle with treason / Thenne said fire kay
 35 I requyre you lete vs preue this aduerture / I shal not fayle

[leaf 201 verso]

you said fir Gaherys / and soo they rode that tyme tyl a lake /
 that was that tyme called the peryllous lake / And there they
 abode vnder the shawe of the wood / ¶ The meane whyle kyng
 Marke within the castel of Tyntagyl auoyded alle his barōs
 & alle other fauf suche as were pryuy with hym / were auoyded 5
 oute of his chamber / And thenne he lete calle his neuewe fir
 Andred / and badde arme hym and horfe hym lyghtely / & by
 that tyme it was mydnyght / And soo kyng Marke was ar-
 med in blak hors and alle / and soo att a pryuy posterne they
 two yffued oute with their varlets with them / and rode tyll 10
 they came to that lake / Thenne fir Kay aspyed them fyrst and
 gat his spere / and profered to Iuste / And kyng Mark rode
 ageynst hym / and smote eche other ful hard / for the mone shone
 as the bryght day / And there at that Iustes fir Kayes hors
 fyllle doune / for his hors was not so bygge as the kynges hors 15
 and fir kayes hors bryfed hym ful fore / Thenne fire Gaherys
 was wrothe that fir kay had a falle / Thenne he cryed knyght
 fytte thou fast in thy fadel / for I wille reuenge my felawe /
 Thenne kyng Marke was aferd of fyr Gaherys / and so with
 euyl wylle kyng Marke rode ageynst hym / and fir Gaherys 20
 gaf hym suche a stroke that he felle down / So thenne forth with
 all fyr Gaheryse ranne vnto fyr Andred and smote hym from
 his hors quyte that his helme smote in the erthe / and nyhe had
 broken his neck / And there with al fyr Gaherys alyghte and
 gate vp fir Kay / And thenne they yode bothe on foote to them / 25
 and badde them yelde them / and telle their names other they
 shold dye / Thenne with grete payne fire Andred spak fyrst &
 said hit is kyng Marke of Cornewaile / therefore be ye ware
 what ye do / and I am fir Andred his cofyn / Fy on you bothe
 said fir Gaheryse for a fals traitour / and fals treason hast thou 30
 wrouzt / and he both vnder the fayned chere that ye made vs / it
 were pyte said fir Gaherys that thou sholdest lyue ony lenger /
 Saue my lyf said kyng Marke and I wil make amendys &
 confyder that I am a kyng anoynted / it were the more shame
 said fir Gaherys to saue thy lyf / thou arte a kyng enoynted 35
 with creme / and therefore thou sholdest holde with alle men
 of worship / And therfor thou arte worthy to dye /
 With that he lashed at kyng Mark without sayeng ony more &

couerd hym with his shield and defended hym as he myghte /
 and thenne sir kay laffhed at sir Andred / and there with all
 kynge Marke yelded hym vnto fyr Gaherys / And thenne he
 kneled adoune / and made his othe vpon the croffe of the fuerd
 5 that neuer whyle he lyued he wold be ageynft arraunt knygh-
 tes / And also he fware to be good Frende vnto sir Triftram /
 yf euer he came in to Cornewaile / By thenne sir Andred was
 on the erthe / and sir Kay wold haue slayne hym / lete be said
 fir Gaherys / flee hym not I pray you / It were pyte said fyre
 10 kay that he shold lyue ony lenger / for this is nygh cofyn vn-
 to fyr Triftram / and euer he hath ben a traytour vnto hym / &
 by hym he was exyled oute of Cornewaile / and therfor I will
 flee hym sayd sir Kay / ye shalle not said Gaherys fythen I
 haue gyuen the kynge his lyf / I pray you yeue hym his lyf /
 15 and there with alle sir Kay lete hym goo / And soo fir Kay
 and fyre Gaherys rode their way vnto Dynas the Seneschal
 for by cause they herd say that he loued wel fir Triftram / Soo
 they repofed them there / and soone after they rode vnto the ro-
 yamme of Logrys / And soo within a lytel whyle they mette
 20 with fyre Launcelot that alweyes had dame Bragwayn with
 hym / to that entente / he wende to haue mette the fooner with sir
 Triftram / and fyr launcelot asked what tydynges in Corne-
 waile / and whether they herd of fir Triftram or not / Syr Kay
 and fir Gaherys anfuerd and said that they herd not of hym
 25 Thenne they told fir launcelot word by word of their aduen-
 ture / Thenne fyr launcelot smyled and said / hard hit is to take
 oute of the fleffhe that is bred in the bone / and soo maade hem
 mery to gyders

¶ Capitulum xl

30 **N**ow leue we of this tale / and speke we of fyr dynas
 that had within the castel a peramour / and she loued
 another knyghte better than hym / And so whanne fyr
 Dynas wente oute on huntyng / she flypped doune by a tuell /
 And took with her two brachets / and soo she yede to the kny-
 ght that she loued / and he her ageyne / ¶ And whanne fir

[leaf 202 verso]

Dynas come home / and myft his peramour and his brachets
 thenne was he the more wrother for his Brachets than for
 the lady / Soo thenne he rode after the knyght that had his per-
 amour and badde hym torne and Iufte / So fyr Dynas fmo-
 te hym doune that with the falle he brake his legge and his ar- 5
 me / And thenne his lady and peramour cryed fire Dynas
 mercy / and faid ſhe wold loue hym better than euer ſhe dyd /
 Nay faid fir Dynas I ſhalle neuer truſte them that ones by-
 trayed me / and therfor as ye haue begonne fo ende / for I wyll
 neuer medle with you / And fo fir Dynas departed and tooke 10
 his brachets with hym / and foo rode to his caſtel / Now wil we
 torne vnto fir launcelot that was ryght heuy that he coude ne-
 uer here no tydynges of fir Triftram / for al this whyle he was
 in pryfon with fir Darras / Palomydes / & Dynadan / Thenne
 dame Brangwayne took her leue to goo in to Cornewaile and 15
 fyr launcelot / fyr kay / & fyr Gaherys rode to ſeke fir Triftram
 in the countrey of Surleufe / Now ſpeketh this tale of fir trif-
 tram and of his two felawes / for euery daye fyre Palomydes
 brauled and ſayd langage ageynſt fyr Triftram I merueyle
 faid fir Dynadan of the fyr Palomydes / and thou haddeſt fyre 20
 Triftram here / thou woldeſt do hym no harme / For and a wolf
 and a ſhepe were to gyders in a pryfon / the wolf wold ſuffre
 the ſheep to be in pees / and wete thou wel faid fire Dynadan
 this fame is fire Triftram at a word / and now maift thou doo
 thy beſt with hym / & lete ſee now yf ye can ſkyfte it with your 25
 handes / thenne was fire Palomydes abaſhed and faid lytyl/
 fyr Palomydes thenne faid fyr Triftram / I haue herd moche
 of your maugre ageynſt me / but I wille not medle with you
 as at this tyme by my wille / by cauſe I drede the lord of this
 place that hath vs in gouernaunce / for and I dredde hym not 30
 more than I doo the / ſoone hit ſhold be ſkyfte / foo they peaced
 them ſelf / Ryght foo came in a damoyfel and faid knyghtes be
 of good chere for ye are ſure of your lyues / and that I herd fay
 my lord fyre Darras / Thenne were they gladde alle thre / For
 dayly they wende they ſhold haue dyed / ¶ Thenne ſoone after 35
 this fyr Triftram fylle ſeke that he wende to haue dyed / thenne
 fyr Dynadan wepte / and foo dyd fire Palomydes vnder them
 bothe making grete forou / ¶ Soo a damoyfel

came in to them and fonde them mornynge / Thenne she wente
vnto sire Darras / and told hym how that myghty knyghte
that bare the black shelde was lykely to dye / That shalle not
be sayd sire Darras / for god defende whanne Knyghtes come
5 to me for focour that I shold suffre hem to dye within my pry-
son / Therfor said sire Darras to the damoyfel / fetche that knyzt
and his felawes afore me / And thenne anone sire Darras sa-
we sire Triftram brought afore hym / he said sire Knyghte me
repenteth of thy sekeneffe / for thou arte called a ful noble kn-
10 yght / and soo hit semeth by the / And wete ye wel it shall ne-
uer be said that sire Darras shalle destroye suche a noble kny-
ght as thou arte in pryson / how be hit / that thou hast slayn / iij
of my fones / where by I was gretely agreued / But now shalt
thou goo and thy felawes / and youre harneis & horses haue
15 ben fayre and clene kepte / and ye shall goo where hit lyketh
you vpon this couenaunt / that thou Knyght wilt promyse me
to be good frende to my fones two that ben now on lyue / and
also that thou telle me thy name / Syr said he as for me my na-
me is sire Triftram de Lyones / and in Cornewaile was I born
20 and neuwe I am vnto Kynge Marke / And as for the deth
of your fones I myght not doo with alle / For and they had
ben the next kyn þ^r I haue / I myzt haue done none other wyse/
And yf I had slayne hem by treason or trechery I hadde ben
worthy to haue dyed / Alle this I confyder said sire Darras/
25 that alle that ye dyd was by force of knyghthode / and that
was the cause I wold not putte you to deth / But fythe ye be
sire Triftram the good knyght I pray you hertely to be my good
frend and to my fones / Syr said sire Triftram I promyse yow
by the feithe of my body euer whyle I lyue I wille do yow fer-
30 uyse / for ye haue done to vs but as a naturel Knyghte ought
to doo / Thenne sire Triftram repofed hym there tyl that he was
amended of his sekeneffe / And whanne he was bygge and
stronge / they took their leue / and euery knyght took their hor-
ses and soo departed and rode to gyders tyl they came to a
35 crosse way / Now felawes said sire Triftram here wylle we de-
parte in sondry wayes / and by cause sire Dynadan hadde the
fyrst aduenture of hym I wille begynne

¶ Capitulum xlii

Soo as fir Dynadan rode by a welle / he fond a lady
 makyng grete dole / what eyleth you said fir Dynadan
 Syre knyght said the lady I am the wofullest lady
 of the world / for within these fyue dayes / here came a knyght
 called fir Breuse faunce pyte / and he slewe myn owne broder / 5
 And euer fyns he hath kepte me at his owne will / and of al
 men in the world I hate hym moost / And therfor I requyre
 you of knyghthode to auenge me / for he wille not tary but be he-
 re anone / Lete hym come said fire Dynadan / And by cause of
 honour of alle wymmen I wylle doo my parte / With this cam 10
 fyr Breuse / And whan he sawe a Knyght with his lady / he
 was wood wrothe / And thenne he said fir Knyght kepe the
 from me / soo they hurled to gyder as thonder / and eyther smote
 other passyng fore / But fyre Dynadan putte hym thurgh
 the sholder a greuouse wounde / and or euer fir Dynadan my- 15
 ght torne hym fyr Breuse was gone and fledde / Thenne the
 lady prayd hym to bryng her to a Castel there befyde but fou-
 ur myle thens / and soo fir Dynadan brought her there / & she
 was welcome / for the lord of that castel was her vnkel / and
 soo fyre Dynadan rode his way vpon his aduenture / Now tor- 20
 ne we this tale vnto fyre Triftram that by aduenture he cam to
 a castel to aske lodgyng / wherin was quene Morgan le fay / &
 soo whan fire Triftram was lete into that castel / he had good
 chere alle that nyght / And vpon the morne whan he wold ha-
 ue departed / the Quene said / wete ye wel ye shall not departe 25
 lyghtely / for ye are here as a prysoner / Ihesu defende said fir
 Triftram / for I was but late a prysoner / Fayr knyght sayd
 the quene ye shall abyde with me tyl that I wete what ye ar
 and from whens ye come / And euer the Quene wold set fir
 Triftram on her owne syde / and her peramour on the other fy- 30
 de / And euer Quene Morgan wold beholde fir Triftram / &
 ther at the knyght was Ialous / and was in wille sodenly to
 haue ronne vpon fir Triftram with a sward / but he lefte it for
 shame / theñe the quene said to fir Triftram telle me thy name &

I shalle suffre you to departe whan ye will / vpon that couena-
 unt I telle you my name is fyr Triftram de lyones / A fayd
 Morgan le fay / and I had wyft that thou sholdest not haue
 departed soo foone as thou shalt / But fythen I haue maade a
 5 promyse / I wille holde hyt / with that thou wilt promyse me to
 bere vpon the a shelde that I shall delyuer the / vnto the castel
 of the hard roche where kynge Arthur had cryed a grete
 turnement / and there I pray you that ye wille be / and to doo
 for me as moche dedes of armes as ye maye doo / For att the
 10 Castel of maydens fyr Triftram ye dyd merueillous dedes of
 armes as euer I herd knyght doo / Madame said fyr Triftram
 lete me see the shelde that I shalle bere / Thenne the shelde was
 brought forth / and the feld was guldysfh with a kynge and
 a quene therin paynted / and a knyght standynge aboute them
 15 vpon the kynges hede / and the other vpon the quenes /
 Madame said fir Triftram this is a fayre shelde and a myzty
 But what fygnesyeth this kynge and this quene / and that
 knyght standynge vp bothe their hedes / I shalle telle you said
 Morgan le fay hit fygnesyeth kynge Arthur and quene gue-
 20 neuer and a knyght that holdeth them both in bondage and in
 feruage / who is that knyght said fyre Triftram / that shalle ye
 not wete as at this tyme / said the quene / but as the Frensfhe
 book saith Quene Morgan le fay loued fir launcelot best / and euer
 she defyred hym / and he wold neuer loue her / nor doo no thyng
 25 at her request / and therefore she held many Knyghtes to gyder /
 for to haue taken hym by strengthe / And by cause she demed
 that fyr Launcelot loued Quene Gueneuer peramour / and
 she hym ageyne / therfore Quene Morgan le fay ordeyned that
 sheld to put fir launcelot to a rebuke to that entent that kyng
 30 Arthur myght vnderstande the loue bitwene them / Thenne fir
 Triftram took that sheld and promysed her to bere hit atte tur-
 nement at the castel of the hard roche / But fir Triftram knewe
 not that that sheld was ordeyned ageynst fyr launcelot / but
 afterward he knewe hit

¶ Capitulum xliij

Oo thenne fyre Triftram took his leue of the Quene /
 and took the sheld with hym / Thenne came the knyghte
 that helde Quene Morgan le fay / his name was fyre
 Hymefon / and he made hym redy to folowe fyre Triftram / fayr
 frende said Morgan le fay ryde not after that knyght / for ye shalle 5
 not wyne no worship of hym / Fy on hym coward faide fyre
 Hemyfon / for I wyft neuer good knyghte come oute of Cor-
 newaile / but yf hit were fyr Triftram de Lyones / what & that
 be he said she / Nay nay said he / he is with la beale Ifoud and
 this is but a daffyssh knyght / Allas my fair frende ye shalle 10
 fynde hym the best knyght that euer ye mette with alle / For I
 knowe hym better than ye doo / for your fake said fir Hemyfon
 I shalle slee hym / A fayr frende said the Quene me repenteth
 that ye wylle folowe that knyght / for I fere me fore of youre
 ageyne comynge / with this / this knyghte rode his waye woode 15
 wrothe / and he rode after fyr Triftram as fast as he hadde ben
 chaced with knyghtes / Whanne fir Triftram herd a knyghte
 come after hym soo fast / he retorned aboute / and sawe a knyzt
 comynge ageynst hym / And whanne he came nyghe to fir Trif-
 tram / he cryed on hyghe fyr knyght kepe the from me / Thenne 20
 they raffhed to gyders as hit had ben thonder / and fir Hemy-
 fon bryfed his spere vpon fyr Triftram / but his harneis was
 soo good that he myght not hurte hym / And fyre Tryfram
 smote hym harder and bare hym thorou the body / and fylle
 ouer his hors croupe / Thenne fyre Triftram torned to haue do- 25
 ne more with his swerd / but he sawe soo moche blood go from
 hym that hym semed he was lykely to deye / And so he depar-
 ted from hym / and came to a fayre manoyre to an old knyzt
 and there fyre Triftram lodged

¶ Now leue to speke of fir Triftram / and speke we of the 30
 knyght that was wounded to the dethe / thenne his varlet aly-
 ght and took of his helme / and thēne he asked his lord whether
 there were ony lyf in hym / there is in me lyf faide the knyghte
 but hit is but lytyl / and therefore lepe thou vp behynde me /
 whan thou hast holpen me vp / and holde me fast that I falle 35
 not / and brynge me to Quene Morgan le fay / for depe drauz-
 tes of dethe drawn to my herte that I may not lyue / for I
 wold fayne speke with her or I dyed / For els my foule wyll

be in grete perylle and I dye / for with grete payne his varlet
 brought hym to the Castell / and there fyr Hemyfon fylle doun
 dede / whanne Morgan le fay sawe hym dede / she made grete fo-
 rou oute of reafon / And thenne she lete despoyle hym vnto his
 5 shyrte / and soo she lete hym putte in to a tombe / And aboute
 the tombe she lete wryte / Here lyeth fyr Hemyfon slayne by the
 handes of sire Triftram de lyones / ¶ Now torne we vnto fyre
 Triftram that asked the knyght his hooft yf he sawe late ony
 knyghtes aduenturous / Sir he said the last nyght here lodged
 10 with me Ector de marys and a damoyfel with hym / and that
 damoyfel told me that he was one of the best knyghtes of the
 world / that is not soo said sir Triftram / for I knowe four bet-
 ter knyghtes of his owne blood / and the fyrst is fyr launce-
 lot du lake / calle hym the best knyght / and sir Bors de ganys
 15 Syr Bleoberys / fyr Blamor de ganys and fyr Gaheris / nay
 said his hooft / sir Gawayne is a better knyght than he / that is
 not soo said fyr Triftram / for I haue mette with hem bothe / &
 I felte fyr Gaheris for the better knyght and sir Lamorak I
 calle hym as good as ony of them / excepte sir launcelot / Why
 20 name ye not sir Triftram said his hooft / for I accompte hym
 as good as ony of them / I knowe not sire Triftram said trif-
 tram / thus they talked and bourded as longe as them lyste /
 and thenne wente to reste / And on the morne sir Triftram de-
 parted and took his leue of his hooft / and rode toward the
 25 roche deure / and anone adventure had sire Triftram but that / &
 soo he rested not tyl he came to the castel where he sawe fyue C
 tentys

¶ Capitulum xliiiij

THenne the kynge of Scottes and the kyng of Irland
 helde ageynst kynge Arthurs knyghtes / and there be-
 30 ganne a grete medle / So came in fyr Triftram and dyd mer-
 ueillous dedes of armes / for there he smote doune many kny3-
 tes / And euer he was afore kynge Arthur with that shelde /
 And whanne kynge Arthur sawe that shelde / he meruyllid
 gretely in what entente hit was made / but Quene Gueneuer
 35 demed as it was wherfor she was heuy / Thēne was ther a da-

moyfel of Quene Morgan in a chamber by kynge Arthur /
 And whan she herd kynge Arthur speke of that shelde / thēne
 she spak openly vnto kynge Arthur / fyre kynge wete ye well
 this sheld was ordeyned for you to warne you of your sha-
 me and dishonour / and that longeth to you and your Quene / 5
 And thenne anone that damoyfel pyked her away pryuely /
 that no man wyft where she was become / Thenne was kynge
 Arthur sadde and wrothe and asked from whens came that
 damoyfel / there was not one that knewe her / nor wyfte where
 she was become / Thenne Quene Gueneuer called to her fir Ec- 10
 tor de marys / and there she made her complaynte to hym / and
 said I wote wel this sheld was made by Morgan le fay / in
 despyte of me and fir Launcelot / wherfore I drede me fore
 lest I shold be destroyed / And euer the kynge bihelde fyre
 Triftram that dyd soo merueillous dedes of armes that he wō- 15
 dred fore what knyght he myght be / and wel he wyft hit was
 not fyr launcelot / And hit was told hym that fyr Triftram
 was in petyte Bretayne with Ifoud la blanche maynys /
 for he demyd and he had ben in the realme of Logrys / fyr la-
 uncelot or fomme of his felawes that were in the quest of fyr 20
 Triftram that they shold haue fond hym or that tyme / So ky-
 ng Arthur had merueylle what knyght he myghte be / And
 euer fyr Arthurs eye was on that shelde / Alle that aspyed the
 Quene / and that made her fore aferd / Thenne euer fyr Triftram
 smote doune knyghtes wonderly to beholde what vpon the ry- 25
 ght hand and vpon the lyfte hand that vnnethe no knyzt my-
 ght withstande hym / And the kyng of Scottes and the kyng
 of Irland beganne to withdrawe hem / Whanne Arthur aspy-
 ed that / he thought that that Knyght with the straunge sheld
 shold not escape hym / Thenne he called vnto hym fyre Vwayn 30
 la blanche maynys / and bad hym arme hym and make hym
 redy / Soo anone kynge Arthur and fir Vwayne dressid them
 bifore fir Triftram and requyred hym to telle hem where he had
 that shelde / Syr he said I had it of Quene Morgan le fay fif-
 ter vnto kynge Arthur 35

¶ Soo here endeth this history of this book / for it is the firste
 book of sire Triftram de lyones / and the second book of sir tris-
 tram foloweth

¶ Here begynneth the second book of sire Triftram / How fyre Triftram smote doune kyng Arthur & sir Vwayne / by cause he wold not telle hem wherfor that shelde was made / But to say the sothe sire Triftram coude not telle the cause / for he knewe it not

¶ The tenth book

¶ Capitulum primum

S Nd yf so be ye can descryue what ye bere / ye ar worthy to bere the armes / As for that said syr Triftram I wille anfuere you / this sheld was yeuen me / not desyred / of quene Morgan le fay
 5 And as for me I can not descryue these armes for it is no poynt of my charge / and yet I truste to god to bere hem with worship / Truly sayd kyng Arthur ye oughte not to bere none armes / but yf ye wist what ye bare / But I pray you telle me youre name / to what entente said fyre Triftram /
 10 for I wold wete said Arthur / Syre ye shalle not wete as at this tyme / thenne shalle ye and I doo bataille to gyders sayd Kyng Arthur / why said fyre Triftram wylle ye doo bataille with me but yf I telle you my name / and that lytyl nedeth you and ye were a man of worshyp / for ye haue sene me thys
 15 day haue had grete traueylle / And therefore ye are a vylaynous knyght to aske bataille of me confyderynge my grete traueylle / how be hit I wyl not fayle you / and haue ye no doute that I feare not you / though ye thynke ye haue me atte a grete auauntage / yet shalle I ryght wel endure you / And
 20 there with all kyng Arthur dressid his shelde and his spere and fyre Triftram ageynst hym / and they came soo egerly to gyders / And there kyng Arthur brake his spere all to pyeces vpon syr Triftrams shelde / But syr Triftram hitte Arthur ageyne that hors and man felle to the erthe / And there was
 25 kyng Arthur wounded on the lyfte syde a grete wounde and a peryllous / Thenne whanne syr Vwayne sawe his lord Arthur lye on the ground fore wounded he was passyng heuy / And thenne he dressid his shelde and his spere / and cryed a-

lowde vnto fyr Triftram and faid knyght defende the / So they
 came to gyder as thonder / and fyr Vwayne bryfed his spere /
 alle to pyeces vpon fyre Triftrams shelde / and fyre Triftram
 smote hym harder and forer with fuche a myzt that he bare hym
 clene oute of his fadel to the erthe / with that fyr Triftram tor- 5
 ned aboute and faid Fair knyghtes / I had no nede to Iuste
 with you / for I haue had ynough to doo this daye / Thenne a-
 rofe Arthur / and wente to fyr Vwayn and faid to fire Trif-
 tram we haue as we haue deferued / For thurgh our orgulyte
 we demaunded bataille of you / and yet we knewe not youre 10
 name / Neuertheles by feynt croffe faid fyre Vwayne he is a
 stronge knyght at myn aduyfe as ony is now lyuyng /
 Thenne fir Triftram departed / and in euery place he asked &
 demaunded after fir Launcelot / but in no place he coude not he-
 re of hym whether he were dede or on lyue / wherfor fir triftram 15
 made grete dole and forowe / Soo fyr Triftram rode by a forest
 and theñe was he ware of a fayre toure by a mareyfe on that
 one fyde / and on that other fyde a fayr medowe / And there
 he sawe ten knyghtes fyghtyng to gyder / And euer the nere
 he came / he sawe how ther was but one knyght dyd bataille 20
 ageynst nyne knyghtes / and that one dyd foo merueyllously
 that fyre Triftram had grete wonder that euer one knyzt my-
 ght doo foo grete dedes of armes / and thenne within a lytell
 whyle he had slayne half their horses / and vnhorfed them /
 and their horses ranne in the feldes and foreste / Thenne fyre 25
 Triftram had foo grete pyte of that one knyght that endured
 foo grete payne / and euer he thought hit shold be fyr palomy-
 des by his shelde / and foo he rode vnto the knyghtes and cry-
 ed vnto them / and bad them seace of their bataille / for they did
 them self grete shame foo many knyghtes to fyghte with one / 30
 Thenne anfuerd the maister of tho knyghtes / his name was
 called Breufe saunce pyte that was atte that tyme the moofte
 meschyeuouft knyght lyuyng / and faid thus / fyr knyzt what
 haue ye ado with vs to medle / And therfor and ye be wyfe/
 departe on your way as ye cam / for this knyghte shalle not ef- 35
 cape vs / that were pyte faid fyr Triftram that foo good a kn-
 yght as he is shold be slayne foo cowardly / And therefore I
 warne you I will focoure hym with all my puyssaunce

¶ Capitulum secundum

SO fyre Triftram alyghte of his hors by cause they we-
 re on foote that they shold not flee his hors / And thē-
 ne dresseid his sheld with his sward in his hand / and he smote
 on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand passyng fore that
 5 wel nygh at euery stroke he strake doun a knyght / And when
 they aspyed his strokes / they fled all with Breuse fauce pyte
 vnto the toure / & sir Triftram folowed fast after with his sward
 in his hand / but they escaped in to the toure / and shytte sire
 Triftram withoute the gate / ¶ And whanne sire Triftram
 10 sawe this / he returned abak vnto syr Palomydes / and fond hym
 syttyng vnder a tree fore wounded / A faire knyght saide fyre
 Triftram wel be ye fonde / Gramercy saide sir palomydes of yo-
 ur grete goodenes / for ye haue rescowed me of my lyf and sa-
 ued me from my dethe / what is your name saide sir Triftram /
 15 he saide my name is syr Palomydes / O Ihesu saide syr Triftra
 thou hast a fayre grace of me this daye / that I shold rescowe
 the / and thou arte the man in the world that I mooste hate /
 but now make the redy / for I will doo bataille with the / what
 is your name sayd palomydes / my name is sir Triftram your
 20 mortal enemy / hit may be soo saide sir palomydes / But ye ha-
 ue done ouer moche for me this day that I shold fyghte with
 you / for in as moche as ye haue saued my lyf / hit wille be no
 worship for you to haue adoo with me / for ye are fressh and I
 am wounded fore / And therfor and ye wille nedes haue ado
 25 with me / Assigne me a day and thenne I shal mete with you
 withoute fayle / ye saye wel saide sir Triftram / Now I assigne
 you to mete me in the medowe by the ryuer of Camelot / where
 Merlyon sette the peron / soo they were agreed / Thenne sir Trif-
 tram asked syr Palomydes why the ten knyghtes dyd bataill
 30 with hym / for this cause saide sir palomydes / as I rode vp myn
 aduentures in a forest here beyde / I aspyed where laye a dede
 Knyght / and a lady wepyng beyde hym / And whanne I
 sawe her makyng suche dole / I asked her who flewe her lorde
 ¶ Syre she saide the falsest knyght of the world now lyuyng
 35 and he is the moost vylayne that euer man herd speke of /

and his name is sir Breufe faunce pyte / thenne for pyte I made the damoyfel to lepe on her palfroy / and I promysed her to be her waraunt / and to helpe her to entyere her lord / And fodenly as I came rydyng by this toure / there came oute fyr Breufe faunce pyte / and fodenly he strake me from my hors / 5
 And thenne or I myghte recouer my hors / this sir Breufe flewe the damoyfel / and soo I took my hors ageyne / and I was fore ashamed / and so beganne the medle betwixe vs / and this is is the cause wherfore we dyd this bataille / Well said sir triftram now I vnderstande the maner of your bataiulle / but in 10
 ony wyfe haue remembraunce of your promyse that ye haue made with me to doo bataille with me this day fourtenyght / I shal not fayle you said sir Palomydes / wel said sir Triftram as at this tyme I wille not fayle you tyl that ye be oute of the daunger of your enemyes / So they mounted vpon theyr horses / & 15
 rode to gyders vnto that foreste / and there they fond a fayre welle / with clere water burbelynge / fayr sir said sir Triftram to drynke of that water haue I courage / and thenne they alyght of their horses / And thenne were they ware by them wher 20
 stood a grete hors teyed to a tree / and euer he neyhed

And thenne were they ware of a fayr knyght armed vnder a tree lackyng no pyece of harneis faue his helme lay vnder his heede / By the good lord said sir Triftram yonder lyeth a wel farynge knyght / what is best to doo / Awake hym said sir palomydes / so sir Triftram awaked hym with the but of his speere / 25
 And soo the knyght arofe vp hastely and putte his helme vpon his hede / and gat a grete spere in his hand / and without ony moo wordes he hurled vnto sir Triftram / and smote hym clene from his sadel to the erthe / and hurte hym on the lyfte syde that sir Triftram lay in grete perylle / Thenne he wallopped 30
 ferther / and fette his cours / and came hurlyng vpon sir palomydes / and there he strake hym a parte thorou the body that he fyllle from his hors to the erthe / ¶ And thenne this straunge knyght lefte them there / and took his way thurgh the foreste / With this sir Palomydes and sire Triftram were on foote and 35
 gat their horses ageyn / and eyther asked counceylle of other / what was best to done / By my hede said sir Triftram I wyll folowe this strong knyght that thus hath shamed vs / ¶ Well

said fir Palomydes / & I wylle repose me here by with a frend
 of myn / Beware said fire Triftram vnto Palomydes that ye
 fayle not that day ye haue fet with me to do bataill / for as
 I deme ye wille not hold your day / for I am moche bygger
 5 than ye / As for that said fir Palomydes / be hit as hit be maye
 for I feare you not / For and I be not feke nor pryfoner I wil
 not fayle you / But I haue caufe to haue moche more doubte of you
 that ye wille not mete with me / for ye ryde after yonder strong
 knyght / And yf ye mete with hym / hit is an hard aduventure
 10 and euer ye escape his handes / Ryght soo fir Triftram and fir
 Palomydes departed / and eyther took their wayes dyuerfe

¶ Capitulum iij

ANd so fyre Triftram rode longe after this stronge kn-
 yght / And at the lafte he sawe where lay a lady ouer-
 thwarte a dede knyght / Faire lady said fir Triftram who hath
 15 slayne your lord / Syr she said here came a knyght rydyng as
 my lord and I rested vs here / and asked hym of whens he
 was / and my lord said of Arthurs courte / therefore said the
 stronge knyght I wille Iuste with the / for I hate alle these
 that ben of Arthurs Courte / And my lord that lyeth here dede
 20 amounted vpon his hors / and the stronge knyght and my
 lord encountred to gyder / and there he smote my lord thorough
 oute with his spere / and thus he hath broughte me in grete
 woo and dammage / That me repenteth said fire Triftram of
 your grete anger / and hit please you / telle me your husbandes
 25 name / fyr said she his name was Galardoun that wold ha-
 ue preued a good knyghte / Soo departed fir Triftram from
 that dolorous lady and hadde moche euylle lodgyng / Thenne
 on the thyrdd day fyr Triftram mette with fyr Gawayne and
 with fir Bleoberys in a forest at a lodge and eyther were so-
 30 re wounded / Thenne fyre Triftram asked fyr Gawayne and
 fyr Bleoberys yf they met with fuche a Knyghte with fuche a
 cognoyssaunce with a keurd shelde / Faire fyr said these kn-
 yghtes fuche a knyght met with vs to oure grete dommage / &
 fyrst he smote doune my felawe fyre Bleoberys & fore wouëded

hym / by cause he badde me I shold not haue ado with hym
 For why he was ouer stronge for me / That strong knyght to-
 ke his wordes at scorne and said he said it for mockery / And
 thenne they rode to gyders / and soo he hurte my felawe / And
 whan he had done so / I myght not for shame / but I must Iuste 5
 with hym / And at the fyrst course he smote me doune / and my
 hors to the erthe / And there he had al moost flayne me / and
 from vs he took his hors / and departed / and in an euyll tyme
 we mette with hym / Faire knyghtes said sir Triftram soo he
 mette with me / and with another knyght that hyght Palomy- 10
 des / and he smote vs bothe doune with one spere / and hurt vs
 ryght fore / By my feythe said sir Gawayne by my counceil ye
 shalle lete hym passe / and seke hym no ferther / for at the nexte
 feest of the round table vpon payne of my hede ye shalle fynde
 hym there / By my feythe said sir Triftram I shall neuer reste 15
 tyl that I fynde hym / And thenne sir Gawayne asked hym
 his name / thenne he said my name is sir Triftram / and so ey-
 ther told other their names / and thenne departed fyr Triftram /
 and rode his way / And by fortune in a medowe sire Triftram
 mette with sir Kay the feneschal and sir Dynadan / What ty- 20
 dynges with you said sir Triftram with you Knyghtes / Not
 good said these knyghtes / why soo said sir Triftram I praye
 you telle me / for I ryde to seke a knyght / what cognoyssaunce
 bereth he said sir Kay / He bereth said sir Triftram a couerd
 sheld clofe with clothe / By my hede said sir Kay that is the 25
 same Knyght that mette with vs / for this nyght we were lod-
 ged within a wydowes hous / and there was that knyght lod-
 ged / And whanne he wyft we were of Arthurs court / he spak
 grete vylonye by the kyng / and specially by the Quene Gue-
 neuer / ¶ And thenne on the morne was waged bataille 30
 with hym for that cause / And at the fyrst recoütre said sir kay
 he smote me doune from my hors / and hurte me passynge fore /
 And whanne my felawe fyr Dynadan fawe me smyten doune
 and hurte / he wold not reuenge me / but fledde from me / And
 thus is he departed / And thenne sir Triftram asked them theyr 35
 names / and soo eyther told other their names / And soo fyre
 Triftram departed from fyr kay / and from sir Dynadan / and
 so he past thurgh a grete forest in to a playne tyl he was ware

of a pryory / and there he repofed hym with a good man fyxe dayes

¶ Capitulum quartum

ANd thenne he fente his man that hyght Gouvernaile / & commaunded hym to goo to a Cyte there by to fetch
 5 hym newe harneis / for hit was long tyme afore that / that fyre Triftram had ben refrefshed / his harneis was bryfed & broken
 And whanne Gouvernaile his feruaunt was come with his apparail / he toke his leue at the wydowe / and mounted vpon his hors / and rode his way erly on the morne / And by fodeyn ad-
 10 uenture fyr Triftram mette with fir Sagramore le defyrus / & with fyre Dodynas le faueage / And thefe two knyghtes mette with fyre Triftram and quefnyoned with hym / and asked hym yf he wold Iufte with hem / Faire knyghtes faid fir Triftram with a good wylle I wold Iufte with you / But I haue
 15 promyfed at a day fette nere hand to do bataille with a ftrong knyght / And therefore I am lothe to haue adoo with you / for and hit myffortuned me here to be hurte I fhold not be able to doo my bataille / whiche I promyfed / As for that faid Sagramor maulgre your hede ye fhalle Iufte with vs / or ye paffe
 20 from vs / well faid fyr Triftram / yf ye enforce me therto I muft doo what I may / And thenne they drefsid their sheldes / and came rennyng to gyder with grete yre / But thurgh fyr Triftrams grete force he ftrake fyr Sagramor from his hors / Thenne he hurled his hors ferther / and faid to fir Dodynas / knygte
 25 make the redy / and foo thorou fyne force fyre Triftram ftrake Dodynas from his hors / And whanne he fawe hem lye on the erthe / he took his brydel / and rode forth on his way and his man Gouvernaile with hym / Anone as fir Triftram was paffe fyr Sagramore and fir Dodynas gate ageyne their horfes / &
 30 mounted vp lyghtely and folowed after fir Triftram / And whan fyre Triftram fawe them come foo faft after hym / he retorned with his hors to them / and asked them what they wold Hit is not longe ago fythen I fmote you to the erthe at your owne request / and defyre / I wold haue ryden by you / but ye
 35 wold not fuffre me / and now me femeth ye wold doo more bataille with me / That is trouthe faid fire Sagramore and fyre

Dodynas / for we wille be reuengyd of the despyte ye haue done to vs / Faire knyghtes said fir Triftram that shall lytyl nedde you / for all that I dyd to you / ye caused hit / wherfore I requyre you of your knyghthode leue me as at this tyme / for I am fure and I doo bataille with you I shalle not escape with
 5 oute grete hurtes / and as I suppose ye shalle not escape alle lotles / And this is the cause why I am soo loth to haue ado with you / For I must fyghte within these thre dayes with a good knyght and as valyaunt as ony is now lyuyng / and yf I be hurte I shalle not be able to doo bataille with hym /
 10 What Knyght is that said fir Sagramor that ye shalle fyghte with alle / Syrs said he it is a good knyght called fir Palomydes / By my hede said fir Sagramor and fire Dodynas ye haue cause to drede hym / for ye shall fynde hym a passyng good knyght / and a valyaunt / And by cause ye shalle haue ado
 15 with hym / we wille forbere you as at this tyme / and els ye shold not escape vs lyghtely / But fayr knyght said fir Sagramour telle vs your name / Syr said he my name is fir Triftram de lyones / A said Sagramor and fir Dodynas well be ye fonde / for moche worship haue we herd of you / And thenne ey-
 20 ther took leue of other / and departed on their way /

¶ Capitulum v

THenne departed fire Triftram and rode streyghte vnto Camelot to the Peron that Merlyn had made to fore where fire Lancyor that was the Kynges sone of Irland was slayne by the handes of Balyn / and in that same place was
 25 a fayr lady Columbe slayn that was loue vnto fir Lanceor for after he was dede she took his fuerd and threst hit thorou her body / And by the crafte of Merlyn he made to entiere this knyght Lanceor and his lady Columbe vnder one stone / And at that tyme Merlyon profecyed / that in that same place shold
 30 fyghte two the best knyghtes that euer were in Arthurs dayes / and the best louers / ¶ Soo whanne fyre Triftram came to the tombe where lancyor and his lady were buryed / he

looked aboute hym after sir Palomydes / Thenne was he ware of
 a femely knyght came rydyng ageynst hym all in whyte / with
 a couerd shelde / Whanne he came nyghe sir Triftram he said
 on hyghe ye be welcome fyr Knyght / and wel and truly ha-
 5 ue ye hold your promyse / And thenne they dresfid their shel-
 des and speres / and came to gyders with alle their myghtes
 of their horses / and they met so fyerfly that bothe their horses
 and Knyghtes fylle to the erthe / And as fast as they myzte
 auoyded theyre horses / and putte their sheldes afore them / and
 10 they strake to gyders with bryght swardes as men that were of
 myght / and eyther wouDED other wonderly fore that the blood
 ranne out vpon the grasse / And thus they fought the space of
 four houres / that neuer one wold speke to other one word / &
 of their harneis they had hewen of many pecys / O lord Ihesu
 15 said Gouvernaile I merueyle gretely of the strokes my maif-
 ter hath yeuen to your mayster / By my hede said sir Laūcelots
 feruaunt your maifster hath not yeuen so many but your maif-
 ter hath receyued as many or more / O Ihesu faide Gouvernaile
 it is to moche for sir palomydes to suffre or sir Launcelot / And
 20 yet pyte it were that eyther of these good knyghtes shold def-
 troye others blood / Soo they stode and wepte bothe / and made
 grete dole / whan they sawe the bryghte swardes ouer couerd
 with blood of their bodyes / Thenne at the last spake fyr laun-
 celot and said knyght thou fyghtest wonderly wel / as euer I
 25 sawe knyght / therfor and hit please you telle me your name /
 Syr faide fyre Triftram that is me lothe to telle ony man my
 name / Truly said sir launcelot and I were requyred I was
 neuer loth to telle my name / Hit is wel said said sir Triftram
 thenne I requyre you to telle me your name / fayr knyghte he
 30 said my name is sir launcelot du lake / Allas said fyre Trif-
 tram what haue I done / for ye are the man in the world that I
 loue best / Faire knyght said sir Launcelot telle me your name
 Truly said he my name is sir Triftram de lyones / O Ihesu fa-
 id sir launcelot what aduenture is befall me / And there with
 35 fyr launcelot kneled doune and yelded hym vp his fuerd
 And there with alle sir Triftram kneled adoune / and yelded
 hym vp his fuerd / And soo eyther gaf other the degree / And
 thenne they bothe forth with all went to the stone / and set them

doune vpon hit / and toke of their helmes to kele them / and
 eyther kyft other an honderd tymes / And thenne anone after
 they took of their helmes and rode to Camelot / and there they
 mette with fir Gawayne and with fir Gaherys that had made
 promyse to Arthur neuer to come ageyne to the court tyl they 5
 had brought fyr Triftram with them

¶ Capítulum sextum

Retorne ageyne said fir launcelot for your queft is do-
 ne / for I haue mette with fir Triftram / loo here is his
 owne perfone / Thenne was fyr Gawayne gladde / and said to
 fire Triftram ye are welcome / for now haue ye eafyd me grete- 10
 ly of my labour / For what caufe said fir Gawayne came ye
 in to this courte / Fair fir said fir Triftram I came in to thys
 cuntrye / by caufe of fyr Palomydes / for he and I had affyg-
 ned at this day to haue done bataille to gyders at the Peroun
 And I merueyle I here not of hym / And thus by aduentur 15
 my lord fyre Laūcelot and I mette to gyders / With this came
 Kynge Arthur / And whan he wyft that there was fir Trif-
 tram / thenne he ranne vnto hym and toke hym by the hand /
 And faide fire Triftram ye are as welcome as ony Knyghte /
 that euer came to this Courte / And whanne the Kynge had 20
 herd how fire Launcelot and he had foughten / and eyther had
 wounded other wonderly fore / thenne the Kynge maade grete
 dole / Thenne fir Triftram told the Kynge how he came thydder
 for to haue had adoo with fire Palomydes / And thenne he told
 the kynge how he had rescowed hym from the nyne knyghtes 25
 and Breufe faunce pyte / And how he fond a Knyght lyeng
 by a well / and that Knyght fmote doune fir Palomydes and
 me / but his fheld was couerd with a clothe / Soo fir Palomy-
 des lefte me / and I folowed after that Knyghte / and in ma-
 ny places I fonde where he had flayne Knyghtes / and foriuf- 30
 ted many / By my hede said fir Gawayne that fame Knyghte
 fmote me down and fire Bleoberys and hurte vs fore both / he
 with the couerd fhelde / A fayd fir Kay that Knyght fmote
 me adoune & hurte me paffynge fore / & fayne wolde I haue
 knowen hym but I myzt not / Ihefu mercy said Arthur what 35

knyghte was that with the couerd shelde / I knowe not faide
 fir Triftram / and so faid they all / now faid kyng Arthur then-
 ne wote I for it is fir laūcelot / thēne they al loked vpon fir laū-
 celot & faid ye haue begyled vs with your couerd shelde / Hit is
 5 not the fyrst tyme faid Arthur he hath done foo / My lord fayd
 fir Launcelot truly wete ye wel I was the fame knyght that
 bare the couerd shelde / And by cause I wold not be knowen
 that I was of your Courte I faid no worship of your hows
 That is trouthe faid fir Gawayne / fir kay / and fir Bleoberys
 10 Thenne kyng Arthur took fir Triftram by the hand / & wente
 to the table round / Thenne came Quene Gueneuer and many
 ladyes with her / and alle tho ladyes sayden at one voyce / wel-
 come fir Triftram / welcome faid the damoyfels / welcome fayd
 knyghtes / welcome faid Arthur for one of the best knyghtes /
 15 and the gentylst of the world / and the man of moofte wor-
 ship / for of alle maner of huntyng thou bereft the pryce / and
 of alle mesures of blowyng thou arte the begynnyng / and
 of alle the termes of huntyng and haukyng ye are the begyn-
 ner / of all Instrumentes of musyke ye ar the best / therfor gen-
 20 tyl knyght faid Arthur ye are welcome to this courte / And
 also I pray you faid Arthur graunte me a bone / it shall be at
 your commaundement faid Triftram / wel faid Arthur I will
 desyre of you that ye wille abyde in my courte / Syr faide fyre
 Triftram therto is me lothe / for I haue adoo in many countre-
 25 yes / Not foo faid Arthur / ye haue promyfed hit me / ye maye
 not fay nay / Syr faid fir Triftram I wille as ye wille / Then-
 ne wente Arthur vnto the seges about the round table / and lo-
 ked in euery fyege / the whiche were voyde that lacked knygh-
 tes / And thenne the kyng sawe in the siege of Marhaus let-
 30 ters that saiden / this is the fyege of the noble knyght fir Trif-
 tram / And thenne Arthur made fir Triftram knyght of the ta-
 ble round with grete nobley and grete feest as myghte be tho-
 ught / for fir marhaus was slayne by the handes of fire
 Triftram in an yland / and that was wel knowen at that ty-
 35 me in the courte of Arthur / for this marhaus was a worthy
 knyght / And for euylle dedes that he dyd vnto the cuntrye of
 Cornewaile / fire Triftram and he foughte / And they foughte
 foo longe tracyng and trauercyng tulle they fyller bledyng

to the erthe / for they were so fore wounded that they myght not
stande for bledynge / and sir Triftram by fortune recouerd and
fyre Marhaus dyed thurgh the stroke on the hede / Soo leue we
of sir Triftram and speke we of Kyng Marke /

¶ Capitulum vij

T Henne Kyng Marke had grete despyte of the renou- 5
me of sir Triftram / and Thanne he chaced hym oute
of Cornewaile / yet was he neuewe vnto Kyng Marke / but he
had grete suspecyon vnto sire Triftram by cause of his Quene
la Beale Ifoud / for hym semed that there was to moche lo-
ue bitwene them bothe / Soo whan sir Triftram departed oute 10
of Cornewaile in to Englund / kynge marke herd of the grete
prowesse that sir Triftram dyd there / the whiche greued hym so-
re / Soo he sente on his party men to aspye what dedes he dyd /
And the Quene sente pryuely on her party spyes to knowe
what dedes he had done / for grete loue was bitwene them tweyn 15
Soo whan the messagers were come home / they told the trouth
as they had herd that he passed alle other knyghtes / but yf it
were sir launcelot / Thenne kyng Marke was ryght heuy of
these tydynges / and as glad was la Beale Ifoud / Thenne
in grete despyte he took with hym two good Knyztes / and two 20
squyers / and desguyfed hym self / and took his way in to En-
glond to the entente for to slee sir Triftram / and one of these ij
Knyghtes hyght Berfules / and the other Knyzt was called
Amant / Soo as they rode Kyng Marke asked a knyght that
he met where he shold fynde Kyng Arthur / he said at Came- 25
lot / Also he asked that Knyghte after sire Triftram whether he
herd of hym in the courte of Kyng Arthur / wete you wel fa-
id that Knyzt ye shall fynde sir Triftram ther for a man of as
grete worship as is now lyuyng for thurȝ his prowesse he wā
the turnement of the castel of maydens / that standeth by the 30
hard roche / And fythen he hath wonne with his owne handes
thyrtty Knyghtes that were men of grete honour /

¶ And the laste batail that euer he dyde / he foughte with fyre

Lancelot / and that was a merueilous bataille / And not by
~~force~~ **f**yr launcelot brought fir Triftram to the Courte / and of
~~hym~~ **h**ym kynge Arthur made passyngre grete ioye / and soo maade
~~hym~~ **h**ym knyght of the table round / and his seate was where the
5 **g**ood Knyghtes fir Marhaus seate was / Thenne was Kyng
Marke passyngre fory whanne he herd of the honour of fir Trif-
tram / and soo they departed / Thenne said Kyng Marke vnto
his two Knyghtes / Now wille I telle you my counceylle ye
are the men that I trust moost to on lyue / and I wille that
10 ye wete my comyngre hyder is to this entente / for to destroye fir
Triftram by wyles or by treason / and hit shalle be hard yf e-
uer he escape our handes / Allas said fir Berfules what mene
you / for ye be sette in suche a waye / ye are disposed shamefully
For fir Triftram is the Knyzt of moost worship that we kno-
15 we lyuynge / And therfor I warne you playnly I wyll ne-
uer consente to doo hym to the dethe / and therfor I wyll yelde
my feruyse / and forsake you whan kynge Mark herd hym say
fo / Sodenly he drewe his sward and said A traitour / & smote
fyr Berfules on the hede that the fuerd wente to his teeth /
20 Whanne Amant the knyghte sawe hym doo that vylaynous
dede / and his squyers / they said hit was foul done / and me-
fchyeuoufly / wherfore we wille doo the no more feruyse / and
wete ye wel / we wil appeche the of treason afore Arthur /
Thenne was Kyng Marke wonderly wrothe / and wold ha-
25 ue slayne Amant / but he and the two squyers held them to gy-
ders / and sette nought by his malyce / whanne Kyng Marke
sawe he myght not be reuenged on them / he said thus vnto the
Knyght Amant / wete thou wel / and thou apoeche me of trea-
son / I shalle therof defende me afore Kyng Arthur / but I re-
30 quyre the that thou telle not my name that I am Kyng mark
what someuer come of me / As for that said fir Amant I wil
not discouer your name / and soo they departed / and Amant
and his felawes took the body of Berfules and buryed hit

EDITOR'S NOTE.

IN order to avoid misunderstandings I beg to state in anticipation of the second volume:

1. The present edition follows the original in every respect, word for word, line for line, and page for page, and, with a few exceptions which are accounted for and registered, letter for letter.

2. Caxton's volume commences with a blank leaf, which, as shown by the signatures, is counted. This leaf is also in the present edition, but it is not counted here, for the simple reason that the coincidence of the signatures in Caxton with the marks of the binders in the present edition should be avoided. Thus, on page 65 the fourth sheet begins, and is marked at the bottom by "E," whereas Caxton's fourth sheet only commences on page 67 (c j).

3. There occur in the impression of Caxton three kinds of "w." (Compare the photographic facsimile: firstly, line 20, in the word "was;" secondly, line 21, in the word "afterward;" and, thirdly, in the same line in the word "toward.") The first kind of "w," according to Mr. Blades, denotes in type No. 4* the capital "W." Caxton's compositors did not distinguish, as they ought, these "w" from one another, so that the one denoting "W" frequently occurs in the middle of words and in other places, where it is evidently out of place. I have, therefore, in the present edition, as Roman type does not admit of marking the three kinds, rendered it by "W" in all cases where capital "W" was to be expected, as in the beginning of a sentence and in proper names, otherwise it is rendered by "w."

4. There are, further, two styles of "I" used in Caxton's edition. (Compare the photographic facsimile, firstly, line 1, and secondly, line 5.) At first it appeared that a difference was made between "i" and "j," but such is not the case; both kinds are used indiscriminately. I have, therefore, after some consideration, always rendered it by "I." Moreover, the first kind of "I" occurs more frequently.

5. The character "3" is used in Caxton to express both "z" and "gh." In words where "z" was to be expected I have rendered "3" by "z," otherwise I have preserved "3," *e.g.*, "Cezar" and "kny3t."

6. Caxton has no fixed rules for dividing words at the end of a line. A word is divided as the space in each special case permits, and as a rule there is no conjunctive hyphen put—*e.g.*, "horfes" is not broken "hor-fes" but "ho rfes." As I found that in many cases mistakes arose from this deficiency, I have for the convenience of the modern reader always added the hyphen where it was to be expected.

7. In some cases where Caxton's compositors evidently confounded "n" with "u," or the reverse, *e.g.*, in "but," I have not reproduced the error. I have done the same in a few cases where "f" and "ff" were confounded, *e.g.*, in "for."

8. In a few cases where letters or parts of words were either effaced or did not come out in printing, the missing matter is supplied in italics.

H. OSKAR SOMMER.

